

Industrial Automation Headquarters

Delta Electronics, Inc.
Taoyuan Technology Center
No.18, Xinglong Rd., Taoyuan District,
Taoyuan City 33068, Taiwan
TEL: 886-3-362-6301 / FAX: 886-3-371-6301

Asia

Delta Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.
No.182 Minyu Rd., Pudong Shanghai, P.R.C.
Post code : 201209
TEL: 86-21-6872-3988 / FAX: 86-21-6872-3996
Customer Service: 400-820-9595

Delta Electronics (Japan), Inc.
Tokyo Office
Industrial Automation Sales Department
2-1-14 Shibadaimon, Minato-ku
Tokyo, Japan 105-0012
TEL: 81-3-5733-1155 / FAX: 81-3-5733-1255

Delta Electronics (Korea), Inc.
Seoul Office
1511, 219, Gasan Digital 1-Ro., Geumcheon-gu,
Seoul, 08501 South Korea
TEL: 82-2-515-5305 / FAX: 82-2-515-5302

Delta Energy Systems (Singapore) Pte Ltd.
4 Kaki Bukit Avenue 1, #05-04, Singapore 417939
TEL: 65-6747-5155 / FAX: 65-6744-9228

Delta Electronics (India) Pvt. Ltd.
Plot No.43, Sector 35, HSIIDC Gurgaon,
PIN 122001, Haryana, India
TEL: 91-124-4874900 / FAX : 91-124-4874945

Delta Electronics (Thailand) PCL.
909 Soi 9, Moo 4, Bangpoo Industrial Estate (E.P.Z),
Pattana 1 Rd., T.Phraksa, A.Muang,
Samutprakarn 10280, Thailand
TEL: 66-2709-2800 / FAX : 662-709-2827

Delta Electronics (Australia) Pty Ltd.
Unit 20-21/45 Normanby Rd., Notting Hill Vic 3168, Australia
TEL: 61-3-9543-3720

Americas

Delta Electronics (Americas) Ltd.
Raleigh Office
P.O. Box 12173, 5101 Davis Drive,
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, U.S.A.
TEL: 1-919-767-3813 / FAX: 1-919-767-3969

Delta Electronics Brazil
São Paulo Sales Office
Rua Itapeva, 26 - 3º, andar Edifício Itapeva,
One - Bela Vista 01332-000 - São Paulo - SP - Brazil
TEL: 55-12-3932-2300 / FAX: 55-12-3932-237

Delta Electronics International Mexico S.A. de C.V.
Mexico Office
Gustavo Baz No. 309 Edificio E PB 103
Colonia La Loma, CP 54060
Tlalnepantla, Estado de México
TEL: 52-55-3603-9200

EMEA

Headquarters: Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.
Sales: Sales.IA.EMEA@deltaww.com
Marketing: Marketing.IA.EMEA@deltaww.com
Technical Support: iatechnicalsupport@deltaww.com
Customer Support: Customer-Support@deltaww.com
Service: Service.IA.emea@deltaww.com
TEL: +31(0)40 800 3900

BENELUX: Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.
De Witbogt 20, 5652 AG Eindhoven, The Netherlands
Mail: Sales.IA.Benelux@deltaww.com
TEL: +31(0)40 800 3900

DACH: Delta Electronics (Netherlands) B.V.
Coesterweg 45, D-59494 Soest, Germany
Mail: Sales.IA.DACH@deltaww.com
TEL: +49(0)2921 987 0

France: Delta Electronics (France) S.A.
ZI du bois Challand 2, 15 rue des Pyrénées,
Lisses, 91090 Evry Cedex, France
Mail: Sales.IA.FR@deltaww.com
TEL: +33(0)1 69 77 82 60

Iberia: Delta Electronics Solutions (Spain) S.L.U
Ctra. De Villaverde a Vallecas, 265 1º Dcha Ed.
Hormigueras – P.I. de Vallecas 28031 Madrid
TEL: +34(0)91 223 74 20

Carrer Llacuna 166, 08018 Barcelona, Spain
Mail: Sales.IA.Iberia@deltaww.com

Italy: Delta Electronics (Italy) S.r.l.
Via Meda 2-22060 Novedrate(CO)
Piazza Grazioli 18 00186 Roma Italy
Mail: Sales.IA.Italy@deltaww.com
TEL: +39 039 8900365

Russia: Delta Energy System LLC
Vereyskaya Plaza II, office 112 Vereyskaya str.
17 121357 Moscow Russia
Mail: Sales.IA.RU@deltaww.com
TEL: +7 495 644 3240

Turkey: Delta Greentech Elektronik San. Ltd. Sti. (Turkey)
Şerifali Mah. Hendem Cad. Kule Sok. No:16-A
34775 Ümraniye – İstanbul
Mail: Sales.IA.Turkey@deltaww.com
TEL: + 90 216 499 9910

GCC: Delta Energy Systems AG (Dubai BR)
P.O. Box 185668, Gate 7, 3rd Floor, Hamarain Centre
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Mail: Sales.IA.MEA@deltaww.com
TEL: +971(0)4 2690148

Egypt + North Africa: Delta Electronics
Unit 318, 3rd Floor, Trivium Business Complex, North 90 street,
New Cairo, Cairo, Egypt
Mail: Sales.IA.MEA@deltaww.com

AX-3 Series Operation Manual



AX-3 Series Operation Manual

AX-3 Series Operation Manual

Revision History

Version	Revision	Date
1 st	The first version was published.	2020/10/30

AX-3 Series Operation Manual

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 Product Introduction

1.1	Overview	1-2
1.1.1	Related Manuals	1-2
1.1.2	Models Descriptions.....	1-3
1.2	DIADesigner-AX Software Overview.....	1-9
1.2.1	Features	1-9

Chapter 2 Specifications and System Configurations

2.1	General Specifications	2-2
2.2	CPU Module Specifications	2-4
2.2.1	Functional specifications	2-4
2.2.2	Electrical specifications	2-7
2.2.3	CPU Module Profiles.....	2-9
2.2.4	CPU Module Input/Output Terminals.....	2-11
2.3	Power Supply Module Specifications.....	2-12
2.3.1	General Specifications	2-12
2.3.2	Power Supply Module Profiles	2-12
2.3.3	Power Supply Module Terminals.....	2-13
2.4	Extension Modules.....	2-15

Chapter 3 Installing Hardware and Getting Started

3.1	Installing Hardware.....	3-2
3.1.1	Installing and Removing a Memory Card	3-2
3.1.2	Installing and Replacing a Button Cell Battery.....	3-3
3.1.3	Installing the AX-3 Series PLC in the Control Cabinet.....	3-5
3.2	Installing and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX	3-7
3.2.1	Installing DIADesign-AX.....	3-8
3.2.2	Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX	3-14

3.3	Getting Started and Setting up Communication	3-15
3.3.1	Getting Started.....	3-15
3.3.2	Setting up Communication	3-16

Chapter 4 Basic Operation

4.1	Introduction on DIADesigner-AX.....	4-2
4.1.1	Create a New Project.....	4-2
4.2	Setting Items on the Device Page.....	4-4
4.2.1	CPU Parameter Settings	4-4
4.3	Data Type and Variables	4-29
4.3.1	Data Type	4-29
4.3.2	Variables.....	4-30
4.4	Task.....	4-39
4.4.1	Task Configuration	4-39

Chapter 5 Hardware Configuration

5.1	Environment of Hardware Configuration	5-2
5.2.	Add a Module.....	5-5
5.3	Remove a Module	5-7
5.4	Copy and Paste a Module.....	5-9
5.4.1	Copy a Module.....	5-9
5.4.2	Paste a Module	5-10
5.5	Cut and Paste a Module	5-11
5.5.1	Cut a Module	5-11
5.5.2	Paste a Module	5-12

Chapter 6 Network Configuration

6.1	Network Configuration	6-2
6.1.1	Introduction	6-2
6.1.2	Basic Knowledge	6-3
6.1.3	Creating a Network Topology	6-5

Chapter 7 Motion Control Basic Settings and Operation

7.1	Introduction on Motion Control Instructions	7-4
7.1.1	Motion Control Instructions	7-4
7.1.2	Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions.....	7-4
7.1.3	Categories of Motion Control Instructions.....	7-5
7.2	Creating Motion Control Project.....	7-6
7.2.1	Process Flowchart	7-6
7.2.2	Process for Creating a Project.....	7-7
7.3	Commissioning	7-13
7.3.1	Procedure for Commissioning	7-13
7.3.2	Example of Axis Parameter Settings	7-13
7.3.3	Perform Axes Commissioning	7-15
7.4	Motion Control Device.....	7-18
7.4.1	Overview	7-18
7.4.2	Introduction to Axis.....	7-18
7.4.3	Procedure for Single-axis Configuration	7-25
7.4.4	Axis Group Settings.....	7-32
7.4.5	Procedure for Axis Group Configuration.....	7-35
7.5	Motion Axis Variables	7-40
7.5.1	Variables for Single Axis	7-40
7.5.2	Variables for Axis Group	7-43
7.6	Motion Control Programming.....	7-45
7.6.1	Motion Control Program	7-45
7.6.2	Axis State Transitions.....	7-49
7.6.3	Execution and Status Indication for Motion Control Instructions	7-52
7.6.4	Position	7-62
7.6.5	CAM Tables and Framework	7-62
7.7	Motion Control Functions.....	7-67
7.7.1	System Structure.....	7-67
7.7.2	Single-axis Control	7-67
7.7.3	Velocity Control	7-85
7.7.4	Torque Control	7-87
7.7.5	Common Functions for Single-axis Control	7-88
7.7.6	Axis Group Control	7-95
7.7.7	High-speed IO	7-99

7.7.8	Other Features	7-128
7.8	Programming Example	7-132
7.8.1	Device Framework	7-132
7.8.2	Examples	7-132

Chapter 8 OPC UA Server

8.1	OPC UA Server	8-2
8.1.1	Creating a Project for OPC UA Access	8-2
8.2	Setting up a Connection with the “UaExpert” Client	8-4
8.3	Setting up a Certificated Connection	8-8
8.3.1	Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Server	8-8
8.3.2	Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Client	8-12

Chapter 9 Communication

9.1	Introduction to EtherCAT Communication	9-2
9.1.1	Features of EtherCAT Fieldbus	9-2
9.1.2	Settings up EtherCAT Master	9-3
9.1.3	Setting up the EtherCAT Slave	9-5
9.2	Introduction to Modbus Serial Communication	9-8
9.2.1	Serial Port	9-8
9.2.2	Modbus Serial Master	9-11
9.2.3	MODBUS Serial Slave	9-21
9.3	Introduction to Modbus TCP/IP Communication	9-24
9.3.1	Ethernet Port	9-24
9.3.2	Modbus TCP Master (Client)	9-28
9.3.3	MODBUS TCP Slave (Server)	9-38

Appendix A Troubleshooting

A.1	Troubleshooting	A-2
A.1.1	Basic Troubleshooting Steps	A-2
A.1.2	Clear the Error States	A-2
A.1.3	Troubleshooting SOP	A-3
A.1.4	Viewing Log	A-3
A.2	Troubleshooting of CPU Modules	A-6
A.2.1	ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds	A-6

A.2.2	ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 0.2 Seconds	A-8
A.2.3	ERROR LED Indicators Slow Blinking Every 3 Seconds and Lighting up for 1 Second.....	A-8
A.2.4	BAT. LOW LED Indicators Are ON	A-8
A.2.5	BAT. LOW LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds	A-8
A.2.6	Others	A-9
A.3	Troubleshooting of the Function Blocks	A-10
A.3.1	DL_BuiltInIO_AX3	A-10
A.3.2	DL_MotionControl_AX3	A-13
A.4	Troubleshooting of I/O Modules	A-14
A.4.1	Troubleshooting of Analog Modules (AD/DA/XA) and Temperature Modules (RTD/TC)	A-14
A.5	Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules.....	A-16
A.5.1	Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules.....	A-17
A.5.2	Error Codes and LED Indicators for Analog and Temperature Module ..	A-19

Chapter 1 Product Introduction

Table of Contents

1.1	Overview	1-2
1.1.1	Related Manuals	1-2
1.1.2	Models Descriptions.....	1-3
1.2	DIADesigner-AX Software Overview.....	1-9
1.2.1	Features	1-9

1.1 Overview

This manual introduces the AX-3 Series CPU functions, devices, module tables, troubleshooting, and so forth.

1.1.1 Related Manuals

The related manuals for AX-3 Series programmable logic controllers are listed below.

- **AX-3 Series Operation Manual**
This manual introduces CPU functions, devices, module tables, electrical specifications, appearances and dimension, basic concept of motion control, basic configurations, troubleshooting, and so forth.
- **AX-3 Series Quick Start**
This quick start helps you create and use the system in a short time. Besides presenting you with basic system framework, this quick start uses example to demonstrate how to design, write programs, use variables as well as function blocks (FB) and download the PLC program to the PLC. Refer to Appendix A Troubleshooting of AX-3 Series Operation Manual, if any error occurs.
- **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**
This introduces single-axis and multi-axes instructions for programming the AX Series Motion Controllers.
- **AX Series Standard Instructions Manual**
This introduces standard instructions for programming the AX Series Controllers.
- **AS Series Hardware Manual**
This manual introduces electrical specifications, wirings of CPU modules and modules, appearances, dimensions, and so forth.
- **AS Series Module Manual**
This manual introduces special I/O modules such as network modules, analog I/O modules, temperature measurement modules, and so forth.
- **DIADesigner-AX User Manual**
This manual introduces the use of the software, programming languages, including Ladder Diagram (LD), Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Structured Text (ST), and Function Block Diagram (FBD), as well as Program Organization Unit (POU), tasks and editing techniques for motion control programs.

1.1.2 Models Descriptions

Classification	Model Name	Description
Power supply module	AS-PS02	Input: 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz Output: 24VDC/2A, 48W (for PLC internal use)
	AS-PS02A	Input: 100-240 VAC, 50/60 Hz Output: 24VDC/1.5A, 36W (for PLC internal use) Output: 24VDC/0.5A, 12W (for external use)
AX-3 Motion Controller CPU Module	AX-308EA0MA1T	8-axis motion controller CPU module, 2x built-in Relative Encoders, 1x SSI, 16 DI (200KHz), 8 DO (200KHz NPN), 2x Ethernet port switches, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-485, 1x RS-232, 1 USB, Micro SD interface. Program capacity: 32 MB; Data capacity: 32 MB, removable terminal blocks
	AX-364ELA0MA1T	64-axis motion controller CPU module, 2x built-in Relative Encoders, 1x SSI, 16 DI (200KHz), 8 DO (200KHz NPN), 2x Ethernet port switches, 1x EtherCAT, 1x RS-485, 1x RS-232, 1 USB, Micro SD interface. Program capacity: 32 MB; Data capacity: 32 MB, removable terminal blocks
Digital input/output module	AS08AM10N-A	24VDC 5mA 8 inputs Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS08AN01P-A	5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 8 outputs Sourcing output Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS08AN01R-A	240VAC/24VDC 2A/output, 8A/COM 8 outputs Relay Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS08AN01T-A	5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 8 outputs Sinking output Spring-clamp terminal block

Classification	Model Name	Description
1	AS16AM10N-A	24VDC 5mA 16 inputs Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS16AN01P-A	5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 16 outputs Sourcing output Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS16AN01R-A	240VAC/24VDC 2A/output, 8A/COM 16 outputs Relay Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS16AN01T-A	5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 16 outputs Sinking output Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS16AP11P-A	24VDC 5mA 8 inputs 5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 8 outputs Sourcing output Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS16AP11R-A	24VDC 5mA 8 inputs 240VAC/24VDC 2A/output, 8A/COM 8 outputs Relay Spring-clamp terminal block

Classification	Model Name	Description
	AS16AP11T-A	24VDC 5mA 8 inputs 5 - 30VDC 0.5A/output, 4A/COM 8 outputs Sinking output Spring-clamp terminal block
	AS32AM10N-A	24VDC 3.2mA 32 inputs MIL connector
	AS32AN02T-A	5 - 30VDC 0.1A/output, 3.2A/COM 32 outputs Sinking output MIL connector
	AS64AM10N-A	24VDC 3.2mA 64 inputs MIL connector
	AS64AN02T-A	5 - 30VDC 0.1A/output, 3.2A/COM 64 outputs Sinking output MIL connector
Analog input/output module	AS04AD-A	4-channel analog input module Hardware resolution: 16 bits 0–10V, 0/1–5V, -5 to +5V, -10 to +10V, 0/4–20mA, -20–+20mA Conversion time: 2 ms/channel
	AS08AD-B	8-channel analog input module Hardware resolution: 16 bits 0 to +10V, 0/1–5V, -5V to +5V, -10V to +10V Conversion time: 2 ms/channel
	AS08AD-C	8-channel analog input module

Classification	Model Name	Description
		Hardware resolution: 16 bits 0/4–20mA, -20mA–+20mA Conversion time: 2 ms/channel
	AS04DA-A	4-channel analog output module Hardware resolution: 12 bits -10 to +10V, 0–20mA, 4–20mA Conversion time: 2 ms/channel
	AS06XA-A	4-channel analog input Hardware resolution: 16 bits 0–10V, 0/1–5V, -5 to +5V, -10 to +10V, 0/4–20mA, -20 to +20mA Conversion time: 2 ms/channel 2-channel analog output Hardware resolution: 12 bits -10 to +10V, 0–20mA, 4–20mA Conversion time: 2 ms/channel
Temperature measurement module	AS04RTD-A	4-channel, 2-wire/3-wire RTD Sensor type: Pt100 / Ni100 / Pt1000 / Ni1000 / JPt100 / LG-Ni1000 / Cu50 / Cu100 / 0-300Ω / 0-3000Ω input impedance Resolution: 0.1°C/0.1°F (16 bits) Conversion time: 200ms/channel
	AS06RTD-A	6-channel, 2-wire/3-wire RTD Sensor type: Pt100 / Ni100 / Pt1000 / Ni1000 / JPt100 / LG-Ni1000 / Cu50 / Cu100 / 0-300Ω / 0-3000Ω input impedance Resolution: 0.1°C/0.1°F (16 bits) Conversion time: 200ms/channel
	AS04TC-A	4-channel thermocouple Sensor type: J, K, R, S, T, E, N, B and -100 to +100 mV Resolution: 0.1°C/0.1°F (24 bits) Conversion time: 200ms/channel
	AS08TC-A	8-channel thermocouple Sensor type: J, K, R, S, T, E, N, B and -100 to +100 mV Resolution: 0.1°C/0.1°F (24 bits) Conversion time: 200ms/channel
Load cell module	AS02LC-A	2-channel, 4-wire/6-wire load cell sensor Eigenvalue applicable to a load cell: 1, 2, 4, 6, 20, 40, 80 mV/V

Classification	Model Name	Description
		Highest accuracy: 0.04% of full-scale ADC Resolution : 24 bits Conversion time: 2.5–400 ms (nine options to choose from)
Programming cable	UC-PRG015-01A (1.5M)	Used for the connection between a PLC and a PC via a mini USB port, use for AS Series CPU modules
	UC-PRG030-01A (3M)	Use for the connection between a PLC and a PC with a mini USB port, use for AS Series CPU modules
	UC-PRG030-20A (3M)	Use for the connection between a PLC and a PC with a RJ45 port, use for AS Series CPU modules and AS-FEN02 function card
I/O extension cable	UC-ET010-24B (1M) UC-ET020-24B (2M) UC-ET030-24B (3M)	MIL connector, 40Pin ↔ 40Pin, shielded, use for AS32AM10N-A, AS32AN02T-A, AS64AM10N-A and AS64AN02T-A
	UC-ET010-24D (1M) UC-ET020-24D (2M) UC-ET030-24D (3M)	MIL connector, 40Pin ↔ 2x 20Pin, shielded, use for AS332T-A, AS332P-A, AS324MT-A, AS32AM10N-A, AS32AN02T-A, AS64AM10N-A, and AS64AN02T-A
External terminal module	UB-10-ID16A	16 inputs/outputs, 20-Pin MIL connector, use for AS332T-A, AS332P-A, AS324MT-A, AS32AM10N-A, AS32AN02T-A, AS64AM10N-A and AS64AN02T-A
	UB-10-ID32A	32 inputs, 40-Pin MIL connector, use for AS32AM10N-A and AS64AM10N-A
	UB-10-IO32D	Terminal block (spring clamp/MIL connector), MIL connector to 40-Pin spring clamp terminal block, use for AS332T-A, AS332P-A, AS324MT-A, AS32AM10N-A, AS32AN02T-A
	UB-10-OR16A	16 relay outputs, 20-Pin MIL connector, NPN, use for AS332T-A, AS32AN02T-A and AS64AN02T-A
	UB-10-OR16B	16 relay outputs, 20-Pin MIL connector, PNP, use for AS332P-A
	UB-10-OT32A	32 transistor outputs, 40-Pin MIL connector, NPN, use for AS32AN02T-A and AS64AN02T-A
ECAT cables for motion controller	UC-EMC003-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 0.3M
	UC-EMC005-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 0.5M
	UC-EMC010-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 1M
	UC-EMC020-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 2M
	UC-EMC050-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 5M
	UC-EMC100-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 10M

Classification	Model Name	Description
	UC-EMC200-02A	Ethernet communication cable, 20M
	UC-EMC003-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 0.3M
	UC-EMC005-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 0.5M
	UC-EMC010-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 1M
	UC-EMC020-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 2M
	UC-EMC030-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 3M
	UC-EMC050-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 5M
	UC-EMC100-02B	Ethernet communication cable, 10M

1.2 DIADesigner-AX Software Overview

Conformed to IEC61131-3, DIADesigner-AX is a new programming tool for a new generation Delta PLC. With the abundant applied instructions and an adequate motion function library, DIADesigner-AX provides a friendly and multilingual programming interface for a more convenient and efficient development environment.

1.2.1 Features

DIADesigner-AX is applicable to AX-8 and AX-3 series.

- Support all the programming languages that IEC 61131-3 defines, including LD, SFC, ST, and FBD, as well as POU, tasks and other programming language standard.
- Powerful and proven function library for various applications.
- Input assistance for the input and configuration.
- User-friendly programming with mouse and keyboard in IEC 61131-3 supported programming languages.
- Extensive debugging and online features for the fast optimization of the application code and to speed up testing and commissioning.
- Numerous security features for the protection of the source code and for safeguarding the operation of the controller.
- Programmable devices from different manufacturers.
- The user interface is extendible and adaptable without leaving the framework.
- Transparent internal structures of the development tool and the available components.
- Many seamlessly integrated tools for different kinds of automation tasks.

Two built-in configuration tools:

- HWCONFIG: for the hardware configurations and parameter managements for the system.
- NWCONFIG: for the network configurations and data exchange management for the system.

Providing various solutions for motion control including PLCopen, MC function block, G-code editor, E-CAM editor, positioning planning chart tool and many more.

- Support PLCopen POUs for single and multi-axis motions
- Support PLCopen POUs for add-on functions, including diagnostics, stop, and CAM controller
- Additional POUs for different tasks including monitoring dynamic data, following error, operating CAMs and CAM controllers
- Integrated graphical CAM editor with loads of configuration options
- Virtual and logical axes are supported.
- Integrated drivers for numerous Modbus and EtherCAT protocols
- Configuration of the drives as standard field devices.

MEMO

1

Chapter 2 Specifications and System Configurations

Table of Contents

2.1	General Specifications	2-2
2.2	CPU Module Specifications	2-4
2.2.1	Functional specifications	2-4
2.2.2	Electrical specifications	2-7
2.2.3	CPU Module Profiles.....	2-9
2.2.4	CPU Module Input/Output Terminals.....	2-11
2.3	Power Supply Module Specifications.....	2-12
2.3.1	General Specifications	2-12
2.3.2	Power Supply Module Profiles	2-12
2.3.3	Power Supply Module Terminals.....	2-13
2.4	Extension Modules	2-15

2.1 General Specifications

Item	Specifications
Operating temperature	-20 to 55°C*1
Storage temperature	-40 to 80°C
Operating humidity	5–95% No condensation
Storage humidity	5–95% No condensation
Work environment	No corrosive gas exists.
Installation location	In a control box
Pollution degree	2
Ingress protection (IP ratings)	IP20
EMC Standard (electromagnetic compatibility)	Refer to tables of EMI, EMS and conducted immunity test below.
Vibration resistance	Tested with: 5 Hz \leq f \leq 8.4 Hz, constant amplitude 3.5 mm; 8.4 Hz \leq f \leq 150 Hz, constant acceleration 1g Duration of oscillation: 10 sweep cycles per axis on each direction of the three mutually perpendicular axes International Standard IEC 61131-2 & IEC 60068-2-6 (TEST Fc)
Shock resistance	Tested with: Half-sine wave: Strength of shock 15 g peak value, 11 ms duration; Shock direction: The shocks in each in direction per axis, on three mutually perpendicular axes (total of 18 shocks) International Standard IEC 61131-2 & IEC 60068-2-27 (TEST Ea)
Safety	Conforms to IEC 61131-2, UL508
Ambient air temperature-barometric pressure-altitude	Operating: 1080 ~ 795hPa (-1000 ~ 2000 m) Storage: 1080 ~ 660hPa (-1000 ~ 3500 m)

*1: Leave the AX-3 Series PLC in an environment within the operating temperature for at least one hour to ensure the AX-3 Series PLC temperature is within the operating temperature.

• EMI

Port	Frequency range	Level (Normative)	Reference standard
Enclosure port (radiated) (measured at a distance of 10 meters)	30-230 MHz	40 dB (μV/m) quasi-peak	IEC 61000-6-4
	230-1000 MHz	47 dB (μV/m) quasi-peak	
AC power port (conducted)	0.15-0.5 MHz	79 dB (μV) quasi-peak	IEC 61000-6-4
		66 dB (μV) average	
	0.5-30 MHz	73 dB (μV) quasi-peak	
		60 dB (μV) average	

- EMS

Environmental phenomenon	Reference standard	Test		Test level
Electrostatic discharge	IEC 61000-4-2	Contact		± 4 kV
		Air		± 8 kV
Radio frequency electromagnetic field Amplitude modulated	IEC 61000-4-3	80% AM, 1 kHz sinusoidal	2.0-2.7 GHz	1 V/m
			1.4-2.0 GHz	3 V/m
			80-1000 MHz	10 V/m
Power frequency magnetic field	IEC 61000-4-8	60 Hz		30 A/m
		50 Hz		30 A/m

- Conducted immunity test

Environmental phenomenon		Fast transient burst	High energy surge	Radio frequency interference
Reference standard		IEC 61000-4-4	IEC 61000-4-5	IEC 61000-4-6
Interface/Port	Specific interface/port	Test level	Test level	Test level
Data communication	Shielded cable	1 kV	1 kV CM	10 V
	Unshielded cable	1 kV	1 kV CM	10 V
Digital and analog I/O	AC I/O (unshielded)	2 kV	2 kV CM 1 kV DM	10 V
	Analog or DC I/O(unshielded)	1 kV	1 kV CM	10 V
	All shielded lines (to the earth)	1 kV	1 kV CM	10 V
Equipment power	AC power	2 kV	2 kV CM 1 kV DM	10 V
	DC power	2 kV	0.5 kV CM 0.5 kV DM	10 V
I/O power and auxiliary power output	AC I/O and AC auxiliary power	2 kV	2 kV CM 1 kV DM	10 V
	DC I/O and DC auxiliary power	2 kV	0.5 kV CM 0.5 kV DM	10 V

2.2 CPU Module Specifications

2.2.1 Functional specifications

Type			AX-308EA0MA1T	AX-364ELA0MA1T
Process time	Execution time	LD instruction	5 nanoseconds (ns)	
		Arithmetic instructions (LREAL data type)	36 nanoseconds (ns)	
Program	Program capacity	Capacity	8 MB	
	Variable memory	Retaintive	768 KB (device memory (%M) is counted in)	
		Non-retaintive	128 KB	
		Retain Persist	16 MB	
	Device memory (%M)	Size	512 KB	
Motion control	Number of controlled axes	Maximum number of controlled axes	16 axes	128 axes
		EtherCAT axes	8 axes	64 axes
		Pulse Out axes	4 axes	4 axes
		Maximum number of axes for linear interpolation axis control	6 axes	6 axes
		Maximum number of axes for circular interpolation axis control	2 axes	2 axes
	Maximum number of axes groups		8 groups	8 groups
	Motion control period		The same control period as that is used for the process data communications cycle for EtherCAT.	
	CAM	Number of CAM data points	Maximum points per CAM table	256 points
			Maximum points for all CAM tables	20,480 points
		Maximum number of CAM tables		80
Ethernet port	Number of ports		2	
	Physical media types		10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T Switch	
	Topology		Star, linear	

	Transmission speed		10/100/1000 Mbps	
	Cable		Category 5e or later, 100 meters (Max.)	
	Protocols		ARP, IP, TCP, UDP, MODBUS TCP, EtherNet/IP	
USB port	Number of ports		1	
	Type		Mini USB	
RS232 port	Number of ports		1	
	Baud rate		9,600, 19,200, 38,400, 57,600, 76,800, 115,200 bps	
	Serial communication format		Stop bit: 1, 2; Parity bit: None, Odd, Even; Data bit: 7, 8	
	Communication protocol		MODBUS ASCII/RTU	
RS485 port	Number of ports		1	
	Baud rate		9,600, 19,200, 38,400, 57,600, 76,800, 115,200 bps	
	Serial communication format		Stop bit: 1, 2; Parity bit: None, Odd, Even; Data bit: 7, 8	
	Communication protocol		MODBUS ASCII/RTU	
EtherCAT port	EtherCAT Master		Class B	
	Physical media types		100BASE-TX	
	Transmission speed		100 Mbps	
	Topology		Line, daisy chain, and branching	
	Cable		Category 5e or later, 100 meters (Max.)	
	Maximum number of Slaves		64	96
	Transmission cycle		2,000μs ~ 32,000μs (unit can be set to 250μs)	
	MODBUS TCP	Maximum number of the connections	32 (Server + Client)	
	SOCKET	Maximum number of the TCP connections		
	MODBUS TCP	Maximum data length per connection	100 words	
TCP	SOCKET	Maximum data length per instruction	8 KB	
EtherNet/IP	CIP IO Connection	Number of adapter to be connected	8	
		Maximum number of the CIP connections (Input T->O)	64	

		Maximum number of the CIP connections (Output O->T)	64
		Requested Packet Interval (RPI)	20 ~ 1,000ms (unit: 1 ms)
		Maximum Transmission Speed	3,000 pps
		Maximum data length per connection	500 bytes
	CIP Explicit Message	Class 3 / UCMM	Get_Attribute_Single (FB) Get_Attributes_All (FB) Set_Attribute_Single (FB) Set_Attributes_All (FB)
		CIP objects supported	Identity, Message Router, Assembly, Connection, Manager, Port, TCP/IP interface, Ethernet link, Vendor specific
OPC UA server	Supported profiles and models		PLCopen and OPC Foundation: OPC UA Information Model for IEC 61131-3
	Endpoints and connecting ports		TCP: 4840 (Reconfigurable via configuration file)
	Maximum number of sessions (Client)		5
	Maximum number of monitored items per server		1000
	Sampling rate of the monitored items (ms)		100, 300, 500, 1000, 2500, 5000
	Maximum number of subscriptions per server		100
	Maximum number of variables that can be published		10,000
	Maximum number of value attributes that can be published		10,000
	Maximum number of structure definitions that can be published		100
	Conditions that can not be published for each network-published variable		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● More than three dimensional arrays ● Array of Array ● The OPC UA Stack will limit messages to about 300 kB. This is the maximum for values too. ● Pointer variables, Interface variables ● Structures containing pointers and interfaces
	Security mode and policy		None Sign - Basic256Sha256 SignAndEncrypt - Basic256Sha256
	Application	Authentication	X.509

IO configuration	authentication	Number of certificates that can be stored	Trusted applications: 32 Issuer certificates: 32 Rejected applications: 32
	User authentication	Method of user authentication	User name / password / Anonymous
	Number of IO extension modules supported		32
	I/O capacity		IN : 8,192byte OUT : 8,192byte
	Built-in IO	Encoder	2
		SSI	1
		High speed counter	5 (200KHz)
		Pulse out	4 (200KHz)
Memory card	SD card type		Micro SD (SDHC, 32GB max.)
Real-time clock	Year, Month, Date, Hour, Minute, Second, Week		One CR1620 battery is required.
Dimension	Length * Width * Height		110mm * 88mm * 100mm

EtherCAT axes include positioning axes and synchronization axes. The maximum number of the axes are listed below.

Item \ Model	Maximum number of positioning axes	Maximum number of synchronization axes	Maximum number of positioning and synchronization axes
AX-308EA0MA1T	≤ 8	≤ 8	≤ 8
AX-364ELA0MA1T	≤ 64	≤ 8	≤ 64

2.2.2 Electrical specifications

Model	AX-308EA0MA1T	AX-364ELA0MA1T
Item		
Supply voltage	24 VDC (20.4 VDC–28.8 VDC) (-15% to +20%)	
Power consumption (W)	11 W	
Weight (g)	420 g	

- Electrical specifications for the inputs on digital input/output module. The signals passing through the inputs are 24 VDC signals.

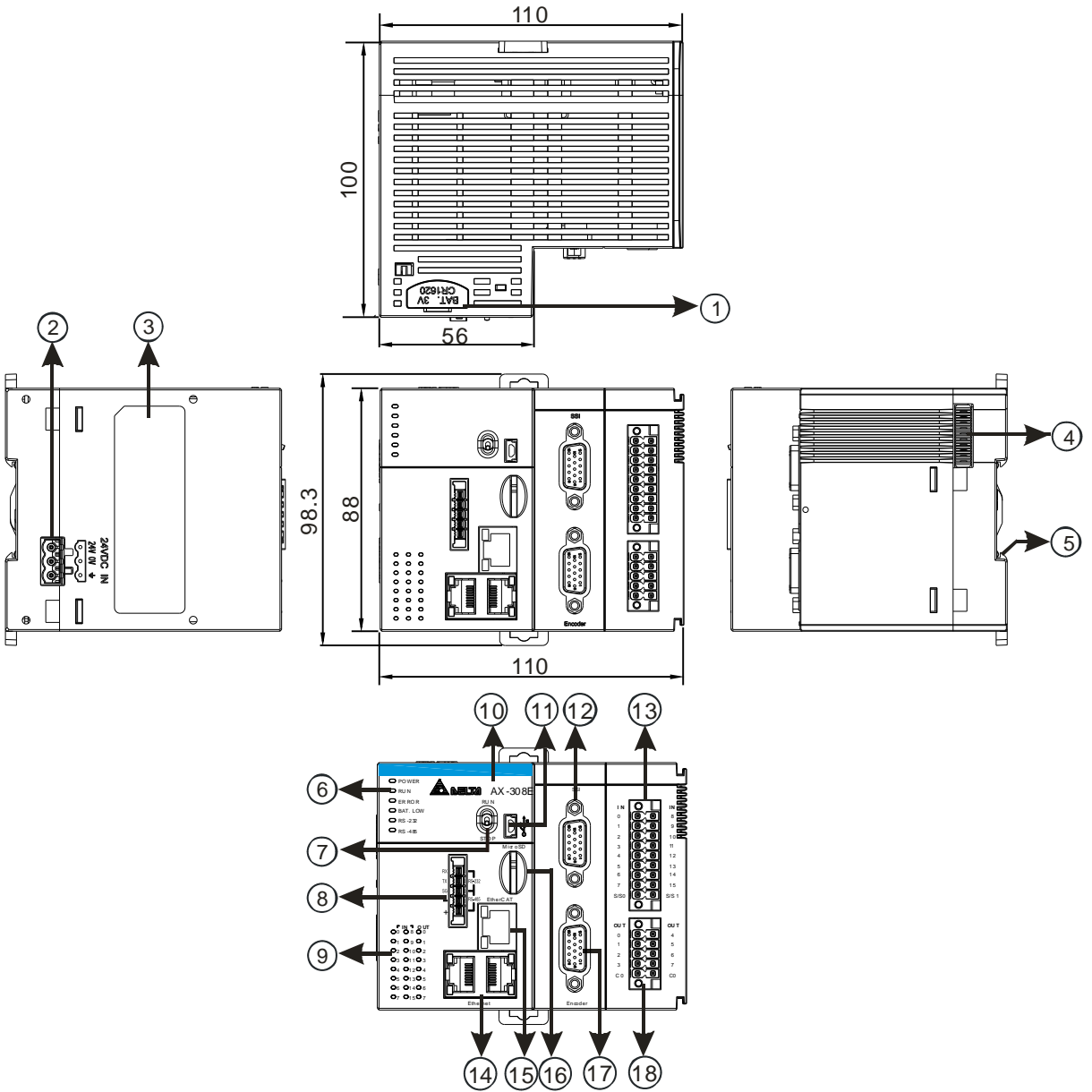
Model		AX-308EA0MA1T	AX-364ELA0MA1T
Item			
Number of inputs		16	
Connector type		Removable terminal blocks	
Input type		Digital input	
Input form		Direct current (sinking or sourcing)	
Input voltage/ current		24 VDC, 5 mA	
Action level	OFF→ON	>15 VDC	
	ON→OFF	<5 VDC	
Response time	OFF→ON	2.5 μs	
	ON→OFF	5 μs	
Maximum input frequency		200KHz	
Input impedance		5.6 kΩ	
Input signal		Voltage input Sinking: The inputs are NPN transistors whose collectors are open collectors. Sourcing: The inputs are PNP transistors whose collectors are open collectors.	
Electrical input isolation		500VDC	
Input display		When the optocoupler is driven, the input LED indicator is ON.	

- Electrical specifications for the outputs on digital input/output module. The signals passing through the inputs are 24 VDC signals.

Model		AX-308EA0MA1T	AX-364ELA0MA1T
Item			
Number of outputs		8	
Connector type		Removable terminal blocks	
Output form		Transistor (N-MOS)	
Voltage		24 VDC (-15% ~+20%)	
Maximum load	Resistance	0.1A/output	
	Inductance	-	
	Bulb	-	
Maximum output frequency*1		200 KHz	
Maximum Response time	OFF→ON	2.5 μs	

2.2.3 CPU Module Profiles

- AX-308EA0MA1T/ AX-364ELA0MA1T



Unit: mm

Number	Name	Description
1	Battery holder	A case for holding a battery (not enclosed) for the real-time clock function
2	Power supply	For power supply
3	Label	Nameplate
4	External module port	Connects the modules
5	Grounding clip	For grounding
6	Power LED indicator	Indicates the power status of the CPU module
	Run LED indicator	Operating status of the CPU module ON: the module is running. OFF: the module is stopped. Blinking: the module is detecting an error.
	Error LED indicator	Error status of the module ON: a serious error occurs in the module. OFF: the module is normal. Blinking: a minor error occurs in the module.
	BAT.LOW LED indicator	Indicates the battery status of the CPU module.
	COM1 LED COM2 LED	Indicates the communication status of the COM port. OFF: no communication over the COM port Blinking: communication over the COM port
7	Run/Stop	RUN: execute the programs STOP: stop the programs
8	COM Port	Provides an interface for RS-485 and RS-232 communication
9	Input/Output LED indicator	If there is an input signal, the input LED indicator is ON. If there is an output signal, the output LED indicator is ON.
10	Model name	Shows the model name of the CPU module.
11	USB Port	Mini USB communication port
12	SSI Port	SSI Encoder communication port
13	Input Terminals	For input wiring
14	Ethernet Port	Ethernet Switch communication port LINK indicator (Green): ■ LED ON: The network connection is established. ■ LED OFF: The network connection is NOT established. ACT indicator (Orange): ■ LED blinking: Data transmission (sending/receiving) ■ LED OFF: No data transmission
15	EtherCAT Port	EtherCAT communication port LINK indicator (Green): ■ LED ON: The network connection is established. ■ LED OFF: The network connection is NOT established. ACT indicator (Orange): ■ LED blinking: Data transmission (sending/receiving) ■ LED OFF: No data transmission
16	SD Card Slot	Provides an interface for an SD card
17	Encoder Port	Incremental encoder communication port
18	Output Terminals	For output wiring

2.2.4 CPU Module Input/Output Terminals

AX-308EA0MA1T / AX-364ELA0MA1T																																																																																																				
<div><div><div><div><div><div></div><div>POWER</div></div><div><div></div><div>RUN</div></div><div><div></div><div>ERROR</div></div><div><div></div><div>BAT. LOW</div></div><div><div></div><div>RS-232</div></div><div><div></div><div>RS-485</div></div></div></div><div><div><div><div></div><div>STOP</div></div><div><div></div><div>RUN</div></div><div><div></div><div>STOP</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>Micro SD</div></div><div><div></div><div>EtherCAT</div></div></div><div><div><div><div></div><div>Rx</div></div><div><div></div><div>Tx</div></div><div><div></div><div>Sb</div></div><div><div></div><div>+</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>RS-232</div></div><div><div></div><div>RS-485</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>Ethernet</div></div></div></div></div><div><div><div><div></div><div>SSI</div></div><div><div></div><div>Encoder</div></div></div><div><div><div><div></div><div>IN</div></div><div><div></div><div>OUT</div></div></div><div><div><div></div><div>S/S0</div></div><div><div></div><div>C0</div></div></div></div></div></div><table><tr><th colspan="2">SSI</th><th colspan="2">ENCNDOR</th><th colspan="2">IN</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>DATA+</td><td>1</td><td>A1+</td><td>X0.0</td><td>X0.8</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>DATA-</td><td>2</td><td>A1-</td><td>X0.1</td><td>X0.9</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>CLK+</td><td>10</td><td>B1+</td><td>X0.2</td><td>X0.10</td></tr><tr><td>14</td><td>CLK-</td><td>11</td><td>B1-</td><td>X0.3</td><td>X0.11</td></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>GND</td><td>4</td><td>Z1+</td><td>X0.4</td><td>X0.12</td></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>5V</td><td>5</td><td>Z1-</td><td>X0.5</td><td>X0.13</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>15</td><td>+5V1</td><td>X0.6</td><td>X0.14</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>3</td><td>A2+</td><td>X0.7</td><td>X0.15</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>9</td><td>A2-</td><td>S/S0</td><td>S/S1</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>6</td><td>B2+</td><td colspan="2">OUT</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>12</td><td>B2-</td><td>Y0.0</td><td>Y0.4</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>13</td><td>Z2+</td><td>Y0.1</td><td>Y0.5</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>14</td><td>Z2-</td><td>Y0.2</td><td>Y0.6</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>7</td><td>+5V2</td><td>Y0.3</td><td>Y0.7</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>8</td><td>0V</td><td>C0</td><td>C0</td></tr></table></div>					SSI		ENCNDOR		IN		1	DATA+	1	A1+	X0.0	X0.8	2	DATA-	2	A1-	X0.1	X0.9	6	CLK+	10	B1+	X0.2	X0.10	14	CLK-	11	B1-	X0.3	X0.11	8	GND	4	Z1+	X0.4	X0.12	15	5V	5	Z1-	X0.5	X0.13			15	+5V1	X0.6	X0.14			3	A2+	X0.7	X0.15			9	A2-	S/S0	S/S1			6	B2+	OUT				12	B2-	Y0.0	Y0.4			13	Z2+	Y0.1	Y0.5			14	Z2-	Y0.2	Y0.6			7	+5V2	Y0.3	Y0.7			8	0V	C0	C0
					SSI		ENCNDOR		IN																																																																																											
					1	DATA+	1	A1+	X0.0	X0.8																																																																																										
					2	DATA-	2	A1-	X0.1	X0.9																																																																																										
					6	CLK+	10	B1+	X0.2	X0.10																																																																																										
					14	CLK-	11	B1-	X0.3	X0.11																																																																																										
					8	GND	4	Z1+	X0.4	X0.12																																																																																										
					15	5V	5	Z1-	X0.5	X0.13																																																																																										
							15	+5V1	X0.6	X0.14																																																																																										
							3	A2+	X0.7	X0.15																																																																																										
							9	A2-	S/S0	S/S1																																																																																										
							6	B2+	OUT																																																																																											
							12	B2-	Y0.0	Y0.4																																																																																										
							13	Z2+	Y0.1	Y0.5																																																																																										
							14	Z2-	Y0.2	Y0.6																																																																																										
							7	+5V2	Y0.3	Y0.7																																																																																										
		8	0V	C0	C0																																																																																															
1	DATA+	1	A1+	X0.0	X0.8																																																																																															
2	DATA-	2	A1-	X0.1	X0.9																																																																																															
6	CLK+	10	B1+	X0.2	X0.10																																																																																															
14	CLK-	11	B1-	X0.3	X0.11																																																																																															
8	GND	4	Z1+	X0.4	X0.12																																																																																															
15	5V	5	Z1-	X0.5	X0.13																																																																																															
		15	+5V1	X0.6	X0.14																																																																																															
		3	A2+	X0.7	X0.15																																																																																															
		9	A2-	S/S0	S/S1																																																																																															
		6	B2+	OUT																																																																																																
		12	B2-	Y0.0	Y0.4																																																																																															
		13	Z2+	Y0.1	Y0.5																																																																																															
		14	Z2-	Y0.2	Y0.6																																																																																															
		7	+5V2	Y0.3	Y0.7																																																																																															
		8	0V	C0	C0																																																																																															

2.3 Power Supply Module Specifications

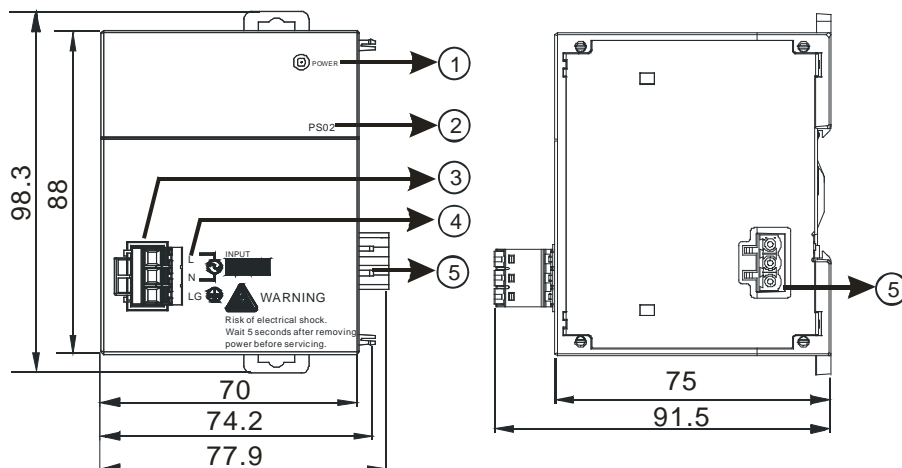
2.3.1 General Specifications

- AS-PS02/AS-PS02A

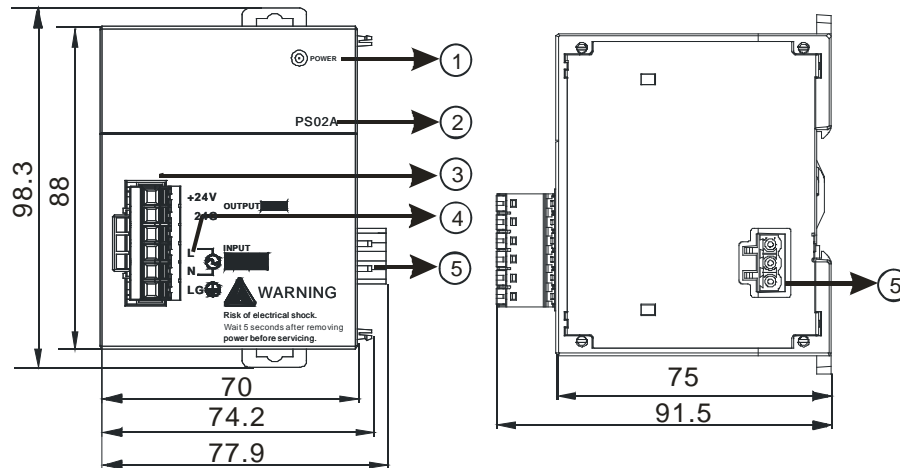
Item	Specifications
Supply voltage	100–240 VAC (-15% to +10%) 50/60 Hz±5%
Action specifications	If the input power supply is larger than 85 VAC, the power supply module can function normally.
Allowable instantaneous power failure time	If the instantaneous power failure time is less than ten milliseconds, the power supply module keeps running.
Fuse	2.5A/250 VAC
Inrush current	< 70A@115 VAC
24 VDC output	AS-PS02: 2 A for internal use: the CPU and the modules. AS-PS02A: 1.5 A for internal use: the CPU and the modules; 0.5 A for external use.
Power protection	The 24 VDC output is equipped with the short circuit protection and the overcurrent protection.
Surge voltage withstand level	1,500 VAC (Primary-secondary), 1,500 VAC (Primary-PE), 500 VAC (Secondary-PE)
Insulation voltage	Above 5 MΩ The voltage between all inputs/outputs and the ground is 500 VDC.
Ground	The diameter of the ground should not be less than the diameters of the cables connected to the terminals L and N.
Weight	AS-PS02 270 g
	AS-PS02A 310 g

2.3.2 Power Supply Module Profiles

- AS-PS02



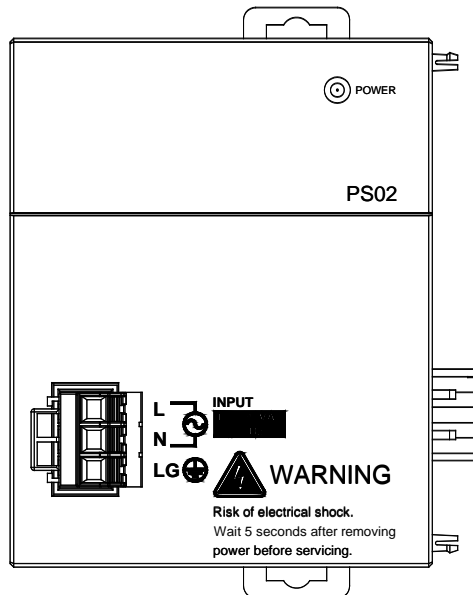
● AS-PS02A



Number	Name	Description
1	POWER LED indicator (green)	Indicates the status of the power supply
2	Model name	Model name of the power supply module
3	Terminal	Terminal for wiring
4	Arrangement of the terminals	+24V: connecting external 24VDC + 24G: connecting external 24G LG: Line ground L/N: AC power input
5	Power output	Connected with AS series

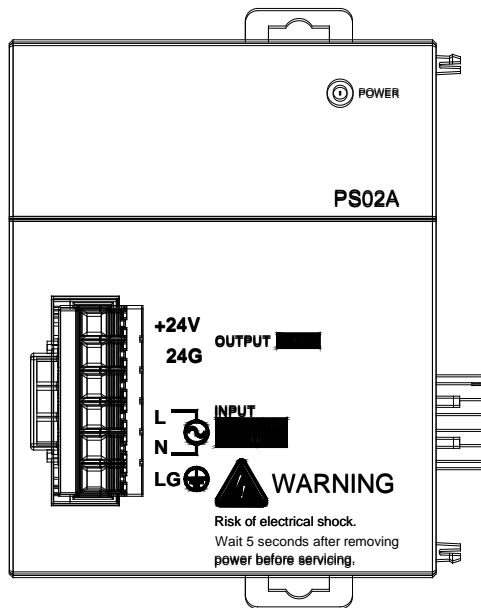
2.3.3 Power Supply Module Terminals

● AS-PS02



- L/N: AC power input
- LG: Line ground

- **AS-PS02A**



- +24V: connecting external 24VDC +
- 24G: connecting external 24G
- L/N: AC power input
- LG: Line ground

2.4 Extension Modules

You can connect the AS Series modules to AX-3 Series CPU. Refer to AS Series Module Manual for more information.

Chapter 3 Installing Hardware and Getting Started

Table of Contents

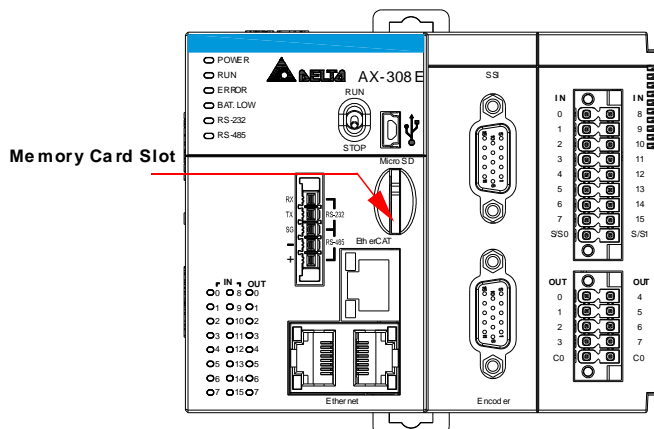
3.1	Installing Hardware.....	3-2
3.1.1	Installing and Removing a Memory Card	3-2
3.1.2	Installing and Replacing a Button Cell Battery.....	3-3
3.1.3	Installing the AX-3 Series PLC in the Control Cabinet.....	3-5
3.2	Installing and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX	3-7
3.2.1	Installing DIADesign-AX.....	3-8
3.2.2	Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX	3-14
3.3	Getting Started and Setting up Communication	3-15
3.3.1	Getting Started.....	3-15
3.3.2	Setting up Communication	3-16

3.1 Installing Hardware

3.1.1 Installing and Removing a Memory Card

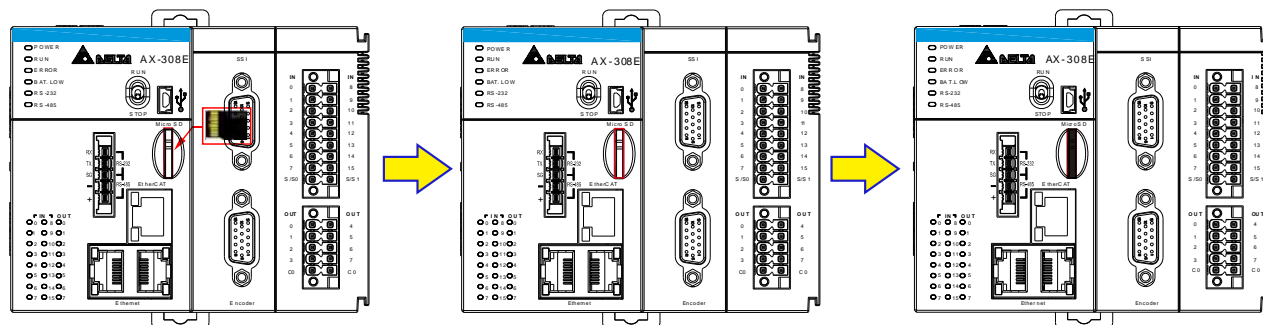
● Memory Card Slot of the CPU Module

The memory card slot is on the front side of the AX Series PLC.



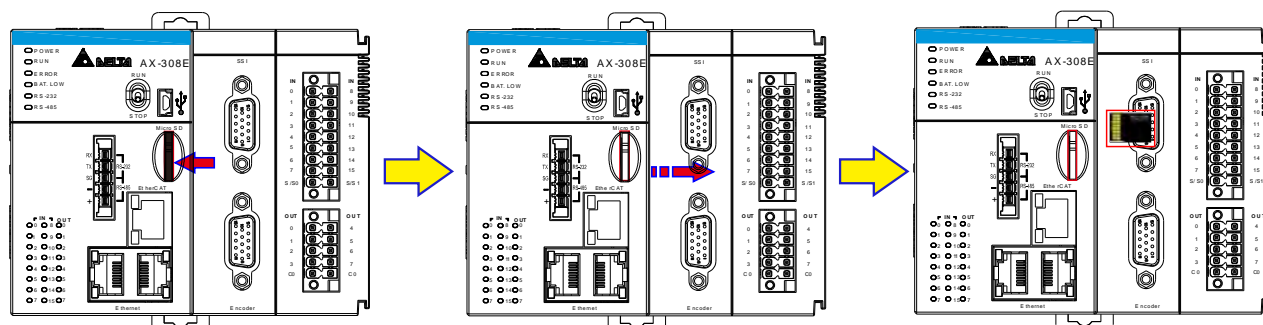
● Installing a Memory Card

Insert a memory card into the CPU module memory card slot and push it to the end of the slot until it clicks. Be sure the memory card is fixed firmly in the slot; if the memory card is loose, it is not installed correctly. With a fool-proofing design, the memory card can only be inserted in one direction. Do not force to push the memory card into the slot or you may damage the CPU module. See the instructions in the figures below for reference.



● Removing a Memory Card

You can remove a memory card by pushing it further into the slot. And then the card springs from the slot.



3.1.2 Installing and Replacing a Button Cell Battery

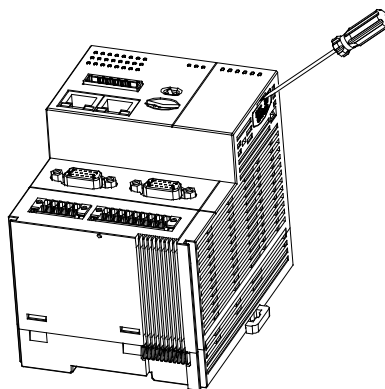
- Installation

⚠ Warning

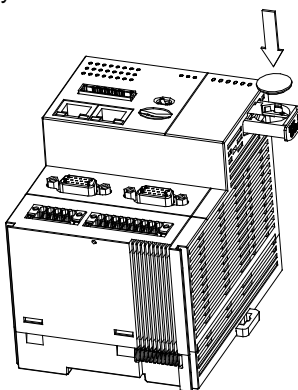
The real-time clock (RTC) cannot work unless the battery power is properly supplied. The AX-3 Series PLC does NOT include the battery when it leaves the factory. You need to purchase and install the CR1620 3V battery beforehand. And before installing the battery, you must get rid of the static electricity in the body by touching the grounded metal or you can wear antistatic gloves to avoid the static electricity.

The first-time battery installation can be done whether the AX-3 Series PLC is powered on or off. After installation, you can set the RTC through DIADesigner-AX. Follow the steps below for installing a battery.

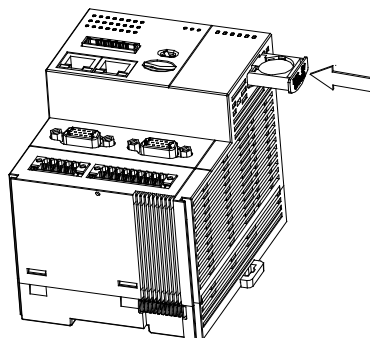
1. Pull out the battery holder from the AX-3 Series PLC with the tip of a screwdriver at the concave part of the battery compartment as shown below.



2. Put the CR1620 3V battery in the battery holder in the direction indicated by the arrow below.



3. After putting the battery in the battery holder, push the battery holder back into the AX-3 Series PLC as shown below.

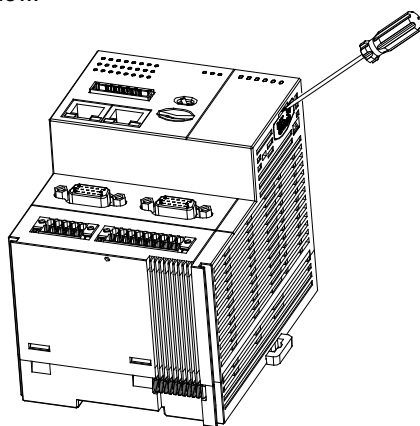


● Replacement**⚠ Warning**

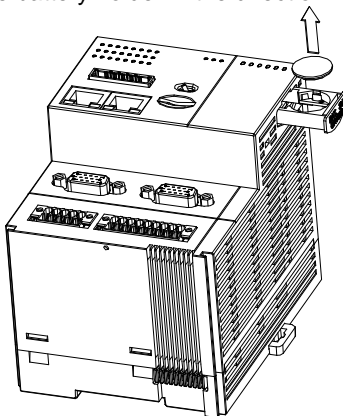
When the BAT LOW indicator of the AX-3 Series PLC is red, it indicates there is no battery installed or the battery voltage is low and you need to install or replace the battery of the AX-3 Series PLC. It is suggested to replace the battery while the AX-3 Series PLC is powered on. If you replace the battery while the PLC is powered off, the real-time clock data will be lost. Before replacing the battery, you must get rid of the static electricity in the body by touching the grounded metal or you can wear antistatic gloves to avoid the static electricity.

Follow the steps below for replacing a battery.

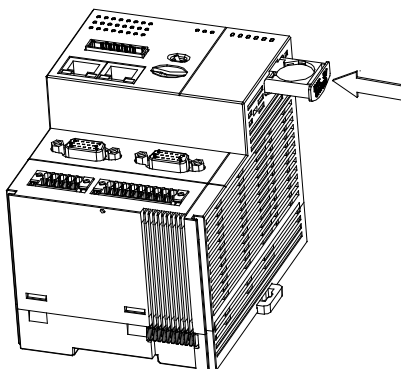
1. Pull out the battery holder from the AX-3 Series PLC with the tip of a screwdriver at the concave part of the battery compartment as shown below.



2. Take the CR1620 3V battery out of the battery holder in the direction indicated by the arrow below.



3. After the battery is removed, put in a new one and push the battery holder back into the AX-3 Series PLC as shown below.



3.1.3 Installing the AX-3 Series PLC in the Control Cabinet

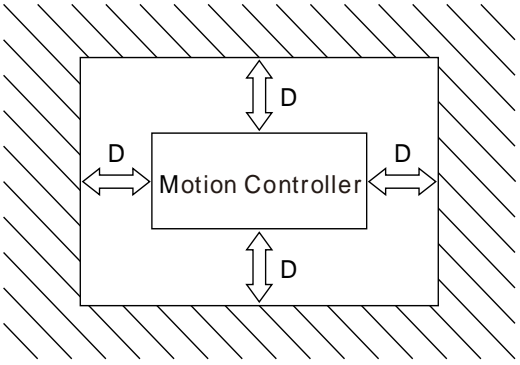
● Environmental Temperature Requirement for the Control Cabinet

⚠ Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none">● The ambient temperature of the control cabinet should be -20 ~ 55°C and the humidity 5 ~ 95%.● DO NOT install the control cabinet near flammable material or high-temperature equipment.● Keep enough space for air ventilation.● Install fans or air conditioning system if the environment temperature exceeds 55°C.● The equipment is for indoor use only.● Install the control cabinet around 1.0m~2.0m in height for easier installation and operation.● Keep the installation away from the high-voltage equipment or power equipment.● Cut off the power supply of the control cabinet before installation.

● Actions for Anti-interference

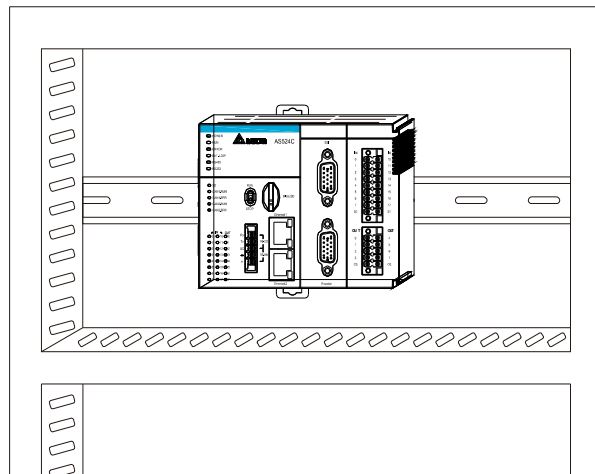
⚠ Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Do not install the AX-3 Series PLC in the control cabinet with high-voltage equipment.● Keep at least 200mm away from the power wire.● The control cabinet should be grounded.● Use the AX-3 Series PLC according to the instructions on the manual. If operating the AX-3 Series PLC in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, it may weaken the protection provided.

● Dimension Requirement for the Control Cabinet

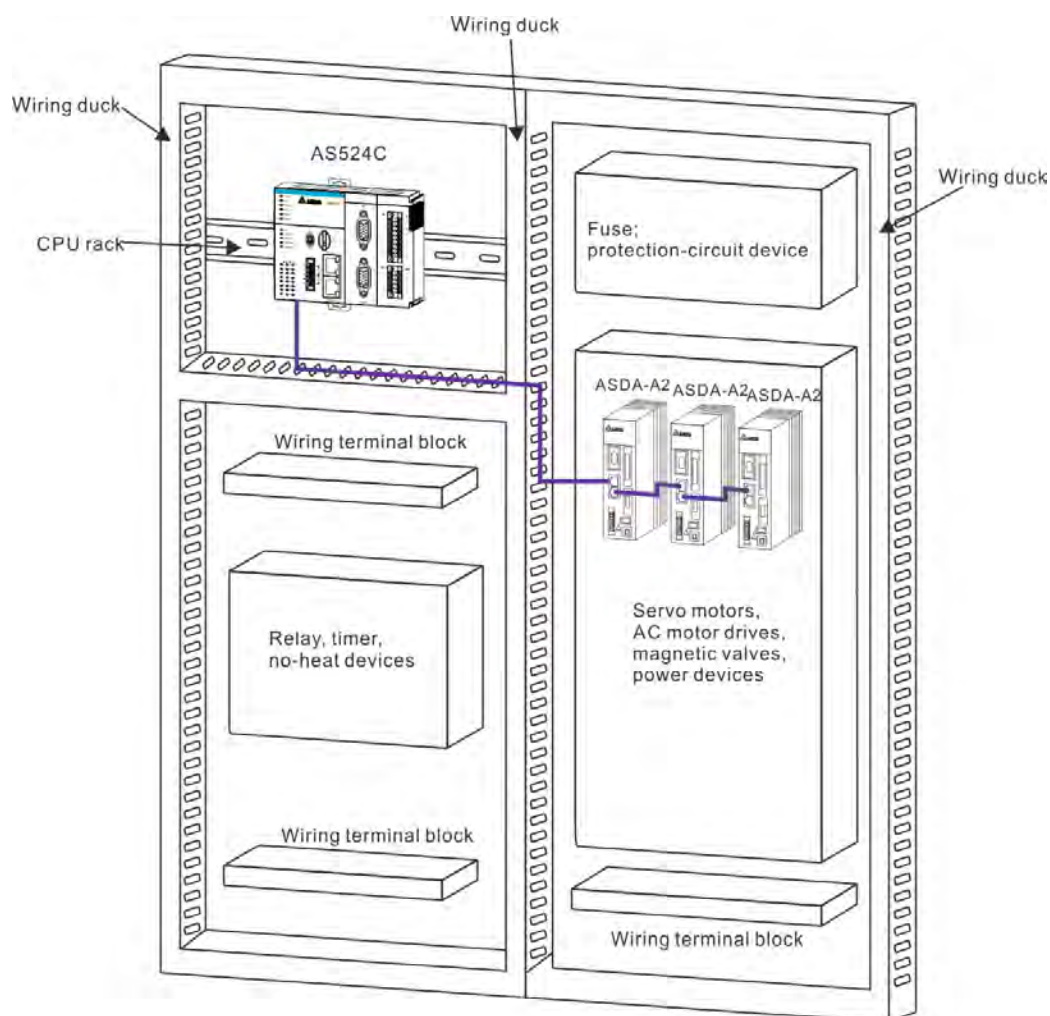
<p>The AX-3 Series PLC has to be installed in an enclosure. In order to ensure that the AX-3 Series PLC radiates heat normally, the space between the AX-3 Series PLC and the enclosure should be larger than 50 millimeters. (D > 50mm)</p>	 <p>The diagram illustrates a rectangular enclosure with diagonal hatching. Inside the enclosure is a smaller rectangle labeled 'Motion Controller'. Four double-headed arrows, each labeled 'D', indicate the clearance between the Motion Controller and the enclosure walls: top, bottom, left, and right.</p>
---	---

- **Installing the AX-3 Series PLC on DIN rail**

Pull out the fixing clips at the rear of the AX-3 Series PLC. Then edge in the horizontal slots which are at the rear of the AX-3 Series PLC on the DIN rail. And then push and lock the fixing clips to have the AX-3 Series PLC securely installed in the control cabinet. (The image below is for illustration purposes only; refer to AS500E Series Motion Controller Operation Manual for more information.)



- **The installation inside the control cabinet** (The image below is for illustration purposes only; refer to AS500E Series Motion Controller Operation Manual for more information.)



3.2 Installing and Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX

- System requirements

Project	System Requirement
Runtime System	DIADesigner-AX V1.00 or later
Operating System	Windows 7 / 8.1 / 10 (32/64 bits)
CPU	Intel Celeron 540 1.8 GHz (min.), Intel Core i5 M520 2.4 GHz (min.)
Memory	2GB or above (recommend to use 4GB or more)
Hard Disk Drive	10GB or more
Monitor	Resolution 1920 x 1080 Pixels recommend
Keyboard/Mouse	General Keyboard Mouse or Windows compatible device
PC interface	Ethernet, USB, Serial port (depends on product interface)
Software	Need to install .Net Framework 4.6.2


3.2.1 Installing DIADesign-AX

Before installation begins, make sure the computer used for installing DIADesigner-AX meets the minimum system requirements listed in section 3.2.

The **DIAInstaller** is a software installer which assists you to download and install **DIASstudio** software applications. You can download, install, and update products such as **DIASelector**, **DIADesigner**, **DIAScreen**, and **COMMGR**. Go to <https://diastudio.deltaww.com/home/downloads> to download the **DIASstudio** for **DIAInstaller**.

Before entering the download page, you need to sign in or sign up.

3



Sign in with your existing account

Email Address

Password [Forgot your password?](#)

Sign in

Don't have an account? [Sign up now](#)

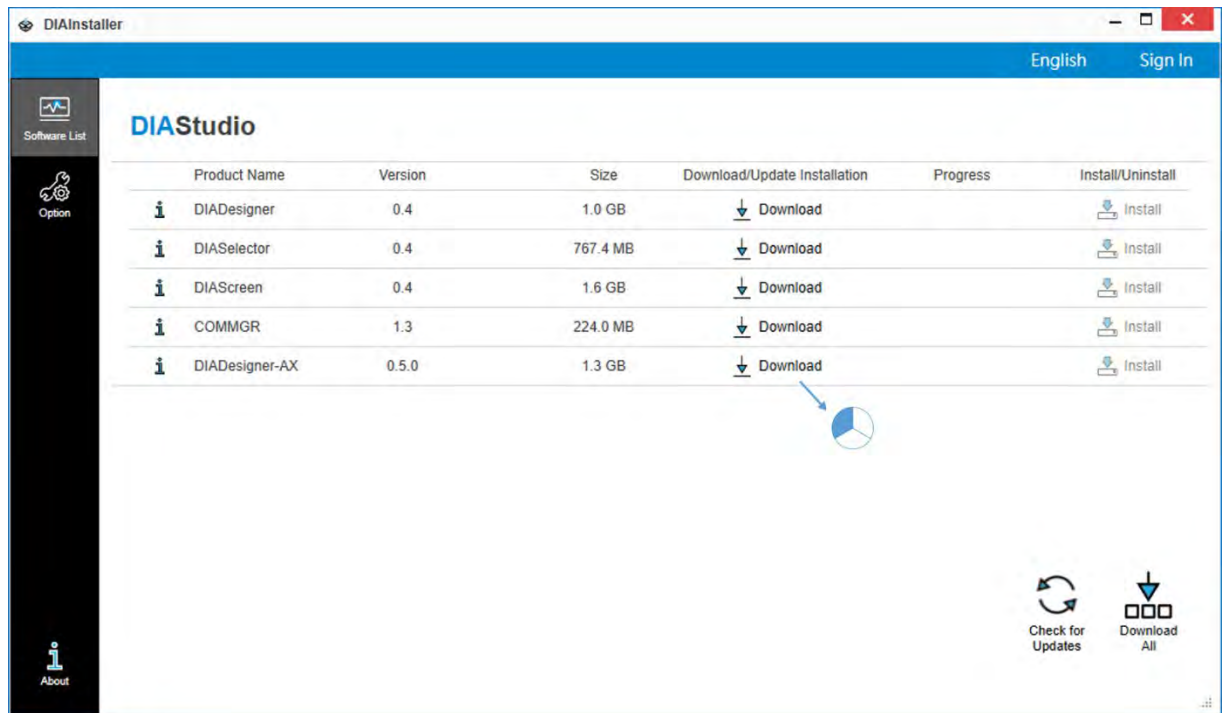
After logging-in, click DIASstudio download button to download **DIAInstaller** as the image shown below.

Software

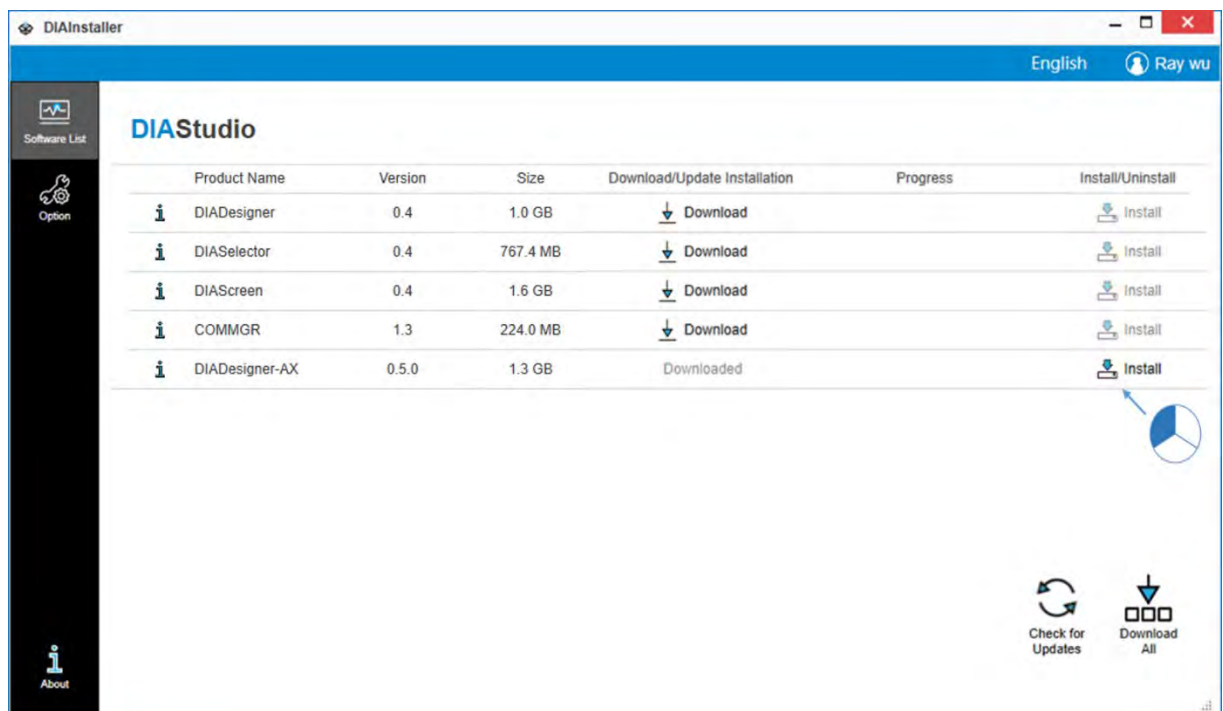
Software Name	Description	OS	Issue Date	File
DIASelector App V0.4 (Early Access!)	DIASelector Mobile App	Android Lollipop (5.0) and above	2020/05/06	 
DIASstudio V0.4 (Early Access!)	DIASstudio Software download and Installation Tool	Windows 7 / 8.1 / 10 / Server 2012 R2 32/64 bit	2020/05/06	

Follow the steps below for installing DIADesigner-AX.

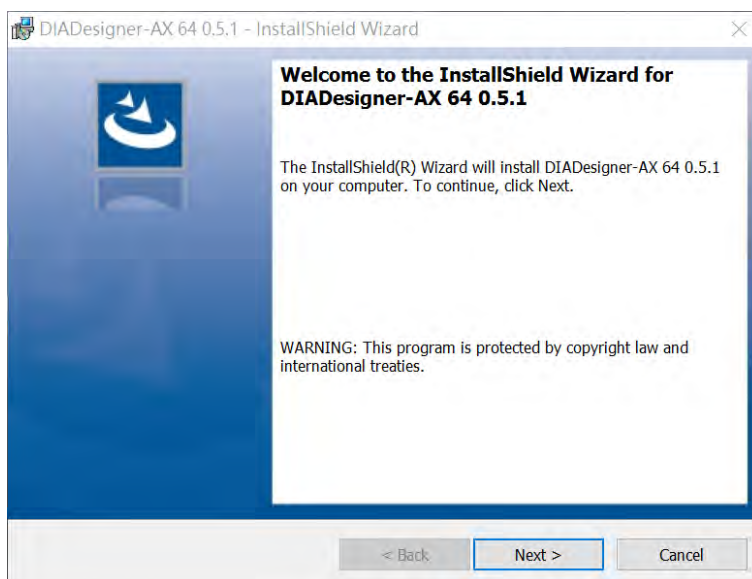
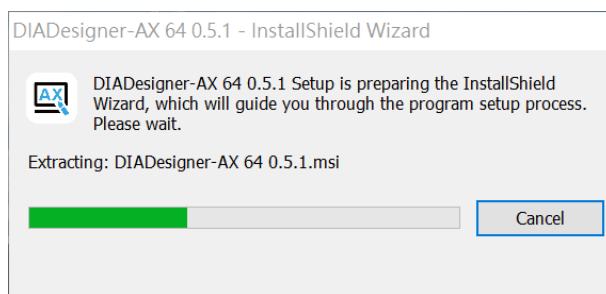
1. Double-click DIAInstaller icon to see the latest version of DIADesigner-AX.
2. Click **Download**.



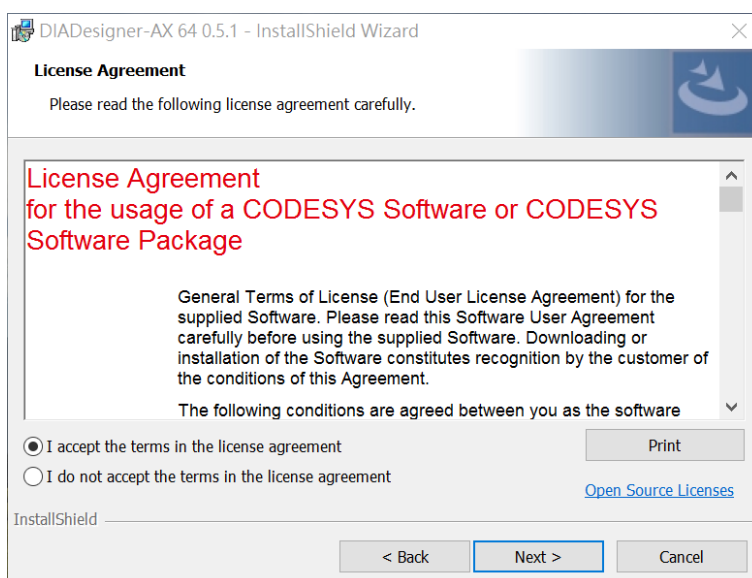
3. After that, you can see DIADesigner-AX is downloaded and grayed out. Click **Install**.



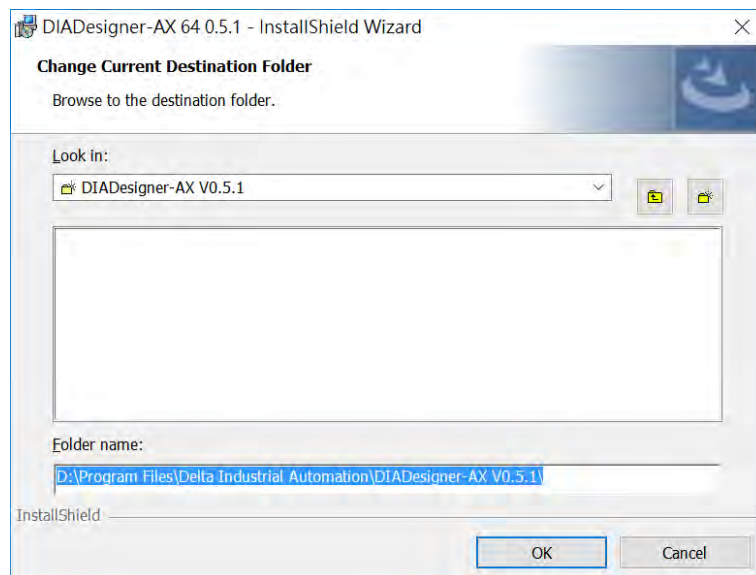
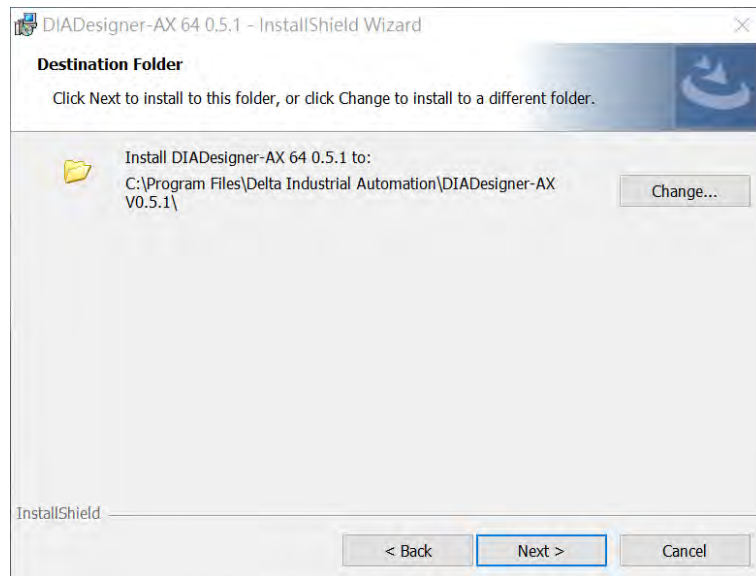
4. An **InstallShield Wizard** shows up and starts installing. Click **Next**.



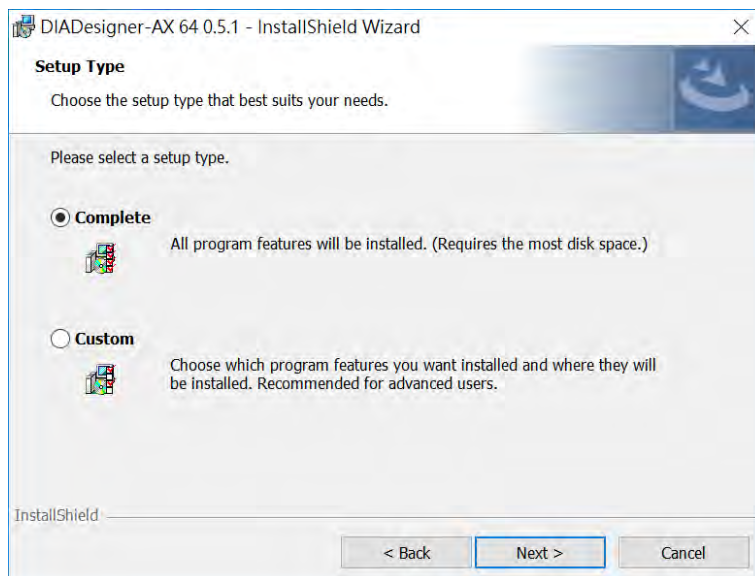
5. The window of License Agreement shows up. Select "I accept the terms in the license agreement" and then click **Next**.



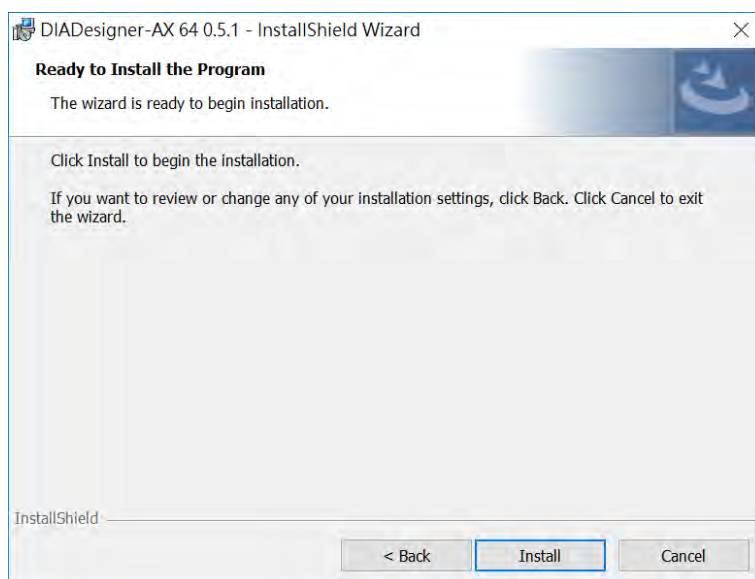
6. Click **Change...** to change the download path. Or leave the default path unchanged. Click **Next**.



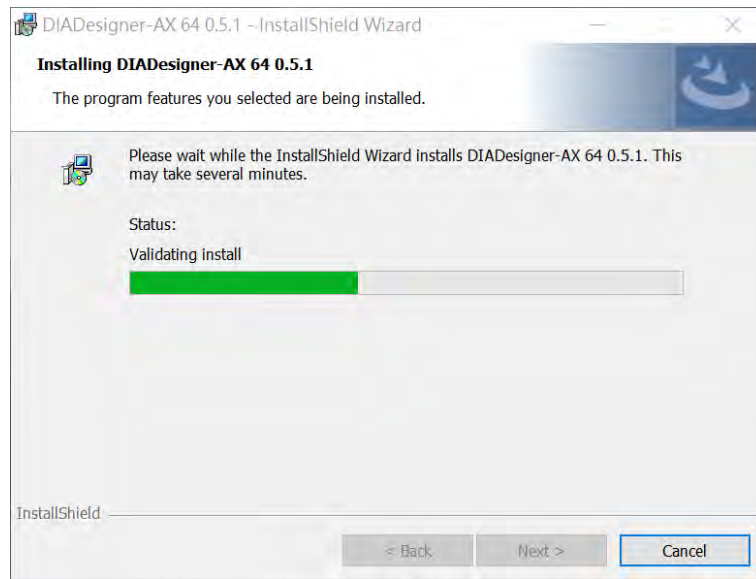
7. The window of Setup Type shows up as the image shown below. Select the one you need and then click **Next**.



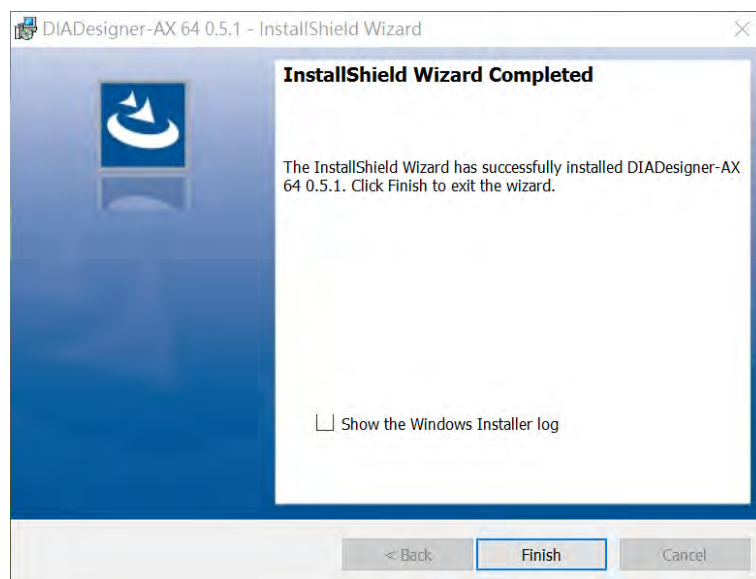
8. The window of Ready to Install the Program appears as below and then click **Install**.



It may take some time to install.



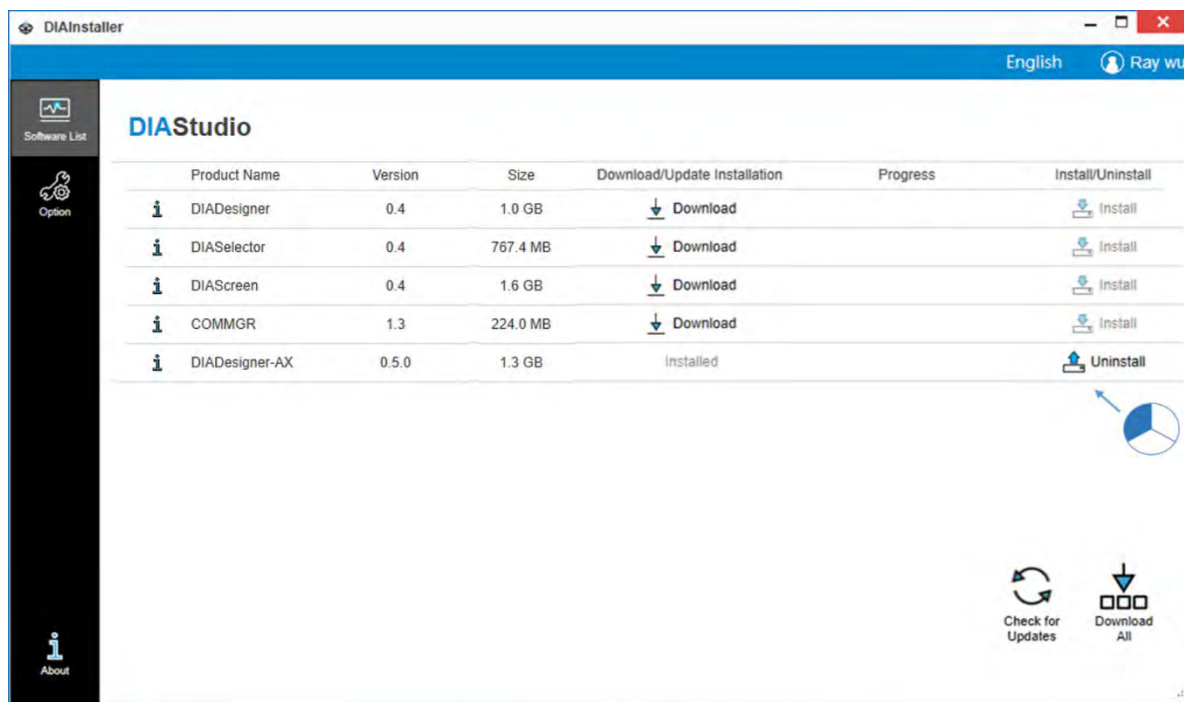
9. After installation, the window of InstallShield Wizard Completed appears. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.



3.2.2 Uninstalling DIADesigner-AX

Follow the steps below for uninstalling DIADesigner-AX.


1. Double-click DIAInstaller icon to open and then click **Uninstall**.

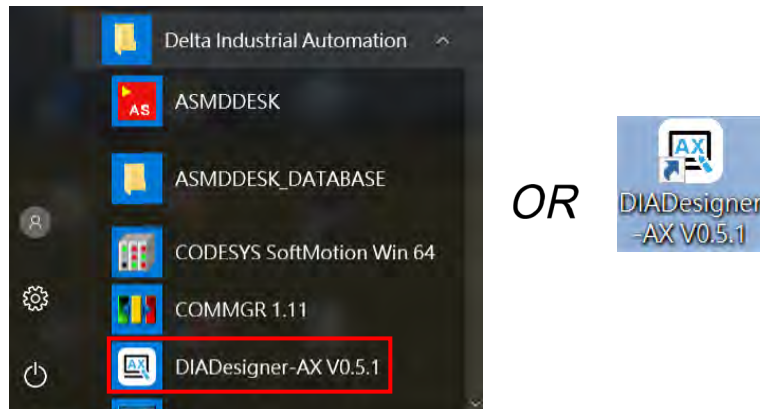


2. The system will remove DIADesigner-AX from your computer in the background.

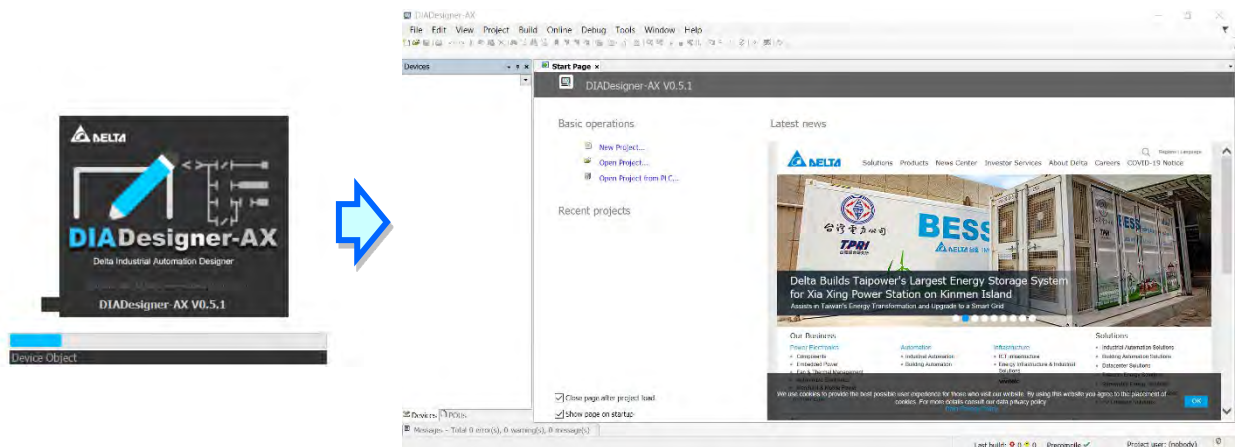
3.3 Getting Started and Setting up Communication

3.3.1 Getting Started

After DIADesigner-AX is successfully installed, click **Start** , you can find it under the folder of Delta Industrial Automation and you can also find its short cut on the desktop. Double-click either one to start the software. You can open more than one DIADesigner-AX software to achieve multitasking.




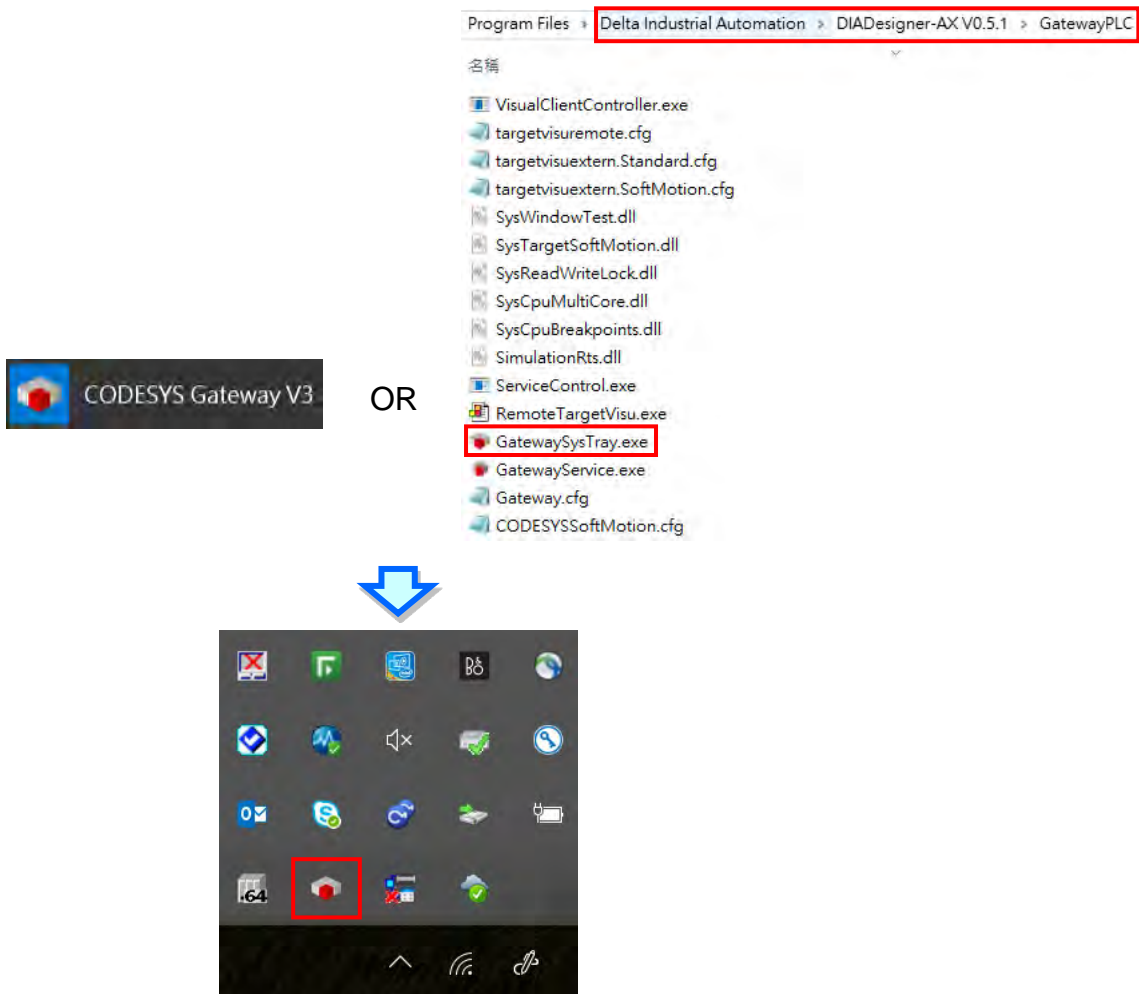
After the loading is done, you can see the start page as below. Refer to Chapter 4 for more details on operation.



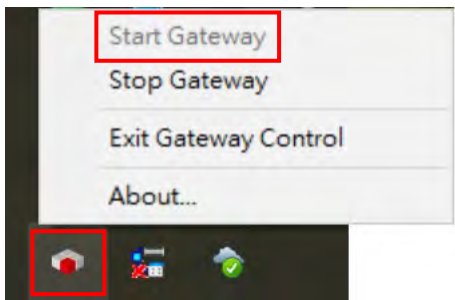
3.3.2 Setting up Communication

After DIADesigner-AX is successfully installed, the system creates the execution file **CODESYS Gateway V3** under the folder of Delta Industrial Automation and **GatewaySysTray.exe** in the Program Files folder. Double-click either one to start the Gateway. After that, the system starts Gateway automatically whenever you turn your computer on. And its

icon  will appear on the taskbar. If not, go to the execution file **CODESYS Gateway V3** under the folder of Delta Industrial Automation or **GatewaySysTray.exe** in the Program Files folder to start the Gateway manually.




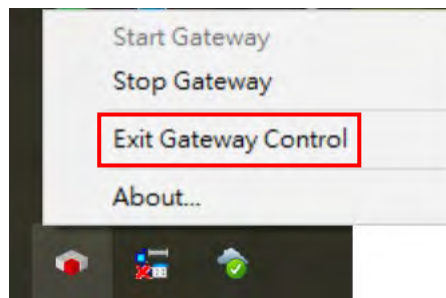
You can click the Gateway icon  on the taskbar to see the Gateway status.



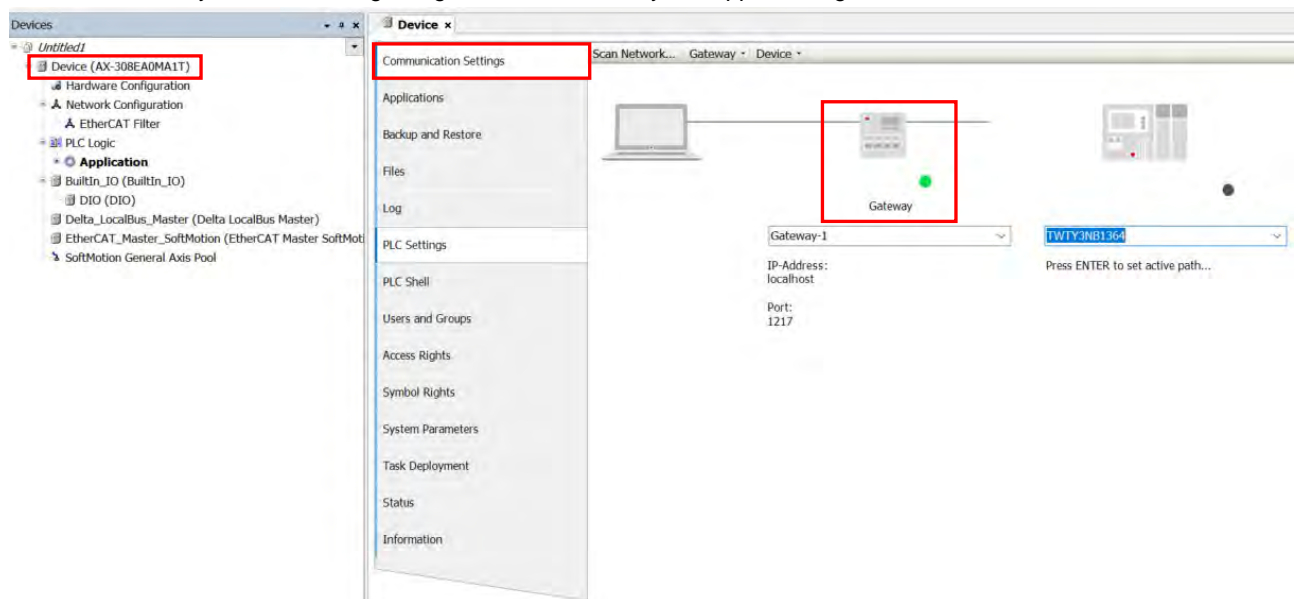
Click **Stop Gateway** if you need to stop gateway working.



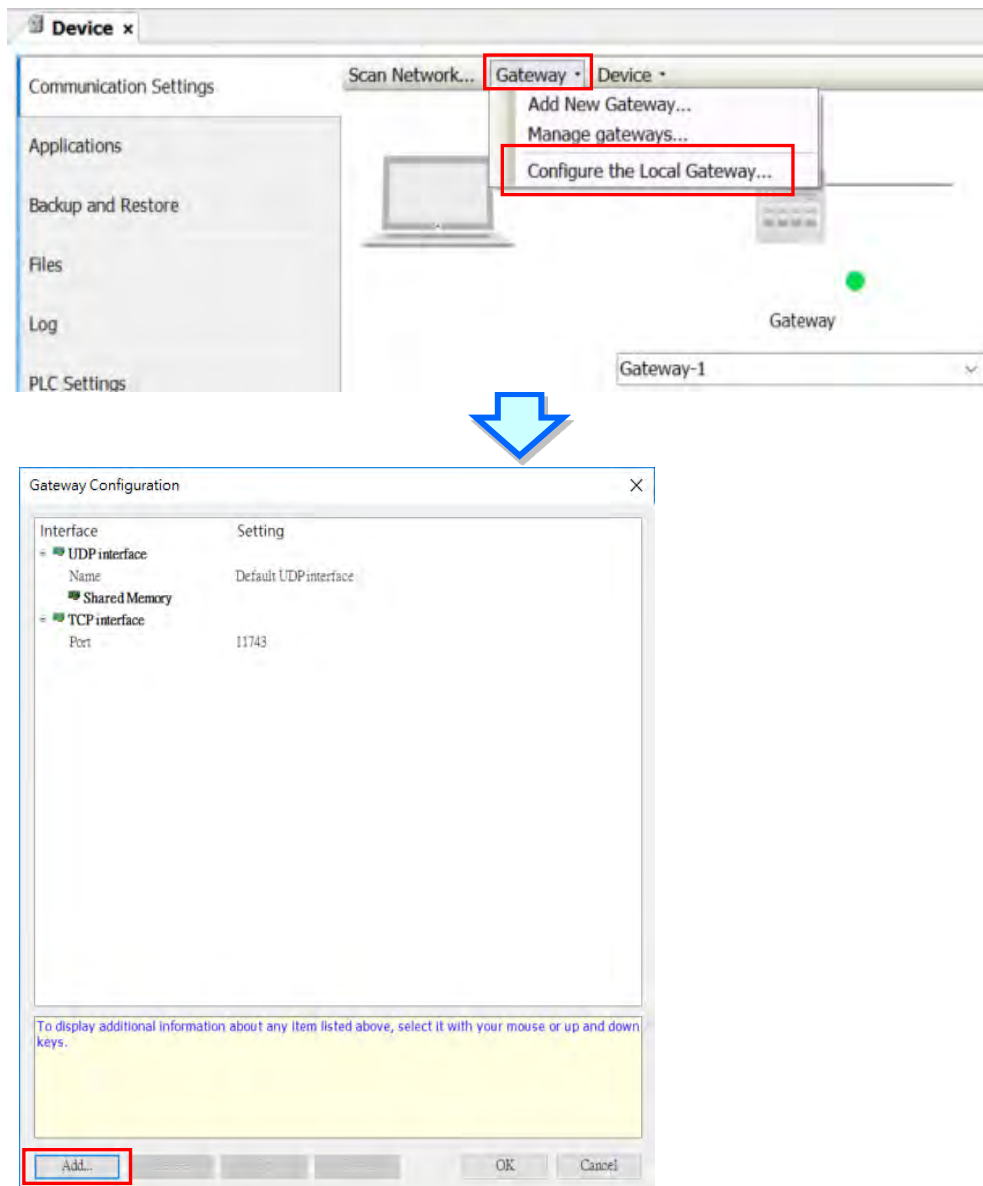
If you need to discontinue the execution of GatewaySysTray completely, you can click **Exit Gateway Control** and the icon  will disappear on the taskbar.



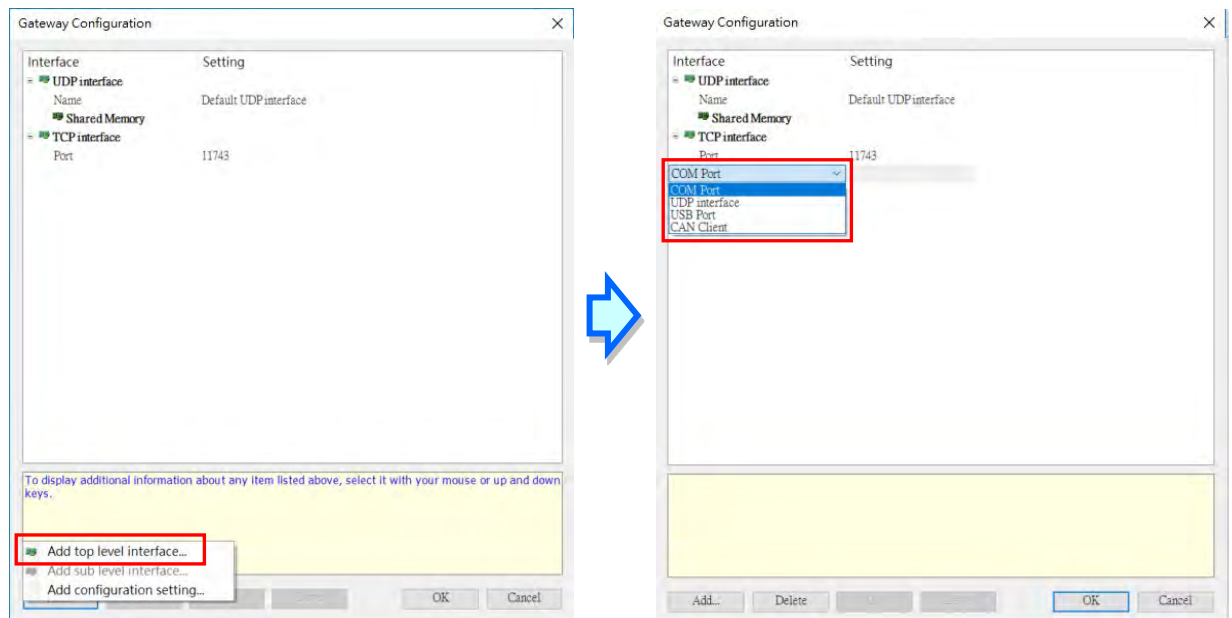
Open the software DIADesigner-AX and open/create your project to see the project-setting page. Double-click Device (Product Name) to open the device-setting page. You can find the Gateway status under the Communication Settings tab. If the Gateway is started, its light is green. If the Gateway is stopped, its light is red.



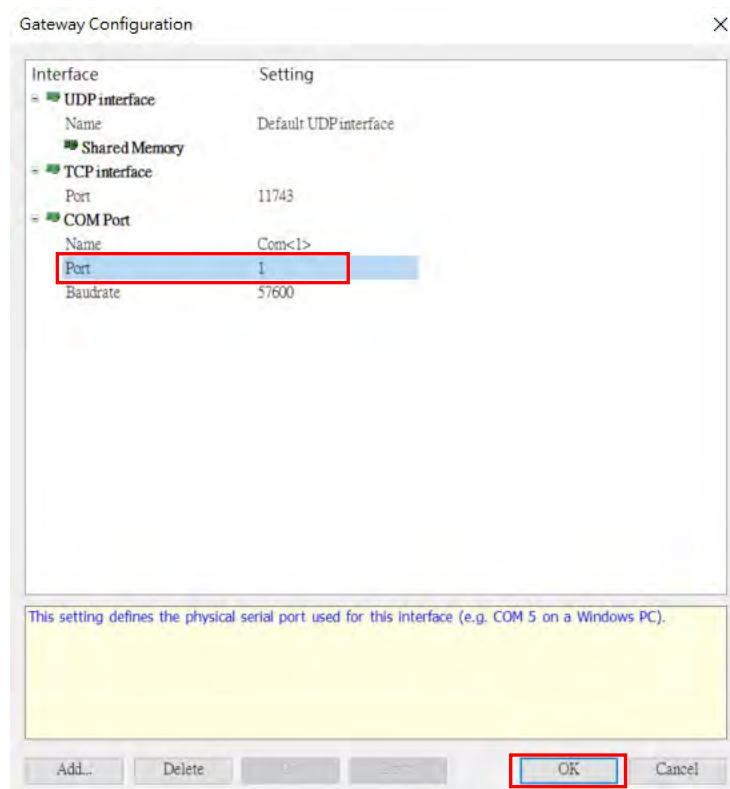
You can configure the Local Gateway. Click **Gateway** and click the option **Configure the Local Gateway** to open the setting page.




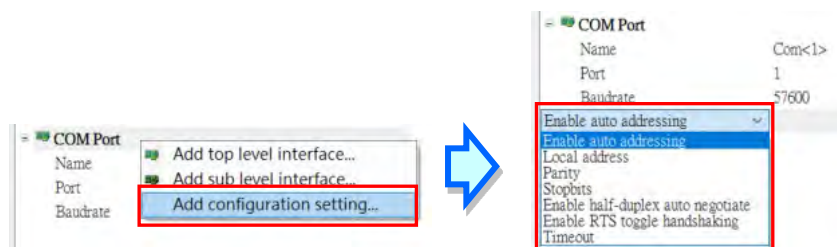
You can find two interfaces under Local Gateway, including UDP interface and TCP interface. You can also create a different port. Click **Add** and select **Add top level interface** and then use the drop-down list to select the port you needed to add. Here we use adding COM Port as an example.



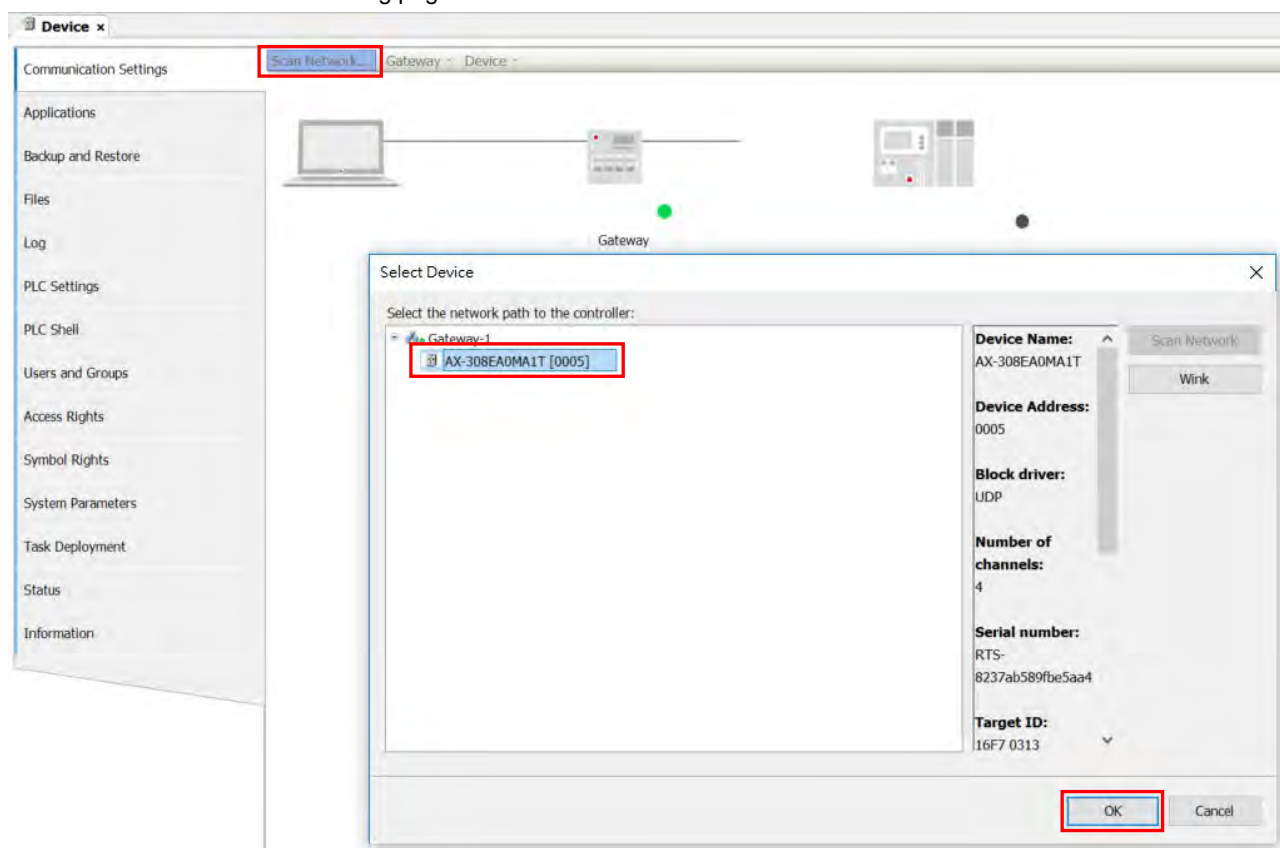
After adding COM Port, you can set up the COM port name, its corresponding port and the baudrate. Once the setting is done, click **OK**. You need to Stop/Start GatewaySysTray again to ensure the following action, such as Scan Network to work properly. Refer to the previous steps to run GatewaySysTray again.



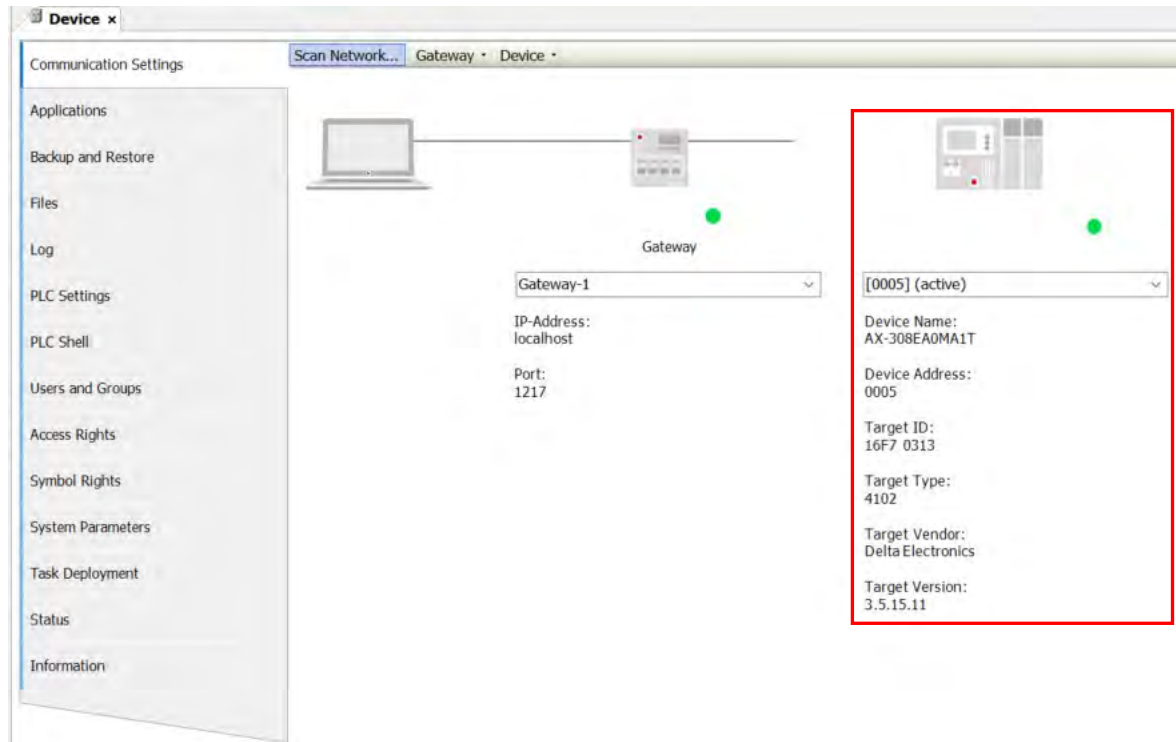
You can add configuration settings under COM Port. Right-click the COM Port icon , select **Add configuration setting.....** to add the setting items. After that you can further define the setting values. Once the setting is done, click **OK**.



After the configurations of Local Gateway are set, you can select the **Scan Network** tab to bring out network scanned results on the **Select Device** setting page. Select **AX-308EA0MA1T** and then click **OK**.



If the connection is established successfully, you can find that the status light is green and the detailed device information under the device image.



MEMO

Chapter 4 Basic Operation

Table of Contents



4.1 Introduction on DIADesigner-AX	4-2
4.1.1 Creating a New Project	4-2
4.2 Setting Items on the Device Page	4-4
4.2.1 CPU Parameter Settings.....	4-4
4.3 Data Type and Variables	4-29
4.3.1 Data Type	4-29
4.3.2 Variables	4-30
4.4 Task.....	4-39
4.4.1 Task Configuration	4-39

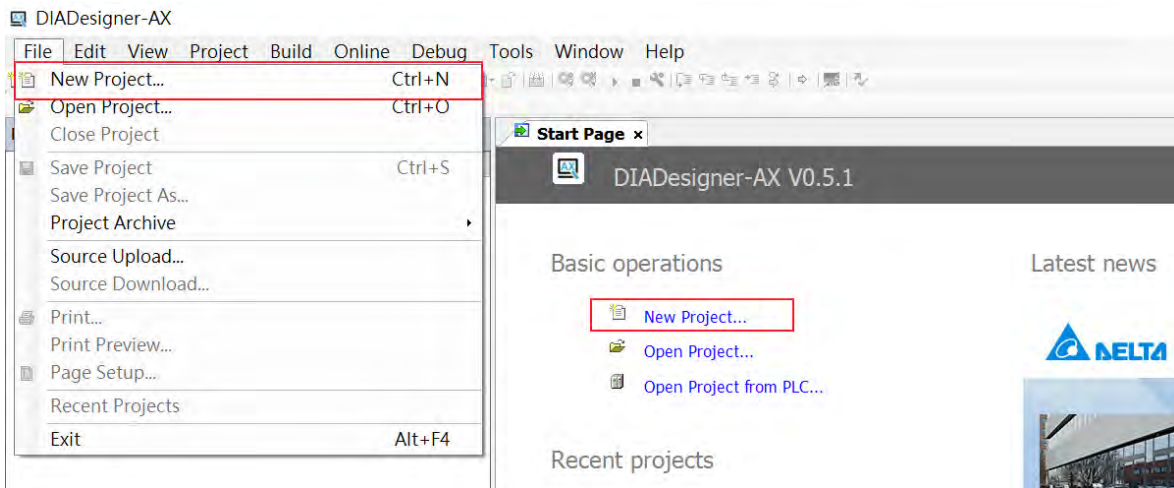
4.1 Introduction on DIADesigner-AX

DIADesigner-AX is an open platform for PLC development system and industrial automation. The adaptable DIADesigner-AX provides an easy way to create professional engineering of IEC 61131-3 automation projects. Based on the IEC 61131-3 data structure and the high-level language programming, DIADesigner-AX is strong in functionality, easy to develop, reliable, extendable and open for development. Integrated with components such as visualization and Safety solution, DIADesigner-AX offers a variety of user-friendly engineering functions for your professional applications in controller development system sectors including PLC and motion control.

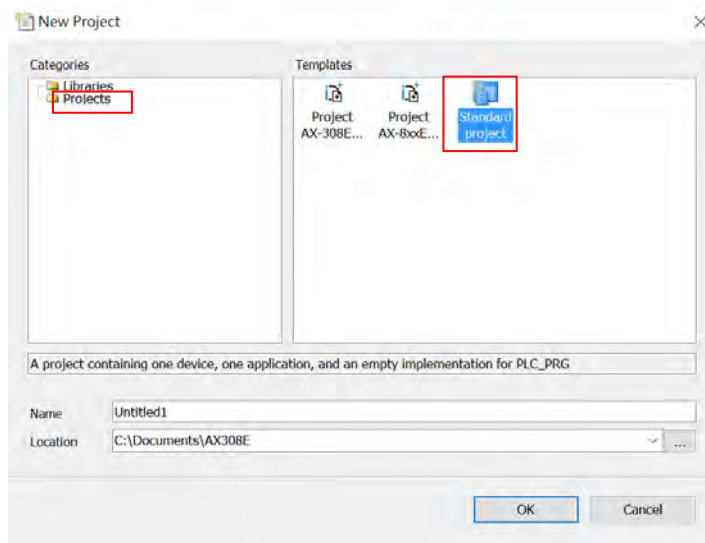
In DIADesigner-AX, you can customize the user interface by arranging the window layout and the appearance of menus, toolbars and commands according to your requirements.

4.1.1 Creating a New Project

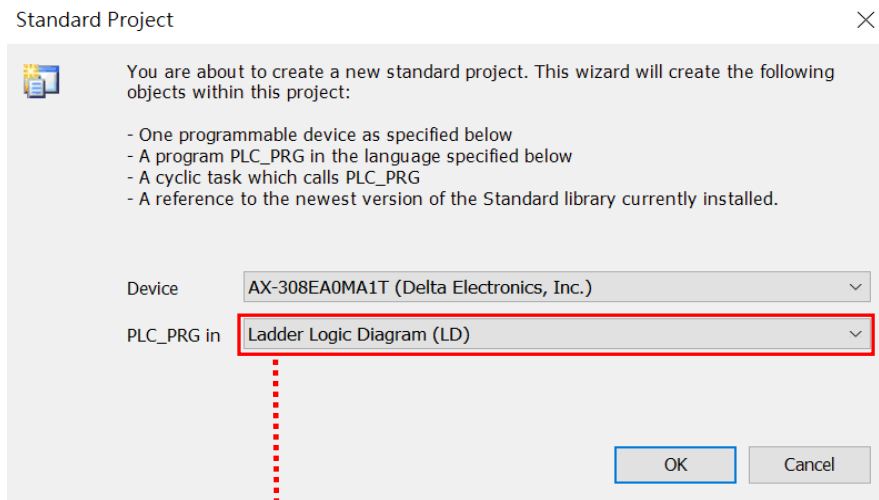
Double-click the DIADesigner-AX icon  to open DIADesigner-AX. Click **New Project**  on the Start Page or select **File > New Project (Ctrl+N)** to create a new project.



Next you will see a window with two sections, Categories and Templates. Click **Projects** in the Categories section and click **Standard project** in the Templates section. After that create a Name and specify a location for the project and then click **OK**.

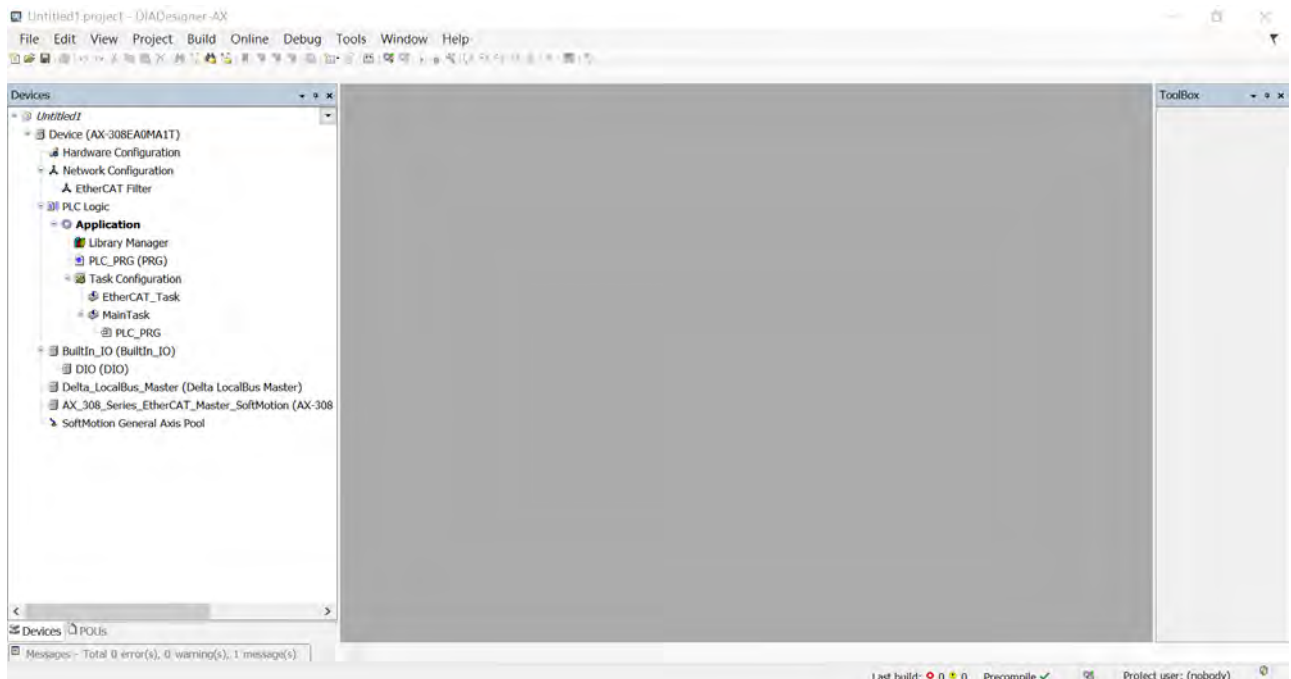


And a Standard Project dialog appears. You can select the device and the programming language from the drop-down list. Click **OK**, the system generates a cyclic task with a default PLC_PRG.



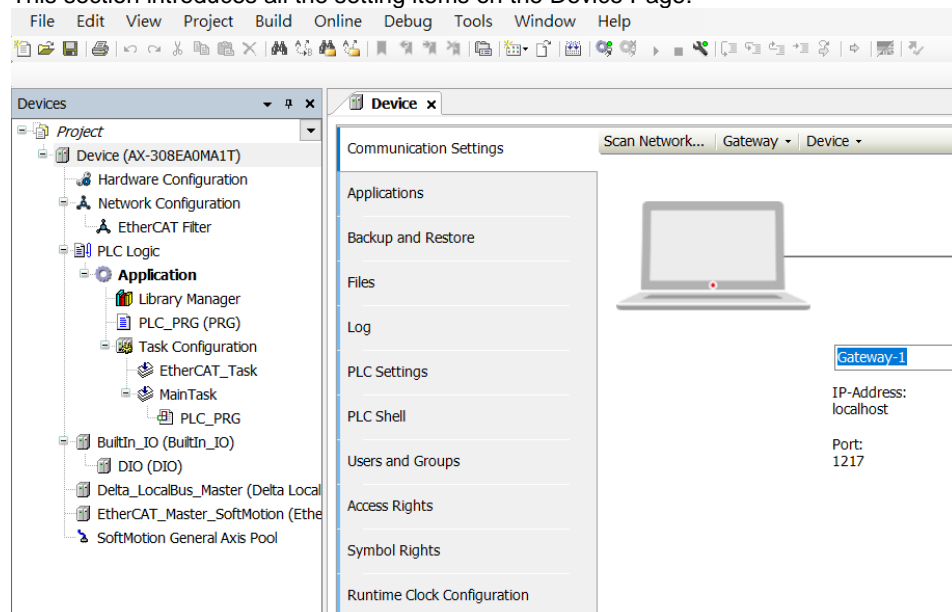
4

After a new project is successfully created, you can see a project management area in the left side of the window. All the options are listed in nodes. Click View -> Devices (Alt+0) on the tool bar, if nothing appears in the project management area.



4.2 Setting Items on the Device Page

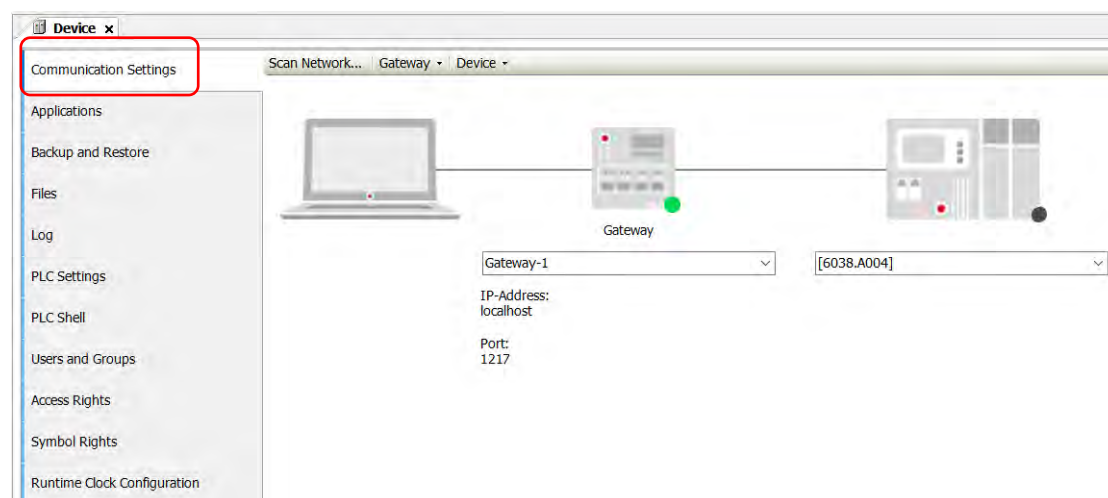
This section introduces all the setting items on the Device Page.



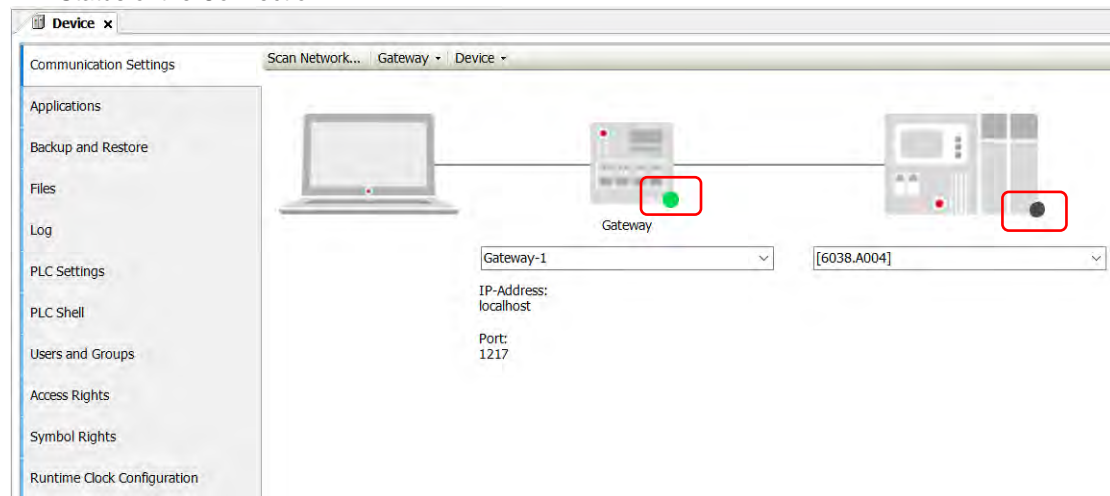
4.2.1 CPU Parameter Settings

4.2.1.1 Communication Settings

On the Communication Settings page, you can define the communication method for DIADesigner-AX and controller. Use the drop-down list of the Gateway tab to add new gateways or manage existing gateways or configure local gateways. You can simply specify an IP address or DNS address for the gateway while adding new gateways. This is useful if you want to connect to a remote gateway running on another PC or device. If you use DNS the address must begin with “dns”. For the setting of PLC, you can enter its IP address (e.g. 192.168.1.5) or its device name (e.g. AX-308EA0MA1T) in the field under the controller image. After that DIADesigner-AX scans to search for the PLC in the network of the gateway.



● Status of the Connection



The dots under the images of gateway and controller indicate the connection status.

Red: Not be able to establish a connection

Green: A connection is established.

Black: Unknown connection status

Tab	Description
Scan Network	Click Scan Network to open the Select Device page. This page lists all configured gateways with the associated devices. You can select one target device from this list.
Gateway	<p>This menu includes the following setting items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Add New Gateway: You can add and define a new gateway channel here. ● Manage Gateways: This page is with an overview of all gateways. You can add or delete entries here or change their order. ● Configure the Local Gateway: Select this setting item to open the Gateway Configuration page. You can configure the block drivers for the local gateway.
Device	<p>This menu includes the following setting items:</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Add Current Device to Favorites: Adds the currently set device to the list of favorite devices. ● Manage Favorite Devices: Click this option to open a list of all preferred devices. You can add or delete entries or change their order. The top device is the default. ● <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Filter Network Scans by Target ID: The display is limited on the devices that have the same target ID as the current device configured in the project. ● <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Confirm Online Mode: DIADesigner-AX requires you to confirm the followings when calling the following online commands (for safety purposes): Force values, Write values, Multiple loading, Remove force list, Single cycle, Start, and Stop. ● Store Communication Settings in Project: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : DIADesigner-AX saves the communication settings in the project for reuse on the same computer. Note: If you use the project on another computer, you need to reset the active path.

Tab	Description	
	<div><div><div></div></div><div>DIADesigner-AX saves the communication settings in the options of the local installation for reuse on the same computer.</div><div>Note: When using DIADesigner-AX SVN, the option should be cleared in order to prevent blocking the device object.</div></div>	
	Rename Active Device: Click this setting item to open the Change Device Name page.	
	Wink Current Device: Devices that support this function illuminate a flashing signal.	
	Send Echo Service: DIADesigner-AX sends five echo services to the PLC. These are used to test the network connection, similar to the ping function. The services are sent first without data packets and then with data packets. The scope of the data packets depends on the communication buffer of the PLC. A message box opens with information about the average echo service delay and the scope of the sent data packets.	
	Encrypted Communication: <div><div><div></div></div><div>The communication to this controller is encrypted. A certificate of the controller is required in order to log in to the controller. If the certificate is not available, then an error message shows up prompting whether or not the certificate should be displayed and installed.</div><div>If the Enforce Encrypted Communication option is selected as Security level in the <i>Security Screen</i> view, then the Encrypted Communication is disabled here.</div></div>	
	Change Communication Policy: Click this setting item to open the Change Communication Policy page for changing the device setting for the encryption of communication.	
	If a new communication policy is selected in this dialog, then the configuration on the controller is changed.	
	Communication	
	Current policy	The currently selected policy for the encryption of communication
	New policy	<div>Drop-down list for the new policy for encryption</div> <div><div><div></div></div><div><div><div>No encryption:</div>The controller does not support encrypted communication.</div><div><div>Optional encryption:</div>The controller supports encrypted and unencrypted communication.</div><div><div>Enforced encryption:</div>The controller supports encrypted communication only.</div></div></div>
Device User Management		
Current policy	The currently selected policy for user management	
New policy	<div>Drop-down list for the new policy for user management</div> <div><div><div></div></div><div><div><div>Optional user management:</div>It is the responsibility of the user to enable user management on the device or leave the device unprotected.</div><div><div>Enforced user management:</div>The user management on the device is enabled and cannot be disabled by the user.</div></div></div>	

4.2.1.2 Applications

Here you can check and manage the applications on the PLC.

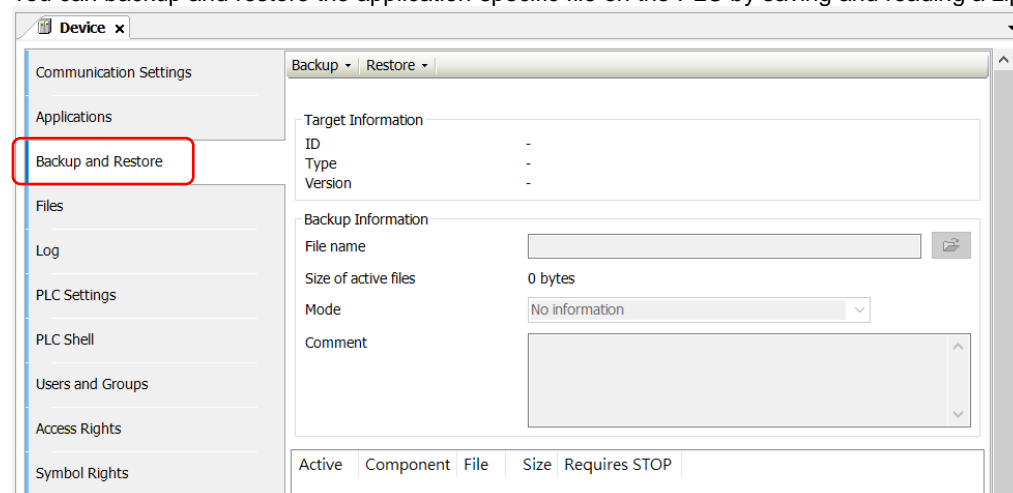


4

Button	Description
Remove / Remove All	Remove: Deletes the application selected in the list. Remove All: Deletes all listed applications on the PLC.
Details...	Click Details button to see information defined for the application on the Information tab of the dialog box Properties.
Content...	Requirement: Go to <i>Application > Proprieties > Application Generation Options</i> to activate the Download the application info option. This causes information about the contents of the application to be additionally loaded to the PLC. Click Content button to see additional information about the differences between the latest generated code and the application code that exists on the controller. The different modules are displayed in a comparison view.
Refresh List	Click Refresh List button to have the controller scanned for applications and the list is refreshed accordingly.

4.2.1.3 Backup and Restore

You can backup and restore the application-specific file on the PLC by saving and reading a zip archive.



4

Tab	Description
Backup	<p>Click Backup tab to see the followings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read Backup Information from Device: Use this function to search for application-specific files from the <code>\$PlcLogic\$</code> directory of the PLC and lists them on the Backup tab page. ● Create Backup File and Save to Disk: Use this function to compress the files in into a backup zip file. The file extension is <code>tbf</code> (=“Target Backup File”). ● Save Backup File to Device: Use this function to save the backup file to the TBF directory of the PLC.
Restore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Load Backup File from Disk: After clicking this button, the system generates a list of all backup files found on the disk. Select one of these files to view its contents. ● Load Backup File from Device: After clicking this button, the system generates a list of all backup files found on the PLC. Select one of these files to view its contents. ● Restore on Device: This function is available if at least one component of the backup file that is currently loaded in the tabbed page is set to active. It prompts for restoring the application status on the device.

- **Target Information**

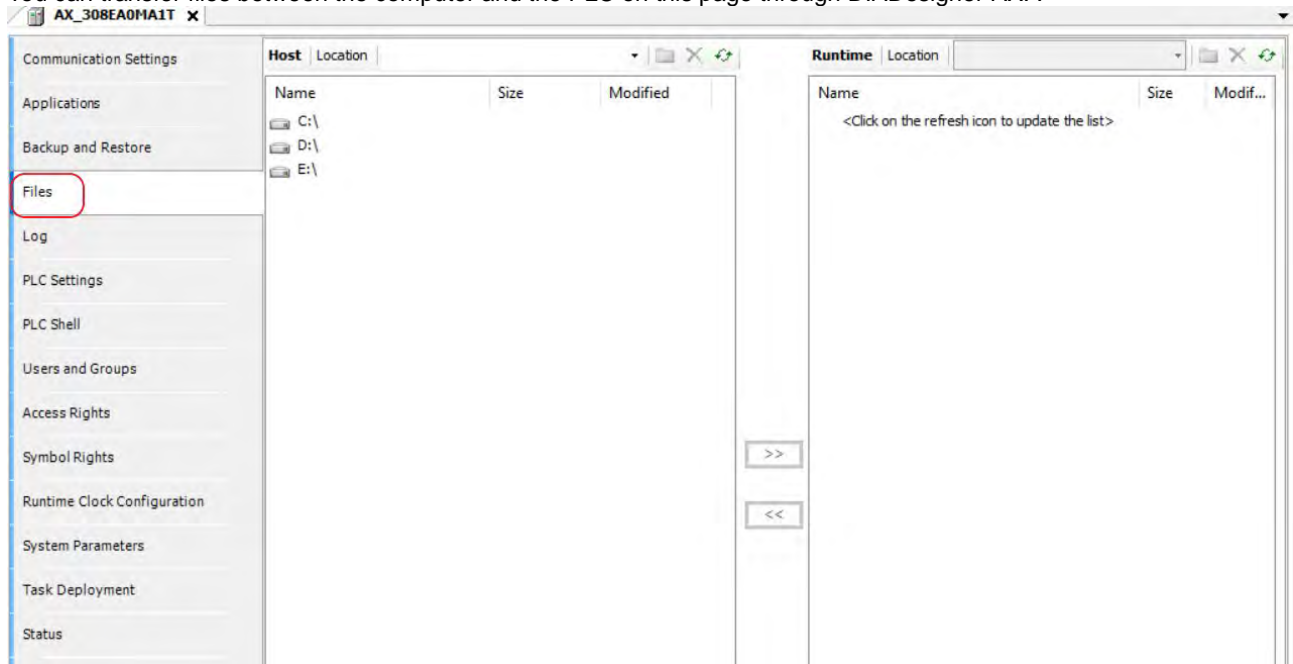
ID	ID of the PLC
Type	Device type
Version	Device version






- **Backup Information**

File name	Storage path of the backup file.
Size of active files	Total size of the files set as active in the table
Mode	Defines the scope of the backup: Application. The application-related files are added to the archive.
Comment	Optional entry for comments to be saved in the meta.info file of the backup and reading when the files are restored.

4.2.1.4 Files

You can transfer files between the computer and the PLC on this page through DIADesigner-AX. .

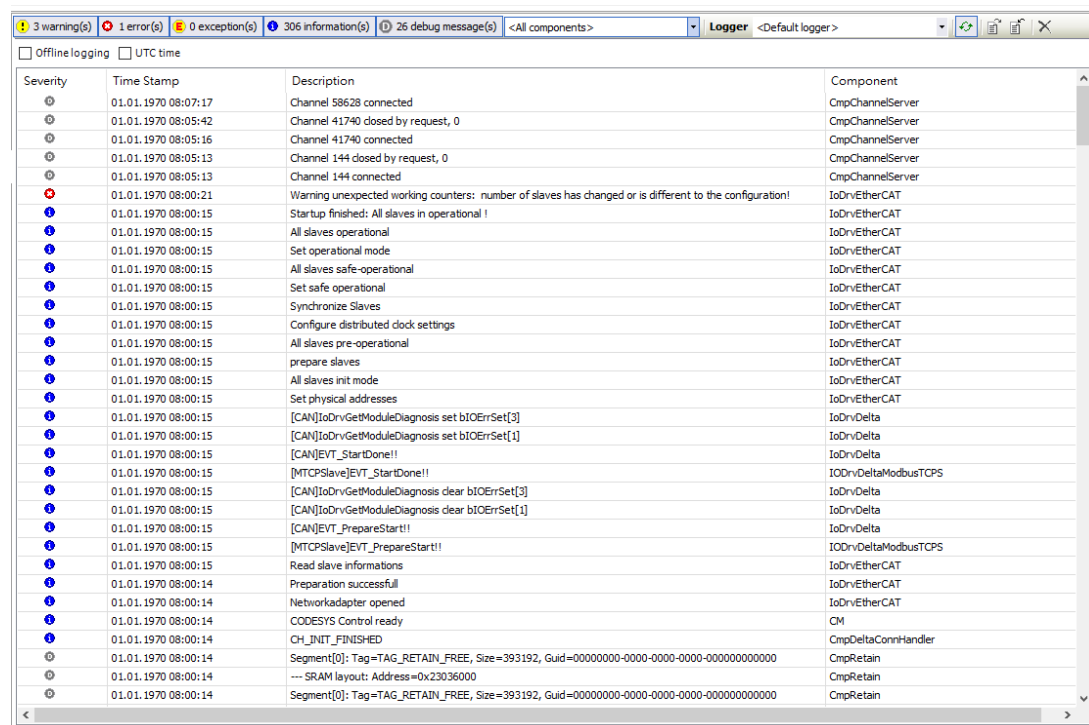


Item	Description
Location	Path in the file system of the computer. Subdirectories and files are shown in the lower part of the view with name, size, and change date.
	Click this button to create a new file folder
	Deletes the selected files or folders
	Updates the list of files and folders for the set path (location)
	Write File to the PLC
	Write File from the PLC

4.2.1.5 Log

You can view the PLC log here. It lists the events that were recorded on the target system, including

- Events during the startup and shutdown of the system (components loaded, with version)
- Application download and loading of the boot application
- Custom entries
- Log entries from I/O drivers
- Log entries from data sources



Item	Description
Offline logging	<input type="checkbox"/> : Default settings <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : The PLC also records actions that are not related to the connection with the controller. However, this is currently available only for the safety version of CODESYS.
UTC time	<input type="checkbox"/> : Standard setting; the time stamp is converted to the local time on the computer as indicated by the time zone of the operating system. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : The time stamp of the runtime system is displayed.
Severity	<p>Four categories for the severity of the event:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Message : Warning : Error : Debugging <p>You can show or hide each category by clicking corresponding buttons in the bar. Each button shows the number of log entries of the category concerned.</p>
Time stamp	Date and time (example: 08-01-2020 09:48)
Description	Description of the event
Component	Name of the runtime system component concerned, e.g. CmpApp
Drop-down list with component names	The log list displays only events that concern the selected component
Logger	Drop-down list with all available logs. The standard setting is the <Default Logger> specified by the target system; now it is identical to 'StdLogger for DIADesigner-AX runtime system.
	Refreshes the log list
	Exports the list contents to an xml file.
	Imports a log list from an xml file.
	Deletes the displayed log list. All entries are deleted.

4.2.1.6 PLC Settings

You can make the basic settings for the configuration of the PLC here, for example the handling of inputs and outputs and the bus cycle task.

① Application for I/O handling

Item	Description
Application for I/O handling	Application that is for the I/O handling.

② PLC Settings

Item	Description
Update IO while in stop	<input type="checkbox"/> : DIADesigner-AX does not refresh the values of the input and output channels when the PLC is in the stop state. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : DIADesigner-AX refreshes the values of the input and output channels even if the PLC is in the stop state. If the watchdog detects a malfunction, the outputs are set to the predefined default values.
Behavior of the outputs in stop	Handling of the output channels when the controller enters the stop state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep current values: The current values are retained. • Set all outputs to default: The default values resulting from the I/O mapping are assigned. • Execute program: You can control the handling of the output values via a program contained in the project, which DIADesigner-AX executes at "STOP". Enter the name of the program in the field on the right.
Always update variables	Global setting that defines whether or not DIADesigner-AX updates the I/O variables in the bus cycle task. This setting is effective for I/O variables of the slaves and modules only if 'disabled' is defined in their update settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled (update only if used in a task): DIADesigner-AX updates the I/O variables only if they are used in a task. • Enabled 1 (use bus cycle task if not used in another task): DIADesigner-AX updates the I/O variables in the bus cycle task if they are not used in any other task. • Enabled 2 (always in bus cycle task): DIADesigner-AX updates all variables in each cycle of the bus cycle task, regardless of whether they are used and whether they are mapped to an input or output channel.

③ Bus Cycle Options

Item	Description
Bus cycle task *1	Task that controls the bus cycle. By default the task defined by the device description is entered.

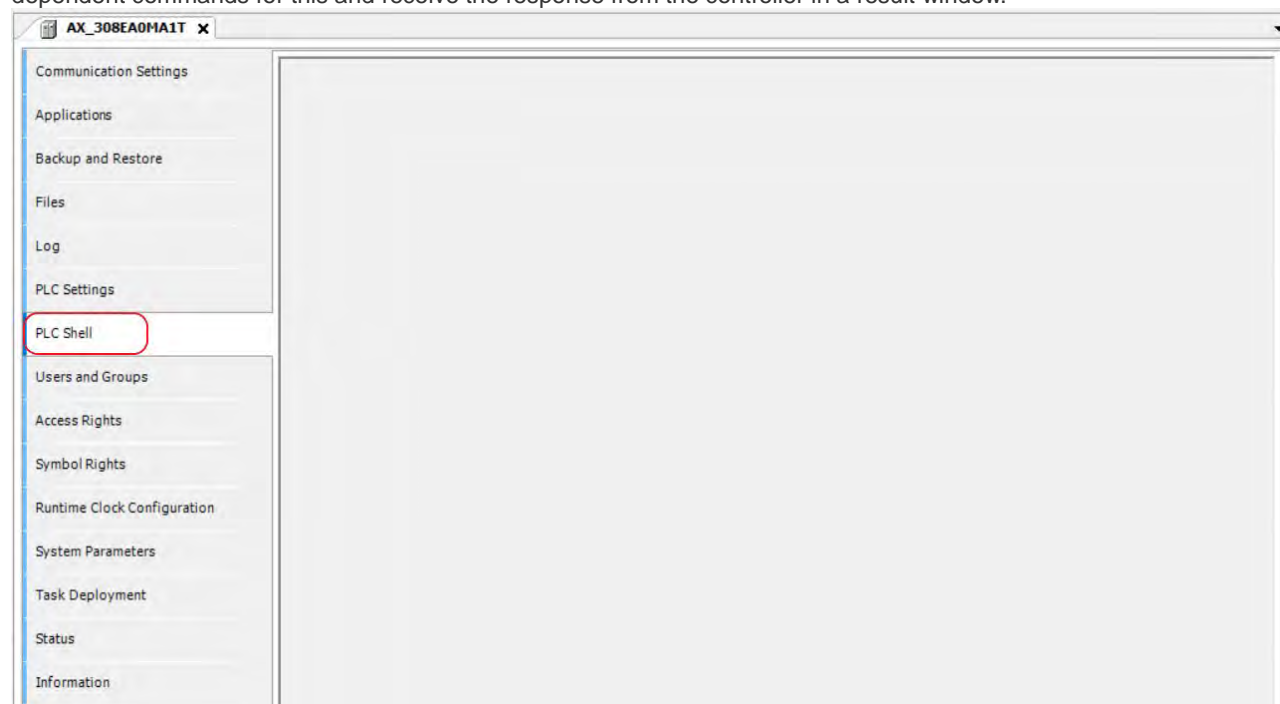
Note 1: Before you select the <unspecified> setting for the bus cycle task, you should be aware that “<unspecified>” means that the default setting given in the device description goes into effects. You should therefore check this description. Use of the task with the shortest cycle time may be defined as the default there, but use of the task with the longest cycle time could equally well be defined!

④ Additional Settings

Item	Description
Generate Force variables for I/O mapping	The device does not support this function.
Enable Diagnostics for devices	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : DIADesigner-AX automatically integrates the library CAA Device Diagnosis in the project and creates an implicit function block for each device. If there is already a function block for the device, then either an extended FB is used (for example with EtherCAT) or a further FB instance is added. This then contains a general implementation of the device diagnostics.
Show I/O warnings as errors	Warnings concerning the I/O configuration are displayed as errors.

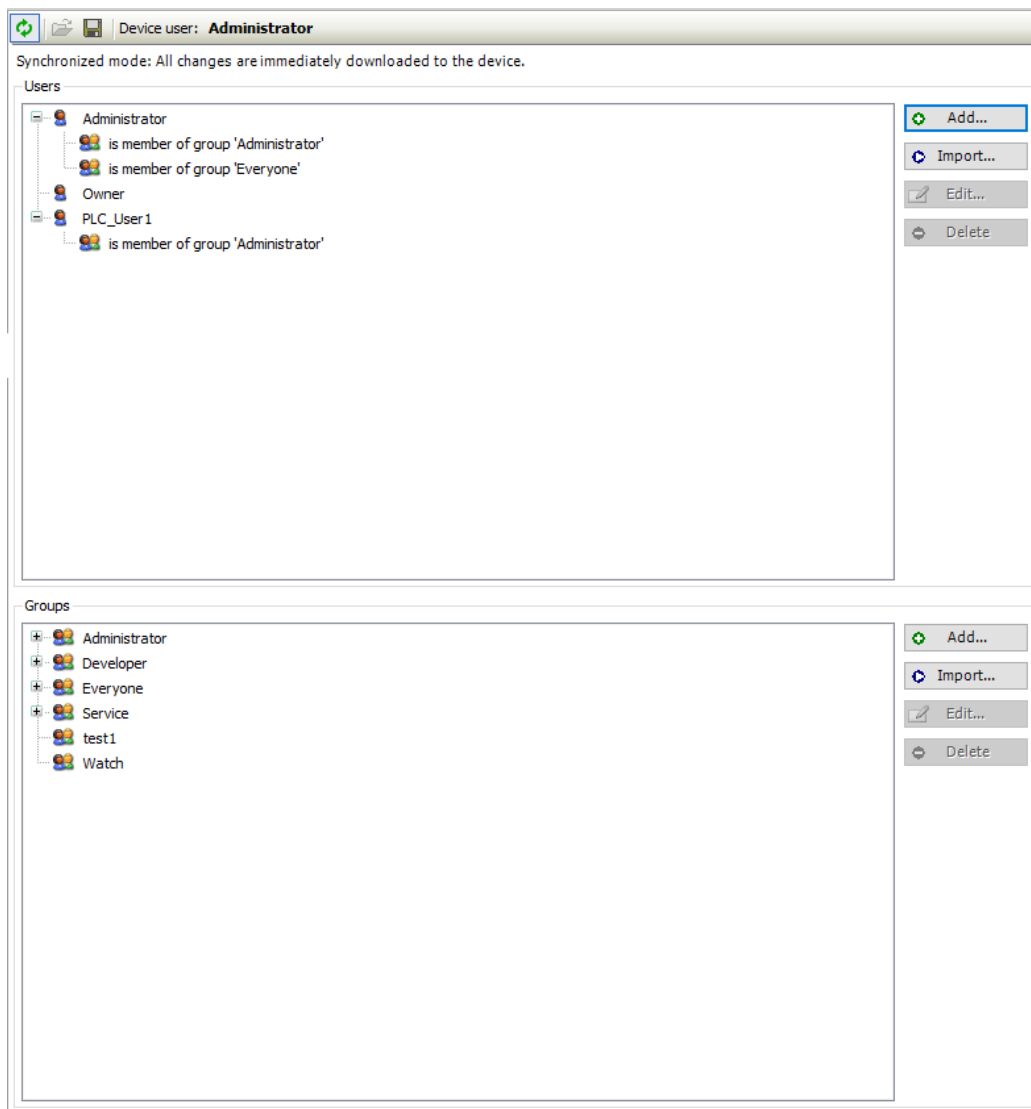
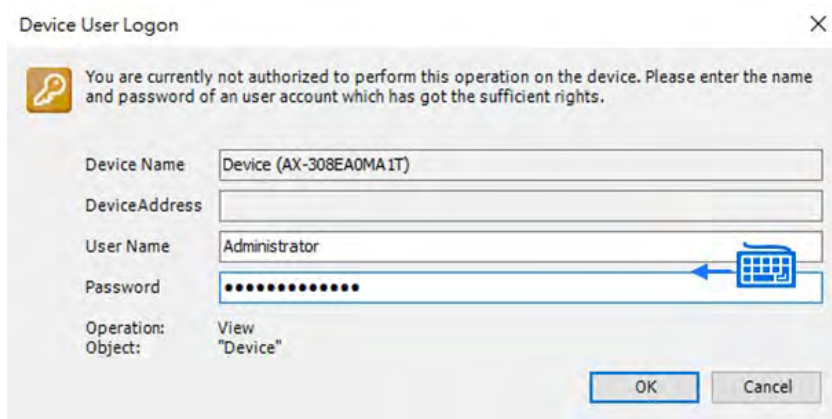
4.2.1.7 PLC Shell

You can use this text-based control monitor for querying specific information from the controller. You can specify device-dependent commands for this and receive the response from the controller in a result window.






4.2.1.8 Users and Groups





You can edit the device user management of the controller. You can define user accounts and user groups. In combination with the configuration on the Access Rights tab, you thus control access to control objects and files at runtime. For the first time use, use default settings "Administrator" as the user name and password. After logging-in, for security reasons, change the defaults of the username and password.







● Toolbar of the tab

Item	Description
 Synchronization	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Switches on and off the synchronization between the editor and the user management on the device. 2. If the button is not pressed, then the editor is blank or it contains a configuration that you loaded from the hard disk. 3. If the button is pressed, then DIADesigner-AX synchronizes the display in the editor continuously with the current user management on the connected device. 4. If you activate the synchronization while the editor contains a user configuration that is not synchronized with the device yet, then you are prompted what should happen to the editor contents. Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upload from the device and overwrite the editor content: The configuration on the device is loaded into the editor, overwriting the current contents. • Download the editor content to the device and overwrite the user management there: The configuration in the editor is transferred to the device and applied there.
 Import from disk	Click this button and then to select and import a user management configuration from the file.
 Export to disk	Click this button and then to save the user management configuration as an XML file.
Device user	User name of the user currently logged in on the device

● Users

Item	Description
 Add	Click this button to create a new user account.* ¹
 Import	Click this button to select the desired entries to import users into the device user management.* ²
 Edit	Click this button to change the settings of the selected user account.
 Delete	Click this button to delete the account of the selected user.

● Groups

Item	Description
 Add	Click this button to create a new user group.* ³
 Import	Click this button to select the desired entries to import groups into the device user management.* ⁴
 Edit	Click this button to change the settings of the selected group.
 Delete	Click this button to delete the selected group.

Note 1: The **Add User** setting page

The 'Add User' dialog box includes the following fields and options:

- ① Name: PLC_test1
- ② Default group: Administrator
- ③ Password: [masked with asterisks]
- ④ Confirm password: [masked with asterisks]
- ⑤ Password strength: Better
- ⑥ ☒ Hide password
- ⑦ ☒ Password can be changed by user
- ⑧ ☐ Password must be changed at first login

	Item	Description
①	Name	User name
②	Default group	Use the drop-down list to select the default group
③	Password	Password
④	Confirm password	Confirm password
⑤	Password strength	Levels from <i>Very weak</i> to <i>Very good</i>
⑥	Hide password	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : The password is shown only with asterisks “*” when it is typed in.
⑦	Password can be changed by the user	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Password can be changed by the user
⑧	Password must be changed at first login	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Password must be changed at first login

Note 2: The **Import User** setting page

After selected the user from the list, click **OK** to import.

The 'Import Users' dialog box contains the following information:

Project Users

Below you will find a list of all users currently defined in the project user management. Select those users which you want to import into the device user management.

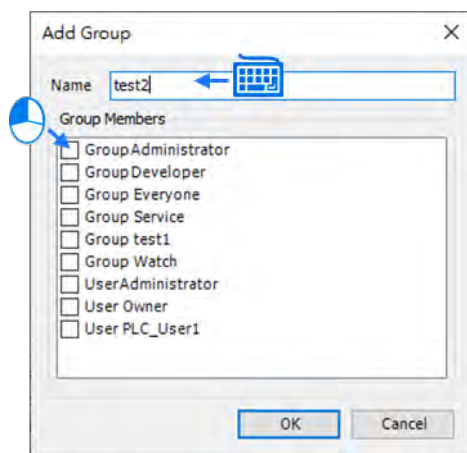
Please note that for security reasons you will have to enter the password for each selected user account. This password will be used for the corresponding device user account.

Owner

At the bottom, a blue circle with an arrow points to the **OK** button.

Note 3: The **Add Group** setting page

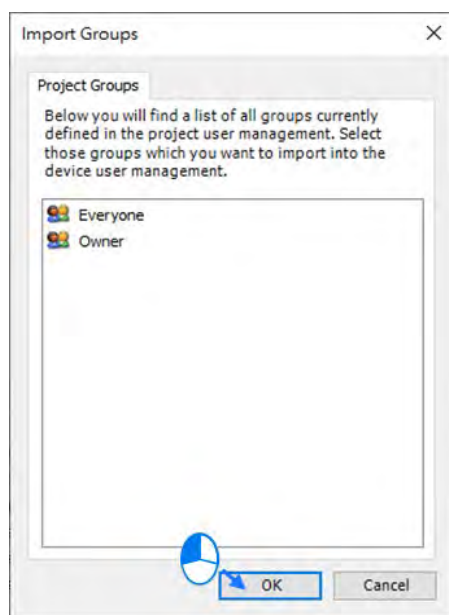
Type in the new group name and select the to-be-added group members for this new group and then click **OK**.



4

Note 4: The **Import Group** setting page

After selected the group from the list, click **OK** to import.



4.2.1.9 Access Rights

Here you can define the device access rights of device users to objects on AX-3 Series PLC. As in the project user management, users must be members of at least one user group and only user groups can be granted certain access rights.

Requirements for the Access Rights tab to be displayed:

- In the DIADesigner-AX options, in the Device editor category, the Show access rights page option must be selected.
Note that this DIADesigner-AX option can be overwritten by the device description.

Requirements for the access rights to be granted to user groups

- A component for the user management has to be available on AX-3 Series PLC. That is the primary requirement.
- Users and user groups have to be configured on the Users and Groups tab.

Device user: **Administrator**

Synchronized mode: All changes are immediately downloaded to the device.




Objects

- Runtime objects
 - Device
 - Logger
 - PldLogic
 - Application
 - _C-ModuleIntegration__
 - _Backup&Restore
 - PldShell
 - RemoteConnections
 - OPCUAServer
 - Settings
 - UserManagement
 - X509
 - CreateCertificateSigningRequest
 - CreateSelfSignedCertificate
 - DeleteCertificate
 - ExportCertificate
 - GetStatus
 - ImportCertificate
 - ListCertificates
 - ListUseCases
 - MoveCertificate
- File system objects
 - /
 - Boot
 - cert
 - export
 - import
 - Prj
 - PldLogic
 - ac_persistence
 - alarms
 - Application
 - trend
 - visu
 - _cnc
 - System Volume Information

Rights

	Add/Remove	Modify	View	Execute
Administrator	+	+	+	+
Developer	+	-	+	-
Everyone	-	-	+	-
Service	+	-	+	-
test_group	×	×	×	×
Watch	-	-	+	-

● Toolbar of the tab

Item	Description
 Synchronization	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Switches on and off the synchronization between the editor and the user management on the device. 2. If the button is not pressed, then the editor is blank or it contains a configuration that you loaded from the hard disk. 3. If the button is pressed, then DIADesigner-AX synchronizes the display in the editor continuously with the current user management on the connected device. 4. If you activate the synchronization while the editor contains a user configuration that is not synchronized with the device yet, then you are prompted what should happen to the editor contents. Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upload from the device and overwrite the editor content: The configuration on the device is loaded into the editor, overwriting the current contents. • Download the editor content to the device and overwrite the user management there: The configuration in the editor is transferred to the device and applied there.
 Import from disk	Click this button and then to select and import a user management configuration from the file.
 Export to disk	Click this button and then to save the user management configuration as an XML file.
Device user	User name of the user currently logged in on the device

● Objects

Description
In the tree structure, the objects are listed to which actions can be executed at runtime. The objects are each assigned by their object source and partially sorted in object groups. In the Rights view, you can configure the access options for a user group to a selected object.
Object source (root node) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File system objects ▶ Device: In these objects, the rights can be granted to folders of the current execution directory of the AX-3 Series PLC. • Runtime objects ▶ /: In these objects, all objects are managed that have online access in the AX-3 Series PLC and therefore have to control the access rights. A description of the objects is located in the table. Overview of the objects
Object groups and objects (indented) Example: Device with child nodes Logger, PlcLogic, Settings, UserManagement.

● Rights

Description

In general, the access rights are inherited from the root object (also Device or /) to the sub-objects. This means that if a permission of a user group is denied or explicitly granted to a parent object, then this first affects all child objects. The table applies for the object that is currently selected in the tree. For every user group, it shows the rights currently configured for the possible actions on this object.

Synchronized mode: All changes are immediately downloaded to the device.



Possible actions on the object:

- **Add/Remove**
- **Modify**
- **View**
- **Execute**

When an object is clicked, a table on the right side shows the access rights of the available user groups for the selected object.

This allows you to quickly see:

- Which access rights are evaluated by an object
- Which user group has which effective rights to which object

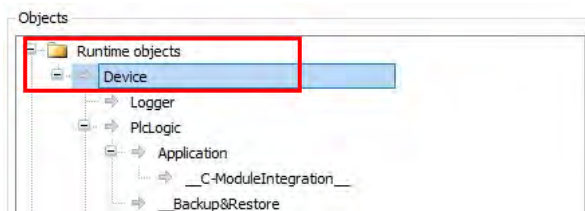
Meanings of the symbols

- **+**: Access right granted explicitly
- **-**: Access right denied explicitly
- **+**: Access right granted through inheritance
- **-**: Access right denied through inheritance
- **×**: The access right was not granted or denied explicitly and also not inherited by the parent object. Access is not possible.
- No symbol: Multiple objects are selected that have different access rights.

Change the permission by clicking the symbol.

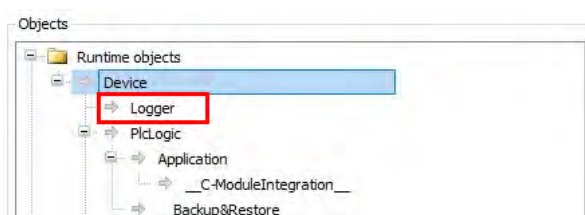
- Overview

- ◆ Runtime objects > Device

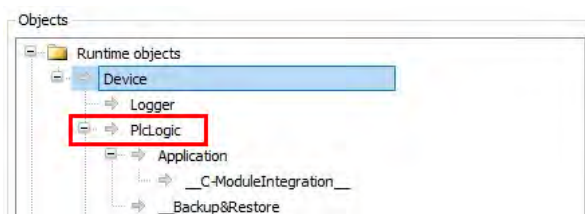


- Device > Logger

The Logger object on the Access Rights tab was created by the “Logger” component and controls its access rights. The possible access rights for this object can be granted only for the View action.

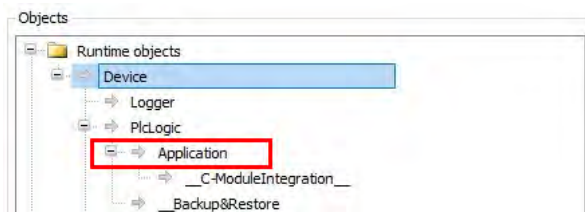


- Device > PlcLogic



All IEC applications are inserted here automatically as child objects during download. When an application is deleted, it is removed automatically. This allows specific control of online access to the application. Access rights can be assigned centrally over all applications in the PlcLogic. The Administrator and Developer user groups have full access to the IEC applications. The Service and Watch user groups only have read access (for example for read-only monitoring of values).

- PlcLogic > Application



The following table shows which action is affected in particular when a specific access right is granted for an IEC application.

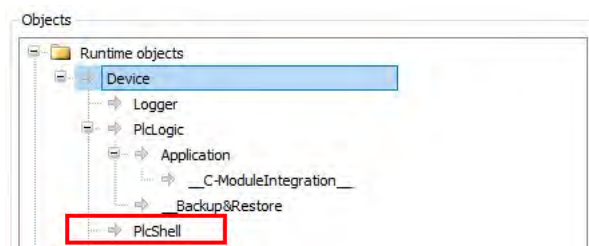
x: The right has to be set explicitly.

-: The right is not relevant.

	Operation	Access rights			
		Add/Remove	Execute	Modify	View
Application	Login	•	•	•	x
	Create	x	•	•	•
	Create child object	x	•	•	•
	Delete	x	•	•	•
	Download / online change	x	•	•	•
	Create boot application	x	•	•	•
	Read variable	•	•	•	x
	Write variable	•	•	x	x
	Force variable	•	•	x	x
	Set and delete breakpoint	•	x	x	•
	Set next statement	•	x	x	•
	Read call stack	•	•	•	x
	Single cycle	•	x	•	•
	Switch on flow control	•	x	x	•
	Start / Stop	•	x	•	•
	Reset	•	x	•	•
	Restore retain variables	•	x	•	•
	Save retain variables	•	•	•	x

➤ **PlcShell**

Only the Modify permission is evaluated at this time. This means that only when the Modify permission has been granted to a user group can PLC shell commands also be evaluated.



➤ **RemoteConnections**

Additional external connections to the AX-3 Series PLC can be configured below this node. Currently, access to the OPC UA server can be configured here.



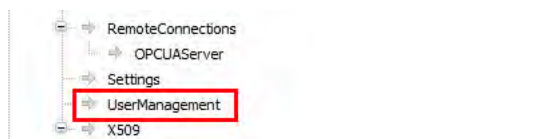
➤ **Settings**

This is the online access to the configuration settings of the AX-3 Series PLC. By default, access to Modify is granted only to the administrator.



➤ **UserManagement**

This is the online access to the user management of AX-3 Series PLC. By default, read/write access is granted only to the administrator.



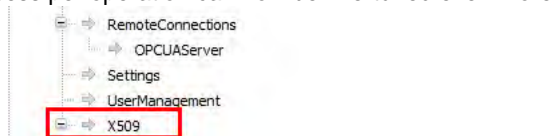
➤ **X509**

This controls the online access to the X.509 certificates. Two types of access are distinguished here:

Read (View)

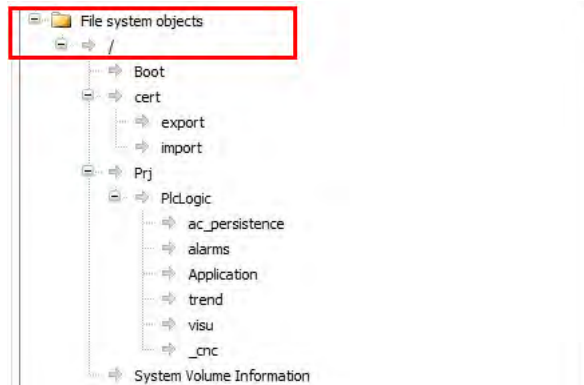
Write (Modify)

Every operation is assigned to one of these two access rights. Each operation is inserted as a child object below X509. Therefore, access per operation can now be fine-tuned even more.



◆ File system objects > /

All folders from the execution path of the AX-3 Series PLC are inserted below the “/” file system object. This allows you to grant specific rights to each folder of the file system.



4.2.1.10 Symbol Rights

Here you can define the access rights of different user groups to the individual symbol sets available on the AX-3 Series PLC.

Requirement: User management must be set up on the AX-3 Series PLC. An application was downloaded to AX-3 Series PLC for which symbol sets were defined in DIADesigner-AX project. They have access data for logging in to the AX-3 Series PLC.

Symbol Configuration

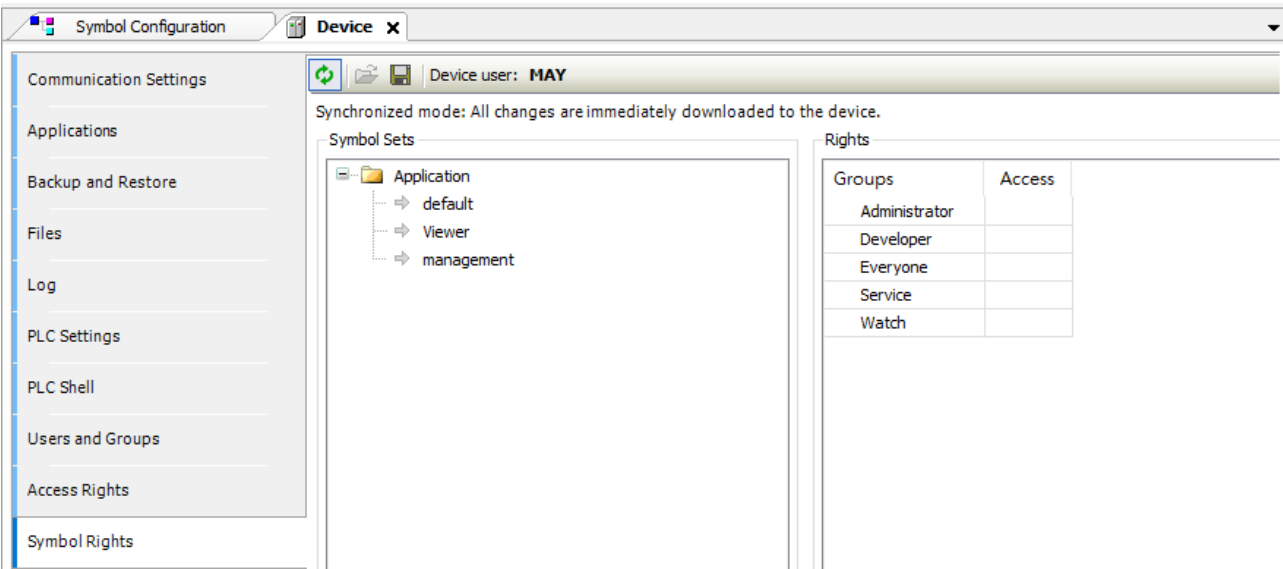
There are 6 configured variables which are not referenced by the IEC code. Reading and writing to them may not have the desired effect(s). [Remove...](#)

default [+](#) [-](#) [Configure Symbol Rights ...](#)

Changed symbol configuration will be transferred with the next download or online change

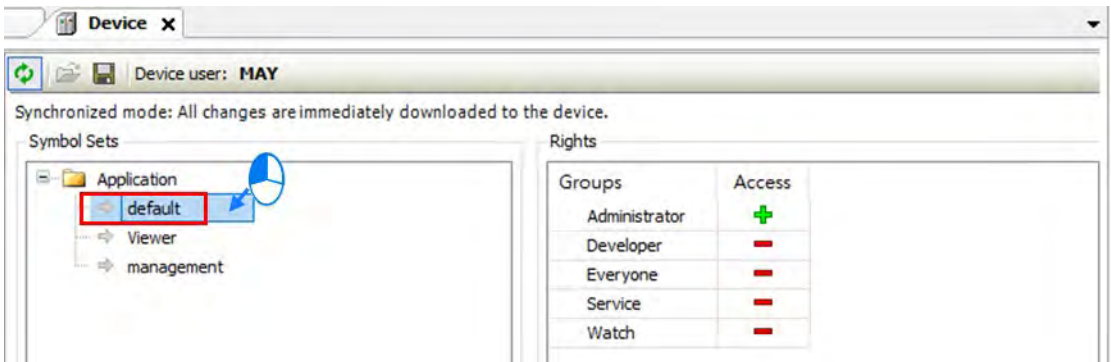
Symbols	Access Rights	Maximal	Attribute	Type	Members	Comments
Constants						
CompilerVersion				VERSION	...	the compile
RuntimeVersion				VERSION	...	the runtime
IoConfig_Globals						
AX_516AM10_0A				IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave	...	
AX_516AN02_0A				IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave	...	
AX_COUPLER				IoDrvEthercatLib.ETCSlave	...	
EtherCAT_Diag				DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.EtherCAT_Diag	...	
EtherCAT_ErrorLED_Handle				DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.EtherCAT_ErrorLED_Handle	...	
EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion				IoDrvEthercatLib.IODrvEtherCAT	...	
Pulse_Output				DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.DMC_PO_SLOT_REF	...	
Pulse_Output_SYNC				DL_BuiltInIO_AX3.Po_Sync	...	
nIoConfigTaskMapCount				DINT	...	
pIoConfigTaskMap				POINTER TO IoConfigTaskMap	...	
PLC_PRG						
test1				BOOL	...	
test2				WORD	...	
test3				REAL	...	

In the Symbol Sets view, all symbol sets are listed below the Application node whose definition was downloaded with the application to the AX-3 Series PLC.



In the Rights view, the user groups defined in the user management of the controller are listed in a table. When a symbol set is selected, you see the access rights of the corresponding user group to the symbols of this set.

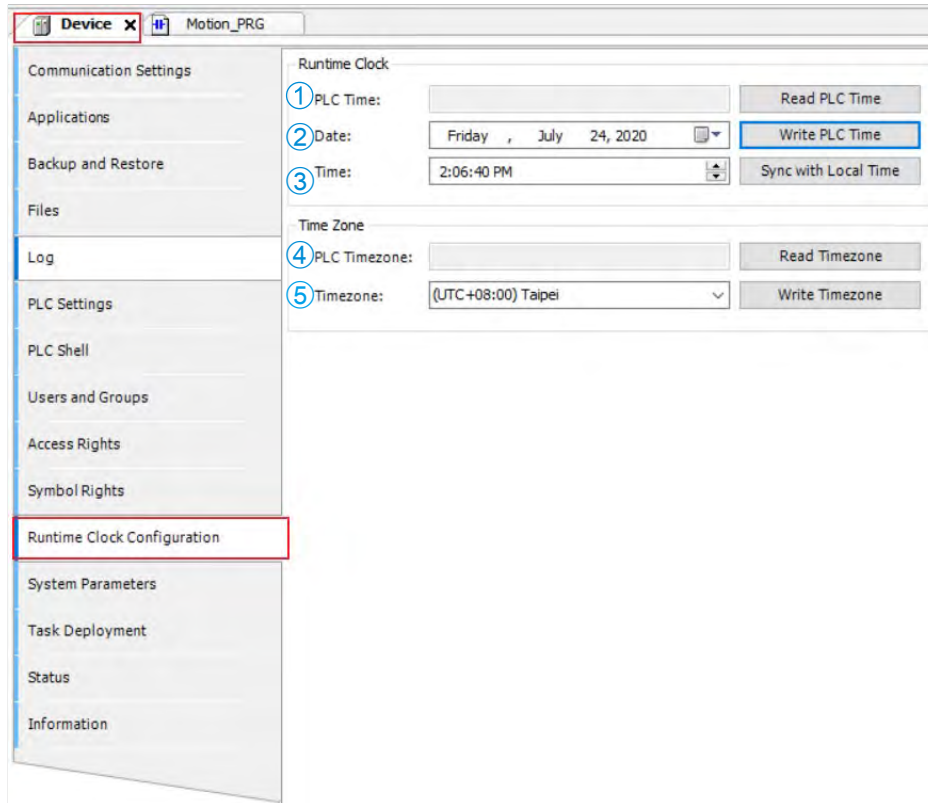
+: Access granted; -: Access not granted. You can change the access rights by double-clicking the symbol.



Click the button to save the current access configuration to an XML file. The file type is Device symbol management files (*.dsm). Click the button to read a file like this from the computer.

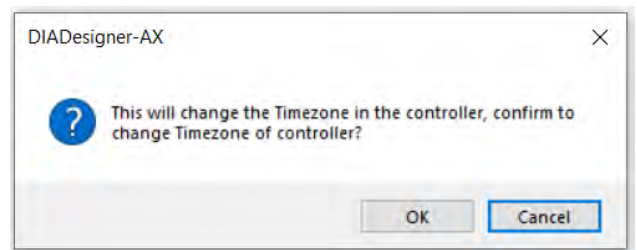
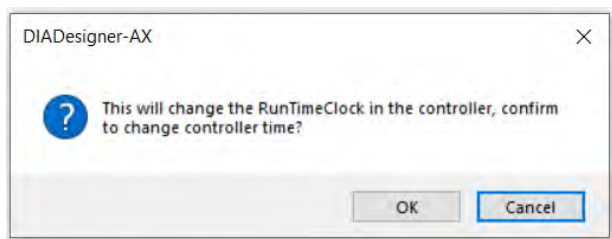
4.2.1.11 Runtime Clock Configuration

Here you can set up the Runtime Clock for the AX-3 Series PLC. Before setting up, make sure that DIADesigner-AX is successfully connected to AX-3 Series PLC. Refer to section 4.2.1.1 for establishing the connection between DIADesigner-AX and AX-3 Series PLC.



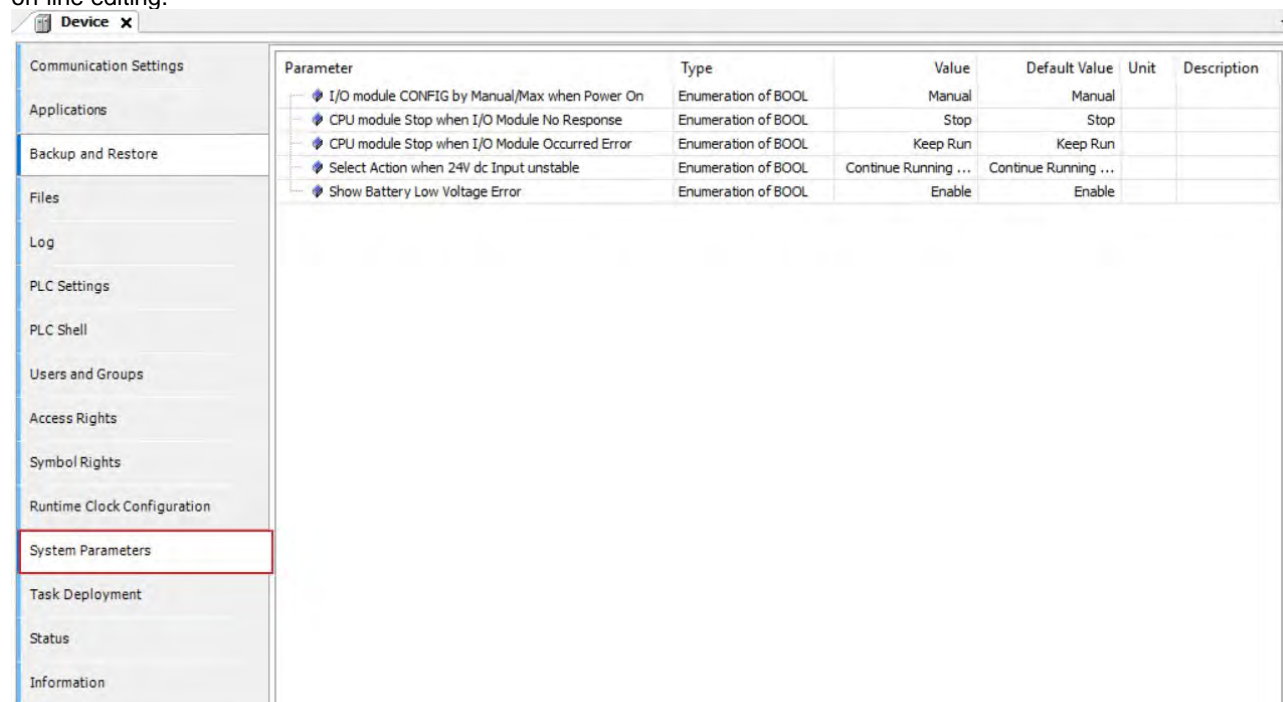
- ① **PLC Time:** Use the button **Read PLC Time** to read the PLC current date and time and the result will be updated here.
- ② **Date:** Use the button **Write PLC Time** to write the date on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into PLC and the result will be updated here.
- ③ **Time:** Use the button **Sync with Local Time** to write the time on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into PLC and the result will be updated here.
- ④ **PLC Timezone:** Use the button **Read Timezone** to read the PLC current timezone and the result will be updated here.
- ⑤ **Timezone:** Use the button **Write Timezone** to write the timezone on DIADesigner-AX (PC) into PLC and the result will be updated here.

If you click the buttons including **Write PLC Time**, **Sync with Local Time** and **Write Timezone**, the DIADesigner-AX prompts confirmations as shown below. Click **OK**, if you need to change the time settings.



4.2.1.12 System Parameters

Here you can set up the various parameters for the AX-3 Series PLC. Note that settings on this page do NOT support on-line editing.



- **I/O module CONFIG by Manual/Max when Power On**

You can set the number of I/O modules here.

- Manual (default): The actual module placement should be based on the configuration set in HWCONFIG. If the settings are matched, the PLC can run normally.
- Max: Sets a maximum number for the module placement. An alarm shows if your actual I/O module placement is larger than the maximum setting.

- **CPU module Stop when I/O Module No Response**

The parameter sets whether the CPU and other normal modules can operate constantly when there is an extension module, which does not response during offline period.

- Stop (default): The CPU module stops running and then shows errors.
- Keep Run: The CPU module and other normal modules keep running.

- **CPU module Stop when I/O Module Occurred Error**

The parameter sets the method to deal with a minor error in the extension modules.

- Stop: The CPU stops running and sends an error.
- Keep Run (default): The CPU keeps running but records the warning message.

- **Select Action When 24Vdc Input Unstable**

What to do when the 24Vdc power is unstable

- Continue Running when power stable (default): The CPU stops and waits till the power is stable and then the CPU begins to run.
- Into Error Status: The CPU stops and ERROR LED blinks; even after the power is stable again, the CPU still stays stop.

● Show Battery Low Voltage Error

The parameter sets whether the alarm is shown when the lithium battery for the real-time clock is of low voltage or is not installed.

- Disable: The function is closed.
- Enable (default): An alarm shows when the lithium battery is of low voltage or not installed.

4.2.1.13 Task Deployment

Here displays a table of inputs and outputs and their assignments to the defined tasks and bus cycle task. You can search for the relevant information here. The information is refreshed after the project is compiled and downloaded to the CPU. If the search result is not as expected, you can use the information to troubleshoot.

Device x

Communication Settings

Applications

Backup and Restore

Files

Log

PLC Settings

PLC Shell

Users and Groups

Access Rights

Symbol Rights



System Parameters

Task Deployment

Status

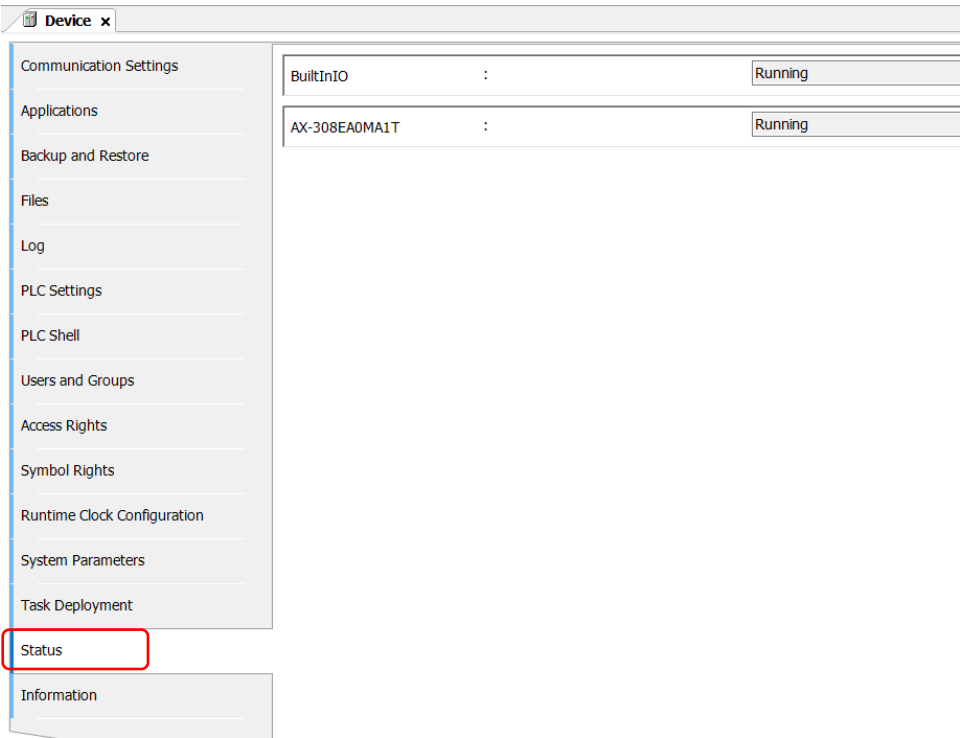
I/O Deployment for Tasks

I/O channels	Channel	EtherCAT_Task (1)	MainTask (1)
DIO			
%IB0	IN:0-7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.0	IN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.1	IN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.2	IN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.3	IN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.4	IN4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.5	IN5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.6	IN6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IX0.7	IN7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IB1	IN:8-15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%IB2	Encoder	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QB0	OUT:0-7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.0	OUT0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.1	OUT1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.2	OUT2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.3	OUT3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.4	OUT4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.5	OUT5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.6	OUT6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
%QX0.7	OUT7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

	The task defined as a Bus cycle task in the PLC Settings of the device
	For inputs and outputs that are written or read by a task.

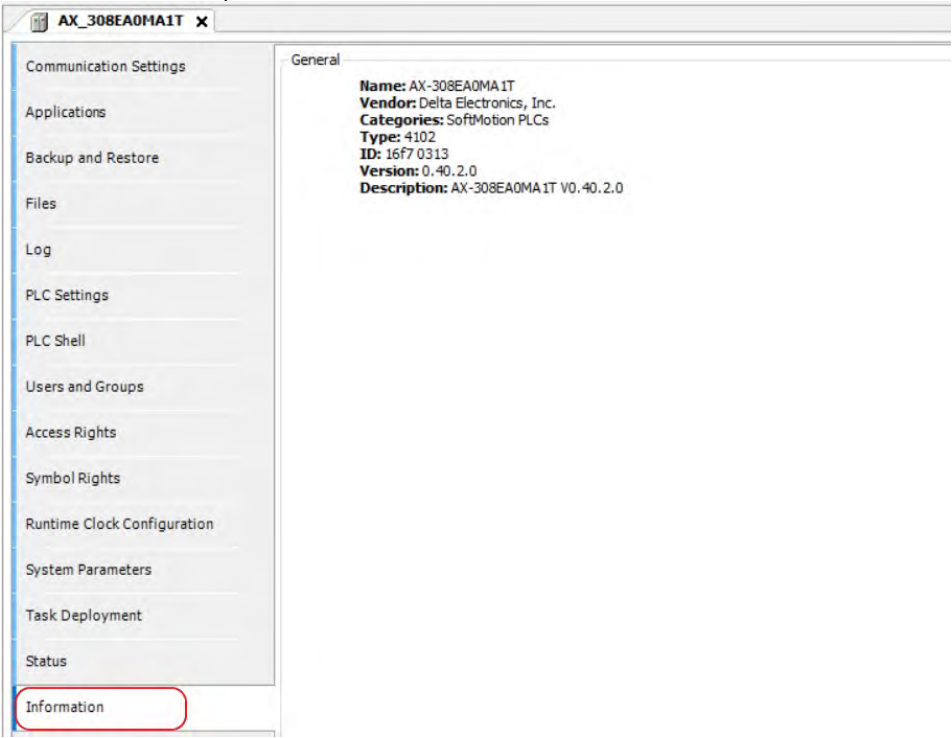
4.2.1.14 Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



4.2.1.15 Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.



4.3 Data Type and Variables

4.3.1 Data Type

Data Type	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Data Width
BOOL	FALSE	TRUE	1 bit
BYTE	0	255	8 bit
WORD	0	65535	16 bit
DWORD	0	4294967295	32 bit
LWORD	0	$2^{64}-1$	64 bit
SINT	-128	127	8bit
USINT	0	255	8 bit
INT	-32768	32767	16 bit
UINT	0	65565	16 bit
DINT	-2147483648	2147483647	32 bit
UDINT	0	4294967295	32 bit
LINT	-2^{63}	$2^{63}-1$	64 bit
ULINT	0	$2^{64}-1$	64 bit
REAL	-3.402823E+38	3.402823E+38	32 bit
LREAL	-1.7976931348623157E+308	1.7976931348623157E+308	64 bit
TIME	T#0ms	T#49d17h2m47s295ms	32 bit
LTIME	LTIME#0ns	LTIME#213503d23h34n33s 709ms551us615ns	64 bit
TIME_OF_DAY (TOD)	TOD#00:00:00.000	TOD#23:59:59.999	32 bit
DATE	D#1970-1-1 (01/01/70)	DATE#2106-2-7 (February 07, 2106)	32 bit
DATE_AND_TIME	DT#1979-1-1-00:00:00 (01/01/1970 00:00:00)	DT#2106-2-7-6:28:15 (February 07, 2106 6:28:15)	32 bit
STRING	ASCII format (8 bit): up to 255 characters		
WSTRING	Unicode format (16 bit): no limit on the length		

4.3.2 Variables

Rules for identifiers of variables:

- No spaces or special characters
- Not case sensitive (For example, Var0 and VAR0 are seen as the same variable)
- No multiple consecutive underscores (For example, b__Var0 is not permitted)

Rules for multiple use of identifiers

- Local variable cannot be declared more than one time.
- If a local variable and a global variable share the same name, the local variable has priority within the POU.
- Variables with the same name can be declared in different global variables list.
(For example, globe_list1.bvar and globe_list2.bvar can co-exist in two different global variables lists.)

4

Comments

- Single comment: the symbol // indicates a single comment, for example: // Variable Define
- Multiple comments: the symbol (* XX : XX *) indicates multiples comments from XX to XX, for example (* Variable Define : Variable Define*)

4.3.2.1 Declaration of Variables

In DIADesigner-AX projects you can declare variables in the following methods.

Syntax: <Variable Name> : <Data Type> := <Initialization> ;

Example:

```
VAR
    bVar      :   BOOL   ;
    byVar     :   BYTE   := 1 ;
    wVar      :   WORD   := 16#0001 ;
    todVar    :   TOD    := TOD#02:30:15.100;
END_VAR
```

Array

Syntax : <Variable Name> : ARRAY[0..N] OF <Data Type>

Example:

```
VAR
    byVar_Array :   ARRAY[0..10] OF BYTE ;
    wVar_Array  :   ARRAY[0..30] OF WORD ;
    rVar_Array  :   ARRAY[0..50] OF REAL ;
END_VAR
```

4.3.2.2 Address Assignments

In AX308E, there are three ranges in the memory area, including I (input memory range), Q (output memory range) and M (flag memory range). You can use specific character strings to express memory position and size. For the M flag memory range in AX-3 Series PLC, you cannot manually use the bit operation when in online mode.

Syntax: %<Memory Area Prefix><Size Prefix><Memory Position>

Memory Area	Description	Range
I	Input Memory Range	8 KB
Q	Output Memory Range	8 KB
M	Flag Memory Range	512 KB

Size Prefix	Data Type	Data Width
X	--	1 bit
B	Byte	8 bit
W	Word	16 bit
D	DWord	32 bit
L	LWord	64 bit

- Memory Area**

The numbering that you use for addressing the memory position depends on the target system. Before specifying the address value in the memory area, you need to know the mapping corresponding relationship of devices to prevent the overlapping memory ranges. See the table below for reference.

Memory Area							
X0.63~X0.56	X0.55~X0.48	X0.47~X0.40	X0.39~X0.32	X0.31~X0.17	X0.23~X0.16	X0.15~X0.8	X0.7~X0.0
X7.7~X7.0	X6.7~X6.0	X5.7~X5.0	X4.7~X4.0	X3.7~X3.0	X2.7~X2.0	X1.7~X1.0	X0.7~X0.0
B7	B6	B5	B4	B3	B2	B1	B0
W3		W2		W1		W0	
D1				D0			
L0							

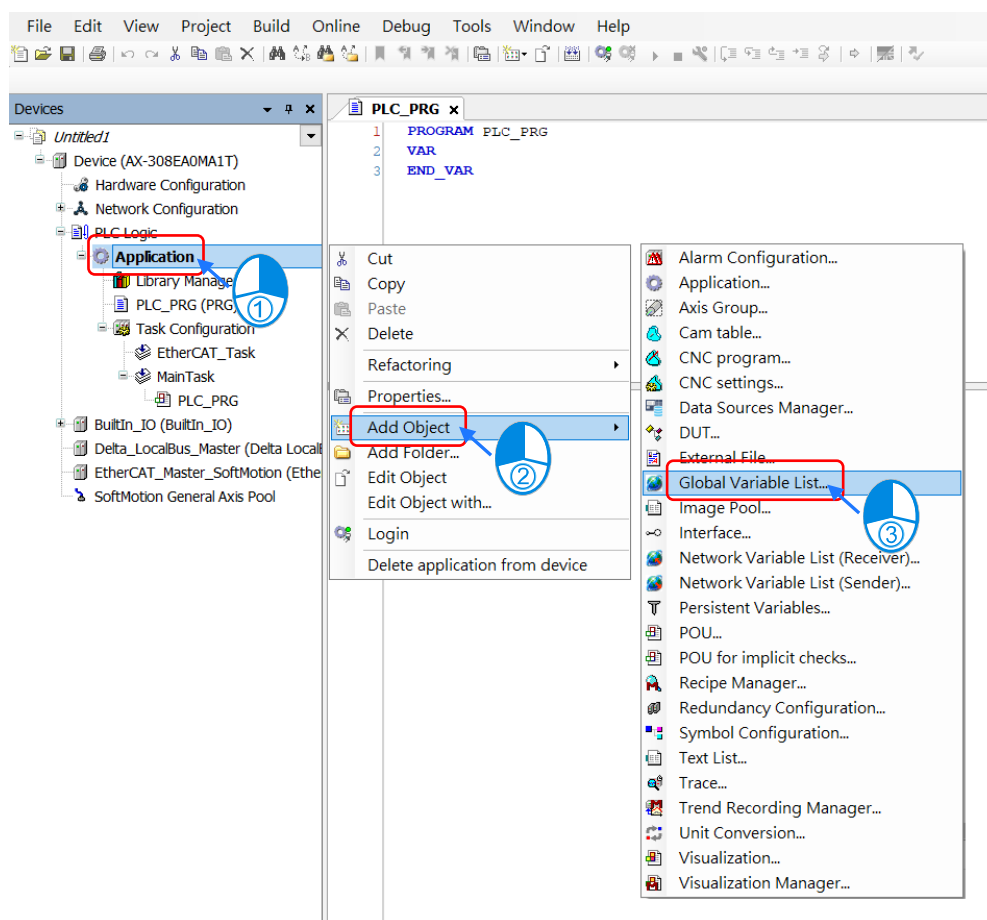
• Example

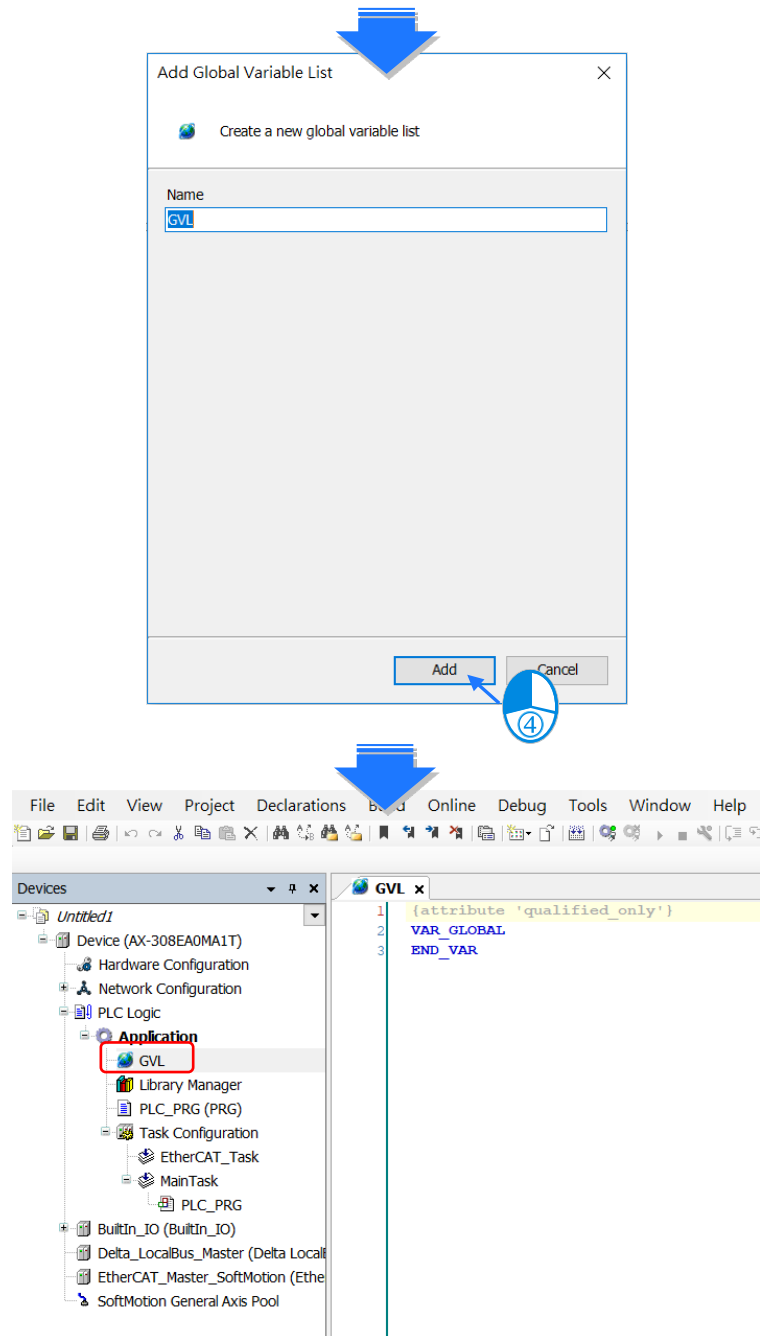
Address	Description
%QX7.5	Single bit address of the output bit 7.5
%IW215	Word address of the input word 215
%QB7	Byte address of the output byte 7
%MD48	Address of a double word at memory position 48 in flag memory
VAR wVar0 AT %IW0 : WORD; END_VAR	Variable declaration with address information of an input word
VAR bVar0 AT IX7.5 : BOOL; END_VAR	Boolean variable declaration with address information of an input bit X7.5.

4.3.2.3 Variables

• Global Variables

If a variable that is declared in the POU, it is a local variable and it can only be used in the same POU. If a variable that is declared in the global variable list, it is a global variable and it can be used in any POU.





- **Constant Variables**

You can declare a variable as a constant variable. Constant variables can be accessed as read-only and without assigning an initialization value.

Declaration of Constant Variables

```

VAR CONSTANT
    pi : REAL := 3.14159 ;
END_VAR

```

Retain Variables

You can declare a variable as retentive or use retain / persistent variable directly. Refer to the table below for differences among variable, retain variable and persistent variable.

	Initialize				
	Reboot PLC	Reset warm	Reset cold	Download	Reset Origin
Variable	O	O	O	O	O
Retain Variable	X	X	O	O	O
Persistent Variable	X	X	X	X	O

Declaration of Retain Variables

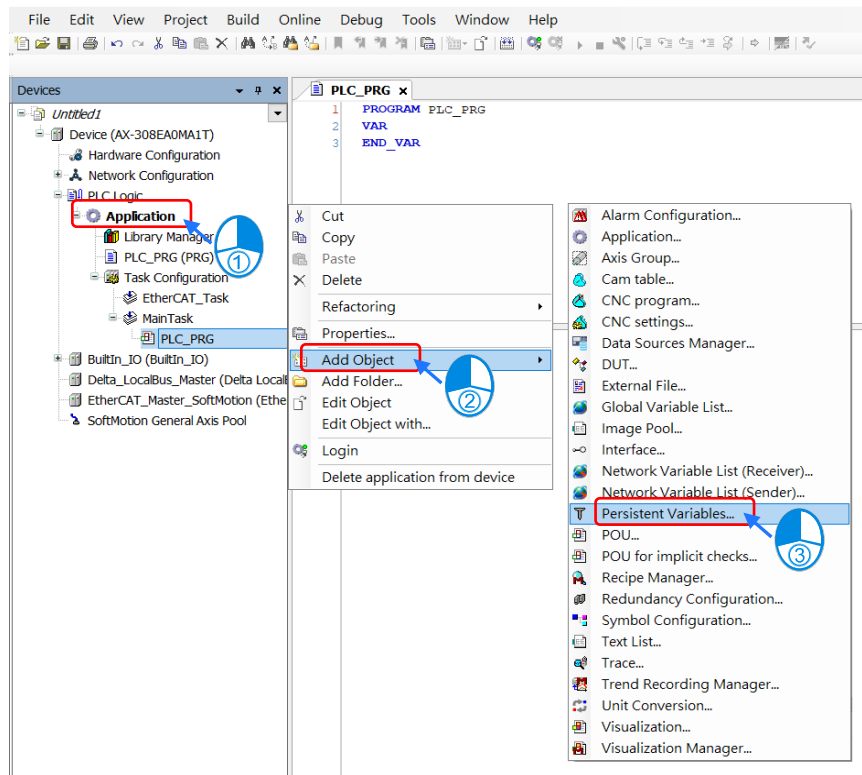
```

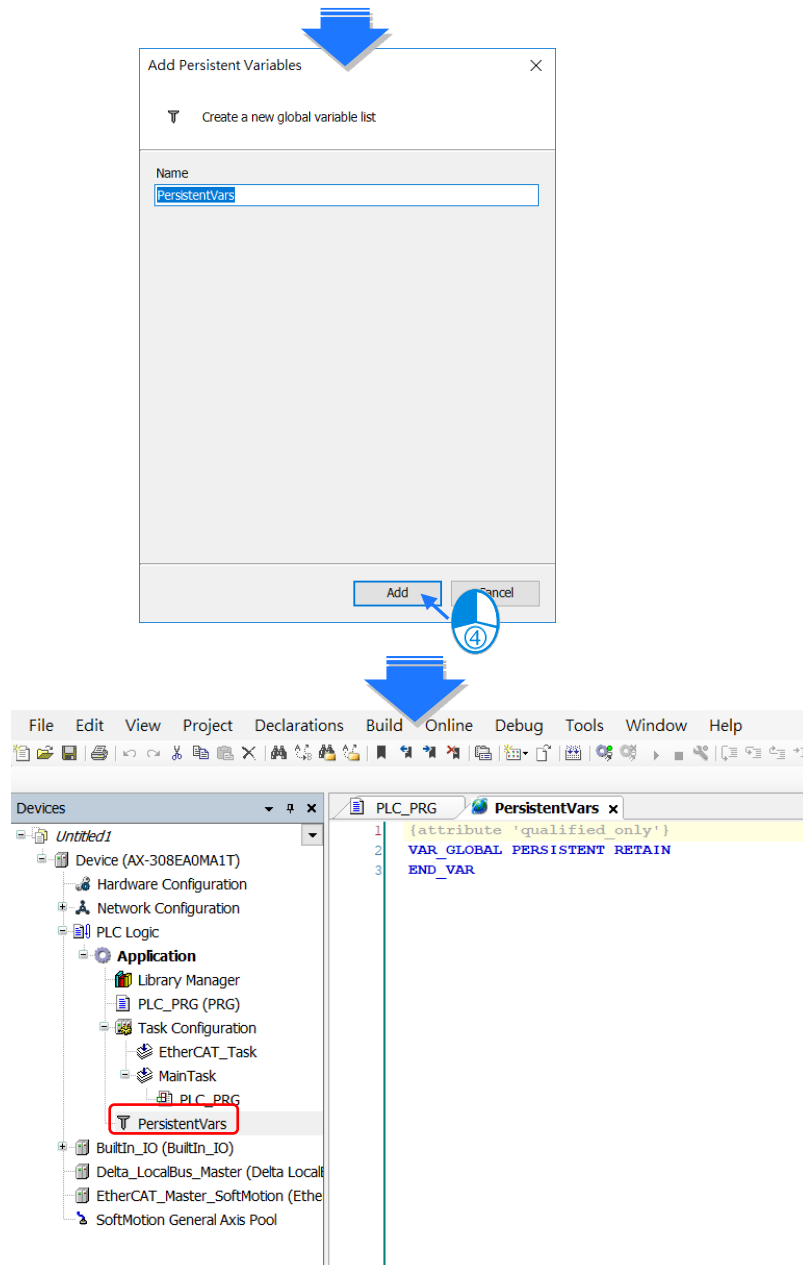
VAR RETAIN
  bVar : BOOL ;
  byVar : BYTE ;
  wVar : WORD ;
END_VAR

```

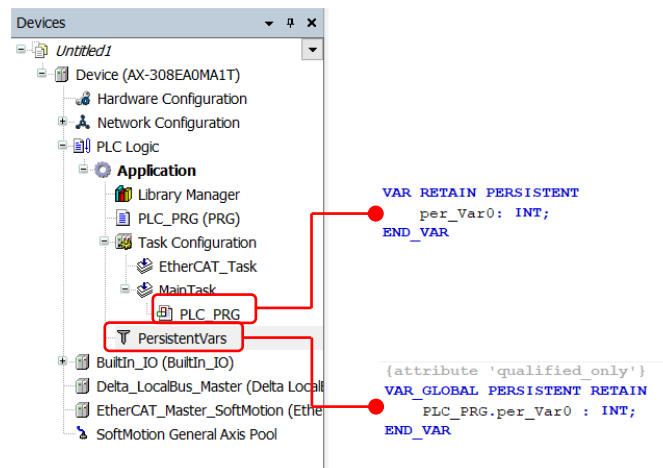
You can declare the Persistent Variable / Retain Persistent Variable / Persistent Retain Variable in the Persistent Variable Object and the results are the same.

Persistent Variable List:





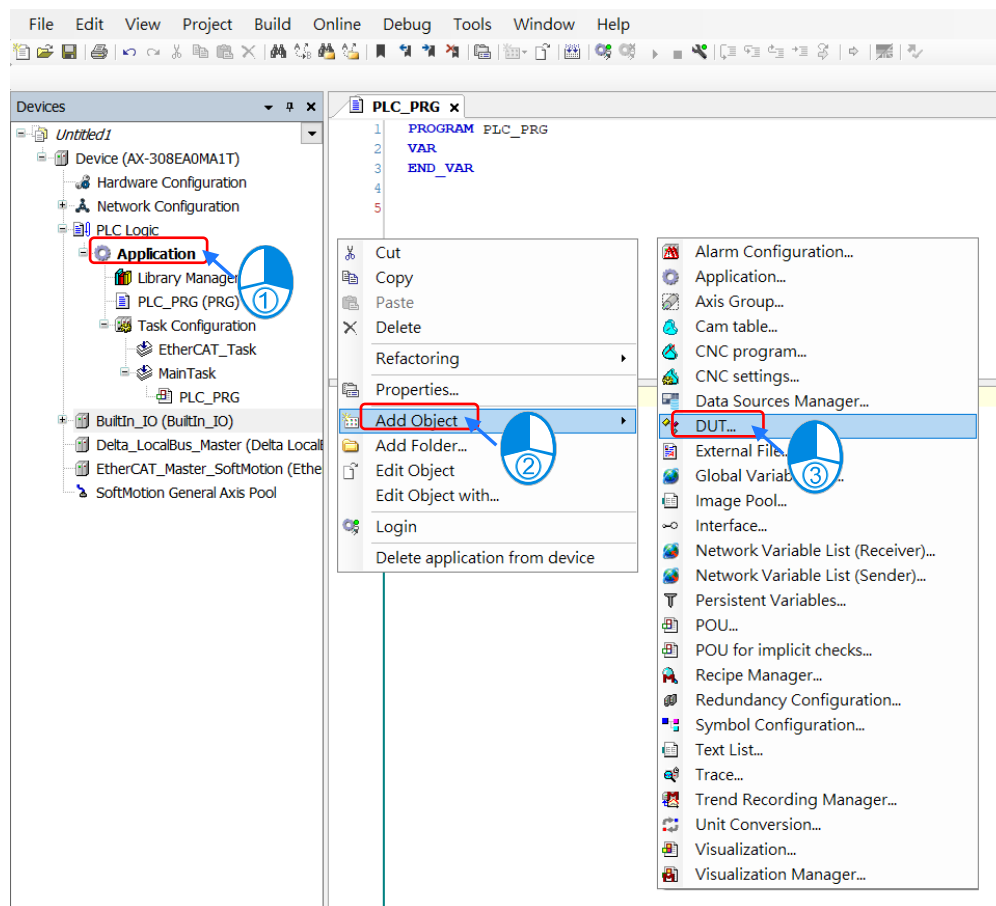
If you need to declare a local variable as persistent, you need to add the variable instance path in the persistent variable list.



4.3.2.4 User-defined Data Types

You can create your own data type, DUT (Data Type Unit) or UDT (User-defined Data Type), by clicking ADD Object and selecting DUT. Four data types can be created, including Structure, Enumeration, Alias and Union.

DUT:



- **Structure :**

A structure is a compound data type used for grouping simple data types or other compound data types.

Syntax:

TYPE <Structure Name>:

STRUCT

<Variable Declaration 1>

...

<Variable Declaration n>

END_STRUCT

END_TYPE

Example:

```

TYPE DUT :
STRUCT
    bVar      :   BOOL      ;
    wVar      :   WORD      ;
    iVar_Array :   ARRAY[0..2] OF INT  ;
END_STRUCT
END_TYPE

```

Applications:

```

1  PROGRAM PLC_PRG
2
3  VAR
4      byVar2 AT %QX7.5      :   BOOL      ;
5      DUT_Var :DUT         :=   (bVar:=TRUE,wVar:=12,iVar_Array:=[1,2,3]);
6  END_VAR
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000
1001
1002
1003
1004
1005
1006
1007
1008
1009
1010
1011
1012
1013
1014
1015
1016
1017
1018
1019
1020
1021
1022
1023
1024
1025
1026
1027
1028
1029
1030
1031
1032
1033
1034
1035
1036
1037
1038
1039
1040
1041
1042
1043
1044
1045
1046
1047
1048
1049
1050
1051
1052
1053
1054
1055
1056
1057
1058
1059
1060
1061
1062
1063
1064
1065
1066
1067
1068
1069
1070
1071
1072
1073
1074
1075
1076
1077
1078
1079
1080
1081
1082
1083
1084
1085
1086
1087
1088
1089
1090
1091
1092
1093
1094
1095
1096
1097
1098
1099
1100
1101
1102
1103
1104
1105
1106
1107
1108
1109
1110
1111
1112
1113
1114
1115
1116
1117
1118
1119
1120
1121
1122
1123
1124
1125
1126
1127
1128
1129
1130
1131
1132
1133
1134
1135
1136
1137
1138
1139
1140
1141
1142
1143
1144
1145
1146
1147
1148
1149
1150
1151
1152
1153
1154
1155
1156
1157
1158
1159
1160
1161
1162
1163
1164
1165
1166
1167
1168
1169
1170
1171
1172
1173
1174
1175
1176
1177
1178
1179
1180
1181
1182
1183
1184
1185
1186
1187
1188
1189
1190
1191
1192
1193
1194
1195
1196
1197
1198
1199
1200
1201
1202
1203
1204
1205
1206
1207
1208
1209
1210
1211
1212
1213
1214
1215
1216
1217
1218
1219
1220
1221
1222
1223
1224
1225
1226
1227
1228
1229
1230
1231
1232
1233
1234
1235
1236
1237
1238
1239
1240
1241
1242
1243
1244
1245
1246
1247
1248
1249
1250
1251
1252
1253
1254
1255
1256
1257
1258
1259
1260
1261
1262
1263
1264
1265
1266
1267
1268
1269
1270
1271
1272
1273
1274
1275
1276
1277
1278
1279
1280
1281
1282
1283
1284
1285
1286
1287
1288
1289
1290
1291
1292
1293
1294
1295
1296
1297
1298
1299
1300
1301
1302
1303
1304
1305
1306
1307
1308
1309
1310
1311
1312
1313
1314
1315
1316
1317
1318
1319
1320
1321
1322
1323
1324
1325
1326
1327
1328
1329
1330
1331
1332
1333
1334
1335
1336
1337
1338
1339
1340
1341
1342
1343
1344
1345
1346
1347
1348
1349
1350
1351
1352
1353
1354
1355
1356
1357
1358
1359
1360
1361
1362
1363
1364
1365
1366
1367
1368
1369
1370
1371
1372
1373
1374
1375
1376
1377
1378
1379
1380
1381
1382
1383
1384
1385
1386
1387
1388
1389
1390
1391
1392
1393
1394
1395
1396
1397
1398
1399
1400
1401
1402
1403
1404
1405
1406
1407
1408
1409
1410
1411
1412
1413
1414
1415
1416
1417
1418
1419
1420
1421
1422
1423
1424
1425
1426
1427
1428
1429
1430
1431
1432
1433
1434
1435
1436
1437
1438
1439
1440
1441
1442
1443
1444
1445
1446
1447
1448
1449
1450
1451
1452
1453
1454
1455
1456
1457
1458
1459
1460
1461
1462
1463
1464
1465
1466
1467
1468
1469
1470
1471
1472
1473
1474
1475
1476
1477
1478
1479
1480
1481
1482
1483
1484
1485
1486
1487
1488
1489
1490
1491
1492
1493
1494
1495
1496
1497
1498
1499
1500
1501
1502
1503
1504
1505
1506
1507
1508
1509
1510
1511
1512
1513
1514
1515
1516
1517
1518
1519
1520
1521
1522
1523
1524
1525
1526
1527
1528
1529
1530
1531
1532
1533
1534
1535
1536
1537
1538
1539
1540
1541
1542
1543
1544
1545
1546
1547
1548
1549
1550
1551
1552
1553
1554
1555
1556
1557
1558
1559
1560
1561
1562
1563
1564
1565
1566
1567
1568
1569
1570
1571
1572
1573
1574
1575
1576
1577
1578
1579
1580
1581
1582
1583
1584
1585
1586
1587
1588
1589
1590
1591
1592
1593
1594
1595
1596
1597
1598
1599
1600
1601
1602
1603
1604
1605
1606
1607
1608
1609
1610
1611
1612
1613
1614
1615
1616
1617
1618
1619
1620
1621
1622
1623
1624
1625
1626
1627
1628
1629
1630
1631
1632
1633
1634
1635
1636
1637
1638
1639
1640
1641
1642
1643
1644
1645
1646
1647
1648
1649
1650
1651
1652
1653
1654
1655
1656
1657
1658
1659
1660
1661
1662
1663
1664
1665
1666
1667
1668
1669
1670
1671
1672
1673
1674
1675
1676
1677
1678
1679
1680
1681
1682
1683
1684
1685
1686
1687
1688
1689
1690
1691
1692
1693
1694
1695
1696
1697
1698
1699
1700
1701
1702
1703
1704
1705
1706
1707
1708
1709
1710
1711
1712
1713
1714
1715
1716
1717
1718
1719
1720
1721
1722
1723
1724
1725
1726
1727
1728
1729
1730
1731
1732
1733
1734
1735
1736
1737
1738
1739
1740
1741
1742
1743
1744
1745
1746
1747
1748
1749
1750
1751
1752
1753
1754
1755
1756
1757
1758
1759
1760
1761
1762
1763
1764
1765
1766
1767
1768
1769
1770
1771
1772
1773
1774
1775
1776
1777
1778
1779
1780
1781
1782
1783
1784
1785
1786
1787
1788
1789
1790
1791
1792
1793
1794
1795
1796
1797
1798
1799
1800
1801
1802
1803
1804
1805
1806
1807
1808
1809
1810
1811
1812
1813
1814
1815
1816
1817
1818
1819
1820
1821
1822
1823
1824
1825
1826
1827
1828
1829
1830
1831
1832
1833
1834
1835
1836
1837
1838
1839
1840
1841
1842
1843
1844
1845
1846
1847
1848
1849
1850
1851
1852
1853
1854
1855
1856
1857
1858
1859
1860
1861
1862
1863
1864
1865
1866
1867
1868
1869
1870
1871
1872
1873
1874
1875
1876
1877
1878
1879
1880
1881
1882
1883
1884
1885
1886
1887
1888
1889
1890
1891
1892
1893
1894
1895
1896
1897
1898
1899
1900
1901
1902
1903
1904
1905
1906
1907
1908
1909
1910
1911
1912
1913
1914
1915
1916
1917
1918
1919
1920
1921
1922
1923
1924
1925
1926
1927
1928
1929
1930
1931
1932
1933
1934
1935
1936
1937
1938
1939
1940
1941
1942
1943
1944
1945
1946
1947
1948
1949
1950
1951
1952
1953
1954
1955
1956
1957
1958
1959
1960
1961
1962
1963
1964
1965
1966
1967
1968
1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974
1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981
1982
1983
1984
1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991
1992
1993
1994
1995
1996
1997
1998
1999
2000
2001
2002
2003
2004
2005
2006
2007
2008
2009
2010
2011
2012
2013
2014
2015
2016
2017
2018
2019
2020
2021
2022
2023
2024
2025
2026
2027
2028
2029
2030
2031
2032
2033
2034
2035
2036
2037
2038
2039
2040
2041
2042
2043
2044
2045
2046
2047
2048
2049
2050
2051
2052
2053
2054
2055
2056
2057
2058
2059
2060
2061
2062
2063
2064
2065
2066
2067
2068
2069
2070
2071
2072
2073
2074
2075
2076
2077
2078
2079
2080
2081
2082
2083
2084
2085
2086
2087
2088
2089
2090
2091
2092
2093
2094
2095
2096
2097
2098
2099
2100
2101
2102
2103
2104
2105
2106
2107
2108
2109
2110
2111
2112
2113
2114
2115
2116
2117
2118
2119
2120
2121
2122
2123
2124
2125
2126
2127
2128
2129
2130
2131
2132
2133
2134
2135
2136
2137
2138
2139
2140
2141
2142
2143
2144
2145
2146
2147
2148
2149
2150
2151
2152
2153
2154
2155
2156
2157
2158
2159
2160
2161
2162
2163
2164
2165
2166
2167
2168
2169
2170
2171
2172
2173
2174
2175
2176
2177
2178
2179
2180
2181
2182
2183
2184
2185
2186
2187
2188
2189
2190
2191
2192
2193
2194
2195
2196
2197
2198
2199
2200
2201
2202
2203
2204
2205
2206
2207
2208
2209
2210
2211
2212
2213
2214
2215
2216
2217
2218
2219
2220
2221
2222
2223
2224
2225
2226
2227
2228
2229
2230
2231
2232
2233
2234
2235
2236
2237
2238
2239
2240
2241
2242
2243
2244
2245
2246
2247
2248
2249
2250
2251
2252
2253
2254
2255
2256
2257
2258
2259
2260
2261
2262
2263
2264
2265
2266
2267
2268
2269
2270
2271
2272
2273
2274
2275
2276
2277
2278
2279
2280
2281
2282
2283
2284
2285
2286
2287
2288
2289
2290
2291
2292
2293
2294
2295
2296
2297
2298
2299
2300
2301
2302
2303
2304
2305
2306
2307
2308
2309
2310
2311
2312
2313
2314
2315
2316
2317
2318
2319
2320
2321
2322
2323
2324
2325
2326
2327
2328
2329
2330
2331
2332
2333
2334
2335
2336
2337
2338
2339
2340
2341
2342
2343
2344
2345
2346
2347
2348
2349
2350
2351
2352
2353
2354
2355
2356
2357
2358
2359
2360
2361
2362
2363
2364
2365
2366
2367
2368
2369
2370
2371
2372
2373
2374
2375
2376
2377
2378
2379
2380
2381
2382
2383
2384
2385
2386
2387
2388
2389
2390
2391
2392
2393
2394
2395
2396
2397
2398
2399
2400
2401
2402
2403
2404
2405
2406
2407
2408
2409
2410
2411
2412
2413
2414
2415
2416
2417
2418
2419
2420
2421
2422
2423
2424
2425
2426
2427
2428
2429
2430
2431
2432
2433
2434
2435
2436
2437
2438
2439
2440
2441
2442
2443
2444
2445
2446
2447
2448
2449
2450
2451
2452
2453
2454
2455
2456
2457
2458
2459
2460
2461
2462
2463
2464
2465
2466
2467
2468
2469
2470
2471
2472
2473
2474
2475
2476
2477
2478
2479
2480
2481
2482
2483
2484
2485
2486
2487
2488
2489
2490
2491
2492
2493
2494
2495
2496
2497
2498
2499
2500
2501
2502
2503
2504
2505
2506
2507
2508
2509
2510
2511
2512
2513
2514
2515
2516
2517
2518
2519
2520
2521
2522
2523
2524
2525
2526
2527
2528
2529
2530
2531
2532
2533
2534
2535
2536
2537
2538
2539
2540
2541
2542
2543
2544
2545
2546
2547
2548
2549
2550
2551
2552
2553
2554
2555
2556
2557
2558
2559
2560
2561
2562
2563
2564
2565
2566
2567
2568
2569
2570
2571
2572
2573
2574
2575
2576
2577
2578
2579
2580
2581
2582
2583
2584
2585
2586
2587
2588
2589
2590
2591
2592
2593
2594
2595
2596
2597
2598
2599
2600
2601
2602
2603
2604
2605
2606
2607
2608
2609
2610
261
```

- **Alias :**

Alias is a scalar data type for a variable that can save a single value and self-define the data type.

Example:

```
TYPE <Alias Name> : STRING(20); END_TYPE
```

- **Union :**

Union is a data structure that contains different data types. All components have the same amount of memory.

Syntax:

```
TYPE <Union Name>:
```

```
UNION
```

```
    <Variable Declaration 1>
```

```
    ...
```

```
    <Variable Declaration n>
```

```
END_UNION
```

```
END_TYPE
```

Example:

```
TYPE DUT_Union :  
UNION  
    unVar0:WORD;  
    unVar1:DWORD;  
END_UNION  
END_TYPE
```

4.4 Task

4.4.1 Task Configuration

You define one or more tasks for controlling and executing the program blocks (POUs) in the PLC. You define a task with a name, a priority, and a type, which determines which condition triggers the start of the task. You can define this condition either by time (cyclic-interval, freewheeling) or by the occurrence of an internal or external event to process the task.

A task calls one or more program blocks (POUs). With the combination of priority and condition, you define the order in which the tasks are processed. You can configure a watchdog for each task.

Rules for the processing order of the defined tasks:

- If the task condition is satisfied, then the system processes the task.
- If several tasks satisfy the condition for processing at the same time, then the system processes the tasks with the highest priority first.
- If several tasks with the same priority level satisfy the condition for processing at the same time, then the system processes the longest waiting task first.
- The program calls are processed in the order they appear in the configuration dialog of the task.
- If a called program has the same name in the device tree of the application and in a library or project-global in the POU window, then the application program is used.

Note: Set the priority level from 0 to 31. If the set number is closer to 0, it has higher priority.

4.4.1.1 Task Types

There are five types of task types:

- **Cyclic Task :**
The system processes the task in cycles. The cycle time of the task is defined in the input field Interval.
- **Event Task :**
The system starts processing the Event Task as soon as the global variable defined in the input field Event contains a rising edge.
- **Freewheeling Task :**
The system starts processing the Freewheeling Task again automatically in a continuous loop at program start and at the end of a complete pass.
- **Status Task :**
The system starts Status Task processing as soon as the variable defined in the Event input field yields the Boolean value TRUE.

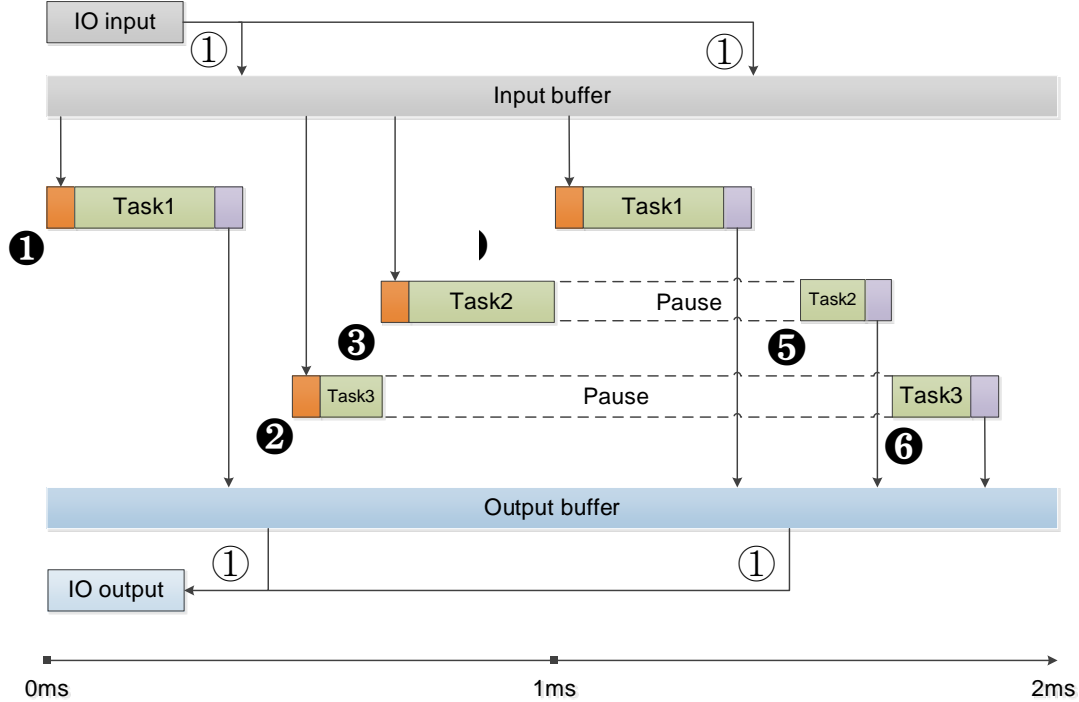
4.4.1.2 Bus Cycle Task

If the task condition is satisfied, then the system processes the task.

Set the priority level from 0 to 31. If the set number is closer to 0, it has higher priority.

The system processes the task in the order of Task Group in Task Configuration.

Behavior of the bus cycle



① Bus cycle

Task 1: Priority = 1, Bus cycle Task, Cyclic Task

Task 2: Priority = 3, Event Task

Task 3: Priority = 5, Freewheeling Task

① The condition for starting Task 1 is met; Task 1 starts.

② Task 1 completes and the I/O data from buffer is exchanged with the I/O channel (physical hardware.) Task 3 starts.

③ The condition for starting Task 2 is met and Task 2 has higher priority than Task 3 does. Thus Task 2 starts and Task 3 halts.

④ The condition for starting Task 1 is met and Task 1 has higher priority than Task 2 does. Thus Task 3 starts and Task 4 halts.

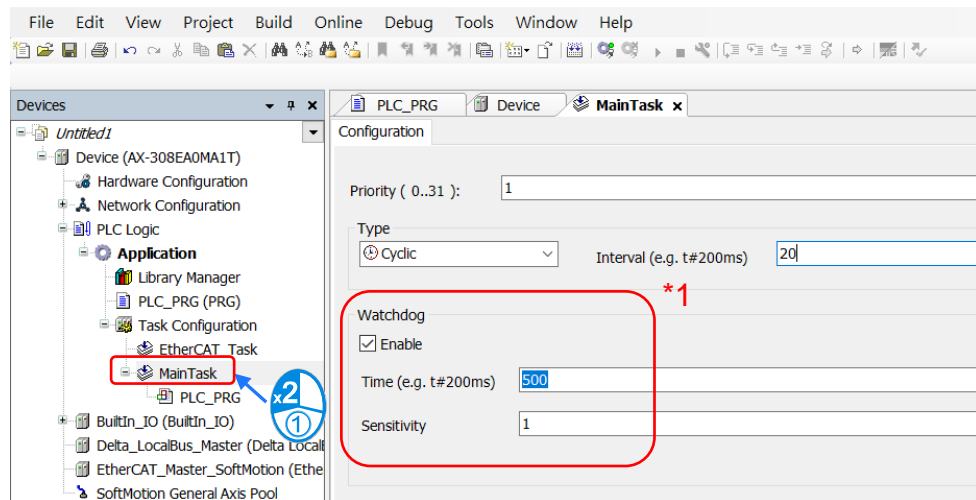
⑤ Task 1 completes and the I/O data from buffer is exchanged with the I/O channel (physical hardware.) Task 2 starts again.

⑥ Task 2 completes and the Task 3 starts again.

Note ①: The messages are normally sent on the bus in this task. Other tasks copy only the I/O data from an internal buffer that is exchanged only with the physical hardware in the bus cycle task.

4.4.1.3 Watchdog

If the task exceeds the time set for the watchdog, then the task is halted with an error status.



- Several consecutive timeouts:
Sensitivity: 0, watchdog timeout = time *1
Sensitivity: n, watchdog timeout = time *n

4.4.1.4 Motion Instructions for Types of Tasks

Here is the table of motion instructions for different task types. “V” means the motion instruction can be executed for the task type.

- Synchronization axes

Classification	Instruction Name	Task Type		
		Cyclic	Freewheeling	Bus Cycle EtherCAT
Motion Control Function Blocks	MC_Home			V
	MC_Stop			V
	MC_Halt			V
	MC_MoveAbsolute			V
	MC_MoveRelative			V
	MC_MoveAdditive			V
	MC_MoveSuperImposed			V
	MC_CamIn			V
	MC_CamOut			V
	MC_MoveVelocity			V
	MC_PositionProfile			V
	MC_VelocityProfile			V
	MC_AccelerationProfile			V
	MC_Jog			V
	MC_GearIn			V
	MC_GearOut			V
	MC_GearInPos			V
	MC_Phasing			V
	DMC_TorqueControl			V
	DMC_VelocityControl			V
	DMC_MoveLinearAbsolute			V
	DMC_MoveLinearRelative			V
	DMC_MoveCircularAbsolute			V
	DMC_MoveCircularRelative			V
	DMC_GroupStop			V
	DMC_GroupHalt			V
	DMC_Home_P			V
Instructions for Management	MC_Power	V	V	V
	MC_SetPosition	V	V	V
	MC_ReadParameter	V	V	V
	MC_WriteParameter	V	V	V
	MC_ReadBoolParameter	V	V	V
	MC_WriteBoolParameter	V	V	V
	MC_ReadActualPosition	V	V	V
	MC_ReadActualVelocity	V	V	V
	MC_ReadActualTorque	V	V	V
	MC_Reset	V	V	V
	MC_ReadStatus	V	V	V
	MC_ReadAxisError	V	V	V

Classification	Instruction Name	Task Type		
		Cyclic	Freewheeling	Bus Cycle EtherCAT
	MC_CamTableSelect	V	V	V
	MC_TouchProbe	V	V	V
	MC_AbortTrigger	V	V	V
	MC_DigitalCamSwitch	V	V	V
	DMC_GroupEnable	V	V	V
	DMC_GroupDisable	V	V	V
	DMC_GroupReadStatus	V	V	V
	DMC_GroupReadError	V	V	V
	DMC_GroupReset	V	V	V
	DMC_CamReadTappetStatus	V	V	V
	DMC_CamReadTappetValue	V	V	V
	DMC_CamWriteTappetValue	V	V	V
	DMC_CamAddTappet	V	V	V
	DMC_CamDeleteTappet	V	V	V
	DMC_CamReadPoint	V	V	V
	DMC_CamWritePoint	V	V	V
	DMC_ChangeMechanismGearRation	V	V	V
	DMC_ReadMotionState	V	V	V

Note: it is suggested a motion function block should be created within a bus cycle EtherCAT to avoid inconsistent movement.

● **Positioning axes**

Classification	Instruction Name	Task Type		
		Cyclic	Freewheeling	Bus Cycle EtherCAT
Motion Control Function Blocks	MC_Halt_DML	V	V	V
	MC_Home_DML	V	V	V
	MC_MoveAbsolute_DML	V	V	V
	MC_MoveRelative_DML	V	V	V
	MC_MoveVelocity_DML	V	V	V
	MC_Stop_DML	V	V	V
Instructions for Management	MC_Power_DML	V	V	V
	MC_ReadBoolParameter_DML	V	V	V
	MC_ReadParameter_DML	V	V	V
	MC_ReadStatus_DML	V	V	V
	MC_Reset_DML	V	V	V
	MC_WriteBoolParameter_DML	V	V	V
	MC_WriteBoolParameter_DML	V	V	V
	MC_ChangeAxisConfig_DML	V	V	V
	MC_ReinitDrive_DML	V	V	V
	MC_SetOpmode_DML	V	V	V
	MC_StartupDrive_DML	V	V	V

MEMO


Chapter 5 Hardware Configuration

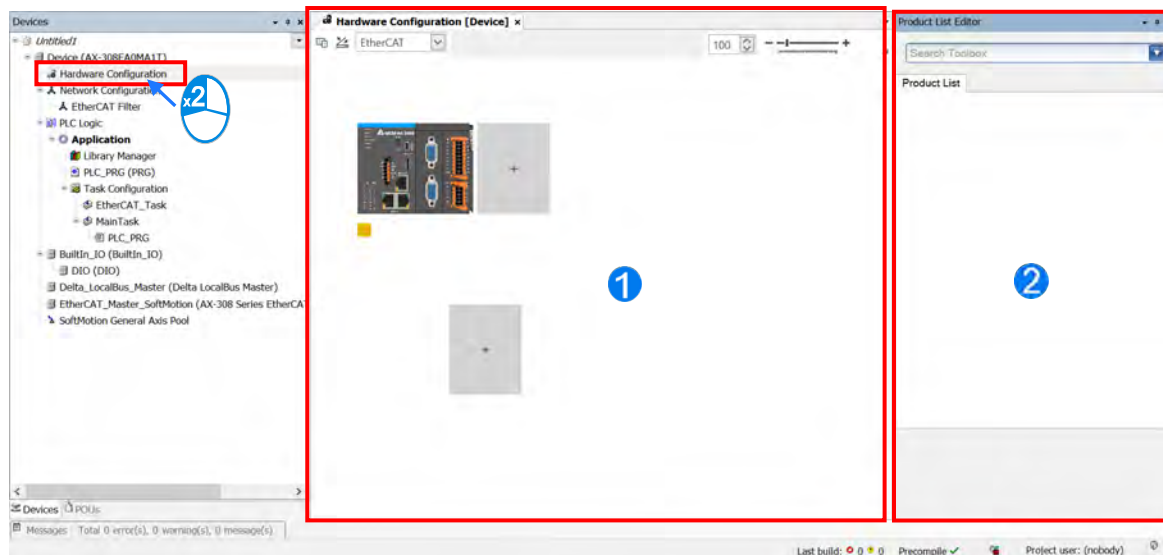
Table of Contents

5.1 Environment of Hardware Configuration.....	5-2
5.2. Add a Module	5-5
5.3 Remove a Module.....	5-7
5.4 Copy and Paste a Module	5-9
5.4.1 Copy a Module.....	5-9
5.4.2 Paste a Module	5-10
5.5 Cut and Paste a Module	5-11
5.5.1 Cut a Module	5-11
5.5.2 Paste a Module	5-12

Hardware Configuration is the tools in DIADesign-AX for hardware configuration. Its functions include setting parameters for CPU and modules. This chapter will introduce the abovementioned functions.


5.1 Environment of Hardware Configuration


Double-click  **Hardware Configuration** on the Device section to open the Hardware Configure (Device) window as the image shown below.

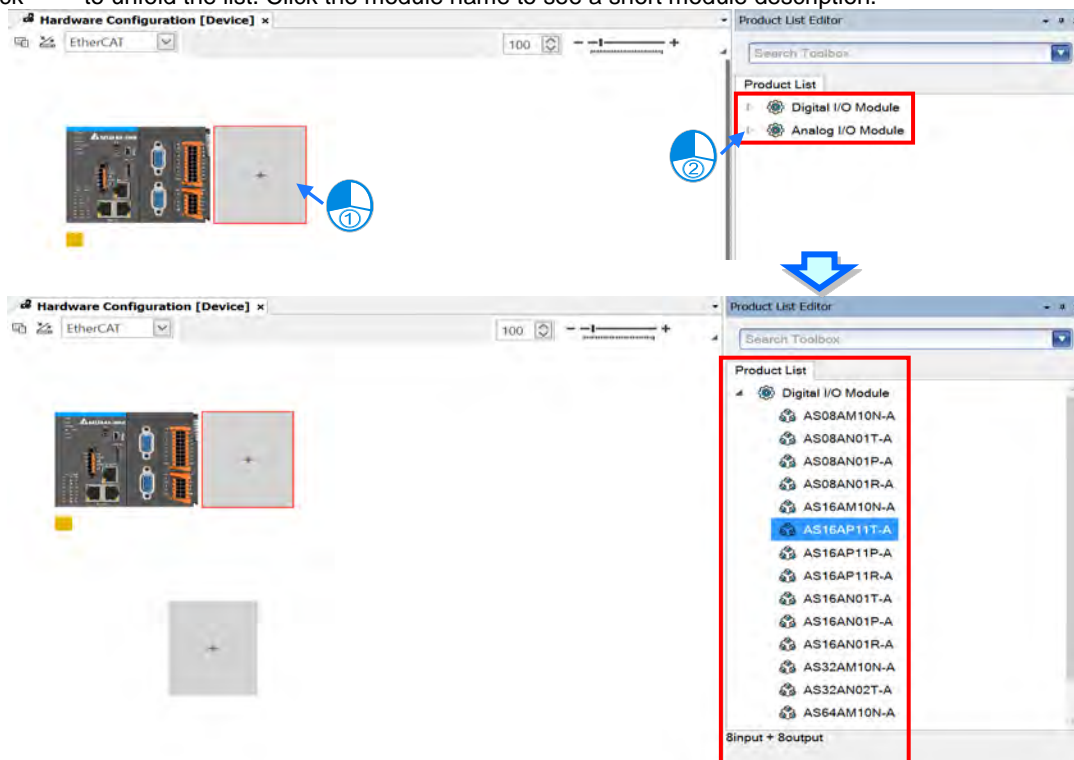



① Hardware Configuration (Device): This is the main work area for system configuration and settings.

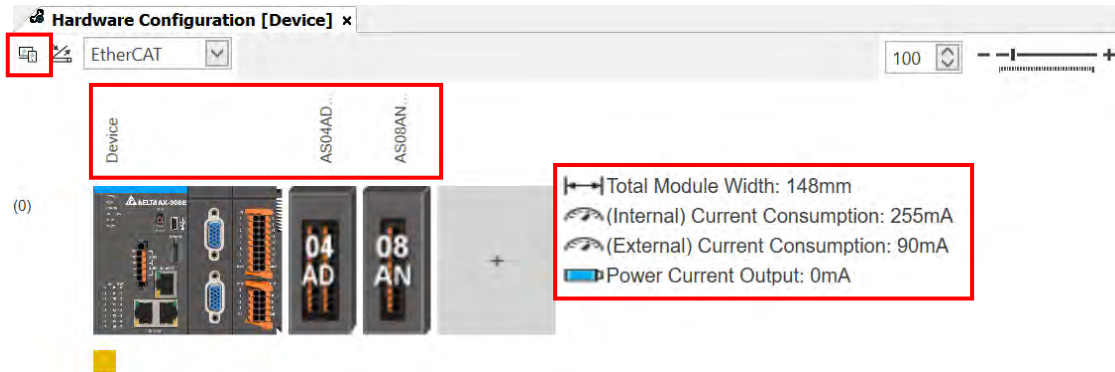
② Product List Editor: Here listed out all supported modules for the selected CPU.

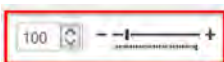
Click  to see all the supported modules on the right window (Product List Editor).

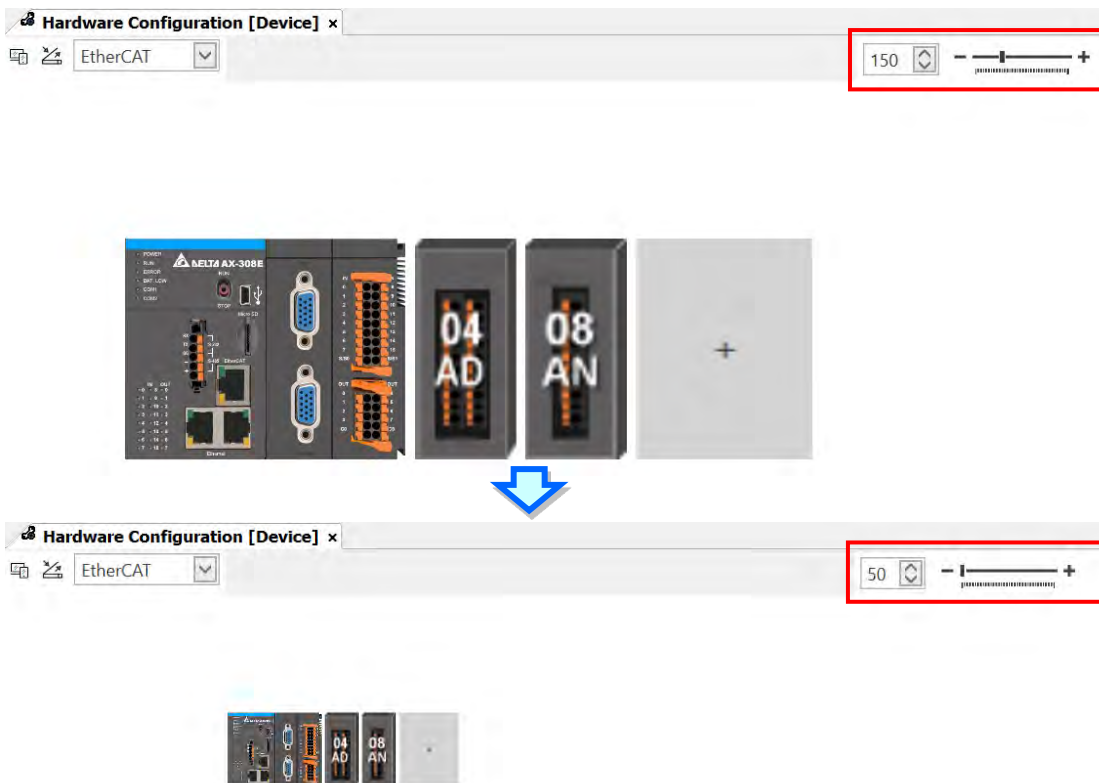
Click  to unfold the list. Click the module name to see a short module description.



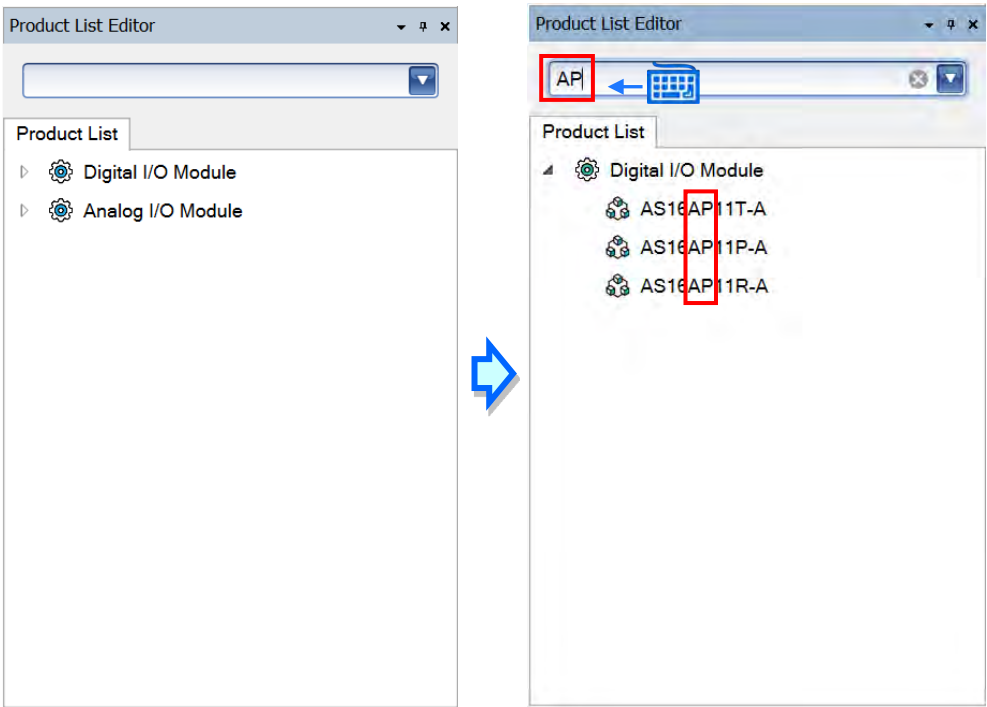
Click  on the upper-left corner to see the current configurations. For example, the width of the total connected module, the current consumption and power current output.



Use  on the upper-right corner to rearrange the device image for better viewing experience and easier operation.



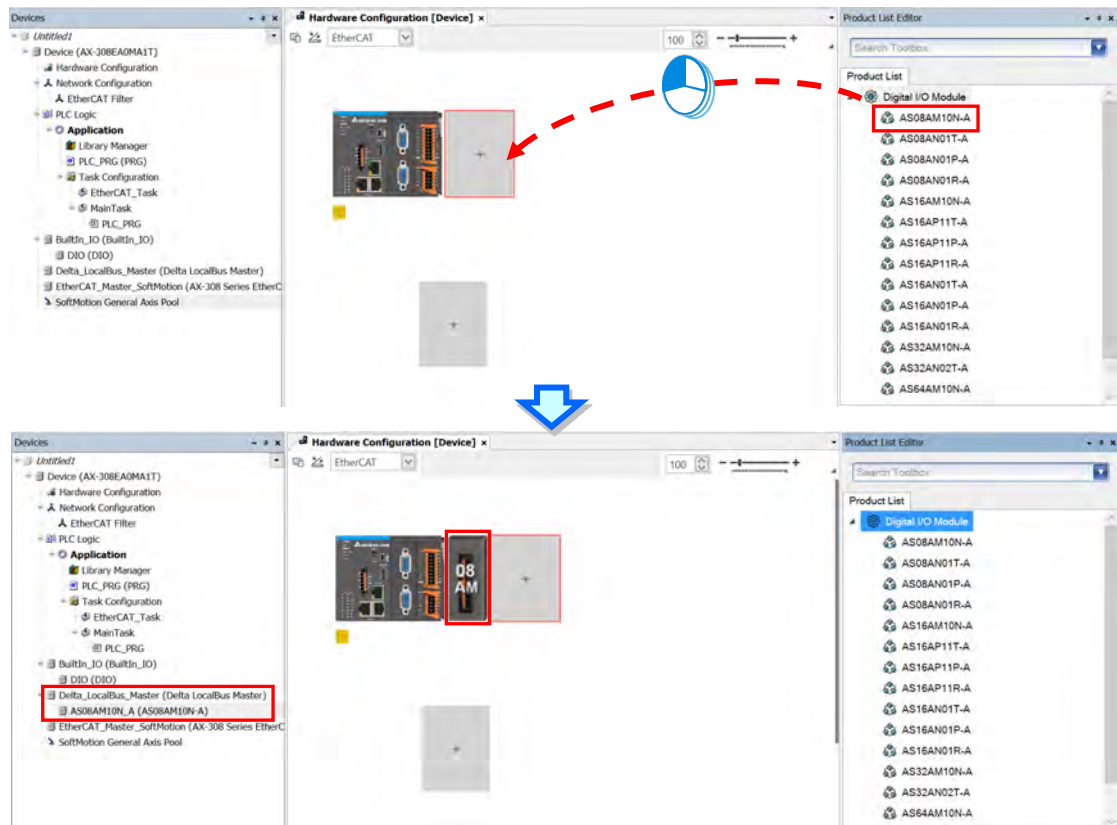
Enter a key word in the **Search Toolbox** on the right-side window and press “Enter” button on your keyboard to search for the matched modules.




5.2. Add a Module

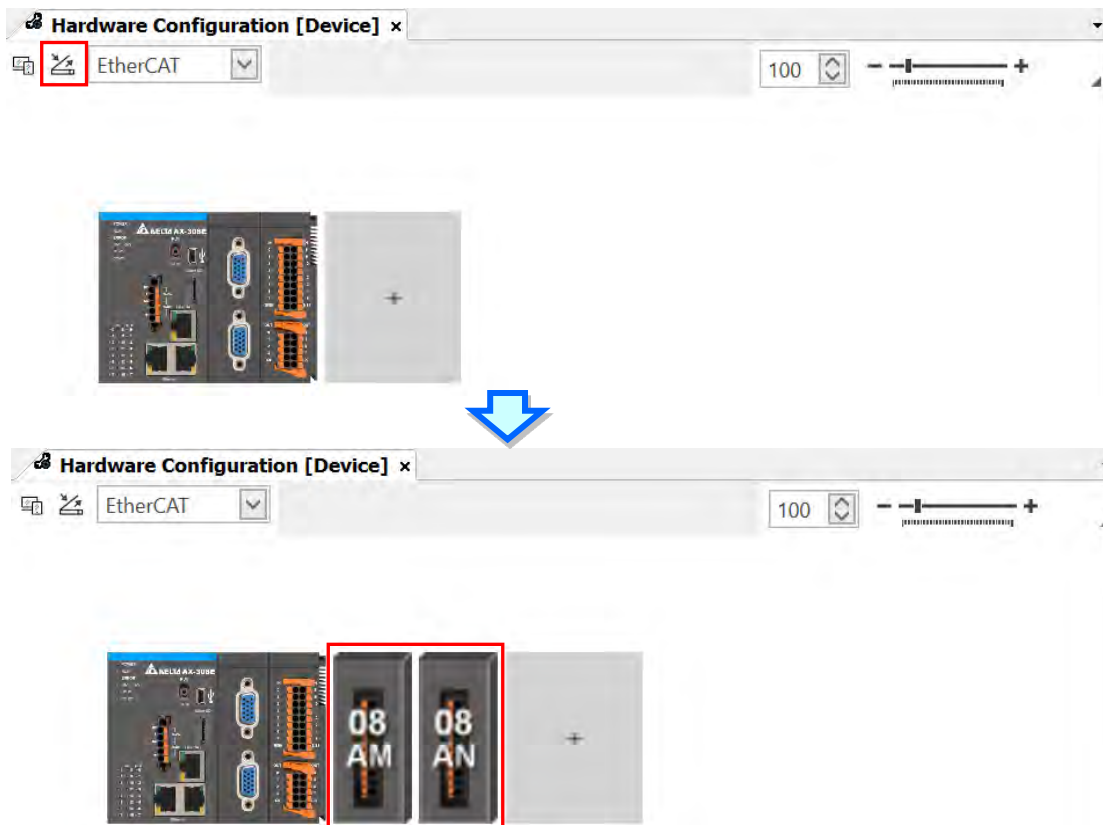
● Method 1

With AX-3 Series PLC backplaneless design, the extension module can install on the right-side of AX-3 Series PLC directly. Double-click or drag and drop the extension module that you'd like to add from the Product List. Newly added extension modules will appear on the right-side of the AX-3 Series PLC. And the device names will also show up on the left-side under Delta_LocalBus_Master.



- **Method 2**

If the AX-3 Series PLC and its connected extension module are powered on and the gateway is correctly set, you can use the icon  to scan and add the modules in. Newly added extension modules will appear on the right-side of the AX-3 Series PLC. And the device names will also show up on the left-side under Delta_LocalBus_Master.

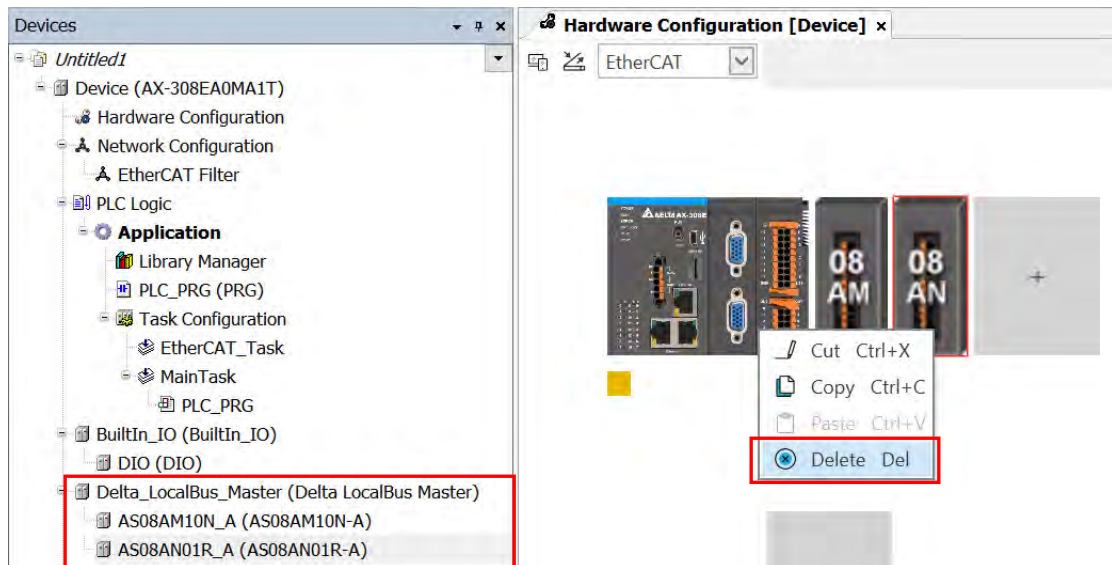


5.3 Remove a Module

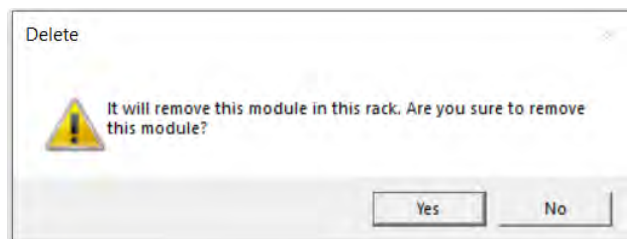
You cannot remove a CPU. You can only delete extension modules.

● Method 1

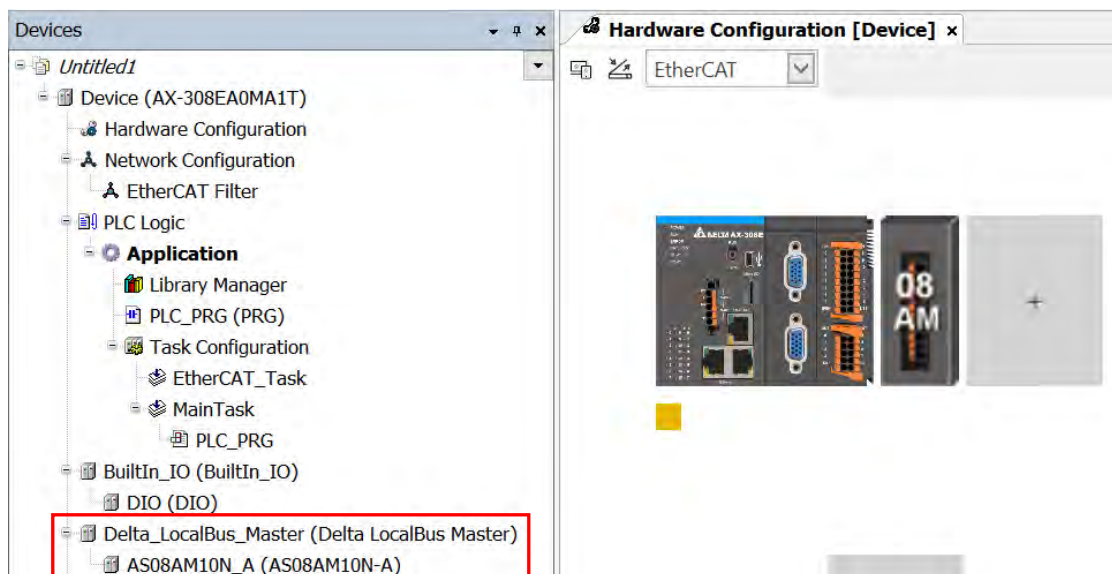
Right-click the module image that you'd like to remove to open the context menu and click the option **Delete** or use the Delete Button on your keyboard to remove the module.



After you click **Delete**, a confirmation shows up. Click **Yes** to delete the module.

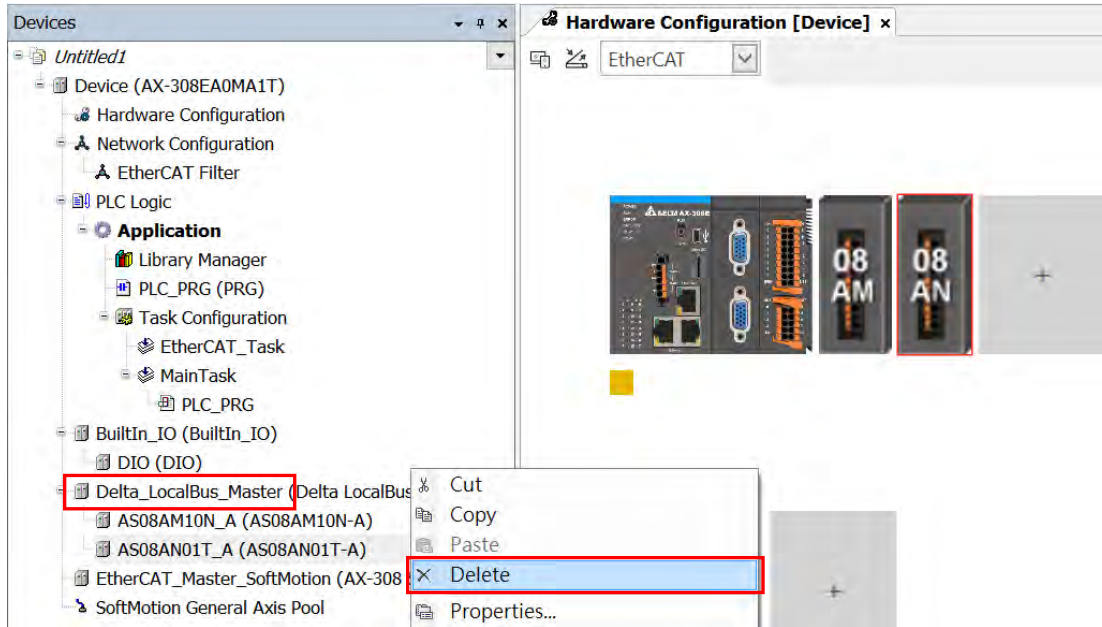


And the device names will also be removed from the left-side under Delta_LocalBus_Master.



● Method 2

Right-click the device name under Delta_LocalBus_Master that you'd like to remove to open the context menu and click the option **Delete** or use the Delete Button on your keyboard to remove the module. After that the device image will also be removed from the editing area.



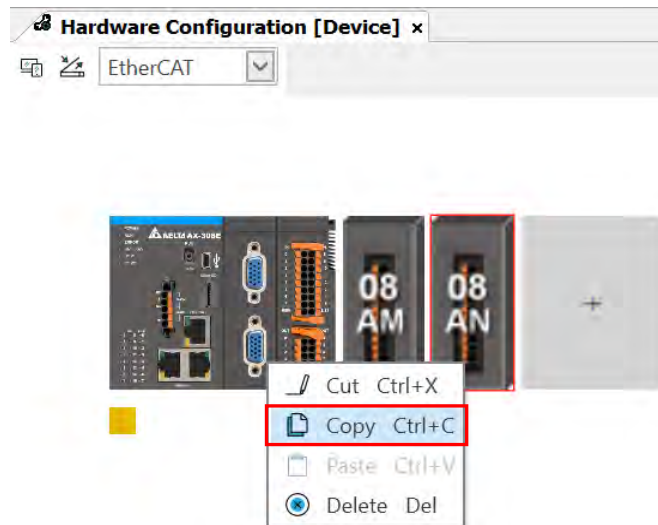
5.4 Copy and Paste a Module

You cannot use copy and paste on a CPU. You can only use copy and paste on extension modules.

5.4.1 Copy a Module

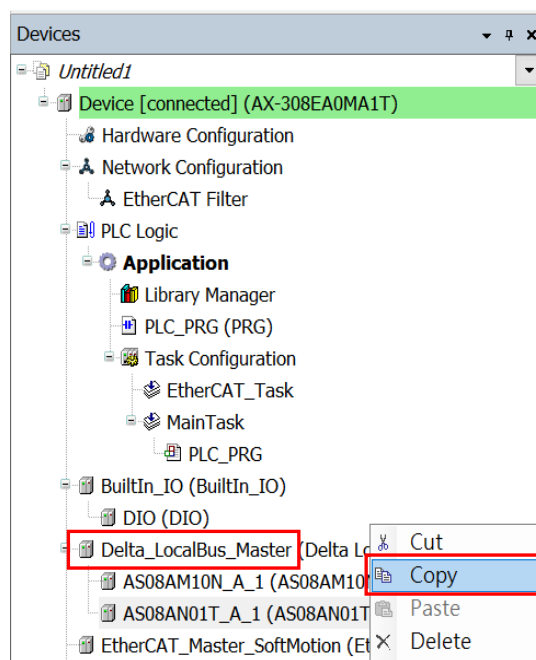
- **Method 1**

Right-click the module image that you'd like to copy to open the context menu and click the option **Copy** to duplicate the module.



- **Method 2**

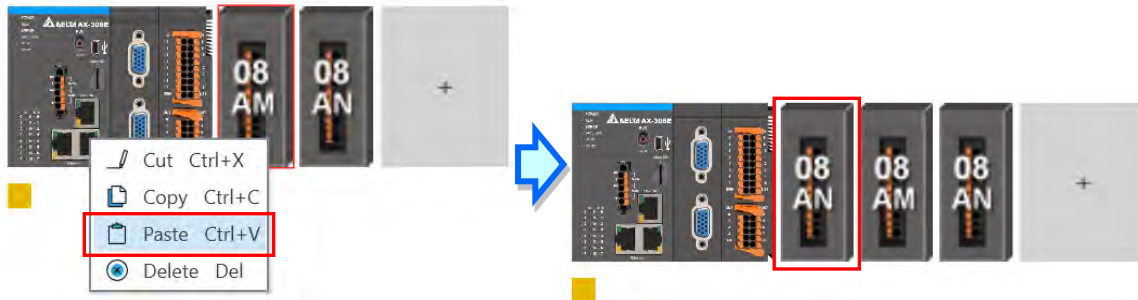
Right-click the device name under Delta_LocalBus_Master that you'd like to copy to open the context menu and click the option **Copy** to copy the module.



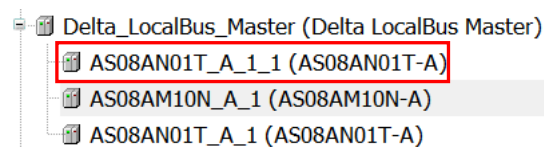
5.4.2 Paste a Module

● Method 1

You can place the module between modules. Right-click where you'd like to paste the module to open the context menu and click the option **Paste** to place the module on the left of the module you had clicked. Or you can place the module at the end by right-clicking the + to paste the copied module there.

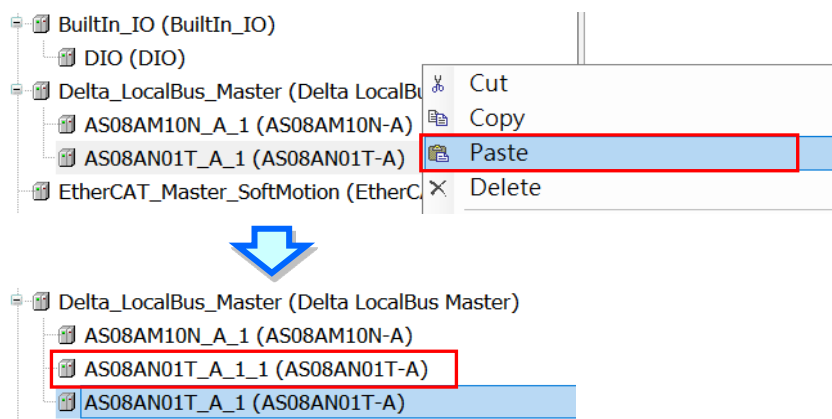


And the device names will also be updated on the left-side under Delta_LocalBus_Master.



● Method 2

You can place the module between modules. Right-click where you'd like to paste the module under Delta_LocalBus_Master to open the context menu and click the option **Paste** to place the module above the module you had clicked. Or you can place the module at the end by right-clicking Delta_LocalBus_Master to paste the copied module.



And the module image will also be updated on the editing area.



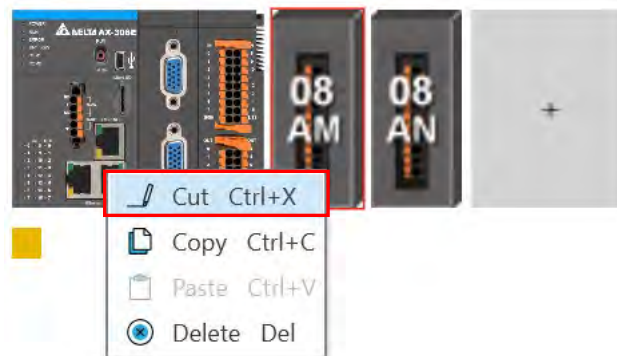
5.5 Cut and Paste a Module

You cannot use cut and paste on a CPU. You can only use cut and paste on extension modules.

5.5.1 Cut a Module

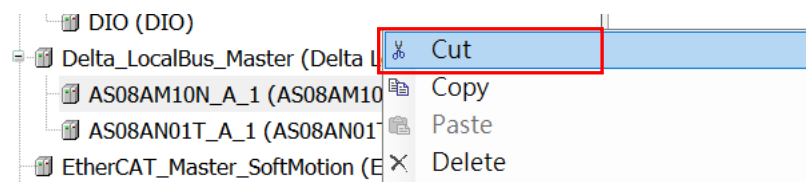
- **Method 1**

Right-click the module image that you'd like to cut to open the context menu and click the option **Cut** to take out the module.



- **Method 2**

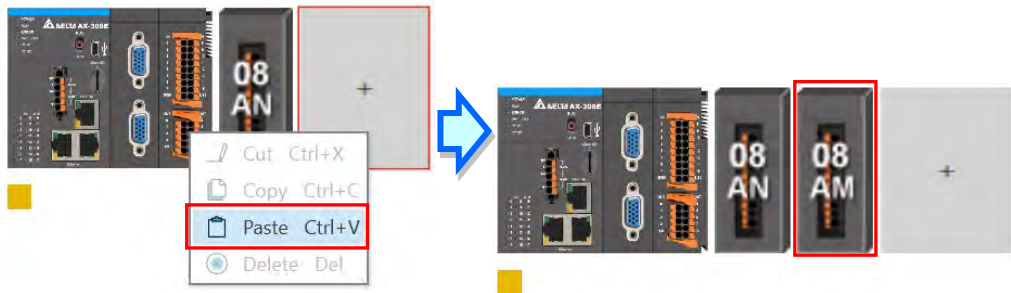
Right-click the device name under Delta_LocalBus_Master that you'd like to cut to open the context menu and click the option **Cut** to take out the module.



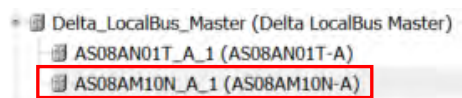
5.5.2 Paste a Module

● Method 1

You can place the module between modules. Right-click where you'd like to paste the module to open the context menu and click the option **Paste** to place the module on the left of the module you had clicked. Or you can place the module at the end by right-clicking the + to paste the copied module there.

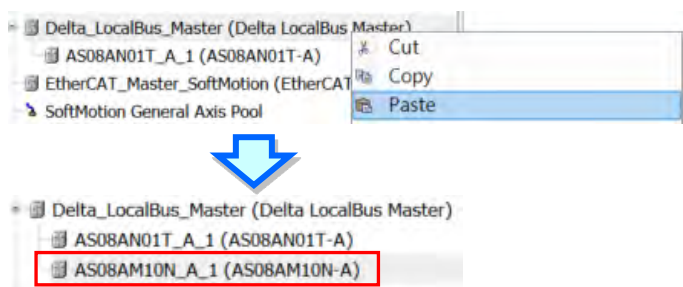


And the device names will also be updated on the left-side under Delta_LocalBus_Master.



● Method 2

You can place the module between modules. Right-click where you'd like to paste the module under Delta_LocalBus_Master to open the context menu and click the option **Paste** to place the module above the module you had clicked. Or you can place the module at the end by right-clicking Delta_LocalBus_Master to paste the copied module.



And the module image will also be updated on the editing area.



Chapter 6 Network Configuration

Table of Contents

6.1	Network Configuration	6-2
6.1.1	Introduction	6-2
6.1.2	Basic Knowledge.....	6-3
6.1.3	Creating a Network Topology.....	6-5


6.1 Network Configuration

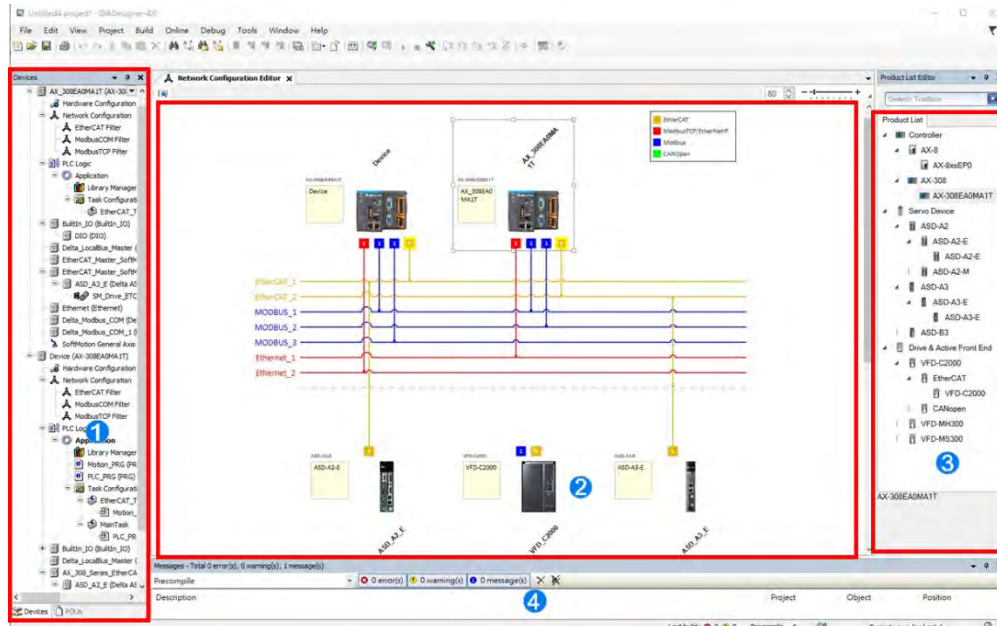
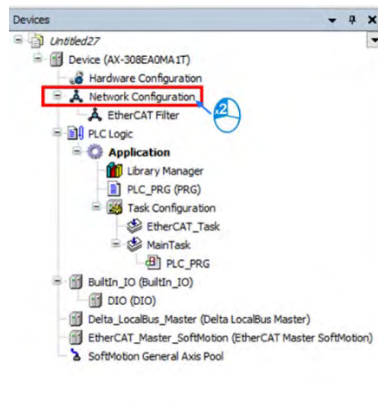
DIADesigner-AX provides a Network Configuration tool for users to configure the network in a project. Detailed network setting information will be covered in the following sections.

6.1.1 Introduction

You can use Network Configuration to:

- (a) create networks such as EtherCAT, Modbus, Ethernet, CANOpen in a project and set up file sending paths
- (b) set up EtherCAT Master
- (c) set up Modbus COM port
- (d) set up Ethernet IP settings

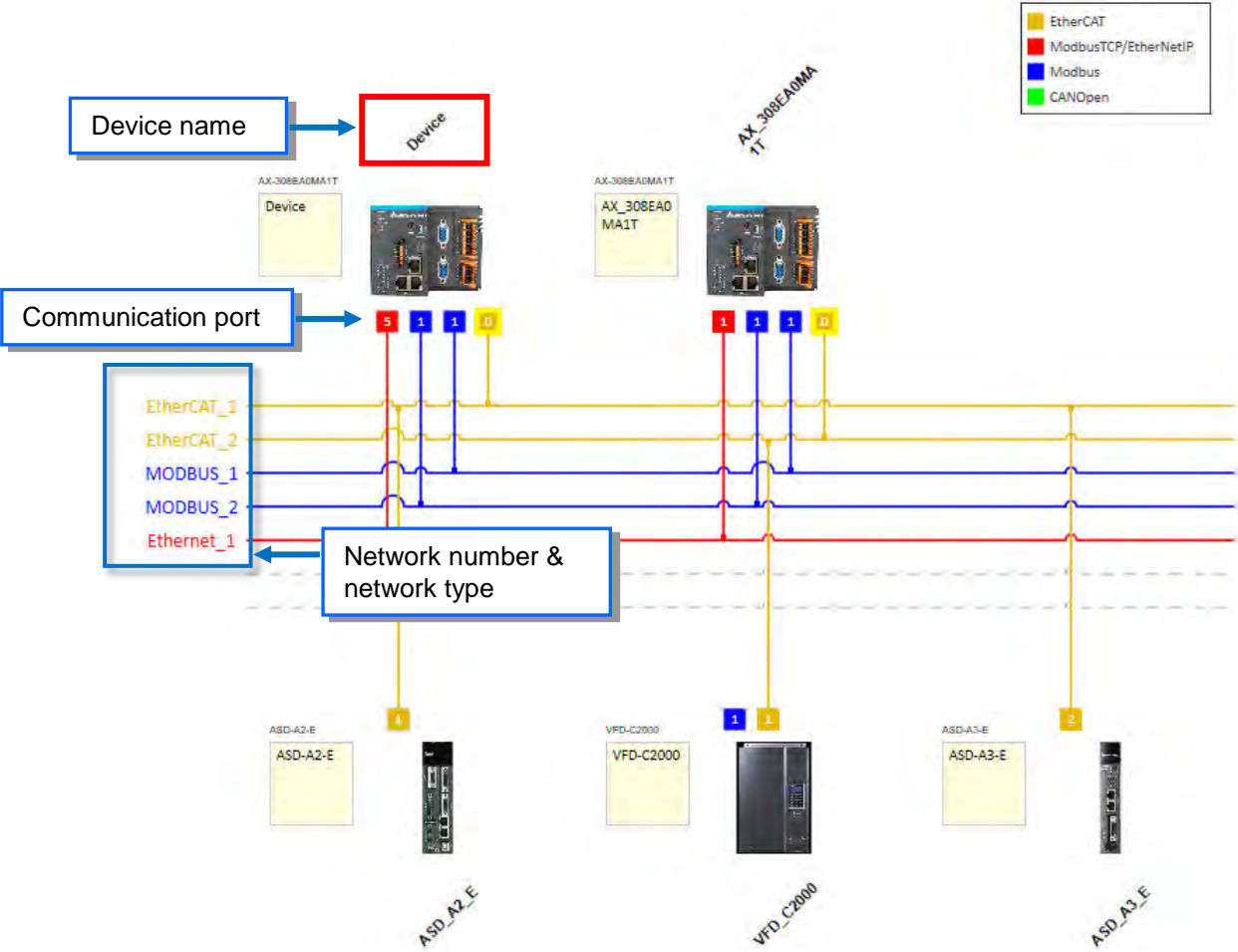
Network Configuration is under the Device tree. You can double-click  **Network Configuration** to open its setting page and start planning a network framework for the project.



- ❶ **Device:** Here shows all the configured devices in a tree view.
- ❷ **Working area:** Here is the main working area for you to create a network framework.
- ❸ **Device list:** Here lists all the available devices in a tree view.
- ❹ **Message display area:** Here displays operational messages.

6.1.2 Basic Knowledge

Before creating networks, you need to have some basic knowledge. Here we provide some basic knowledge in the following sections for you.



● Device and Network

A device is the most basic element in a network. It can be a PLC, a servo, a drive or any device that you defined. Here a network is a collection of devices which are interconnected. Every communication port should be assigned with a network type, such as Modbus, Ethernet, EtherCAT or CANOpen. A physical interface that a device uses to connect to a network is a communication port of the device. If there are more than two ports on a device, the device can connect to different networks.

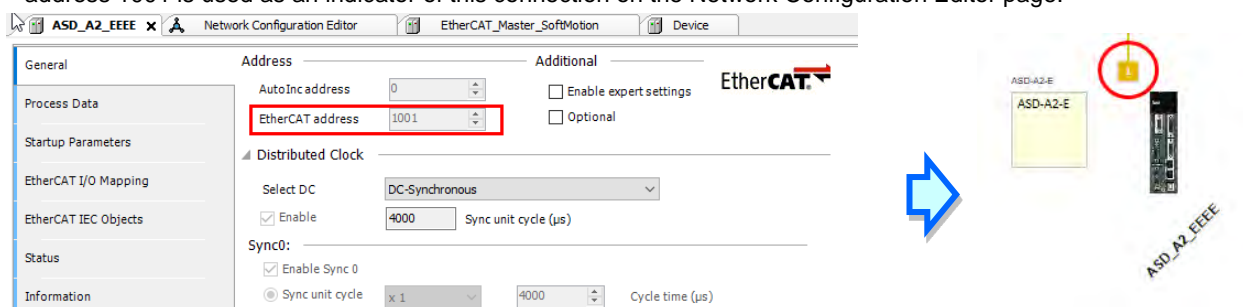
● Device Name

A device name is the identity of the device. You can identify a device in the Device Tree by its name. However it bears little significance on operation.

Network Type and Communication Port

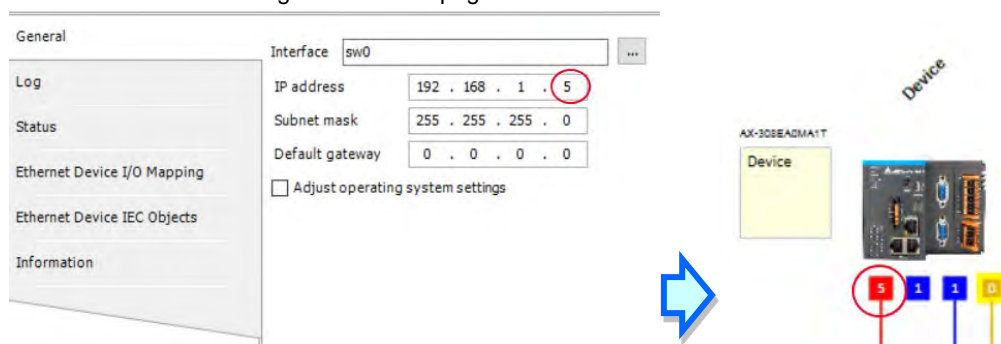
EtherCAT

The orange yellow line indicates the EtherCAT communication. Double-click the Master station node to open the EtherCAT setting page of the Master. The number of Master Station is 0 and that cannot be changed. Double-click the connection of Slave to open the EtherCAT setting page of the Slave. The last digit appeared in the EtherCAT address 1001 is used as an indicator of this connection on the Network Configuration Editor page.



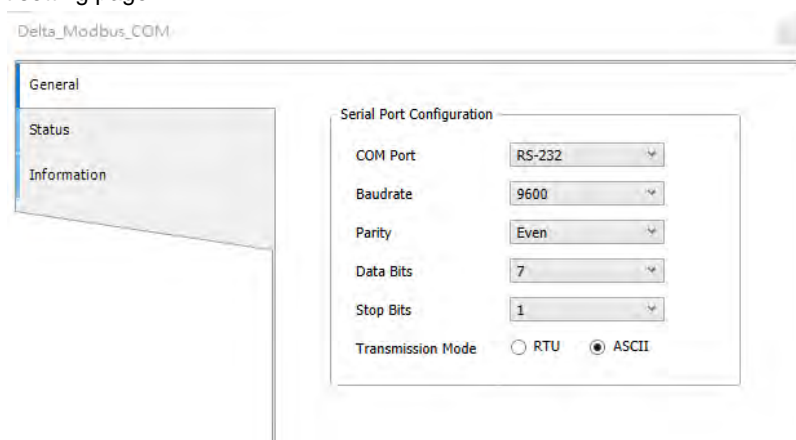
Modbus TCP/EtherNETIP

The blue line indicates the Modbus TCP/EtherNetIP communication. Double-click this line to open its setting page to edit IP addresses. The last digit appeared in the last section of the IP address is used as an indicator of this connection on the Network Configuration Editor page.



Modbus

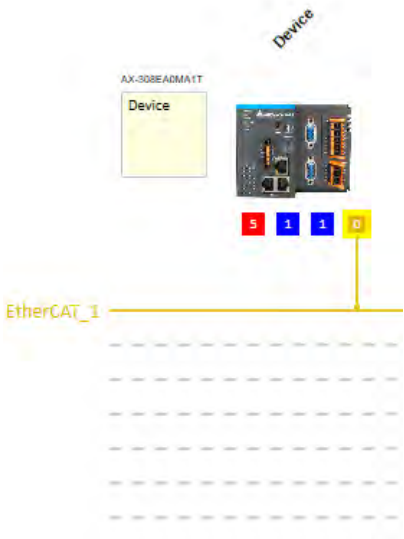
The blue line indicates the Modbus communication (RS-232 / RS-485). Double-click this line to open the Modbus communication port setting page.



6.1.3 Creating a Network Topology

6.1.3.1 Station Nodes

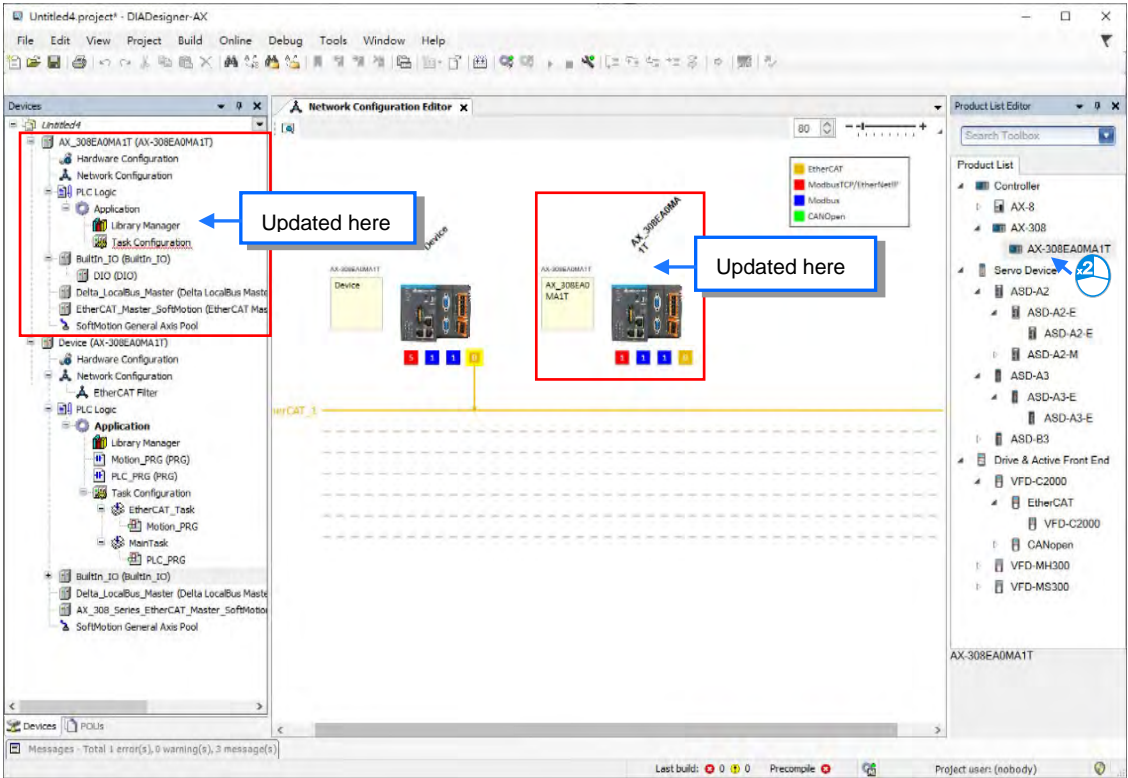
When you open the Network Configuration for the first time, the system creates a graphical representation automatically.



You can use the following methods to add devices including PLCs, servo motors, and drives in the network topology.

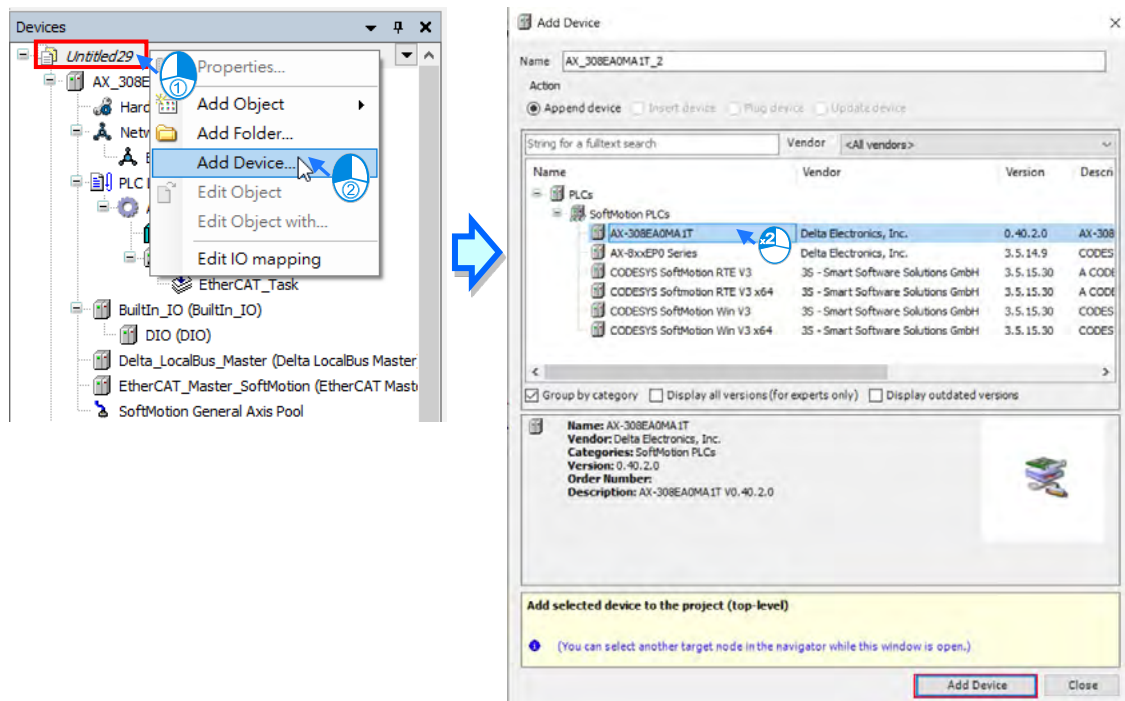
- **Method 1**

Double-click the device that you want to add from the **Product List** on the right. After that you can see the added device is updated in the graphical representation and also on the Device Tree.




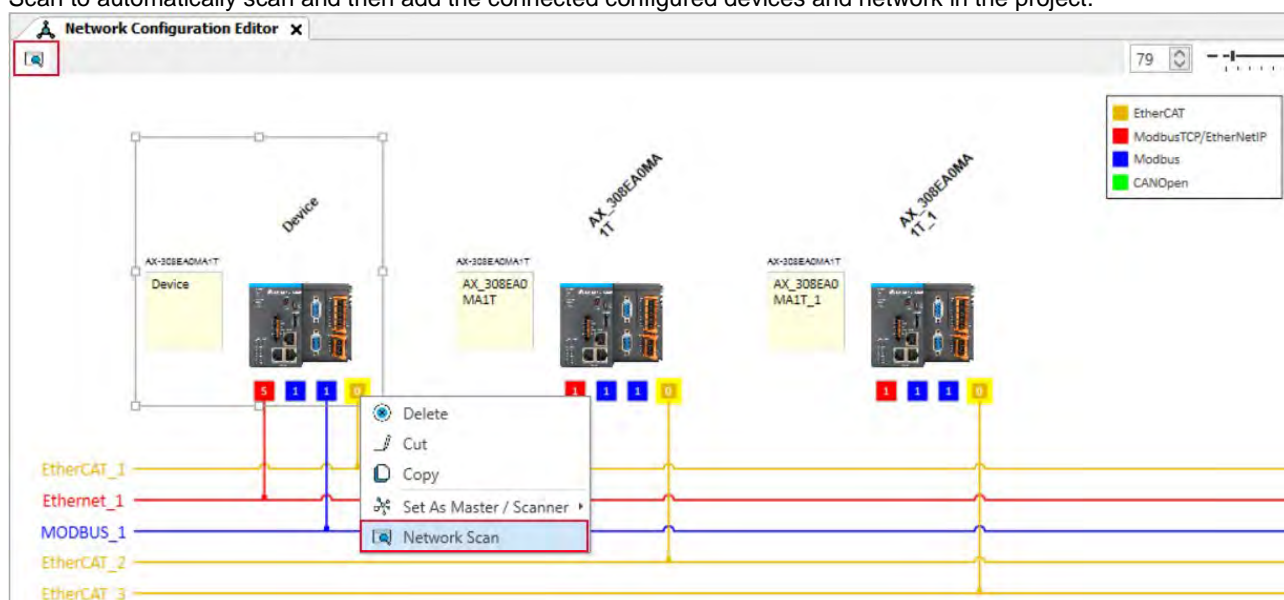
Method 2

Right-click the project name on the Device Tree to bring out the context menu. Double-click **Add Device** on the context menu to open a setting page for adding devices. Double-click the device you'd like to add or click **Add Device** to add the device in.



Method 3

Right-click the device to bring out the context menu and click **Network Scan** or click the icon  for Network Scan to automatically scan and then add the connected configured devices and network in the project.



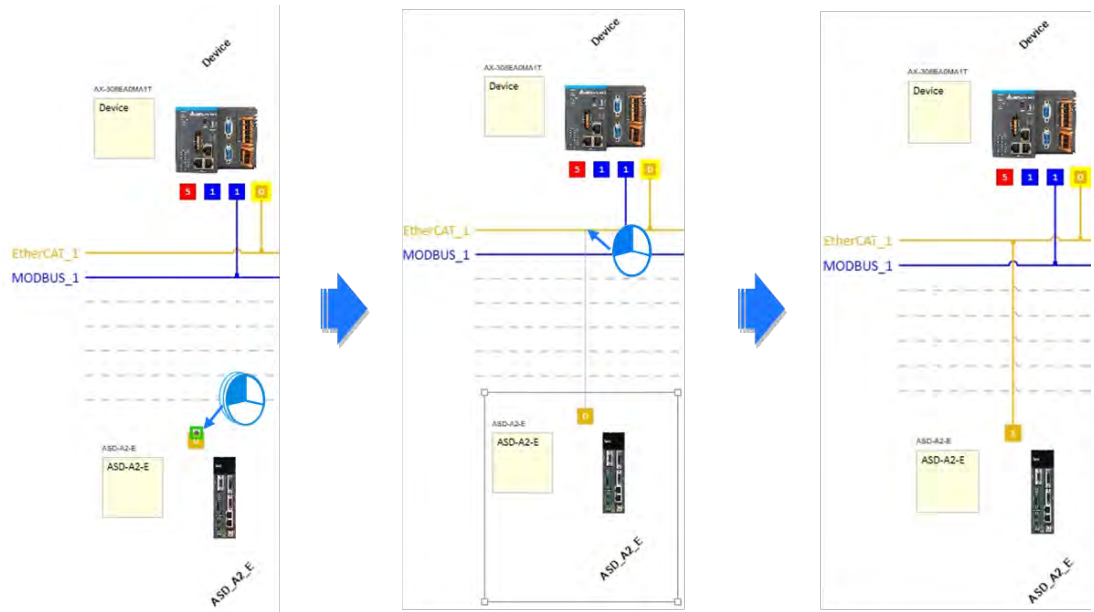
6.1.3.2 Creating a Connection

After creating the station nodes, you can start to crate connections. The network types include Modbus, Ethernet, EtherCAT and CANOpen. Refer to 6.1.2 for more information.

You can use the following methods to add created network connections.

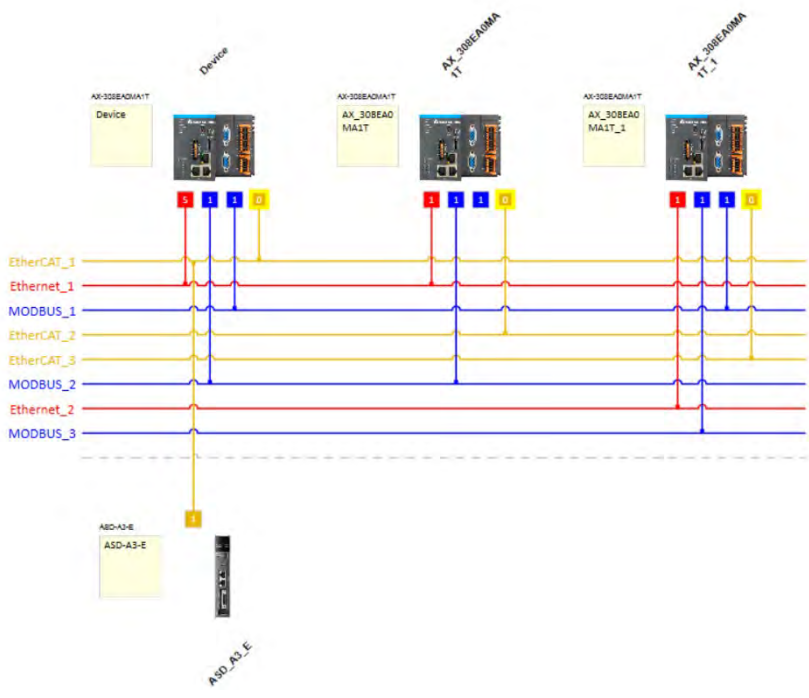
● Method 1

Drag and drop the communication port to the corresponding network type shown in line to create a connection between devices.



● Method 2

Hold the communication port and drag it to the unused dotted line to create a network connection that is the same as the selected network communication type and then a new gray unused dotted line will also be created.



MEMO

Chapter 7 Motion Control Setup & Operation

Table of Contents

7.1	Introduction on Motion Control Instructions	7-4
7.1.1	Motion Control Instructions	7-4
7.1.2	Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions.....	7-4
7.1.3	Categories of Motion Control Instructions.....	7-5
7.2	Creating Motion Control Project.....	7-6
7.2.1	Process Flowchart	7-6
7.2.2	Process for Creating a Project.....	7-7
7.3	Commissioning	7-13
7.3.1	Procedure for Commissioning	7-13
7.3.2	Example of Axis Parameter Settings	7-13
7.3.3	Perform Axes Commissioning	7-15
7.4	Motion Control Device.....	7-18
7.4.1	Overview	7-18
7.4.2	Introduction to Axis.....	7-18
7.4.2.1	About Axis Parameters.....	7-18
7.4.2.2	Axis Application in Program	7-24
7.4.3	Procedure for Single-axis Configuration	7-25
7.4.4	Axis Group Settings.....	7-32
7.4.4.1	Parameters for Axis Group	7-32
7.4.4.2	Using Axis Groups in Program.....	7-34
7.4.5	Procedure for Axis Group Configuration.....	7-35
7.5	Motion Axis Variables	7-40
7.5.1	Variables for Single Axis	7-40
7.5.2	Variables for Axis Group	7-43
7.6	Motion Control Programming.....	7-45
7.6.1	Motion Control Program	7-45
7.6.1.1	Program Architecture and Types in DIADesigner-AX	7-45
7.6.1.2	POU in DIADesigner-AX	7-46
7.6.1.3	Adding POU in DIADesigner-AX.....	7-46
7.6.1.4	PDO Mapping.....	7-48
7.6.2	Axis State Transitions.....	7-49
7.6.2.1	Axis State	7-49
7.6.2.2	Axis Group State.....	7-51
7.6.3	Execution and Status Indication for Motion Control Instructions	7-52
7.6.3.1	Basic rules of Executing Instructions.....	7-53
7.6.3.2	Timing Diagram for Input/Outputs	7-55
7.6.3.3	Repeated Execution Behavior of Single Axis Motion Instructions.....	7-55
7.6.3.4	Multi-execution of Motion Control Instructions	7-56
7.6.3.5	Synchronous Execution Behavior of Motion Instructions	7-56
7.6.4	Position.....	7-62

7.6.4.1	Types of Positions	7-62
7.6.5	CAM Tables and Framework.....	7-62
7.6.5.1	E-CAM Framework	7-62
7.6.5.2	Creating E-CAM	7-63
7.7	Motion Control Functions.....	7-67
7.7.1	System Structure.....	7-67
7.7.2	Single-axis Control.....	7-67
7.7.2.1	Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode	7-67
7.7.2.2	Profile Position Mode	7-68
7.7.2.3	Positioning	7-68
7.7.2.4	Stop Method.....	7-69
7.7.2.5	MC_GearIn.....	7-72
7.7.2.6	MC_GearInPos.....	7-74
7.7.2.7	MC_CamIn	7-75
7.7.3	Velocity Control	7-85
7.7.3.1	CSP Mode	7-85
7.7.3.2	CSV Mode	7-86
7.7.3.3	Profile Velocity Mode	7-86
7.7.4	Torque Control	7-87
7.7.5	Common Functions for Single-axis Control	7-88
7.7.5.1	Command Position.....	7-88
7.7.5.2	Velocity Command.....	7-90
7.7.5.3	Acceleration and Deceleration Command	7-91
7.7.5.4	Jerk Command.....	7-92
7.7.5.5	Axis Direction.....	7-93
7.7.6	Axis Group Control.....	7-95
7.7.6.1	Linear Interpolation.....	7-95
7.7.6.2	Circular Interpolation.....	7-96
7.7.6.3	Group Stop Command	7-98
7.7.7	High-speed IO	7-99
7.7.7.1	IO Configuration.....	7-99
7.7.7.2	DIO Setting	7-100
7.7.7.3	SSI Encoder Setting.....	7-103
7.7.7.4	Pulse Encoder Setting	7-109
7.7.7.5	Capture/Compare Function Setting.....	7-116
7.7.7.6	Pulse Output Function Setting.....	7-122
7.7.7.7	Confirm High Speed IO Errors.....	7-127
7.7.8	Other Features	7-128
7.7.8.1	Change Current Position	7-128
7.7.8.2	Software Limit	7-128
7.7.8.3	Position Lag Setting	7-129
7.7.8.4	Cam Switch Function.....	7-130
7.7.8.5	Position Capture	7-130
7.8	Programming Example	7-132
7.8.1	Device Framework	7-132
7.8.1.1	Utilization	7-132
7.8.1.2	Configuration	7-132
7.8.2	Examples.....	7-132
7.8.2.1	Servo On	7-134
7.8.2.2	Reset and Control Single-axis Error	7-135
7.8.2.3	Control on Instruction Errors	7-138
7.8.2.4	Quick Stop for Single Axes	7-140
7.8.2.5	Home Positioning	7-142
7.8.2.6	Absolute Positioning	7-145

7.8.2.7 Switch CAM Table during CAM Operation.....7-146

7.8.2.8 Perform Master PhaseOffset for CAM7-154

7.8.2.9 Change Current Position in Movement7-162

7.8.2.10 Perform Superimposed during Gear Engagment7-167

7.1 Introduction on Motion Control Instructions

7.1.1 Motion Control Instructions

This manual introduces the elements for motion control programming including devices, symbols and motion control instructions.

Motion control instructions are defined as function blocks (FB) and are used in the program for performing a variety of motion control purposes. The motion control (MC) instructions are developed based on the specifications of PLCopen* motion control function blocks.

This section gives an overview of the motion control instructions for both PLCopen-based function blocks and Delta-defined function blocks. PLCopen defines the program and function block interfaces so as to achieve a standardized motion control programming environment for the languages specified in IEC61131-3. Using PLCopen-based instructions together with Delta-defined instructions reduces the costs for training and support.

Before using the instructions, please be sure that you understand the devices, symbols and the function of instructions sufficiently.

You can also refer to the **Appendices** for a quick reference of the motion control instruction list and error codes.

***Note:**

PLCopen is an organization promoting industrial control based on IEC61131-3, which is an international standard widely adopted for PLC programming. For more information regarding PLCopen, check the official website at: <http://www.plcopen.org/>

7.1.2 Application Notes on Motion Control Instructions

This section explains important specifications and limitations when applying motion control instructions. For detailed information of each instruction in this manual, refer to section 7.6.3 Motion Control Programming.

■ Programming languages for motion control instructions

You can use all programming languages provided by DIADesigner-AX to create, edit, or maintain the program. The supported languages include Ladder Diagram (LD), Sequential Function Chart (SFC), Continuous Function Chart (CFC), Structured Text (ST) and Function Block Diagram (FBD).

For detailed information about the programming languages, refer to **DIADesigner-AX Software Manual**.

7.1.3 Categories of Motion Control Instructions

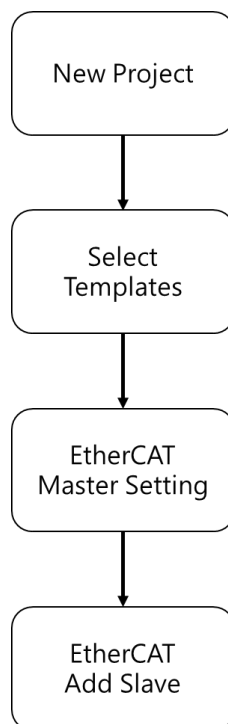
This section explains the categories of motion control instructions. The relating instructions can be found in the libraries of SM3_Basic, DL_MotionControl and DL_MotionControlLight, which the details are set out in **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

Categories	Type	Function Group	Description
Single-axis motion control instructions	Motion	Single axis positioning	"SMC": Motion instructions "MC_": PLCopen motion control instructions "DMC_": Delta motion control instructions "MC_XXX_DML": Delta motion control instructions, used with positioning axis.
		Velocity control on single axis	
		Torque control on single axis	
		Synchronized control on single axis	
	Administrative	Administrative functions on single axis	
Multiple-axis motion control instructions	Motion	Axis group movement functions	Multiple-axes motion
	Administrative	Administrative functions on multiple axes	Multiple-axes configuration, monitoring and reset function.

7.2 Creating Motion Control Project

7.2.1 Process Flowchart

The following flowchart shows the process of creating motion control project and positioning axis.



7.2.2 Process for Creating a Project

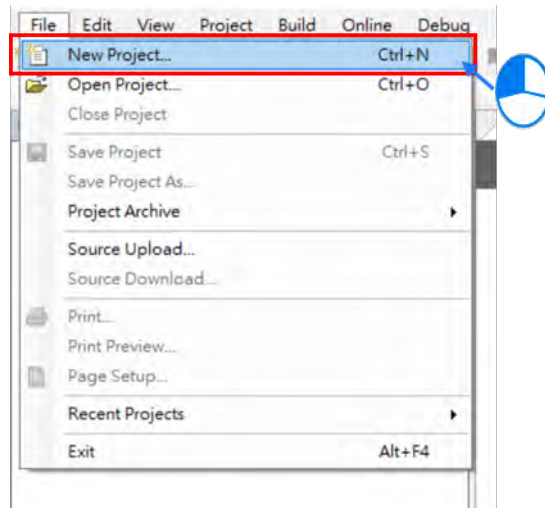
- Create a new project
- Double click on the DIADesigner-AX icon to open the software.



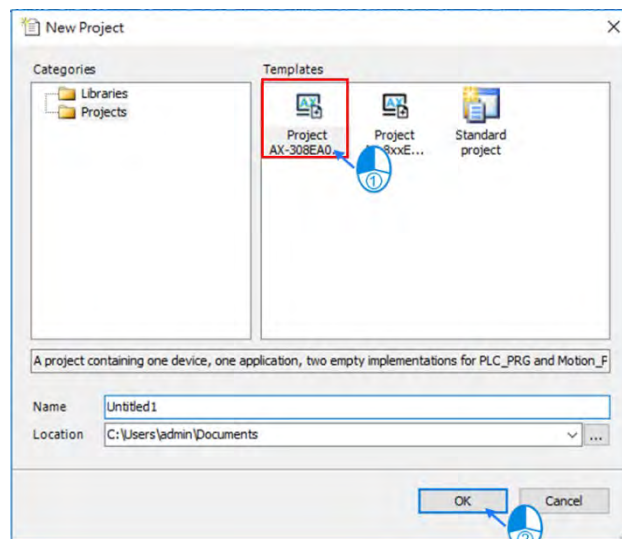
- Click **File**.



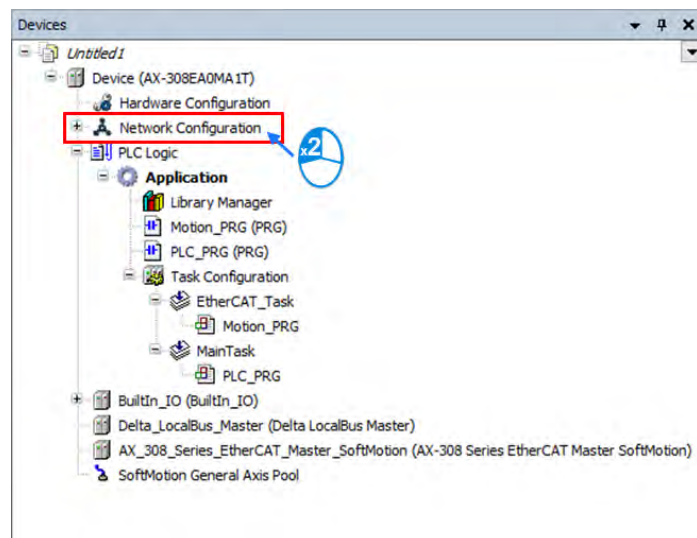
- Choose **New Project**



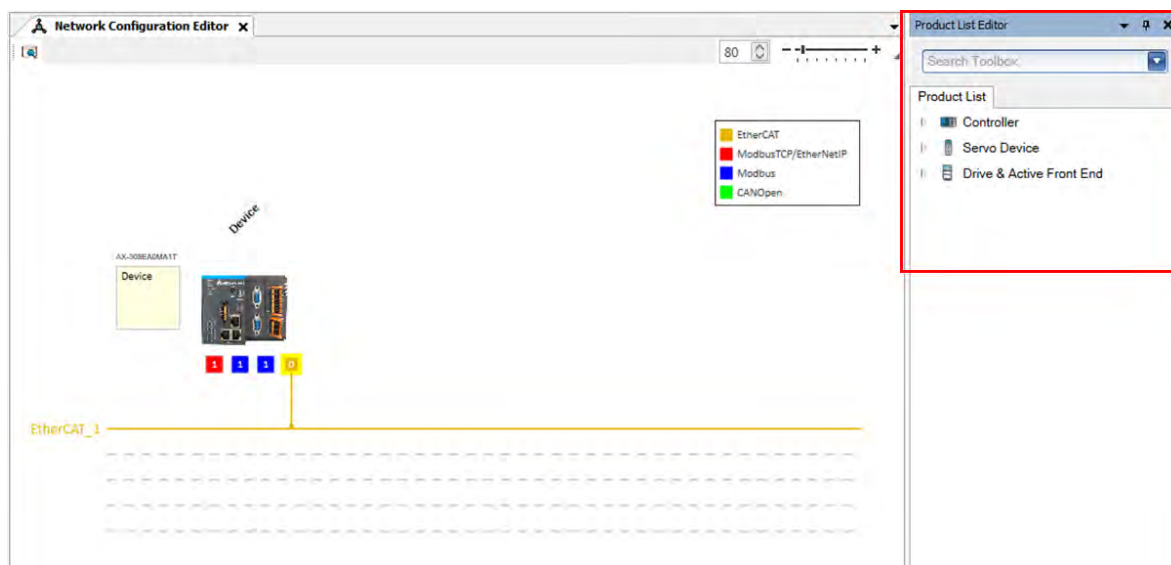
- Type in the fields of **Name** and **Location** in the New Project window, select the desired project and then click **OK**. Model AX-308E is taken as an example to illustrate the process, which the project name is shown as "Project AX-308EA0MA1T".



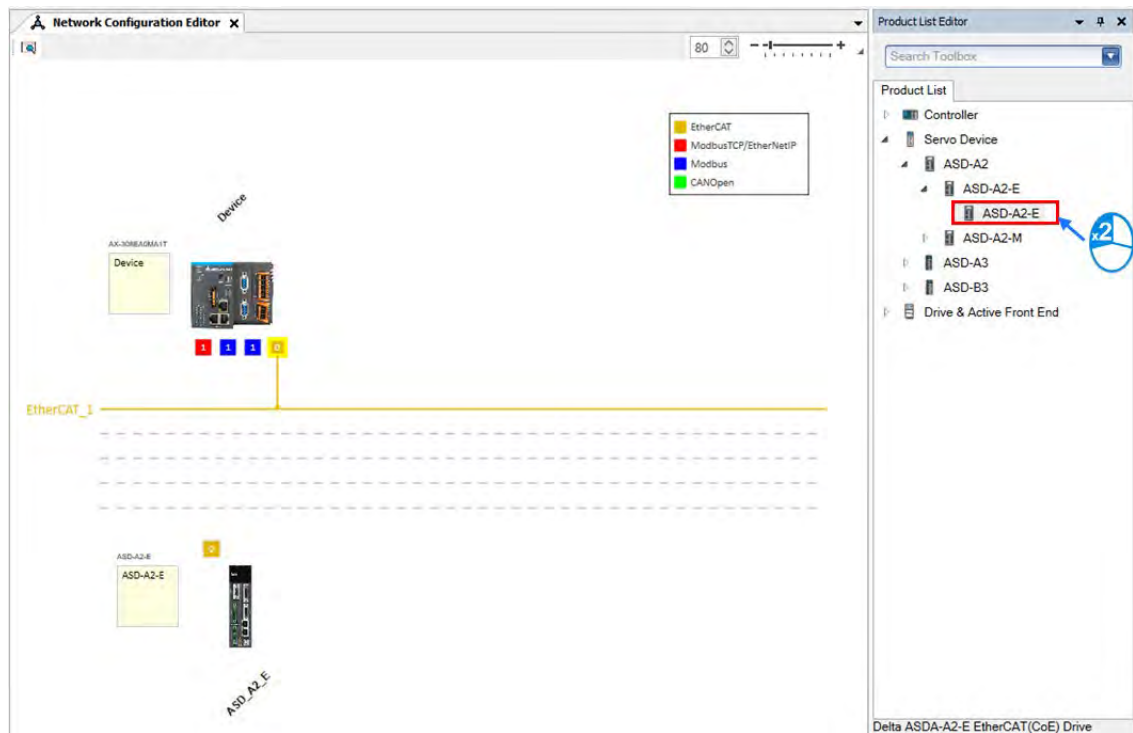
- Double-click on "Network Configuration" to continue with EtherCAT settings.



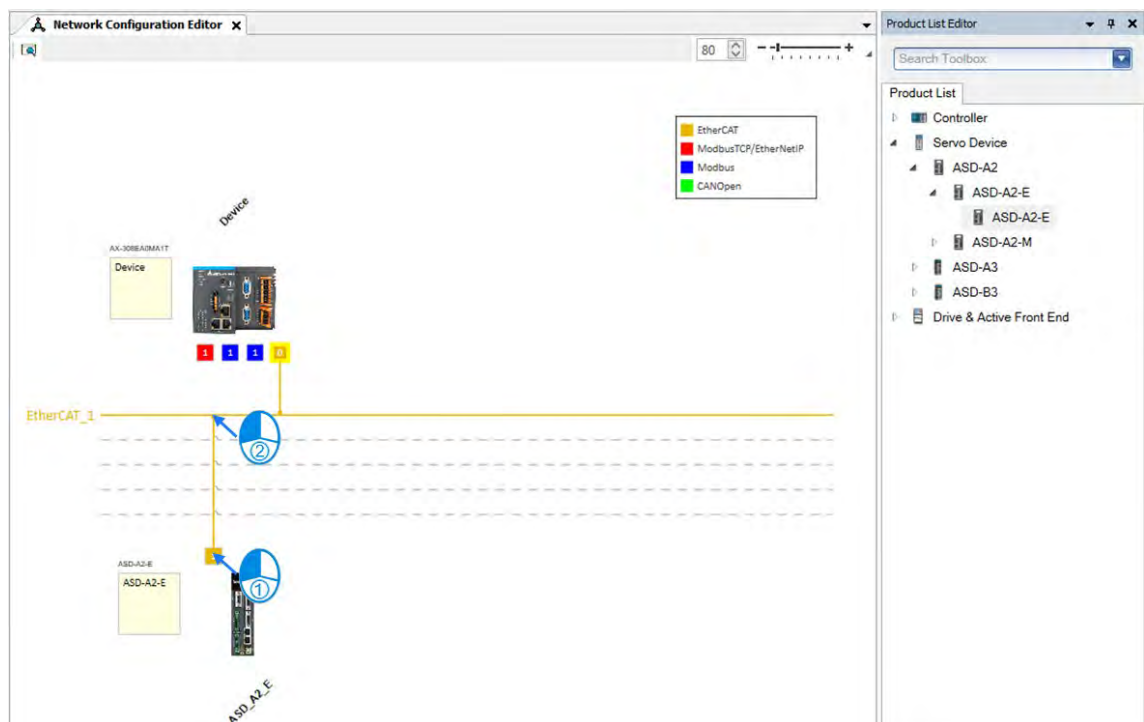
- "Network Configuration Editor" window will pop up after double-click. Find the target slave devices from "Product List Editor" on the right.



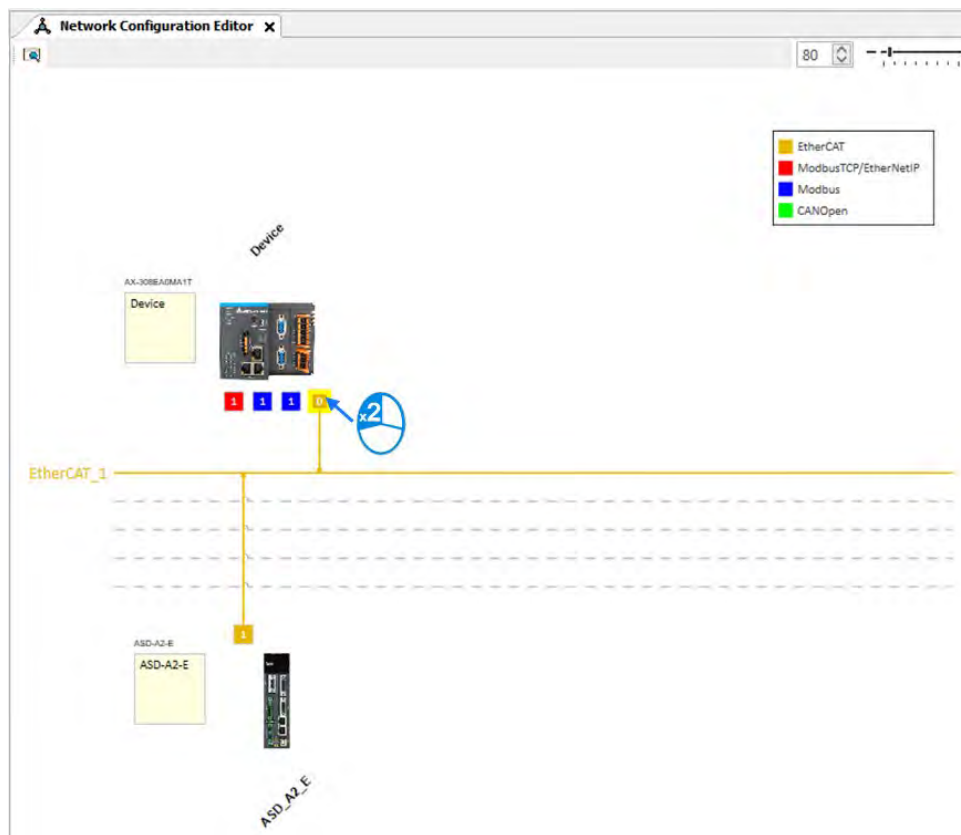
- Choose “**Servo Device**” → “**ASD-A2**” → “**ASD-A2-E**” from the product list. Then, the device will be automatically added to “Network Configuration Editor” after a double-click



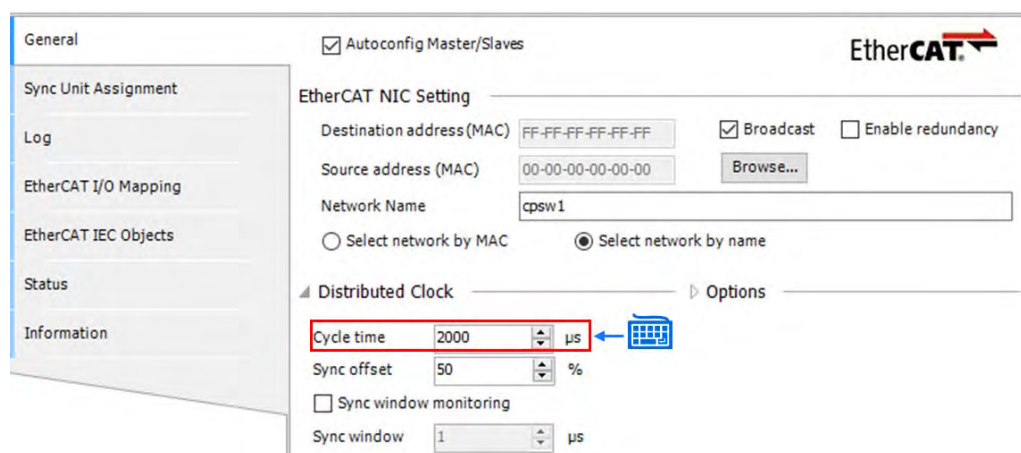
- Click and hold the left mouse button on the yellow box of slave device and drag it towards the EtherCAT main line to complete the configuration of master-slave connection.



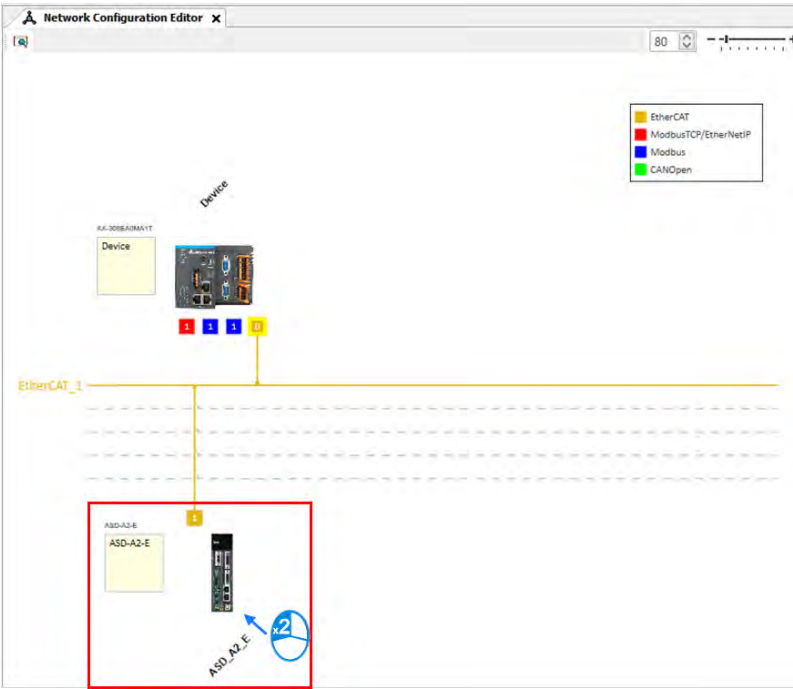
- Double-click on the yellow box of master device to continue on parameter settings for EtherCAT master device.



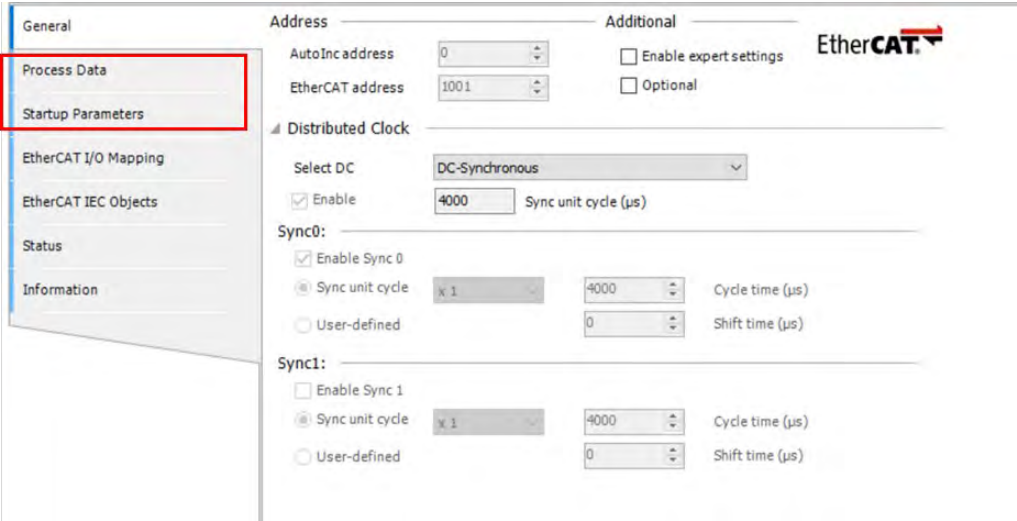
- EtherCAT distributed clock can be configured within master device settings.



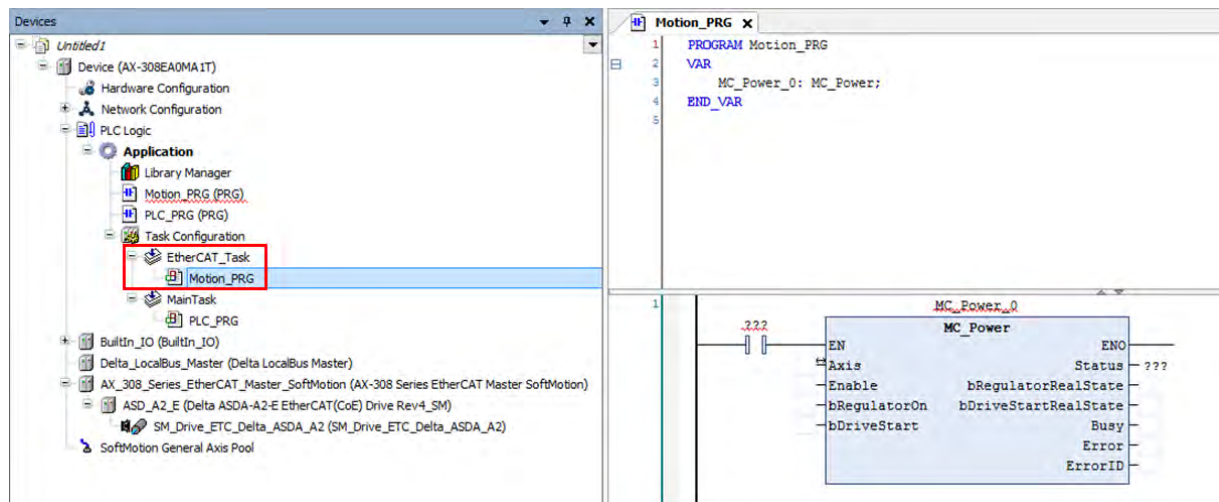
- Double-click on the slave device to continue on EtherCAT slave device settings.



- Tabs relating to slave device configuration will be displayed after double-clicking, such as Station address setting, "Process Data" and "Startup Parameters".



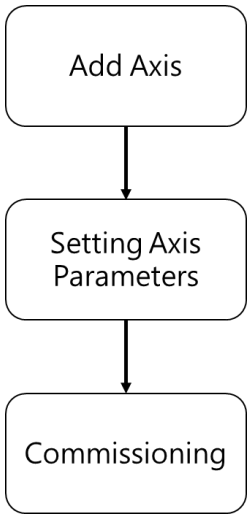
- Afterwards, you can start writing programs with motion function blocks in POU, which should be placed under “EtherCAT+Task”, to ensure normal operation of function blocks.



7.3 Commissioning

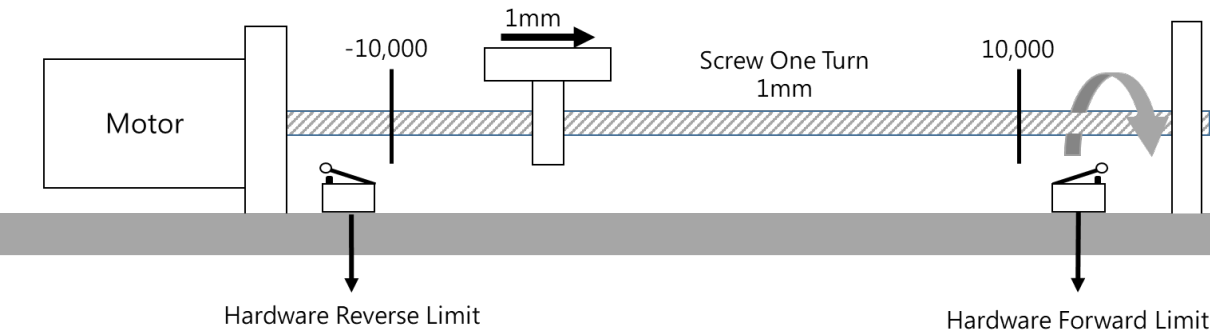
7.3.1 Procedure for Commissioning

The chart below shows the steps to build a commissioning process:



7.3.2 Example of Axis Parameter Settings

Before using software to perform commissioning, axis parameters must be set first. The figure below illustrates the setting method.



- Axis configuration screen

The screenshot displays the Axis configuration screen with the following sections and settings:

- Axis Type and Limits:**
 - ☐ Virtual mode
 - ☒ Linear Axis (1)
 - ☐ Rotary Axis
 - Linear Axis Software Limits:**
 - ☒ Activated (2)
 - Negative [u]: -10000
 - Positive [u]: 10000
 - Rotary Axis Modulo Setting:**
 - Modulo value [u]: 360
- Motion Parameter:**
 - Error Reaction:**
 - ☐ Quick Stop
 - Deceleration [u/s²]: 100
 - Velocity Ramp Type:**
 - ☒ Trapezoid
 - ☐ Sin²
 - ☐ Quadratic
 - ☐ Quadratic(smooth)
 - Position Lag Supervision:**
 - Position Lag Reaction: Deactivated
 - Lag Limit [u]: 1
- Transmission Mechanism:**
 - Mechanism Type: Ball Screw
 - Mechanism Setting:**
 - (1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 10000 [Pulse]
 - (4) Pitch: 1 [Unit]
 - Gear Box:**
 - Gear Ratio = $\frac{(2) \text{ Gear ratio numerator}}{(3) \text{ Gear ratio denominator}}$
 - (2) Gear ratio numerator: 1
 - (3) Gear ratio denominator: 1

A diagram of a ball screw mechanism is shown with labels (1) through (4) corresponding to the settings in the Mechanism Setting section.

- Parameters setting

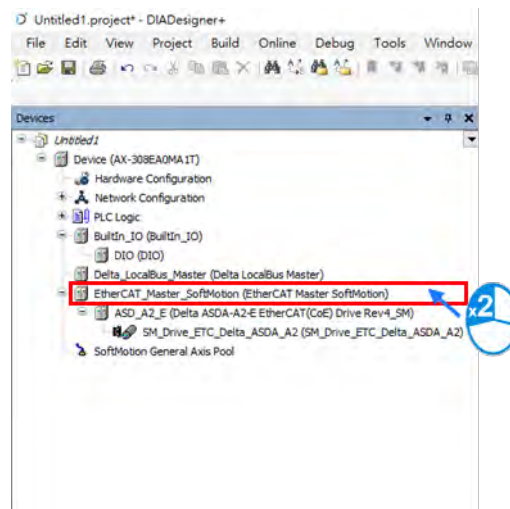
Name	Setting
Axis Type①	Linear Axis
Command pulse per motor rotation③	10,000
Pitch③ [Unit]	1*1
Gear ratio denominator	128*2
Gear ratio numerator	1*2
Software limit_Posotive②	10,000
Software limit_Negative②	-10,000

***Note:**

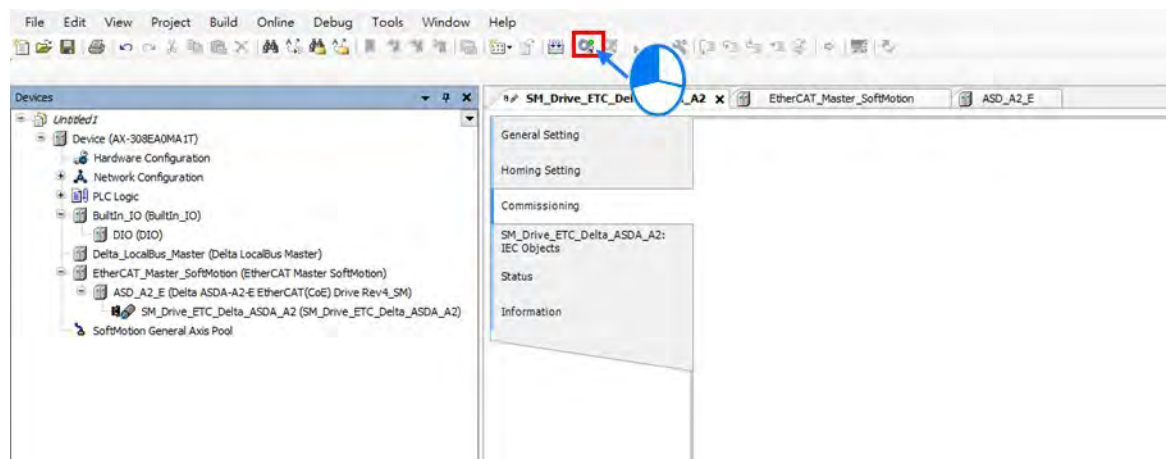
- In case of the Unit [mm], the input parameter should be 0.001 for moving 1μm.
- It's a must to set P1-44 and P1-45 of the servo drive.

7.3.3 Perform Axes Commissioning

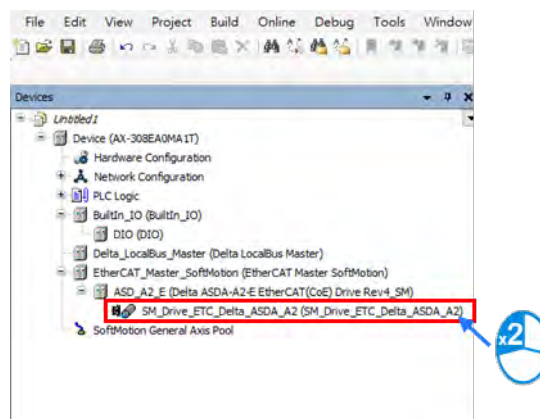
- Select “EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion” and double-click on it.



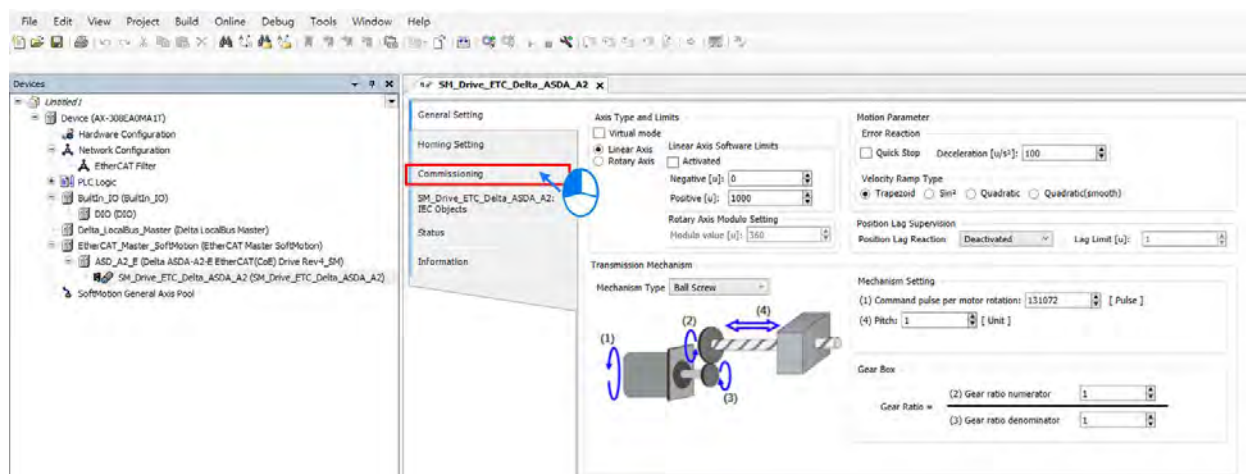
- Left click on the “Online Config Mode” icon.



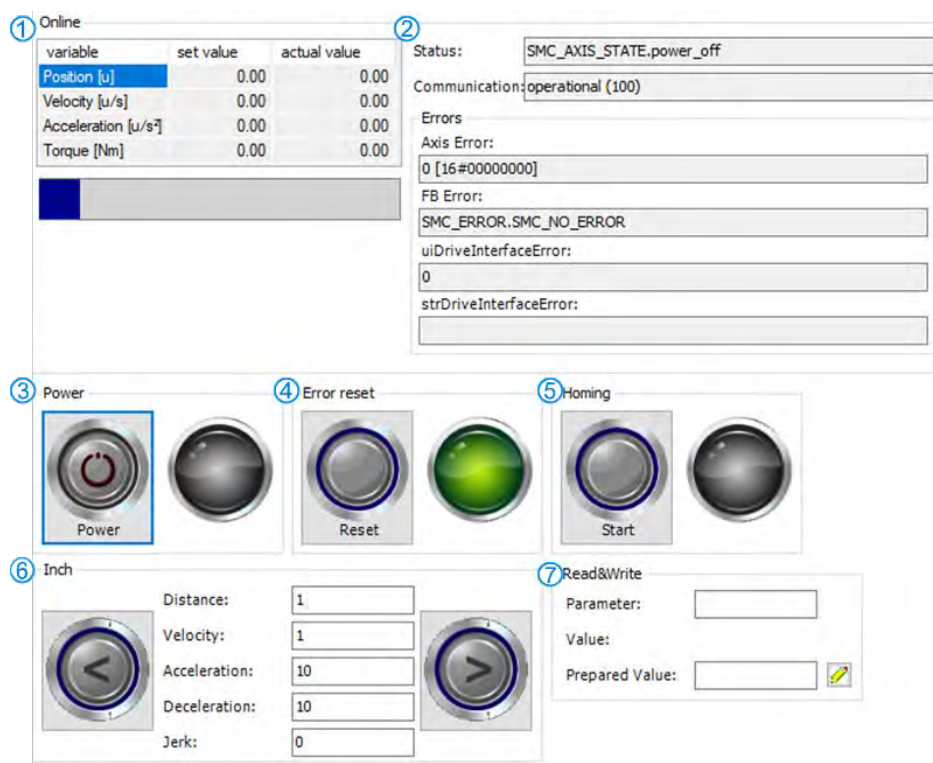
- After entering online commissioning, double-click on “SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2”



- Open “Commissioning” tab after entering the setting screen of axis parameters.



- Introduction of commissioning screen



- ① Information of axis commands

Name	Function
Position[u]	Command position and actual position
Velocity[u/s]	Command value and actual value of velocity
Acceleration[u/s ²]	Command value and actual value of acceleration
Torque[Nm]	Command value and actual value of torque

■ ② Axis status and communication status

Name	Function
Status	Axis status
Communication	Communication status

■ ③ Axis power: Set power ON/ OFF.

■ ④ Error reset: Clear error messages of servo axis.

■ ⑤ Homing: Make the axis back to the start position.

■ ⑥ Inch

Name	Function
Distance	Moving distance
Velocity	Moving velocity
Acceleration	Acceleration rate
Deceleration	Deceleration rate
Jerk	Command value of jerk

■ ⑦ Read&Write: Read-write parameters of upper axes. If need be, you can read and modify Object Dictionary by inputting as follows.

- Read and write the parameter 0x6098 in object dictionary

16#1609800

1 = fixed number

6098 =the parameter to be read and written

00 = sub of the parameter

1. Convert 0x1609800 to demical number as 23,107,584
2. Change 23,107,584 to -23,107,584
3. Enter -23,107,584 in the "Parameter" field to read the parameter "0x6098".

7.4 Motion Control Device

7.4.1 Overview

Motion control devices are mainly used for configuring parameters for motion axis. In most applications, you can set up axis parameters in DIADesigner-AX software, a convenient environment for you, where axis parameters required for configuring motion control on axis are defined as Structure. A Structure is a data type applicable to group the data elements together.

7.4.2 Introduction to Axis

The axis is used to perform motion control in the system and includes real servo drives, encoders and virtual servo drives. The following table shows the axis types:

Type	Comments
Positioning axis ^{*1}	Achieve basic positioning control via EtherCAT, such as functions of absolute positioning, relative positioning, and etc.
Synchronous axis ^{*2}	Achieve servo motor control and basic positioning control via EtherCAT, as well as synchronous motion control like electronic cam function.
Pulse-type axis	Achieve real servo motor control with pulses.
Virtual axis	Execute motion control commands without using real servo motor.
Encoder axis	Use real encoder (SSI or incremental encoder) as feedback signals.
Virtual encoder axis	Can only be used in the program without encoders.

***Note 1:**

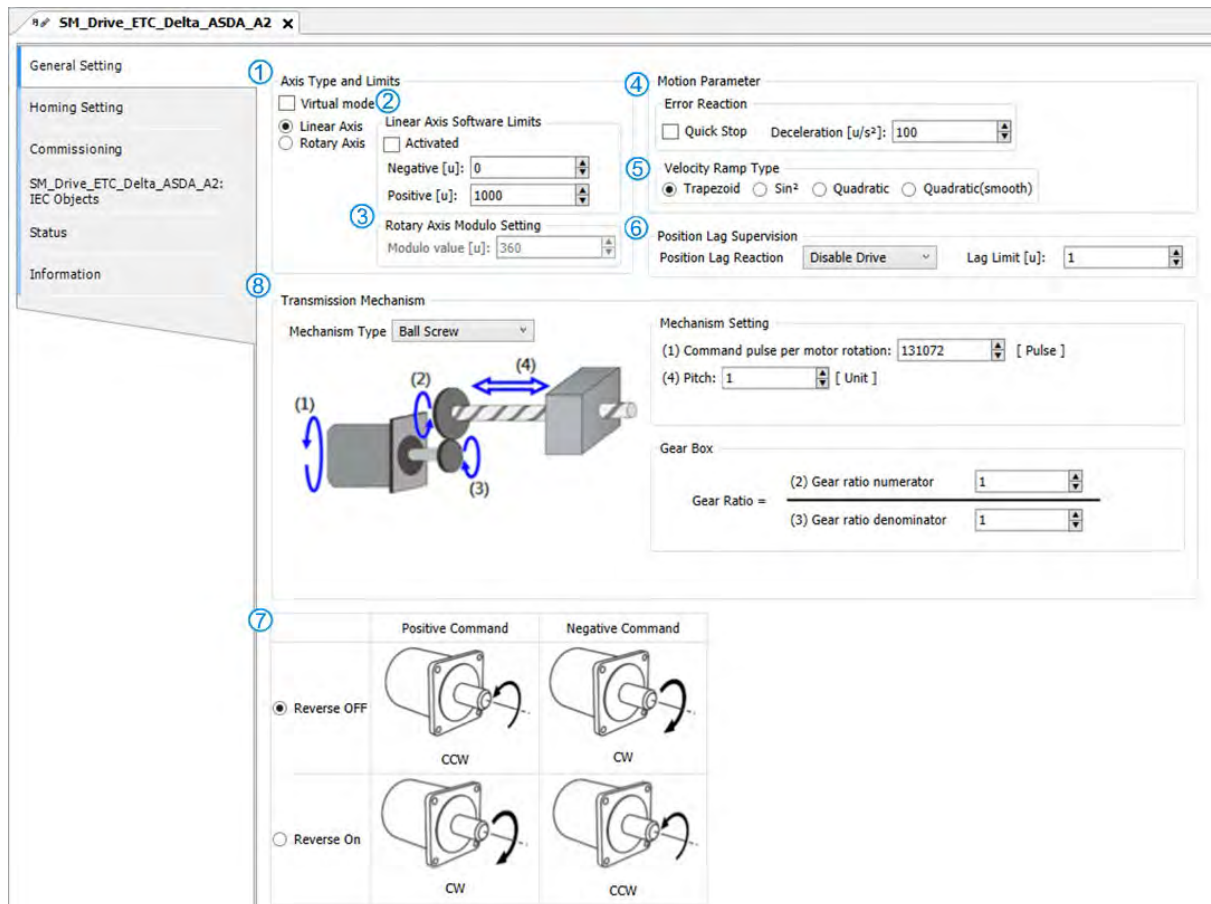
- Positioning axes must match the function library of DL_MotionControlLight.
- When uses Ethercat with AX-364EL and the number of axes exceeds 64, parameters of MAX_MAILBOX_CHANNELS and MaX_SDO_Channels in the Library (IODrvEtherCat → ETC_Parameter) must be changed to 128..

***Note 2:** Synchronous axes must match DL_MotionControl and the function library of SM3_Basic.

7.4.2.1 About Axis Parameters

After creating a servo axis, the corresponding axis parameters will be generated as well. The following table details the relating description.

- Synchronous Axis



① Axis Type and Limits

Name	Function
Virtual	Activate virtual axes.
Linear Axis / Rotary Axis	Set to be linear axis or rotary axis.

② Linear Axis Software Limits

Name	Function
Activated	Activate software limits (only supports Linear axis)
Negative[u]	Reverse software limit.
Positive[u]	Forward software limit.

③ Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

Name	Function
Modulo Value[u]	Set the area of rotation for a turn. (only supports rotary axes)

④ Error Reaction

Name	Function
Quick Stop	Emergency stop for axes
Deceleration[u/s²]	Deceleration stop for axes (effective when Quick Stop is inactive)

⑤ Velocity Ramp Type

Name	Function
Trapezoid/Sin2/Quadratic/ Quadratic(Smooth)	Motion curves setting for axes

⑥ Position Lag Supervision

Name	Function
Positon Lag Reaction	Set the reaction for position lag.
Lag Limit [u]	Set the value of lag limit.

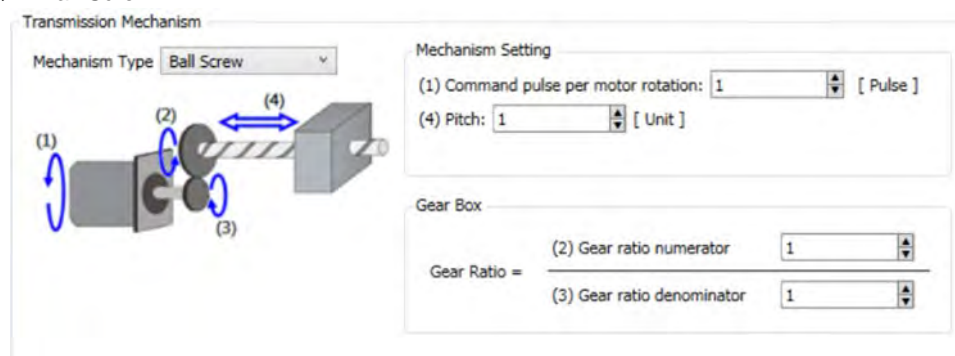
⑦ Positive / Negative Command

Name	Function
Reverse OFF / On	Enable or disable reverse function for positive/negative command setting.

⑧ Transmission Mechanism

Descriptions of different machanism types are as follows:

◆ Ball Screw

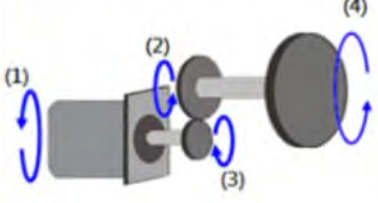


Name	Function
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Pitch	The distance between screw threads
(2) Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

◆ Round Table

Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism Type: Round Table



Mechanism Setting

(1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1 [Pulse]

(4) Movement distance per motor rotation: 1 [Unit]

Gear Box

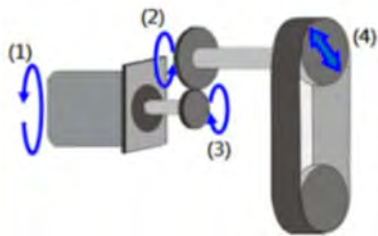
Gear Ratio = $\frac{(2) \text{ Gear ratio numerator } 1}{(3) \text{ Gear ratio denominator } 1}$

Name	Function
Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Movement distance per motor rotation	Movement distance for one full motor rotation
Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

◆ Belt Pully

Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism Type: Belt Pully



Mechanism Setting

(1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1 [Pulse]

(4) Diameter: 1 [Unit]

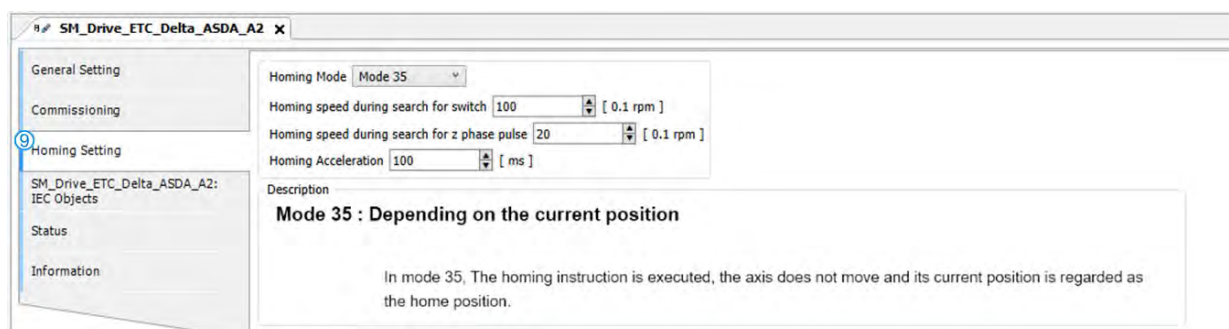
Movement distance per motor rotation: Diameter * n

Gear Box

Gear Ratio = $\frac{(2) \text{ Gear ratio numerator } 1}{(3) \text{ Gear ratio denominator } 1}$

Name	Function
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Diameter (Movement distance per motor rotation : Diameter * n)	Diameter (Movement distance per motor rotation: Diameter * n)
(2) Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

■ ⑨ Homing Setting



Name	Function
Homing Mode	Configure homing mode setting.
Homing Speed during search for switch	Set the homing speed during search for switch.
Homing Speed during search for z phase pulse	Set the homing speed during search for Z phase pulse.
Homing Acceleration	Set the homing acceleration rate.

● Positioning Axis

■ Axis Type and Limits

Name	Function
Linear Axis / Rotary Axis	Set to be linear axis or rotary axis.

■ Linear Axis Software Limits

Name	Function
Activated	Activate software limits (only supports Linear axis)
Negative[u]	Reverse software limit.
Positive[u]	Forward software limit.

■ Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

Name	Function
Modulo Value[u]	Set the area of rotation for a turn. (only supports rotary axes)

■ Velocity Ramp Type

Name	Function
Trapezoid/Sin2	Motion curves setting for axes

■ Positive / Negative Command

Name	Function
Reverse OFF / On	Enable or disable reverse function for positive/negative command setting.

■ Transmission Mechanism

Descriptions of different mechanism types are as follows:

◆ Ball Screw

Name	Function
(4) Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Pitch	The distance between screw threads
(5) Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
(6) Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

◆ Round Table

Name	Function
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Movement distance per motor rotation	Movement distance for one full motor rotation
(2) Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

◆ Belt Pully

Name	Function
(4) Command Pulse per motor rotation	The command pulse value for per motor rotation
(4) Diameter (Movement distance motor rotation : Diameter *n)	Diameter (Movement distance per motor rotation: Diameter *n)
(5) Gear ratio numerator	Numerator of gear ratio
(6) Gear ratio denominator	Denominator of gear ratio

◆ Servo Gear Ratio

Name	Function
Max.resolution(PPR)	The maximum resolution (PPR)
Unit Numerator	Numerator of electronic gear ratio

Name	Function
Unit Denominator	Denominator of electronic gear ratio
Pulses/rotation(PPR)	Value of pulses in rotation (PPR)

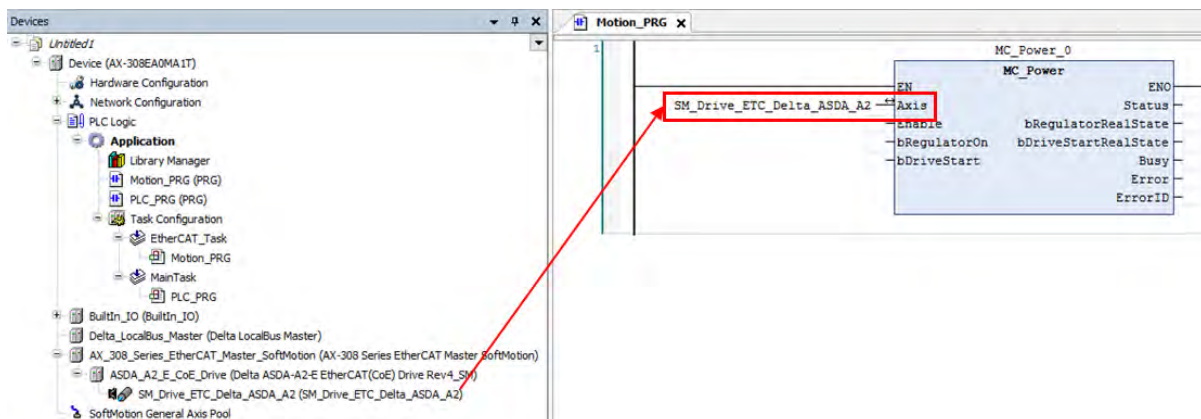
■ Homing Setting

Name	Function
Homing Mode	Configure homing mode setting.
Homing Speed during search for switch	Set the homing speed during search for switch.
Homing Speed during search for z phase pulse	Set the homing speed during search for Z phase pulse.
Homing Acceleration	Set the homing acceleration rate.

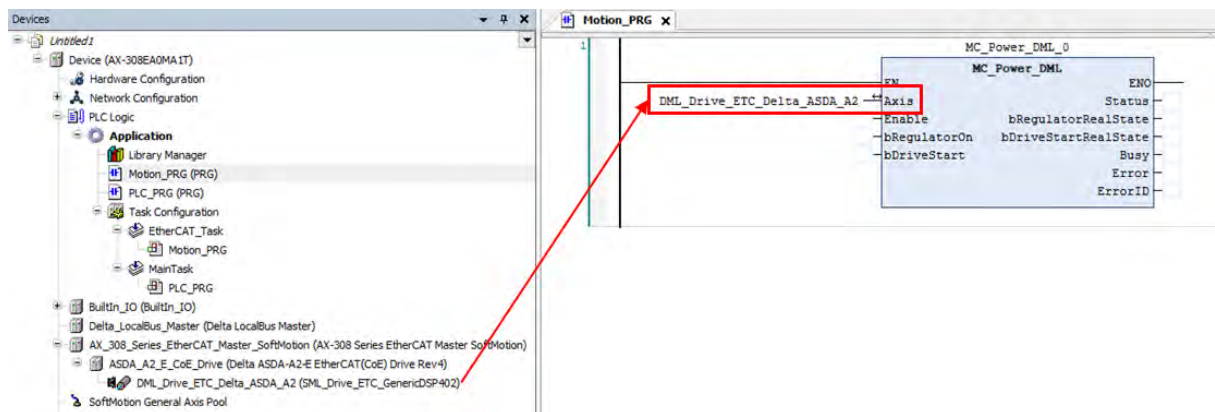
7.4.2.2 Axis Application in Program

After a servo axis is newly added in the project, the name of servo axis will be generated automatically (you are allowed to change the name) and input to the function block.

● Synchronous Axis

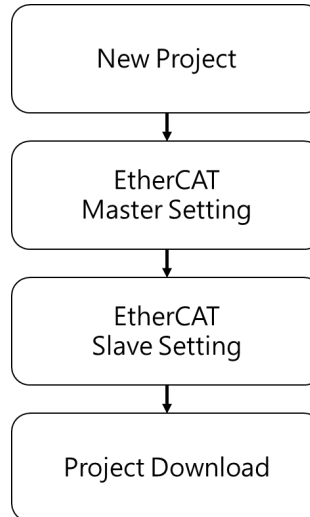


● Positioning Axis

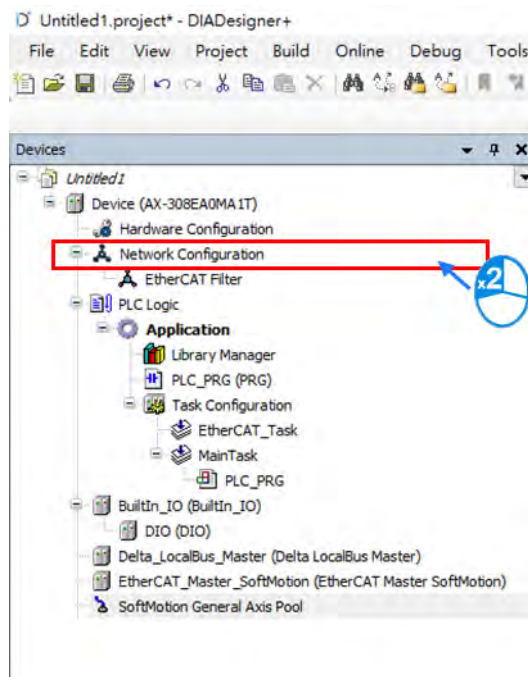


7.4.3 Procedure for Single-axis Configuration

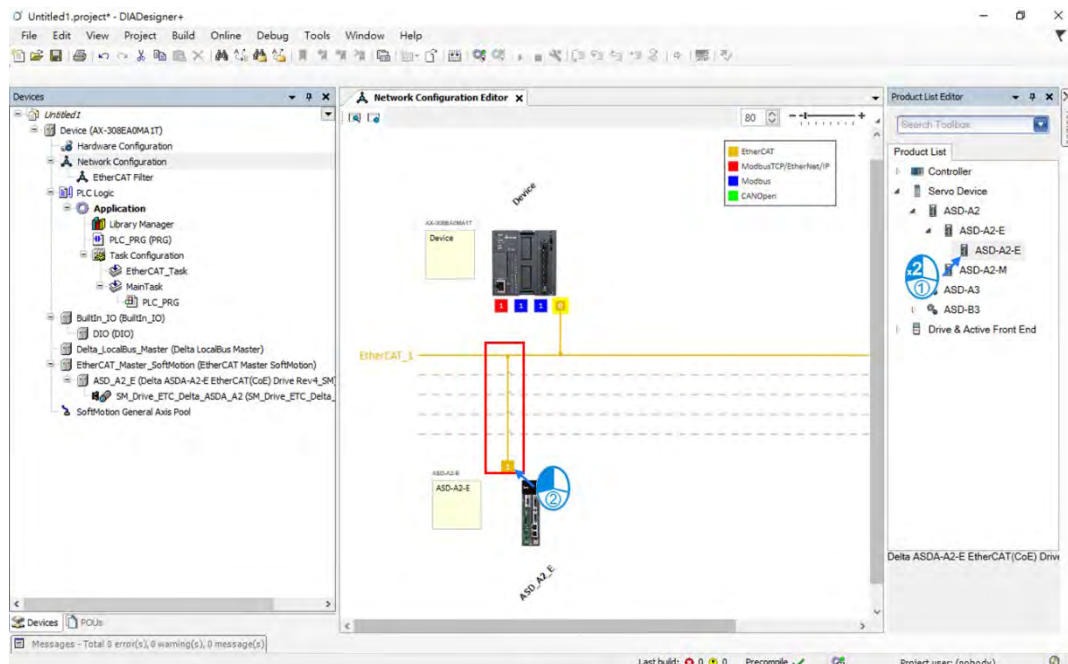
- The procedure for axis settings is shown as follows. For more details of creating new projects, please find section 7.2.



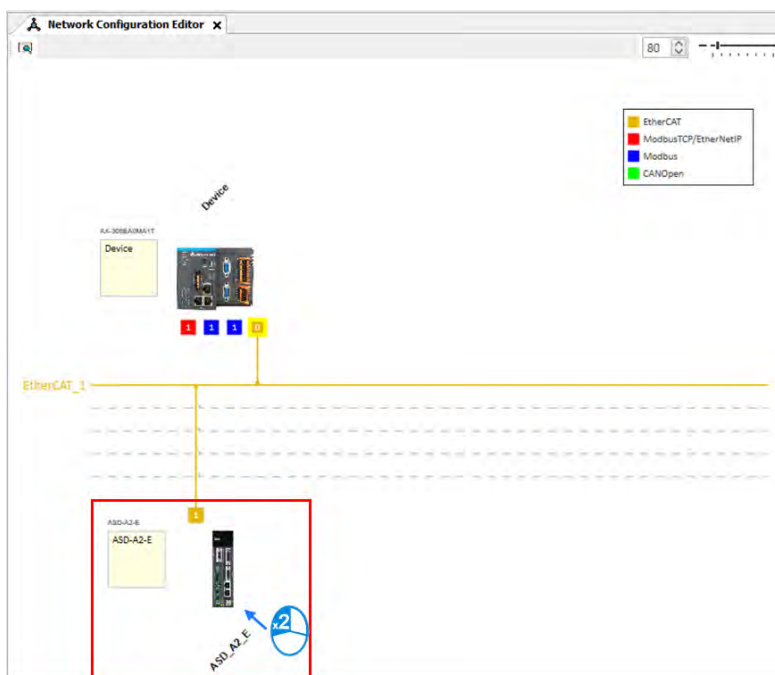
- Configure EtherCAT settings after opening the project. First, click “Network Configuration”.



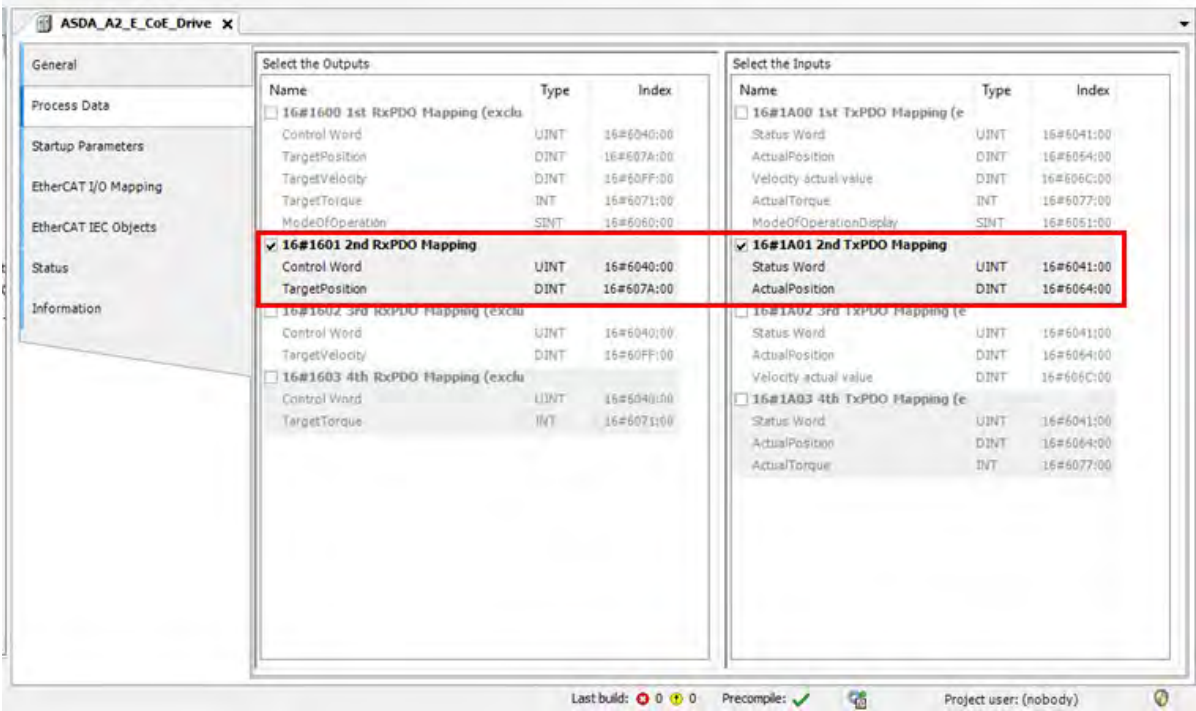
- Click “ASD-A2-E” after entering Network Configuration page and connect **1** to the line above.



- Double-click on the slave device after finishing the connection.

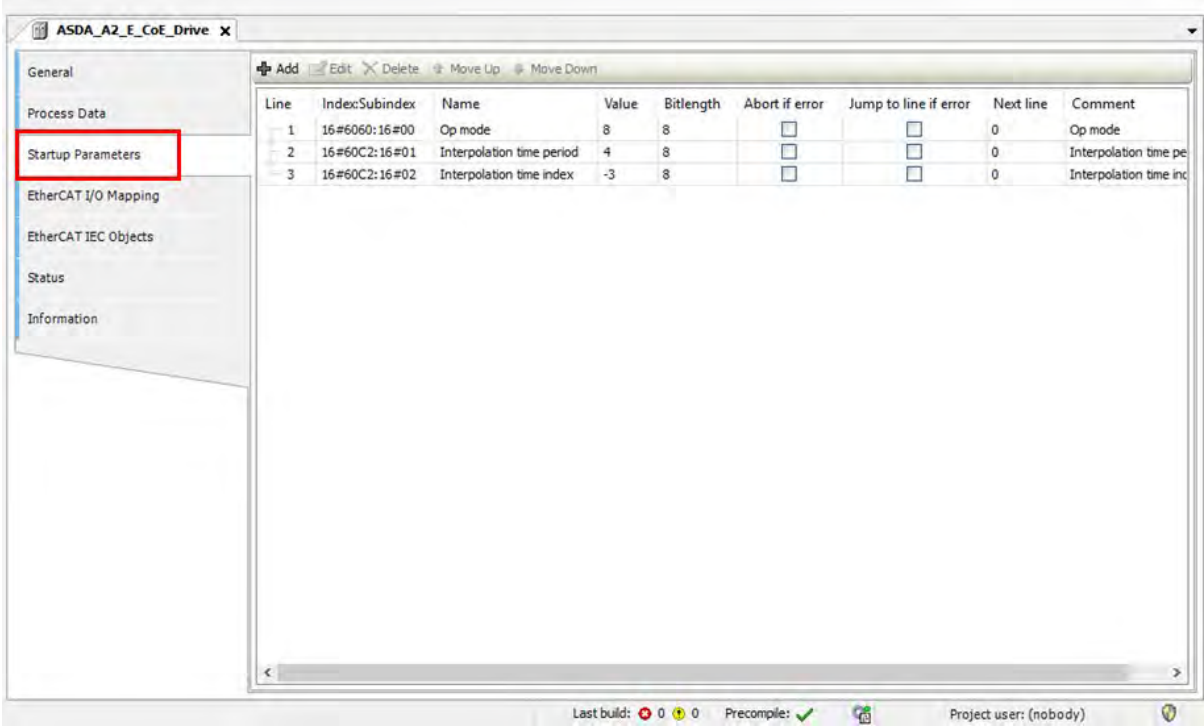


- Switch to “Procesas Data” page to configure mapping groups of PDO. The default setting for ASDA-A2 is second group, which can operate normally with most function blocks. If additional groups or parameters of PDO need to be selected and added, please refer to content concerning fuction blocks description in **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

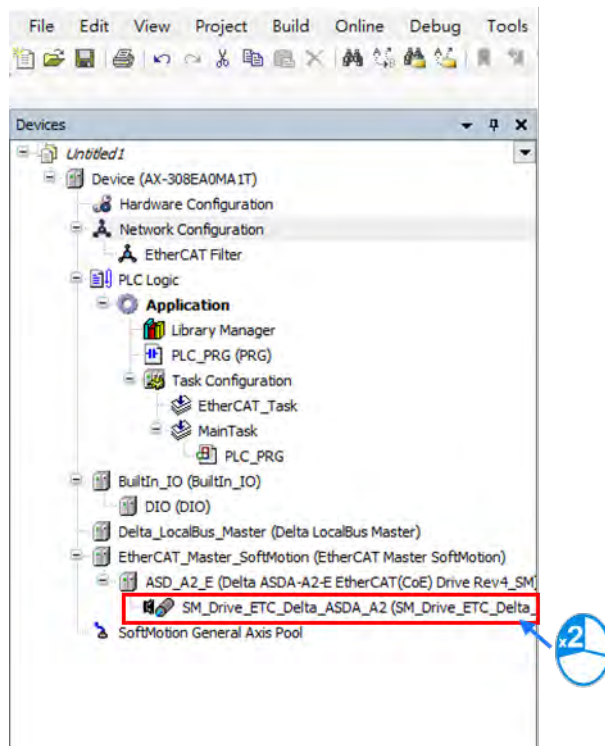


■ Initialize EtherCAT communication

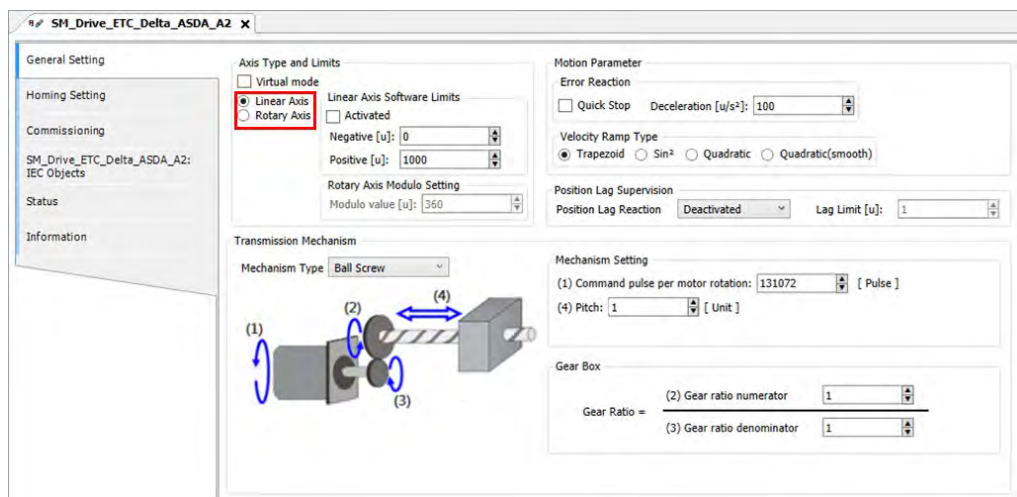
After initialization is completed, you need to input fixed values for the required Object Dictionary which can be configured on “Startup Parameters” page.



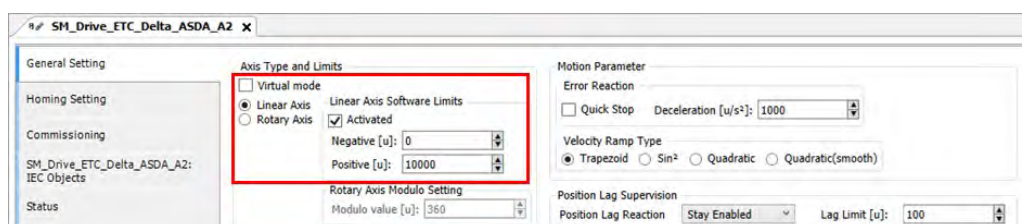
- After finishing the settings of axis communication, double-click on “SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2”.



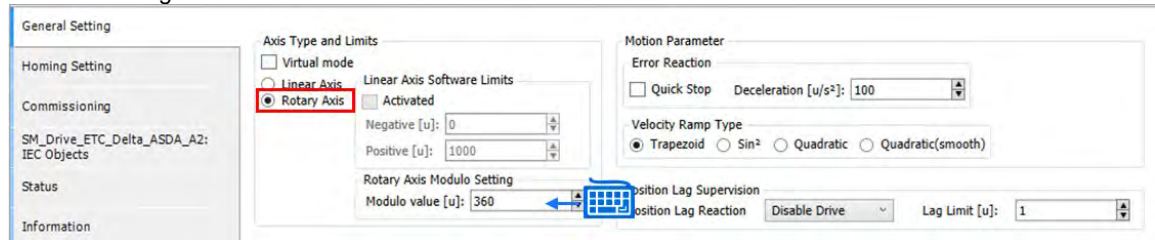
- Axis settings page
Options of axis type: “Rotary Axis” and “Liner Axis”



- Setup Software Limits for linear axis. Click Activated to start software limit that contains negative limits (“Negative”) and positive limits (“Positive”).

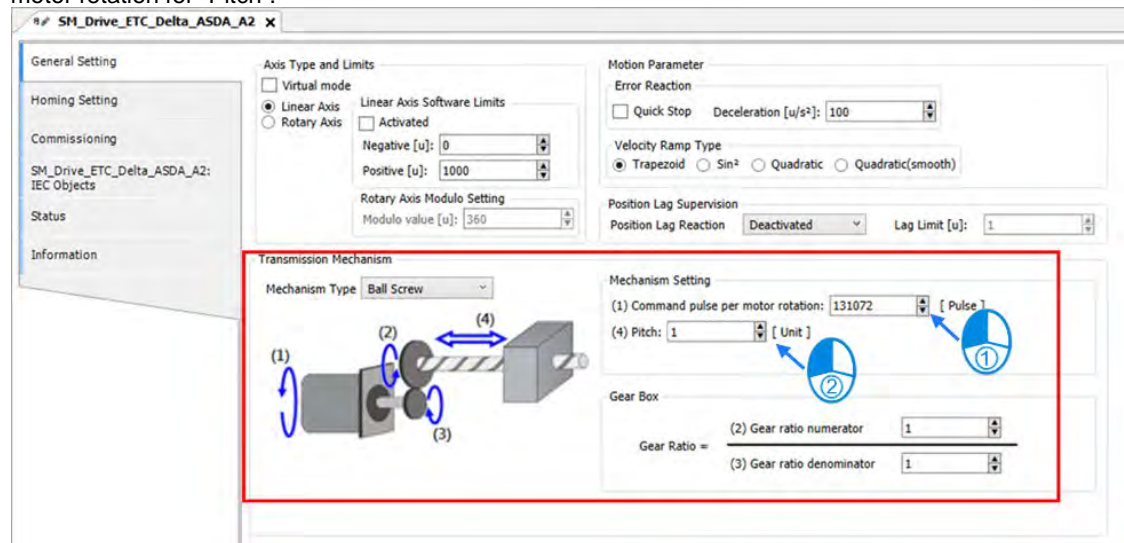


- The rotation range must be defined after finishing rotary axis settings. Please setup "Modulo value" IN "Modulo settings".

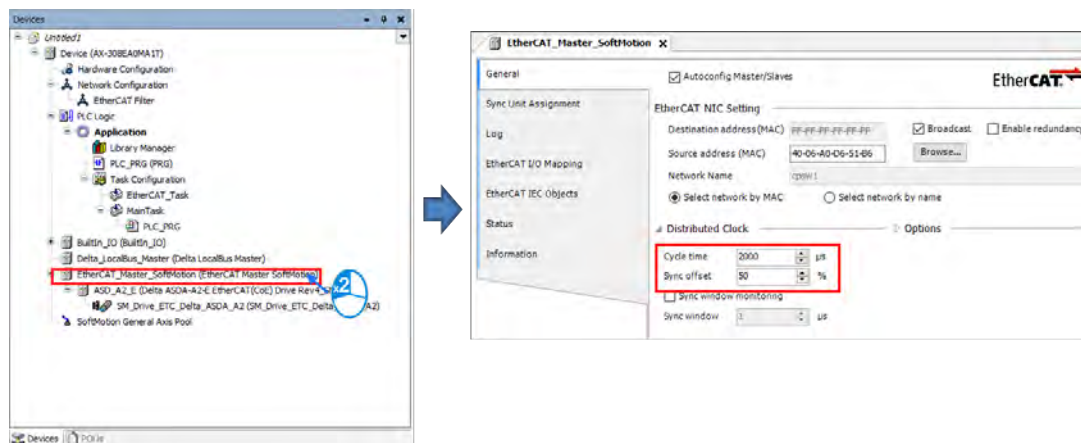


- Scaling/ Mapping page

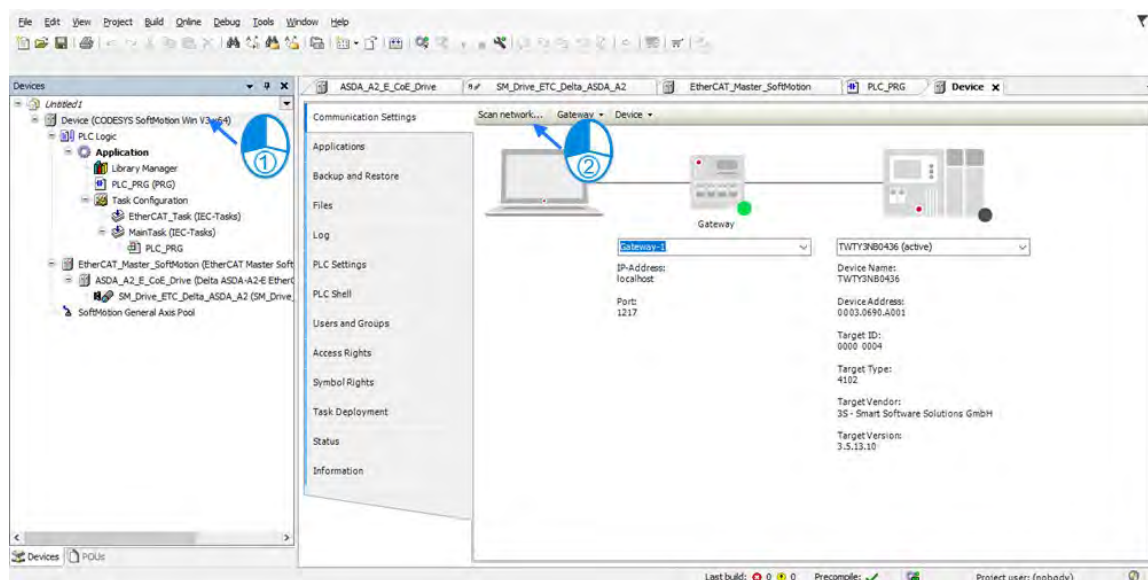
Set the pulse value for "Command pulse per motor rotation". Set the movement distance within one full motor rotation for "Pitch".



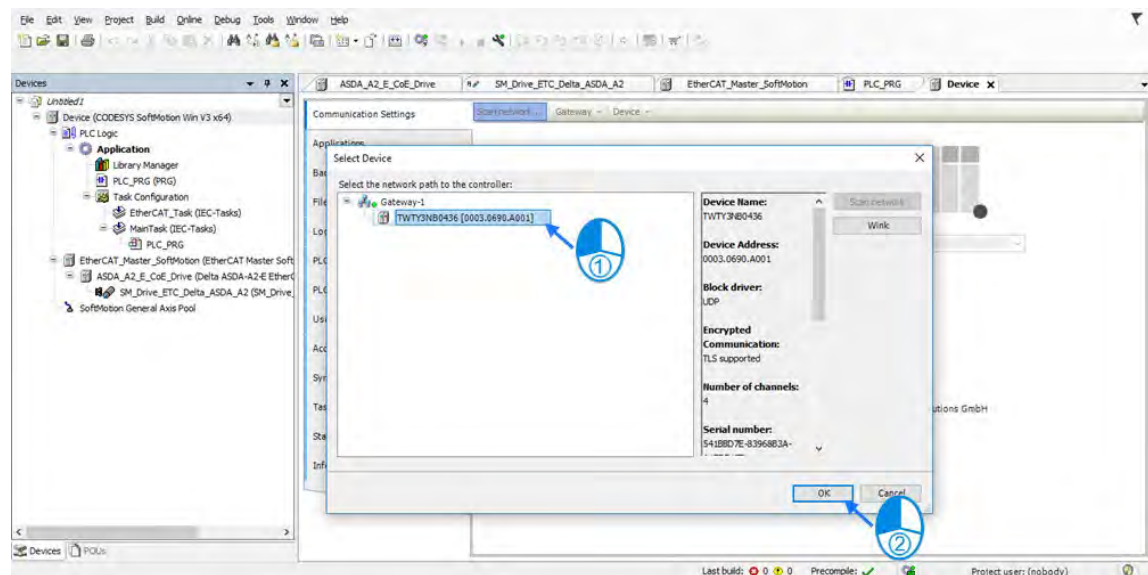
- To configure the communication cycle time of Ethernet, click "EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion", then set the value of "Cycle time" as 2000 and "Sync offset" as 50.



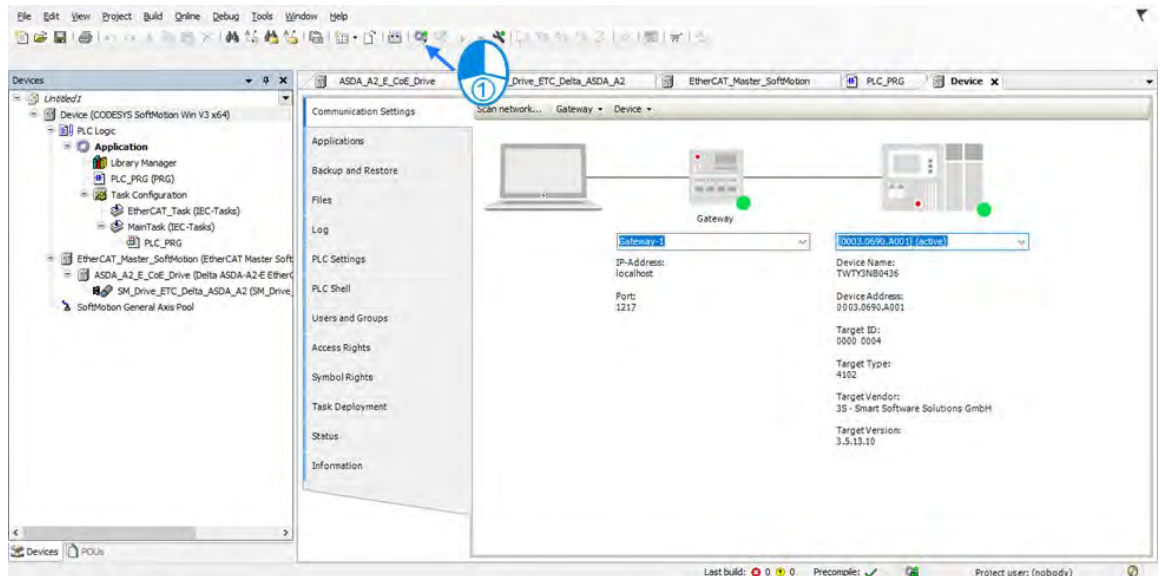
■ Scan PLC controller



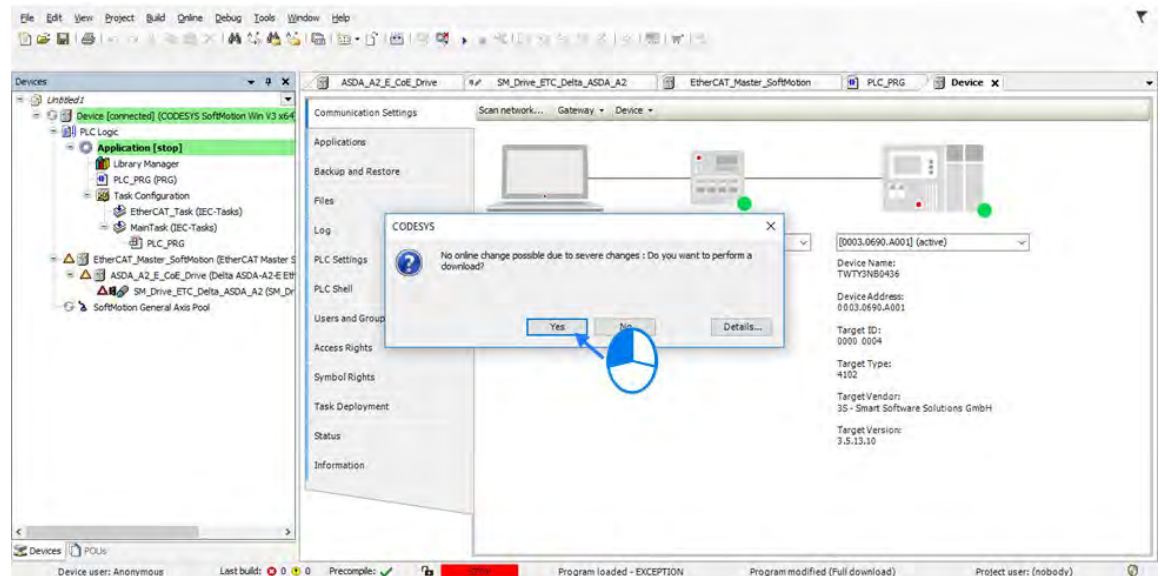
■ Add the newly scanned PLC controller and click “OK”.



- A green light icon will be shown if the connection is successful, then click “Login”.



- A prompt box will pop out to remind you if you want to perform a download, click “Yes” to continue.



7.4.4 Axis Group Settings

Axis group movement will be functioned when executes linear interpolation and circular interpolation with multiple axes. DIADesigner-AX is required for grouping axes.

Maximum controll axes	Linear interpolation	6 axes
	Circular interpolation	6 axes (3 follower axes)

7.4.4.1 Parameters for Axis Group

The parameters used for axis group movement are as follows.

1 Kinematic Configuration

Axis X:

Axis Y:

Axis Z:

Axis A:

Axis B:

Axis C:

Note

$$\text{Following Ratio} = \frac{\text{Target Position of Following Axis}}{\text{Target Position of Axis Group}}$$

2 Motion Parameter

RampType

Max Velocity Limit (user unit)/s

Max Acceleration Limit (user unit)/s²

Max Deceleration Limit (user unit)/s²

Max Jerk Limit (Reserved) (user unit)/s³

3 Tasks

Bus Task:

7-32

■ ① Kinematic

Name	Function
Axis X ^{*1}	X axis in axis group
Axis Y ^{*1}	Y axis in axis group
Axis Z ^{*1}	Z axis in axis group
Axis A ^{*1}	A axis in axis group
Axis B ^{*1}	B axis in axis group
Axis C ^{*1}	C axis in axis group

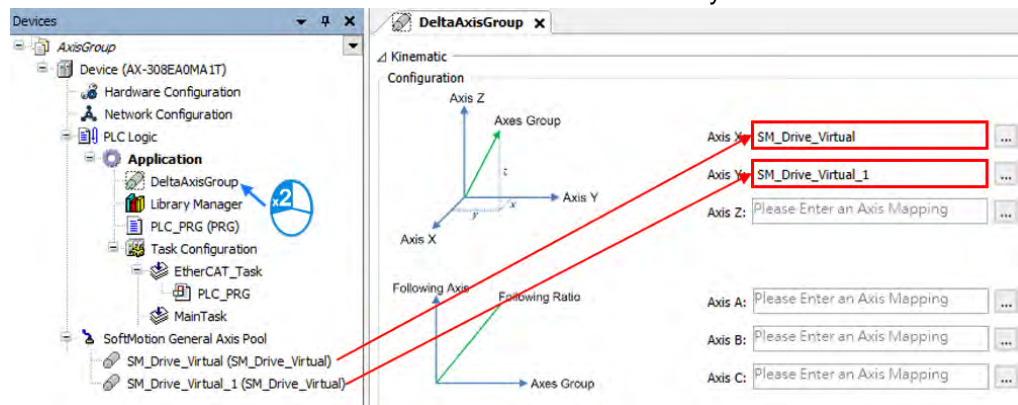
■ ② Motion Parameter

Name	Function
Ramp Type*2	Velocity ramp type
Max Velocity Limit*3	The max velocity of axis group
Max Acceleration Limit*3	The max acceleration of axis group
Max Deceleration Limit*3	The max deceleration of axis group
Max Jerk Limit(Reserved)*3	The max jerk rate of axis group (Reserved)

■ ③ Tasks

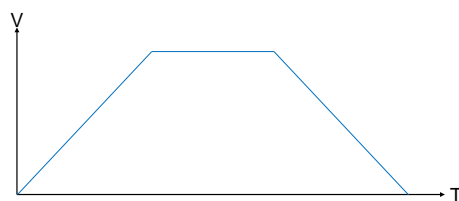
Name	Function
Bus Task	Configure the updating task for axis groups.

Note 1: Axis X ~ Axis C: Enter the names of axes individually.

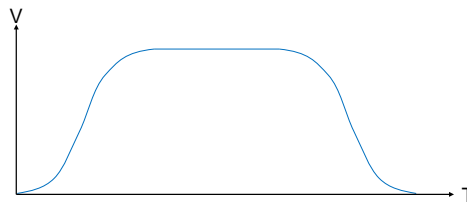


Note 2: There are two Ramp Type: Trapezoid and S-curve type, which are shown in the following figures.

■ Trapezoid



■ S Curve

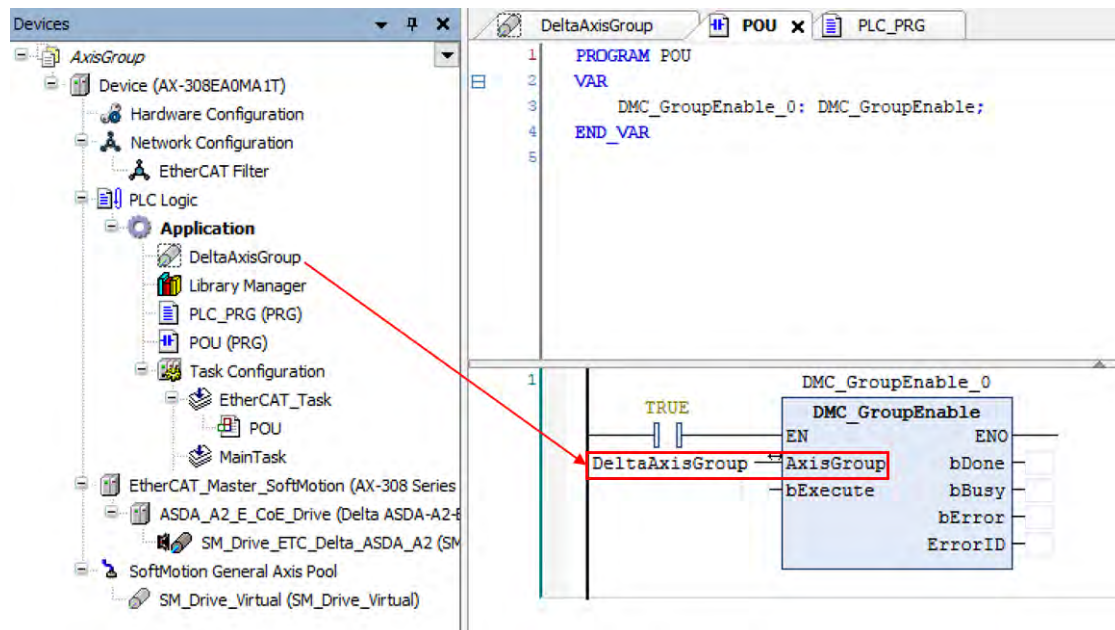


Note 3:

- Max Velocity Limit : An error occurs when the velocity exceeds the setting value.
- Max Acceleration Limit : An error occurs when the acceleration exceeds the setting value.
- Max Deceleration Limit : An error occurs when the deceleration exceeds the setting value.

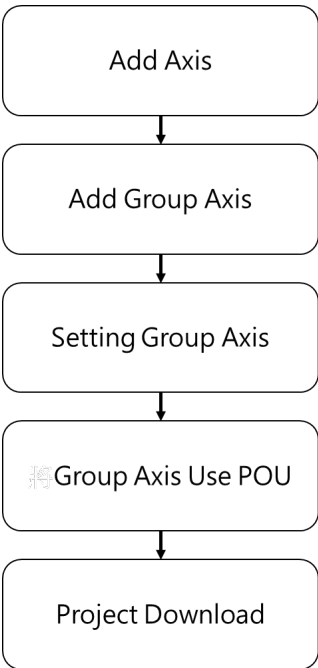
7.4.4.2 Using Axis Groups in Program

To follow the procedure, you must add the node of axis group to the project tree and names the required axis in the group individually before using the AxisGroup function block. After finishes the settings, please connect the node of axis group to AxisGroup input of each function block.

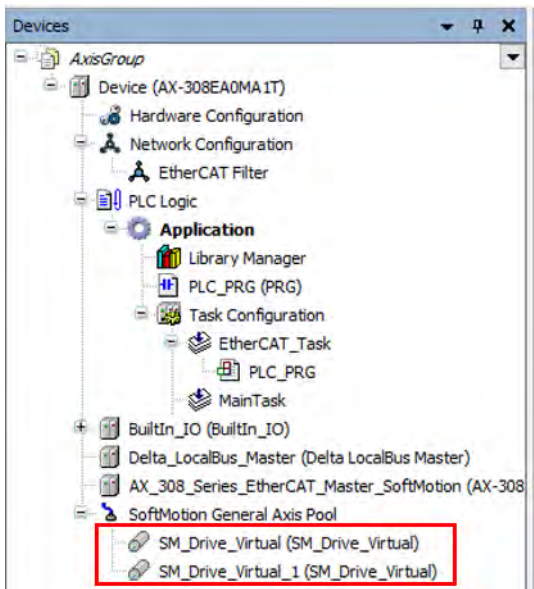


7.4.5 Procedure for Axis Group Configuration

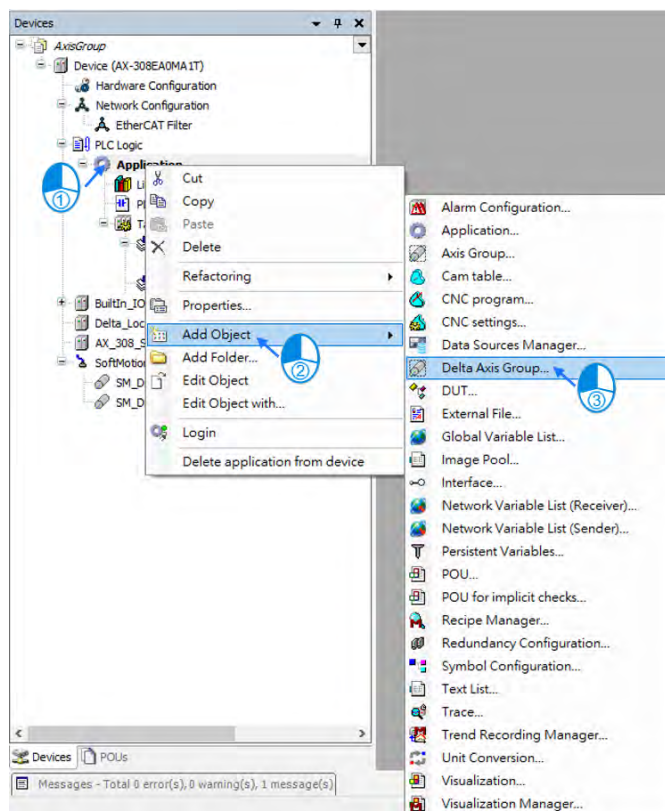
- To use the axis group movement function, you must name the axis group and set the corresponding individual axes with DIADesigner-AX. The process flowchart of creating axis groups is shown below.



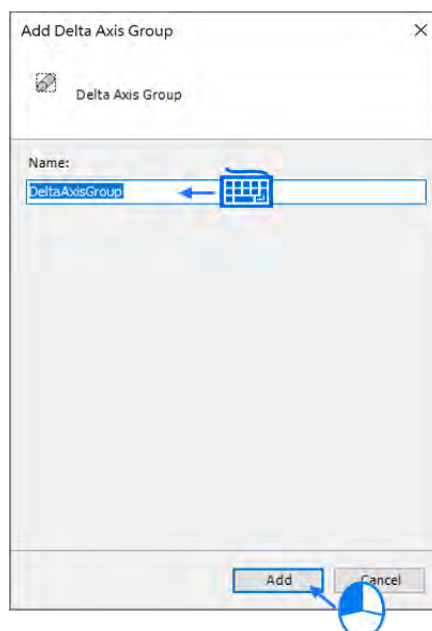
- Procedure of creating axis groups in program
 - Add single axes. The following example starts from creating two virtual axes.



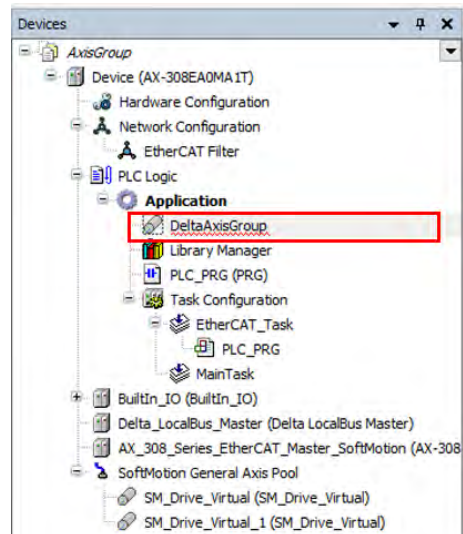
- After finish creating axes, select “Application” and right click “Add Object” → “Delta Axis Group”



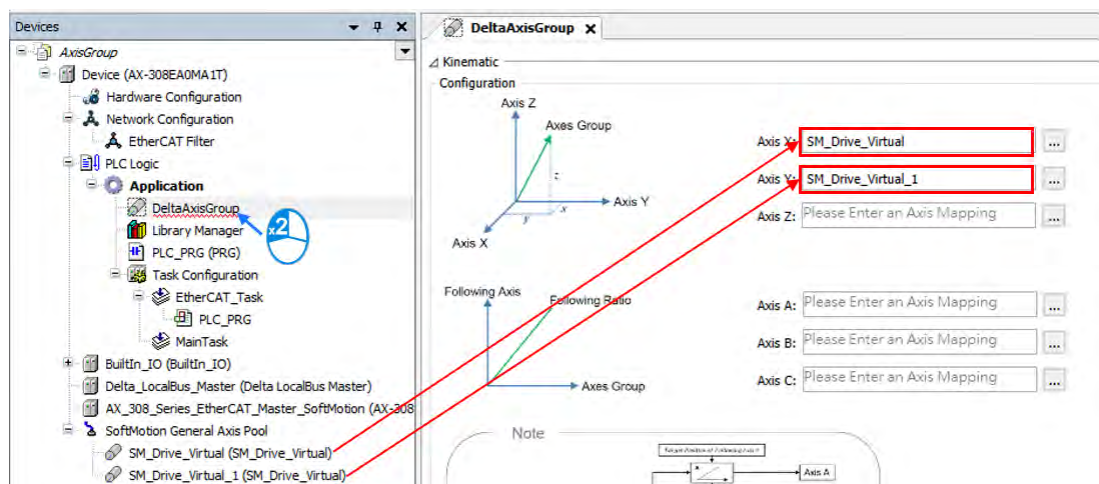
- Set the name for axis group on the “Add Delta Axis Group” page, then click “Add”



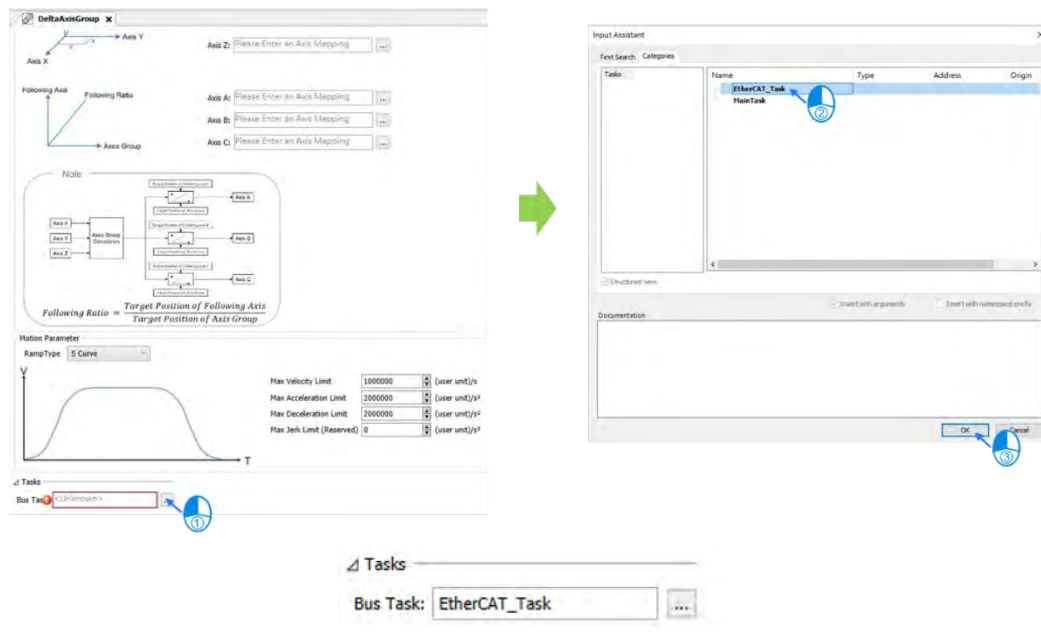
- Afterwards, “DMC_Axis_Group” will be shown on the Project tree.



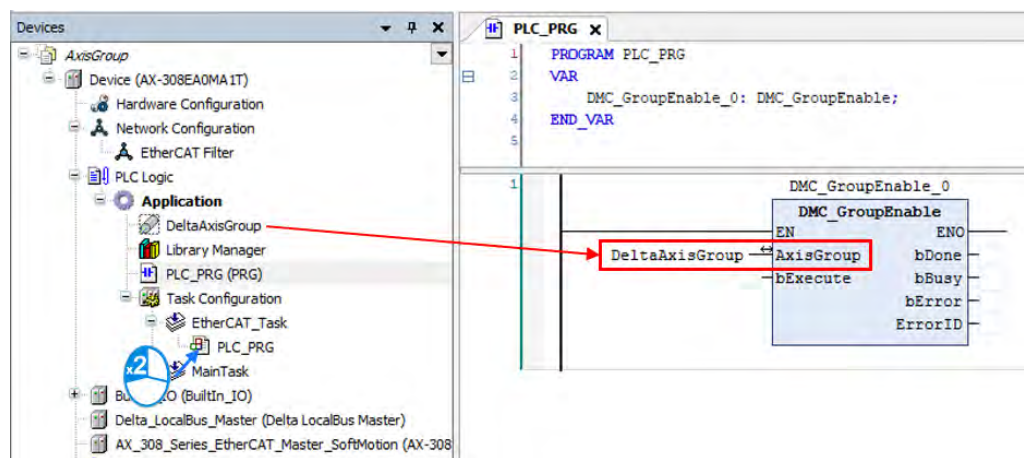
- Click “DeltaAxisGroup”, then enter the names of two virtual axes into the fields of “Axis X” and “Axis Y”.



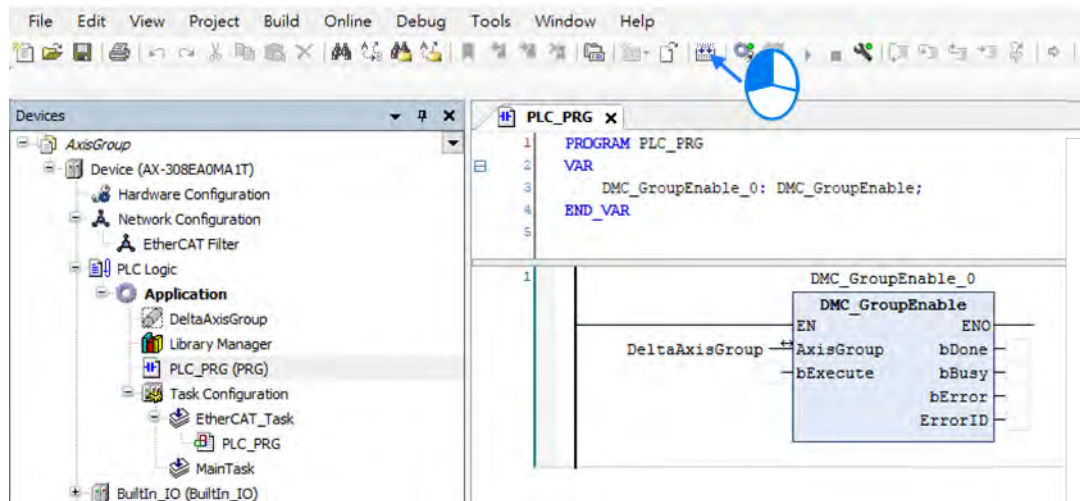
- Click “Bus Task” to enter “Input Assistant”, then choose “EtherCAT_Task” on the screen and click “OK” with “EtherCAT_Task” shown in the Tasks field afterwards.



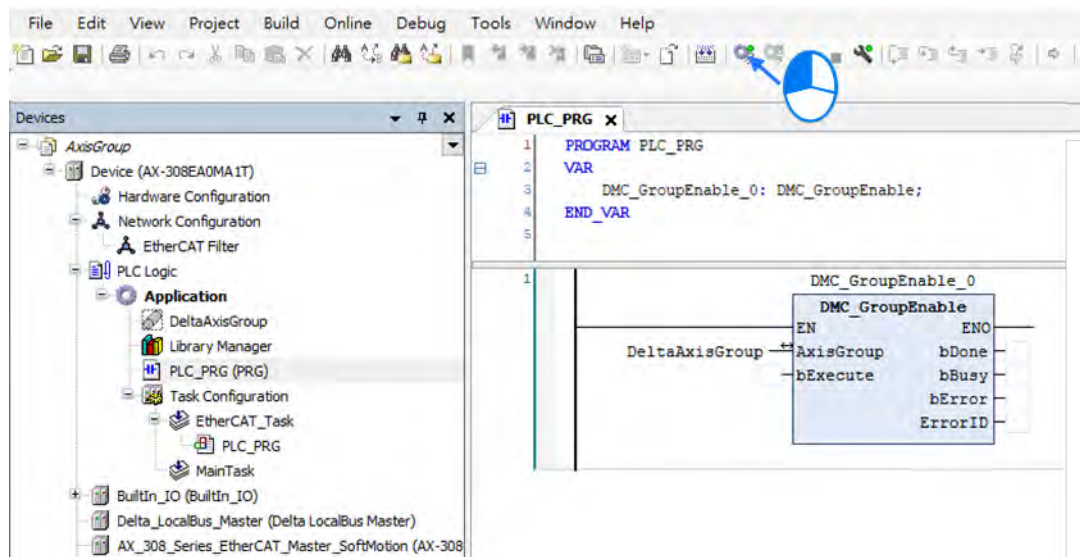
- Add “DMC_GroupEnable” function block below PLC_PRG and connect the name of axis group to the AxisGroup input.



- After the program writing is completed, click the Compile button to confirm the validity.



- After compilation, click Online Monitoring button to download the program.



7.5 Motion Axis Variables

7.5.1 Variables for Single Axis

After creating axes in the Project tree with DIADesigner_AX, the corresponding axis parameters (read-only) will be generated automatically. Axes are categorized into two types: synchronous axis (Axis_REF_SM3) and positioning axis (Axis_REF_DML), which are set out in the following table

- **Synchronous axis (Axis_REF_SM3)**

Numbering	Name	Data type	Default value	Description
1000	nAxisState	SMC_AXIS_STATE(INT)	Standstill (3)	Operating state of the current axis according to MC_ReadStatus
1012	bCommunication	BOOL	FALSE	When communication is normal (refer as True), if disconnected (refer as False)
1014	uiDriveInterfaceError	UINT	0	When Driver Interface detects an error, Error Handling occurs
1021	wDriveId	WORD	Driver	The number in driver nodes on the Field bus
1025	fTaskCycle	LREAL	Driver	EtherCAT cycle time of task
1035	fbeFBError	ARRAY [0..g_SMC_NUMBER_FB_ERRORS] OF SMC_FBERROR	0	Axis-related error table
1040	bVirtual	BOOL	FALSE	True: virtual axis ; false: real axis
1051	iRatioTechUnitsNum	DINT	1	Change gear ratio in axis setting (denominator)
1052	dwRatioTechUnitsDenom	DWORD	1	Change gear ratio in axis setting (numerator)
1060	iMovementType	INT	1	0 = Modulo 1 = Finite
1061	fPositionPeriod	LREAL	1000	Max movement distance of rotary axis
1062	eRampType	SMC_RAMP_TYPE	Trapez	Velocity ramp type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Trapeziod ■ sin^2 ■ Quadrtatic

Numbering	Name	Data type	Default value	Description
				■ Quadratic(smooth)
1100/1	fSetPosition	LREAL	0	Commanded position (User-defined unit)
1101	fActPosition	LREAL	0	Feedback position (User-defined unit)
1110,11	fSetVelocity	LREAL	0	Commanded velocity (User-defined unit /s)
1111,10	fActVelocity	LREAL	0	Feedback velocity (User-defined unit /s)
1115	bConstantVelocity	BOOL	FALSE	True: the axis is driving with constant velocity
1120	fSetAcceleration	LREAL	0	Commanded acceleration (Unit: User-defined unit /s ²)
1125	bAccelerating	BOOL	FALSE	True when Axis is accelerating
1135	bDecelerating	BOOL	FALSE	True when Axis is decelerating
1140	fSetJerk	LREAL	0	Commanded jerk value
1160	fSetTorque	LREAL	0	Commanded torque (Nm)
1161	fActTorque	LREAL	0	Actual torque (Nm)
1200,2	fSWLimitPositive	LREAL	0	Setting the range of positive software limit
1201,3	fSWLimitNegative	LREAL	0	Setting the range of positive software limit
1204	bSWEndSwitchActive	BOOL	FALSE	True when software limit switch activated State machine changes to ErrorStop
1205	bSWLimitEnable	BOOL	FALSE	Software limit end switches: True (Enable) /False(Disable)
-	strDriveInterfaceError	STRING	"	Axis error

● **Positioning Axis (Axis_REF_DML)**

Numbering	Name	Data Type	Default value	Description
1000	nAxisState	SML_AXIS_STATE	SML_AS_PowerOff(0)	Operating state of the current axis according to MC_ReadStatus
1012	bCommunication	BOOL	FALSE	When communication is normal (refer as True), if disconnected (refer as False)
1014	uiDriveInterfaceError	UINT	0	When Driver Interface detects an error, Error Handling occurs
1051	iRatioTechUnitsNum	DINT	1	Change gear ratio in axis setting (denominator)
1052	dwRatioTechUnitsDenom	DWORD	1	Change gear ratio in axis setting (numerator)
1060	iMovementType	SML_MovementType	SML_MT_MODULE	Axis types SML_MT_MODULE = Rotary axis SML_MT_FINITE = Linear axis
1062	eRampType ^{*1}	SMC_RAMPTYPE	Trapez	Setting Ramp type: ■ Trapeziod ■ sin ²
1101	fActPosition	LREAL	0	Feedback position (User-defined unit)
-	strDriveInterfaceError	STRING	"	Axis error

***Note 1:** Only support Trapeziod and sin²

7.5.2 Variables for Axis Group

After creating axis groups in project tree with DIADesigner-AX, the corresponding axis variables will be generated automatically, which are set out in the following table.

Name	Data Type	Setting Value (Default Value)	Function
GroupState	DMC_ GROUP_ STATE	GroupDisabled / GroupStandby / GroupMoving / GroupHoming / GroupStopping / GroupErrorstop (GroupDisabled)	Commands for axis group status.
bError	BOOL	TRUE / FALSE (FALSE)	TRUE when an error occurs in the axis group
dwErrorId	DMC_ ERROR	DMC_ERROR (DMC_GM_NO_ ERROR)	Detailed error description
lrVelocity	LREAL	0 ~ 1.798E+308 (0)	Current velocity of axis group
lrAcceleration	LREAL	Positive number, negative number or zero (0)	Current acceleration of axis group
lrJerk	LREAL	Positive number, negative number or zero (0)	Current jerk of axis group
bAccelerating	BOOL	TRUE / FALSE (FALSE)	TRUE when accelerating
bDecelerating	BOOL	TRUE / FALSE (FALSE)	TRUE when decelerating
bConstantVelocity	BOOL	TRUE / FALSE (FALSE)	TRUE when moving at a constant velocity (including zero velocity)
bInPosition	BOOL	TRUE / FALSE (FALSE)	TRUE when positioning is done.
Axis_X_Name	String		Display the Axis_X name for current axis group
Axis_Y_Name	String		Display the Axis_Y name for current axis group
Axis_Z_Name	String		Display the Axis_Z name for current axis group
Axis_A_Name	String		Display the Axis_A name for current axis group
Axis_B_Name	String		Display the Axis_B name for current axis group
Axis_C_Name	String		Display the Axis_C name for current axis group
RampType	DMC_GROUP_ RAMP_TYPE	Trapezoid / S Curve (S Curve)	Ramp type of current S-curve
lrMaxVelocityLimit	LREAL	Positive number or zero	The max velocity of axis group

Name	Data Type	Setting Value (Default Value)	Function
		(1000000)	
IrMaxAccelerationLimit	LREAL	Positive number or zero (2000000)	The max acceleration of axis group
IrMaxDecelerationLimit	LREAL	Positive number or zero (2000000)	The max deceleration of axis group
IrMaxJerkLimit(Reserved)	LREAL	Positive number or zero(0)	The max jerk of axis group (Reserved)

7.6 Motion Control Programming

7.6.1 Motion Control Program

Before programming in DIADesigner-AX, please take the following description as reference.

7.6.1.1 Program Architecture and Types in DIADesigner-AX

In the classic architecture, a source code for a PLC is composed of procedures including subroutines. When the size of a program becomes larger, maintenance and debugging also becomes a huge burden. Under the IEC 61131-3 architecture, a program is divided into several units according to the functions or characteristics which makes developing and maintaining much easier. Since POU are modularized, different POU can be developed by different designers to enhance distribution of professional manpower and project execution

There are three types of POUs: program (PROG), function block (FB) and function (FC).

■ Program (PROG):

The program type plays a major process role in a PLC program. The execution is assigned by Task which includes specific scan cycle or interrupt subroutines and provides scan order arrangement for programs in the Task list. Besides, a POU of the program type can call a function block (FB).

■ Function block (FB):

A static symbol can be declared in a function block (FB). As a result, the value of the symbol after an operation can be retained. Owing to the fact that the operation is performed on the value memorized in the function block and an input value, the output values may be different even if the input values are the same.

Besides, a function block can call another function block. The function block (FB) type is similar to subroutines. The FB process requires suitable parameters and can only execute once called by a program.

■ Function (FC):

Function (FC) is used to return back operation results. Contrary to FBs, it have no memory and can only return a single value. Since an FC does not have any memory of its own, it cannot call a function block but a function.

► Tasks

Each program POU needs to assign a Task that determines the order for program execution or start.

The programming structure characteristic of IEC 61131-3 is that a program can be divided into several independent POUs. When POUs are compiled, they are rearranged and combined into an execution code for scanning. The new combination order of POUs are based on the assigned Tasks.

Below are types of tasks:

- **Cyclic:** Assigned POU sets interval time for per scan.
- **Event:** When Bool variable is set from False to True, a scan execution is performed.
- **External:** When external triggers to send a signal, a corresponding POU is executed.
- **Freewheeling:** Assigned POU performs scan automatically in a continuous loop when the previous scan has been completed.
- **Status:** When Bool variable is set from False to True, a scan cycle is executed.

Please refer to section 4.4.1 for the details of task operating process.

7.6.1.2 POU in DIADesigner-AX

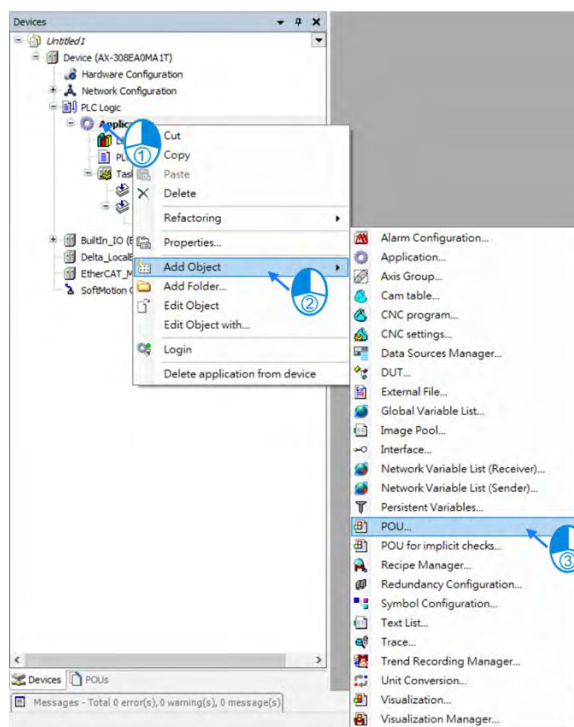
All POU created by you are listed in the project management area with programs and function blocks been managed separately. In addition, the icon of POU may vary based on different program and function block programming languages which also includes information beside the POU name.

Double-click the POU in the project management area for editing. The POU editing section is composed of two parts. The upper part of the editing section is the symbol table of local variables, while the lower part is the main part of the program. Also, the editing environment at the lower part of the editing section is different when using different programming languages. For more information on symbol tables and programming, please refer to the following sections.

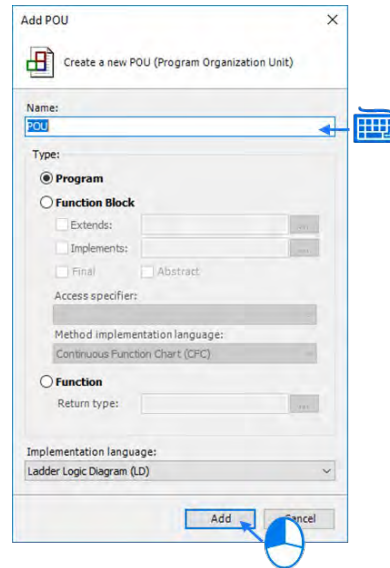


7.6.1.3 Adding POU in DIADesigner-AX

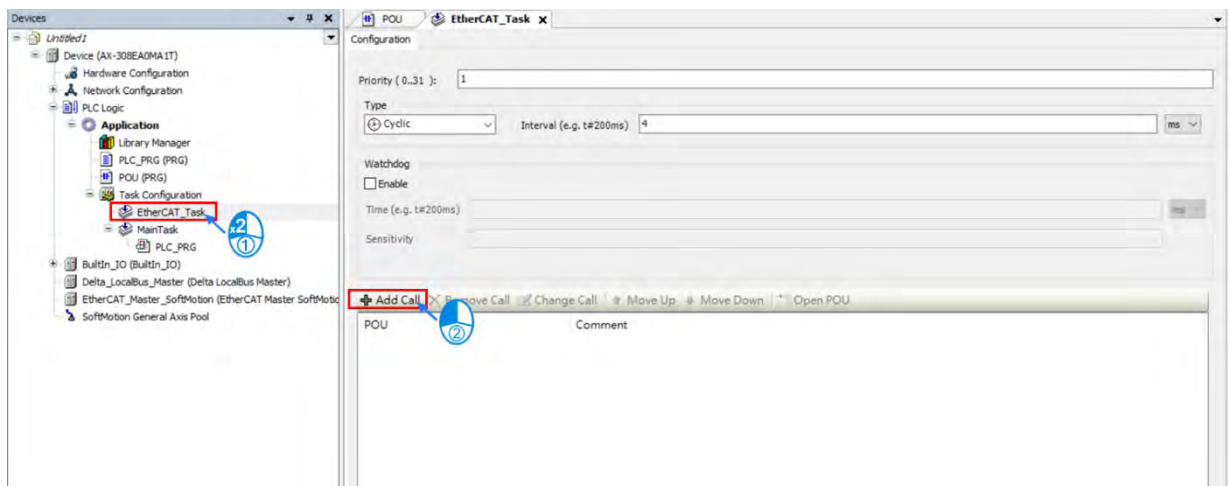
- Open the existed projects in DIADesigner-AX and right-click “Application” to select “Add Object”, then choose “POU”.



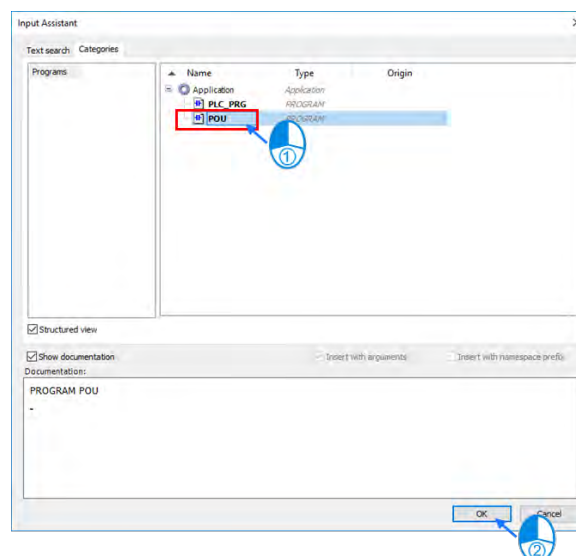
- Type in POU name. For Implementation language, select a programming language then click “Add”



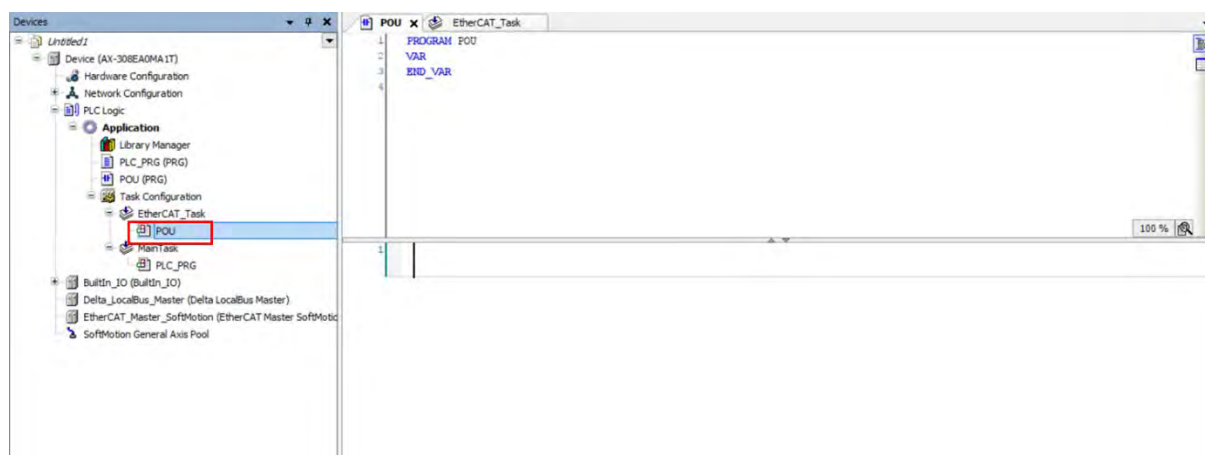
- The POU appears in the left column. Double-click on “EtherCAT_Task” and choose “Add Call”.



- Select the created POU and click “OK”.



- Choose POU in EtherCAT_Task item to compile a program .



7.6.1.4 PDO Mapping

Before using motion control instructions, the communication of PDO (Process Data Objects) Mapping between the software DIADesigner-AX and AX motion CPU must be setup first.

Setting values for PDO Mapping

RxPDO(1600 hex)	Control Word(6040 hex) · TargetPosition(607A hex)
TxPDO(1A00 hex)	Status Word(6041 hex) · ActualPosition(6064 hex)

The table above is the pre-determined PDO Mapping parameters for ASDA-A2-E.

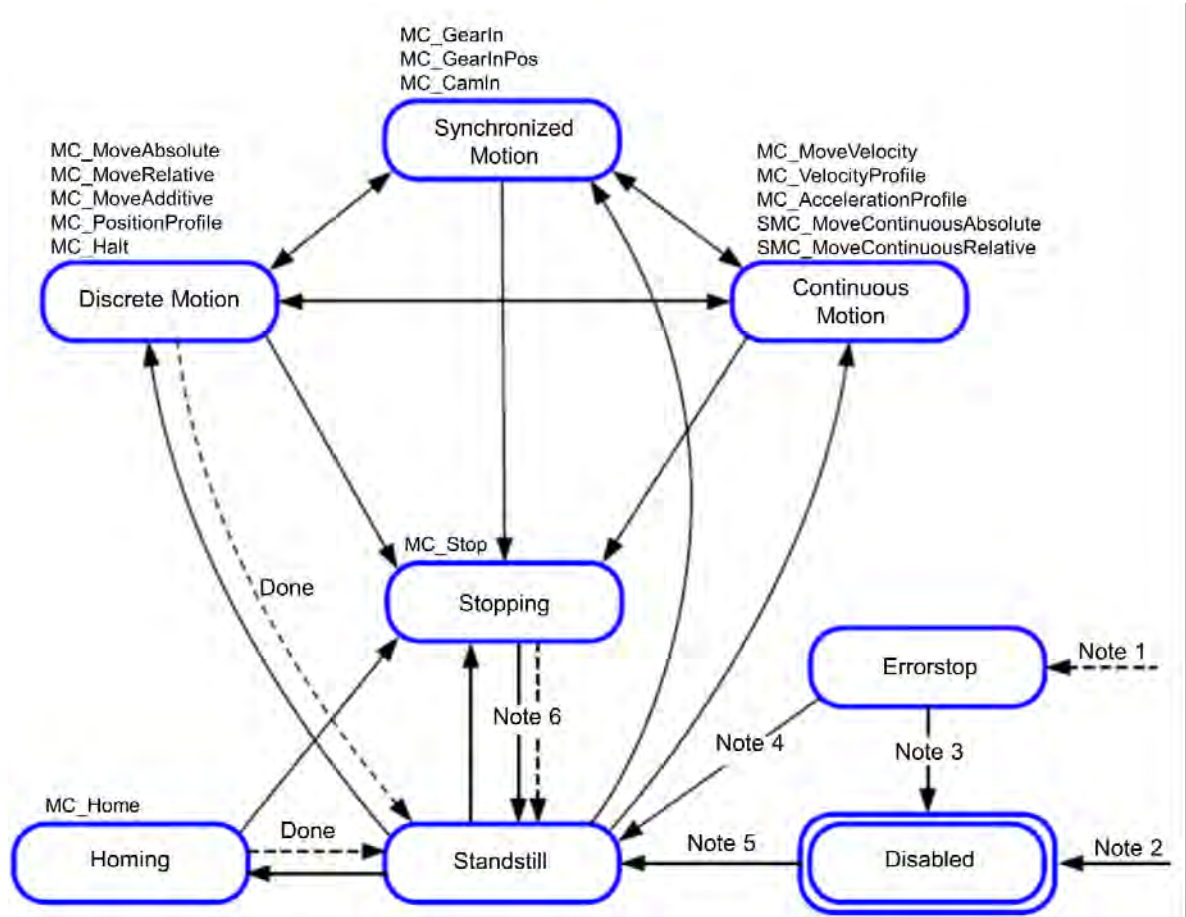
Please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual** for the PDO parameters required by the related motion function blocks.

7.6.2 Axis State Transitions

This section introduces single axis state transitions and multi-axis state transitions in axis groups for multiple function block use. The transition rules fulfill PLCopen motion control standard.

7.6.2.1 Axis State

- Synchronous Axis



Note 1: Regardless of the state. An error in the axis has occurred.

Note 2: Regardless of the state. `MC_Power.Enable = FALSE`. There is no error in the axis.

Note 3: `MC_Reset` and `MC_Power.Status = FALSE`

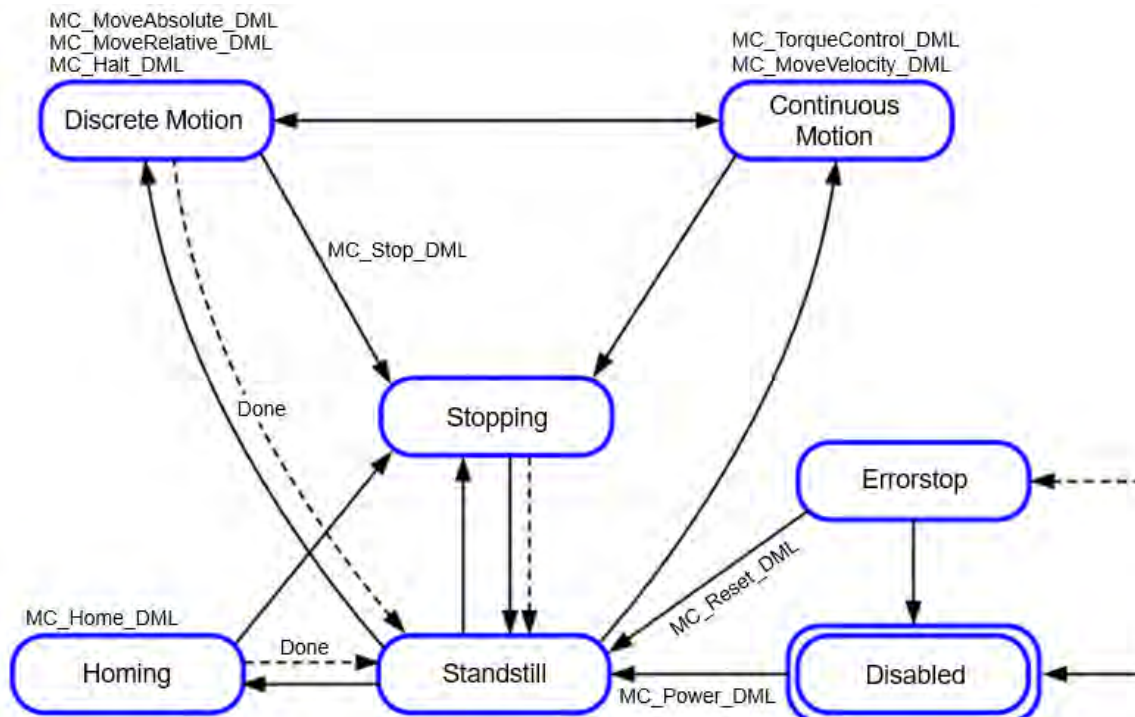
Note 4: `MC_Reset` and `MC_Power.Status = TRUE` and `MC_Power.Enable = TRUE`

Note 5: `MC_Power.Enable = TRUE` and `MC_Power.Status = TRUE`

Note 6: `MC_Stop.Done = TRUE` and `MC_Stop.Execute = FALSE`

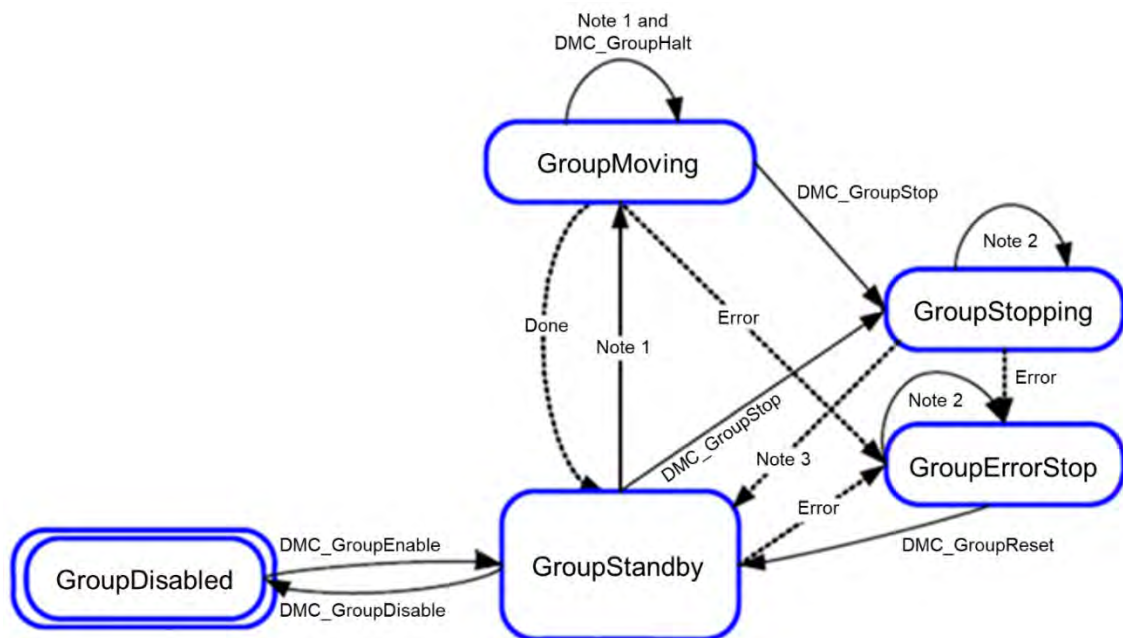
State	Meaning
Disabled	Axis during servo OFF, standstill, ready to execute
Standstill	Axis during servo ON, standstill
Discrete Motion	The state would be Discrete Motion while executing single-axis motion instructions.
Continuous Motion	The state would be Continuous Motion while executing continuous motion instructions of single-axis.
Synchronized	Achieves state of synchronized motion via instructions for synchronized control. Includes synchronous waiting state.
Stopping	When Execute is True via MC_Stop instructions Cannot execute axis instructions during this state When CommandAborted is TRUE, the instruction is executed
ErrorStop	Axis during servo ON or axis errors Cannot execute axis motion instructions under this state and all instructions are in CommandAborted = 1 state.
Homing	The state would be Homing while executing MC_Home or MC_HomeWithParameter instructions for single axis.

● Positioning Axis



State	Meaning
Disabled	Axis during servo OFF, standstill, ready to execute
Standstill	Axis during servo ON, standstill
Discrete Motion	The state would be Discrete Motion while executing single-axis motion instructions.
Continuous Motion	The state would be Continuous Motion while executing continuous motion instructions of single-axis.
Stopping	When Execute is True via MC_Stop instructions Cannot execute axis instructions during this state
ErrorStop	When an error occurs in the single axis. Cannot execute axis motion instructions for single axis under this state.
Homing	The state would be Homing while executing MC_Home or MC_HomeWithParameter instructions for single axis.

7.6.2.2 Axis Group State



Note 1: Applicable to all function blocks of group moving, non-administrative.

Note 2: All motion function blocks are able to be executed when the state is GroupErrorStop or GroupStopping

Note 3: When DMC_GroupStop is Done or MC_GroupStop is not Execute.

Note 4: The state of GroupDisabled can only be changed under GroupStandby state , or an error will occur.

Status	Definition
GroupDisabled	Execute MC_GroupDisable and switch axis to GroupDisabled.
GroupStandby	No motion instructions has been executed and the state of axis group is GroupStandby.
GroupMoving	A group positioning instruction is being executed, the state of axis group is GroupMoving.Moving °
GroupStopping	When Active of MC_GroupSto is True, the state of axis group is GroupStopping. No motion instructions can be executed under this state.
GroupErrorStop	The axis group will enter GroupErrorStop state, once an error occurs.

■ Interaction between single-axis state and axis group state

- If one of the axes in the group is in ErrorStop and the axis group is not in GroupDisabled, the group would be in GroupErrorStop status.
- When state GroupMoving/GroupStopping/GroupHoming disconnect the power of an axis, the axis group would be in GroupErrorStop state.
- If all axes are in Standstill, the axis group can be in state GroupStandby, GroupDisabled or GroupErrorStop.
- If the motion of a single-axis interrupts the motion of axis group, the other axes in the group should be stopped and enter state Stopping, while the state of the axis group entering state GroupStandby.
- In case that the axis group is in GroupStandby, there's no need for all the single axes being in state SynchronizedMotion.
- For axis group motion instructions (including MC_GroupStop), all single axes in the axis group should be in state SynchronizedMotion.
- When an error occurs during the movement of axis group, all axis in the group should stop immediately till the axis group entering state GroupErrorStop. Those single axes with no errors will enter state Standstill.
- When the state of axis group is GroupErrorStop, the state of single axes will not be affected.

7.6.3 Execution and Status Indication for Motion Control Instructions

The motion function blocks are grouped under two main categories with AX series motion controllers:

Category	Description
MC_	PLCopen motion control function blocks
DMC_	Delta self-defined function blocks*

***Note:** Delta self-defined function blocks (DMC) include motion control type and other administrative/ non-administrative type applicable for AX series motion CPU. Please find AX

General pins for motion control function blocks include input, output and in-out. The section explains the meanings and behaviors of these pins. For more details concerning motion function blocks, please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.6.3.1 Basic Rules of Executing Instructions

- Defining input and output pins

Common inputs and outputs in motion control function blocks are listed below. Usually, a function block consists of at least one or a part of the input/output pins listed below. For example, a function block contains either Execute or Enable input pin based on the properties of the motion control function block.

Inputs			
Name	Description	Date Type	Setting value (Default)
En	Receiving the logic status in front of the instruction	BOOL	True/False (False)
Enable	Enabling motion control function block	BOOL	True/False (False)
Execute	Executing motion control function block	BOOL	True/False (False)
Outputs			
Name	Description	Date Type	Setting value(Default)
Eno	Transferring the input logic state of the <i>En</i> to the next serial instruction	BOOL	True/False (False)
Done	The execution of the function block is completed	BOOL	True/False (False)
Valid	The output pin value is valid	BOOL	True/False (False)
Busy	The motion control function block is listed for execution	BOOL	True/False (False)
Active	Axes are been controlled by function blocks	BOOL	True/False (False)
CommandAborted	Aborts execution for motion control function blocks	BOOL	True/False (False)
Error	Error occurs in function blocks	BOOL	True/False (False)

A motion control function block usually consists of Execute or Enable input pin and is used to either execute or enable a motion control function block. In addition, a motion control function block has Busy and Done output pins. The Busy and Done outputs refer to the status of motion control function blocks. When execution of motion control function blocks can be aborted by another motion control function block, the CommandAborted/Aborted output pin appears in the function block. Nevertheless, when Error output pin is True, this indicates error during function block execution.

A motion control function block not only has Execute/Enable input, but also include the input value/state. The characteristics are described below.

- Use input value

- When a function block contains Execute input, each input value is used once Execute input signal changes from False to True. However, when Execute is re-triggered, input values are not updated as a result.
- When a function block contains Enable input, each input value is used once Enable input signal changes from False to True. Compare to Execute input, function blocks of Enable input usually have more input values

which need to be continuously updated. (Refer to each function block for more detail).

- Input value exceeds range

When a motion control function block is enabled, the system restricts you to input values that exceeds the permitted range. Nevertheless, error occurs during execution of motion control function blocks and results in motion axes errors. You should avoid input incorrect values in programs.

- Output pins are mutually exclusive.

■ When a function block contains Execute input, Busy output, Done output, CommandAborted output or Error output, only one state is set to True during the same time. When Execute input is set True, one output (Busy, Done, CommandAborted or Error) must set True.

■ When a function block contains Enable input, while Valid output and Error output are mutually exclusive, this indicates only one output is set True.

- Valid time for output data/status value

■ When a function block contains Execute input and the input signal changes from True to False, the current Done output, Error output, CommandAborted output of current True and output pin data are reset or cleared. However, when a function block is Busy, despite that the Execute input signal changes from True to False, execution of the function block will not stop. The expected output state (Done output, Error output, CommandAborted output) will generate to True and retain for one week.

■ When a function block contains Enable input and input signal changes from True to False, Valid output, Busy output and Error output are reset. (For input and output description not mentioned, please refer to MC_Power instruction for more details.)

- Characteristic of Done output

When execution of a motion control function block is completed, Done output is set to True.

- Characteristic of Busy output

■ When a function block contains Execute input and uses Buy output to indicate incomplete execution, new output state (value) is to be generated. When Execute input signal changes from False to True, then Busy output is set to True. When Done output, CommandAborted output or Error output is set to True, then Busy output is reset.

■ When a function block contains Enable input and uses Buy output to indicate incomplete execution, new output state (value) is to be generated. When Enable input signal changes from False to True and as long as Busy output is set True, changes in input state (value) can be expected.

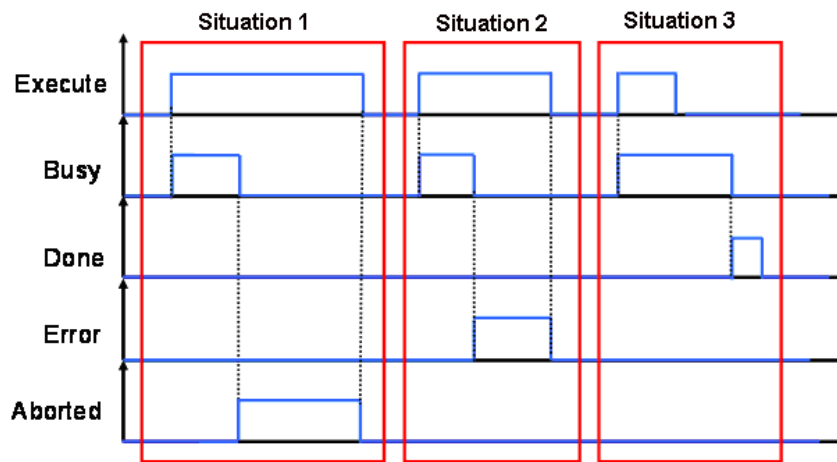
- Characteristic of CommandAborted/Aborted output

When execution of a motion control function block is aborted, CommandAborted/Aborted output is set True.

- Relation between Enable input and Valid output

A function block contains Enable input and uses Valid output to indicate validity of output data/status. Only when Enable input is set True and output data/status is valid, then Valid output is set True; when errors occur in function blocks, then output data/status is invalid and Valid output is set to False; when errors are cleared in motion control function blocks and output data/status changes to valid, then Valid output is set to True.

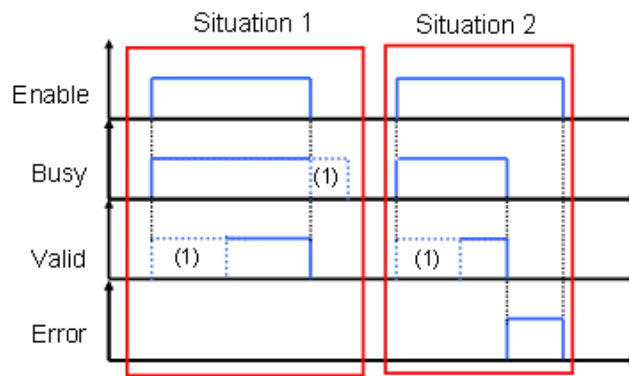
7.6.3.2 Timing Diagram for Input/Outputs



Situation 1: The execution of motion control function block is aborted.

Situation 2: Errors occur in motion control function blocks.

Situation 3: The execution of motion control function block is completed.



(1) It may take some time.

Situation 1: The execution of motion control function block is normal.

Situation 2: An error occurs in a motion control function block.

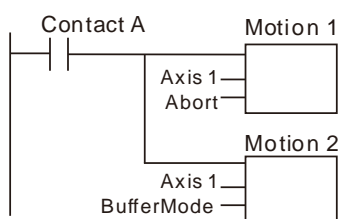
7.6.3.3 Repeated Execution Behavior of Single Axis Motion Instructions

When single axis motion function blocks are executing (Busy state), variables for input pins can be modified and function block pins can be re-triggered on the rising. Meanwhile, the state of function block output pins remain the same (remain Busy), while the system is executing which means it is aborting the previous rising edge-trigger instruction under buffer mode. For similar mode of behavior, refer to section 7.6.3.5 Single Axis Buffer Mode (Aborting) for more details.

7.6.3.4 Multi-execution of Motion Control Instructions

This section describes executing multiple motion control instructions for the same axis or axis group within the same scan period.

- In the following programming, instruction instances Move1 and Move2 start in the same task period when contact A turns ON.
- According to the ladder logic, instructions in a program are executed from the top. Therefore Motion1 starts first, and then Motion 2 will be executed once Motion 1 is finished.
- This is considered multi-execution of motion control instructions. Since the motion combination is determined by input variables of BufferMode, BufferMode setting in Motion 2 is used to execute Motion 2 in relation to Motion 1.



7.6.3.5 Synchronous Execution Behavior of Motion Instructions

■ Single Axis Buffer Mode

You can execute another motion control instruction while an axis is moving. A total of six types of BufferMode can be chosen to proceed multi-execution of two instructions, which you can set the BufferMode input variables to the later motion control instruction to select one of the six Buffer Modes.

The meanings of terms relating to BufferMode shown as follows:

1. Current instruction: The motion control instruction that was in operation just before executing the multi-execution instruction.
2. Buffered instruction: A motion control instruction that was executed during an axis motion and is waiting to be executed
3. Transit velocity: The velocity to use by the current instruction to transfer to the buffered instruction.
4. Target Velocity: The Velocity parameters of the instruction.
5. Target position: the Position or Distance parameters of relating move instructions.

BufferMode	Description of Operation
0 : mcAborting (Aborting)	The current instruction is aborted and the multi-executed instruction is executed.
1 : mcBuffered (Buffered)	The buffered instruction is executed after the operation for the current instruction is normally finished.
2 : mcBlendingLow (Low velocity)	The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is reached. The transit velocity is set to the target velocity of the current instruction or the buffered instruction, whichever is lowest.
3 : mcBlendingPrevious (Previous velocity)	The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is reached. The target velocity of the current instruction is used as the transit velocity
4 : mcBlendingNext (Next velocity)	The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is reached. The target velocity of the buffered instruction is used as the transit velocity.

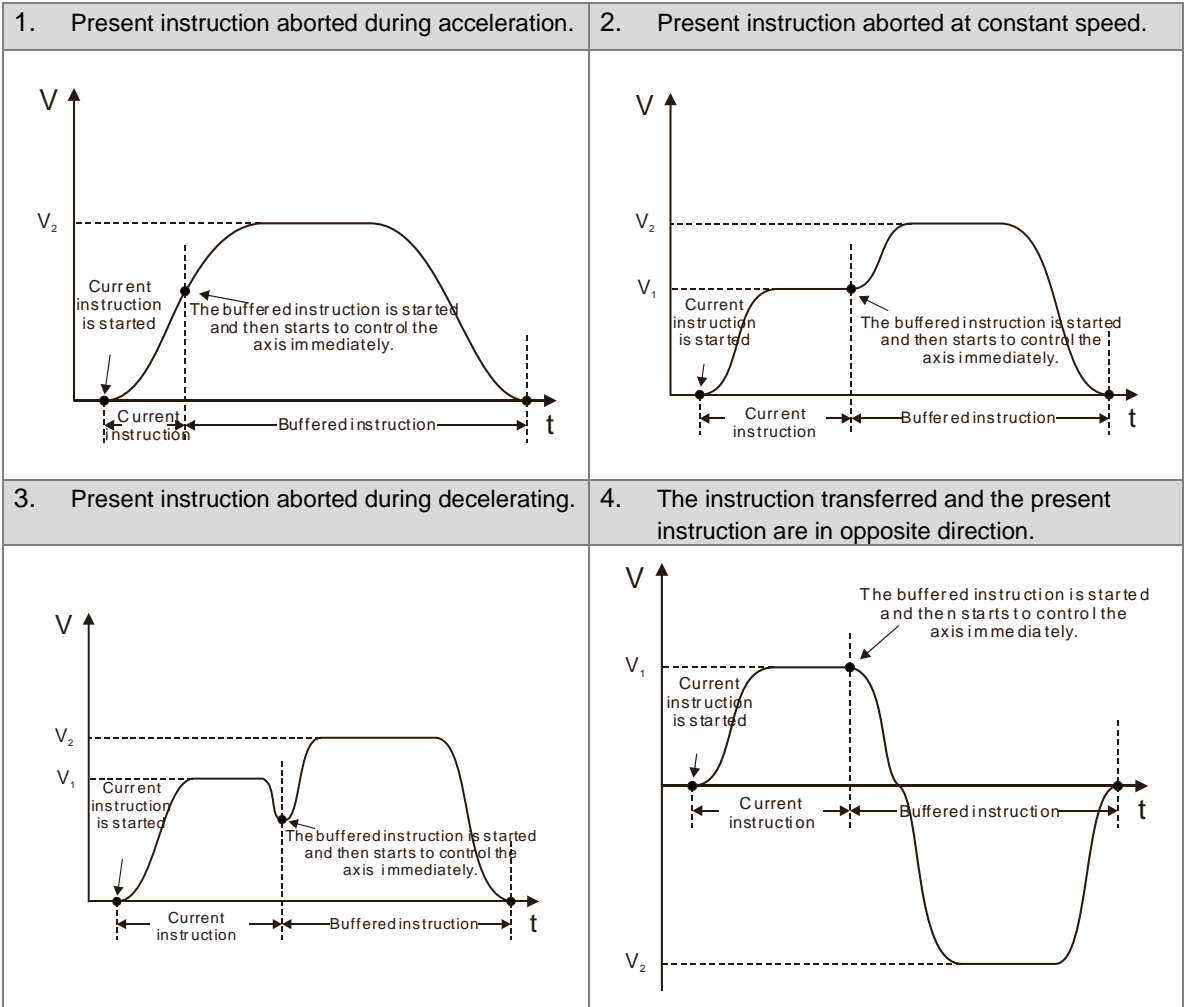
BufferMode	Description of Operation
5 : mcBlendingHigh (High velocity)	The buffered instruction is executed after the target position of the current instruction is reached. The transit velocity is set to the target velocity of the current instruction or the buffered instruction, whichever is highest.

● **Example:** Brefly explain with two MoveRelative instructons

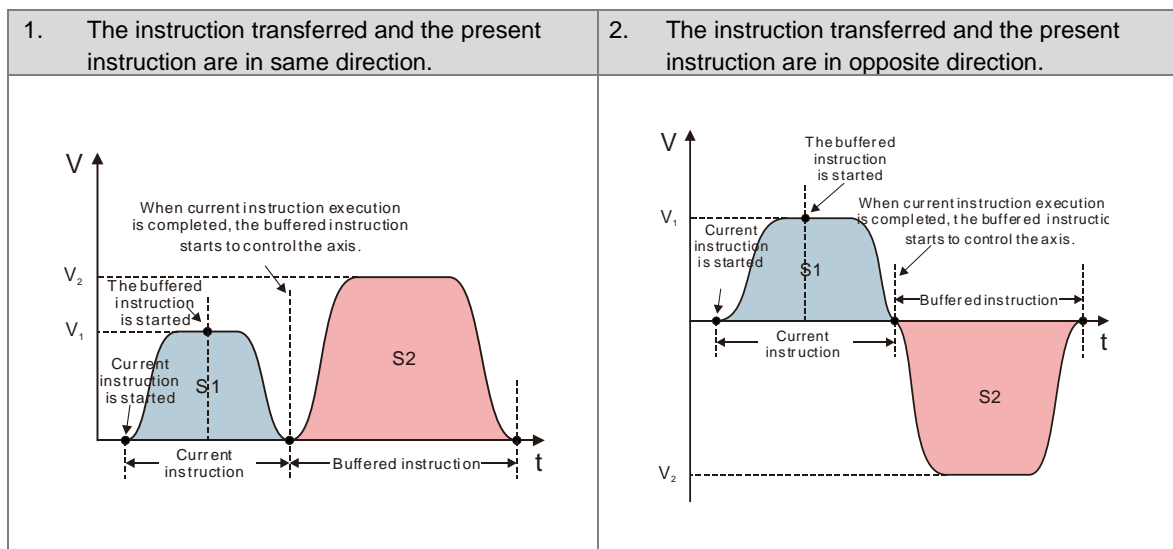
The max velocity and the displacement of the first and second instruction are respectively V_1 , S_1 and V_2 , S_2 .

Different types of BufferModes set for the second instruction result in various transitting situation shown as follows.

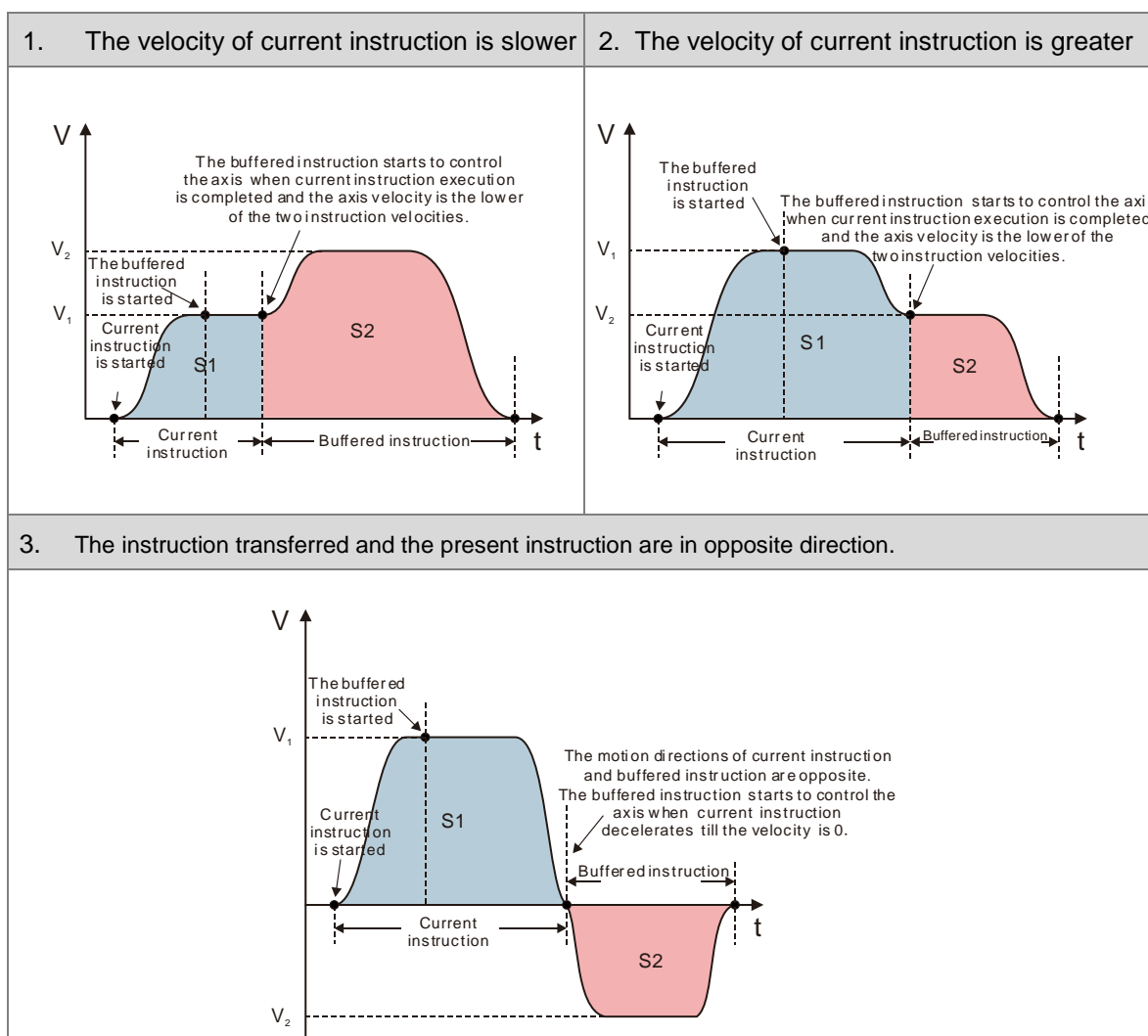
■ **Buffermode=mcAborting**



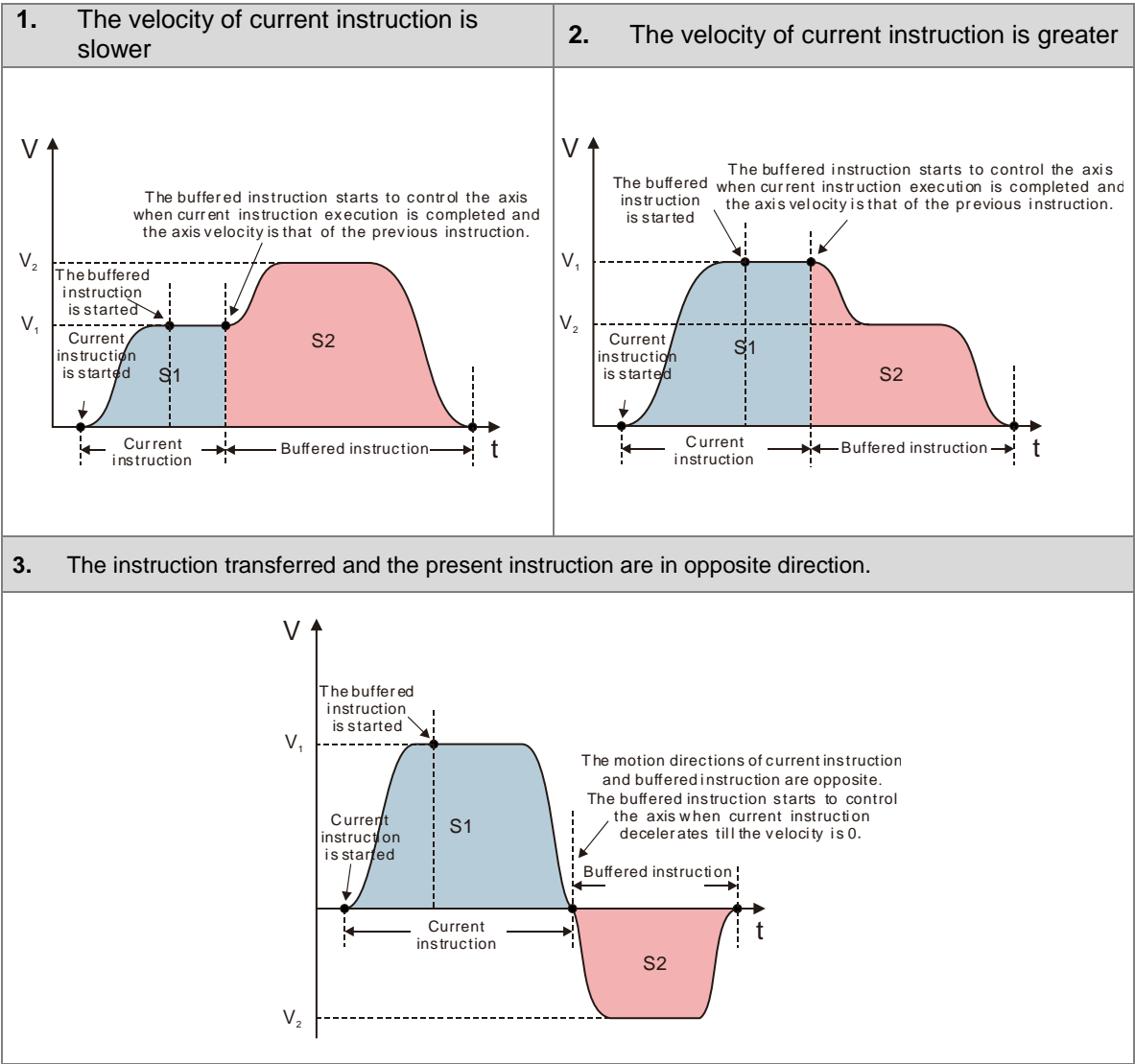
■ Buffermode=mcBuffered



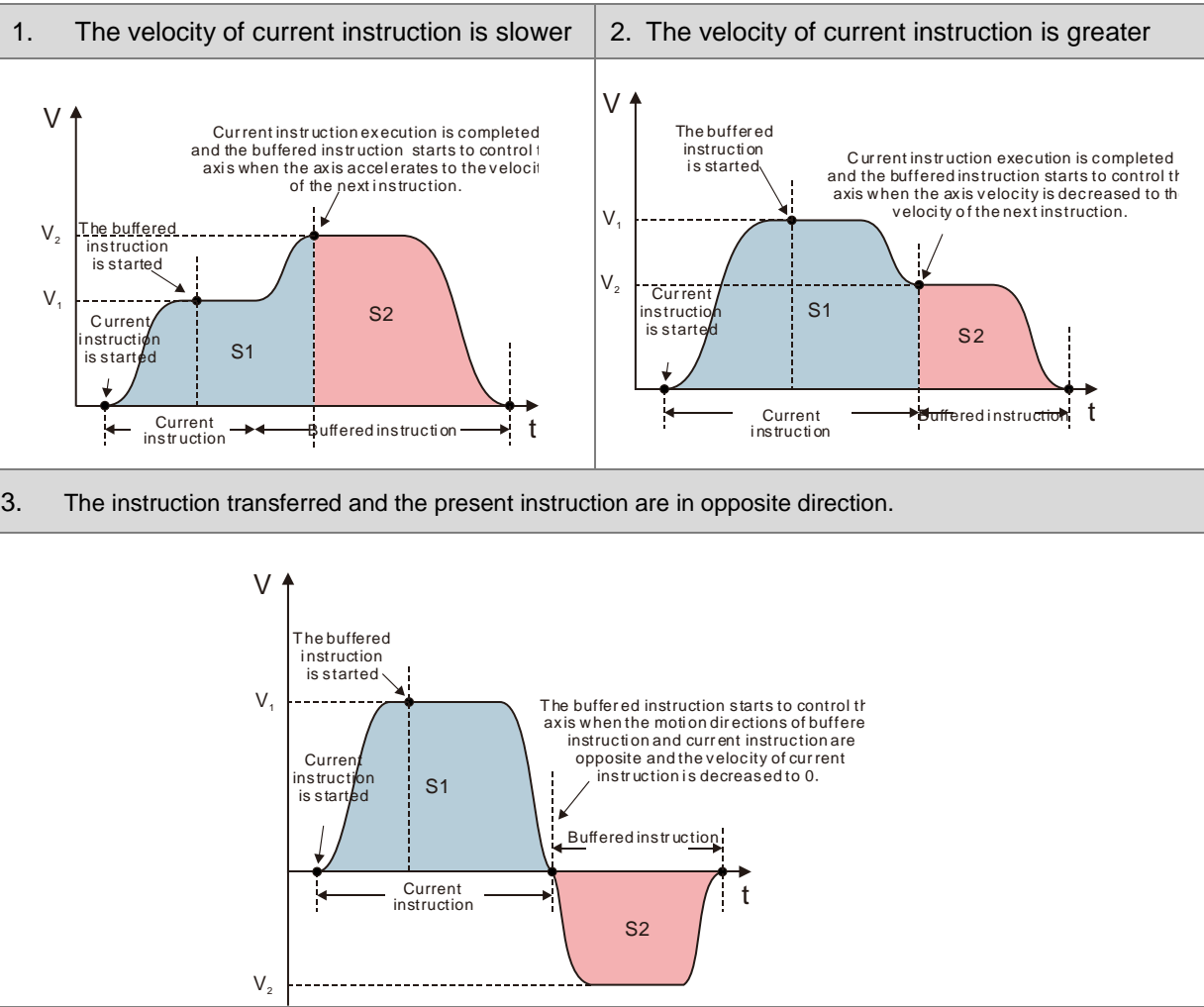
■ Buffermode=mcBlendingLow



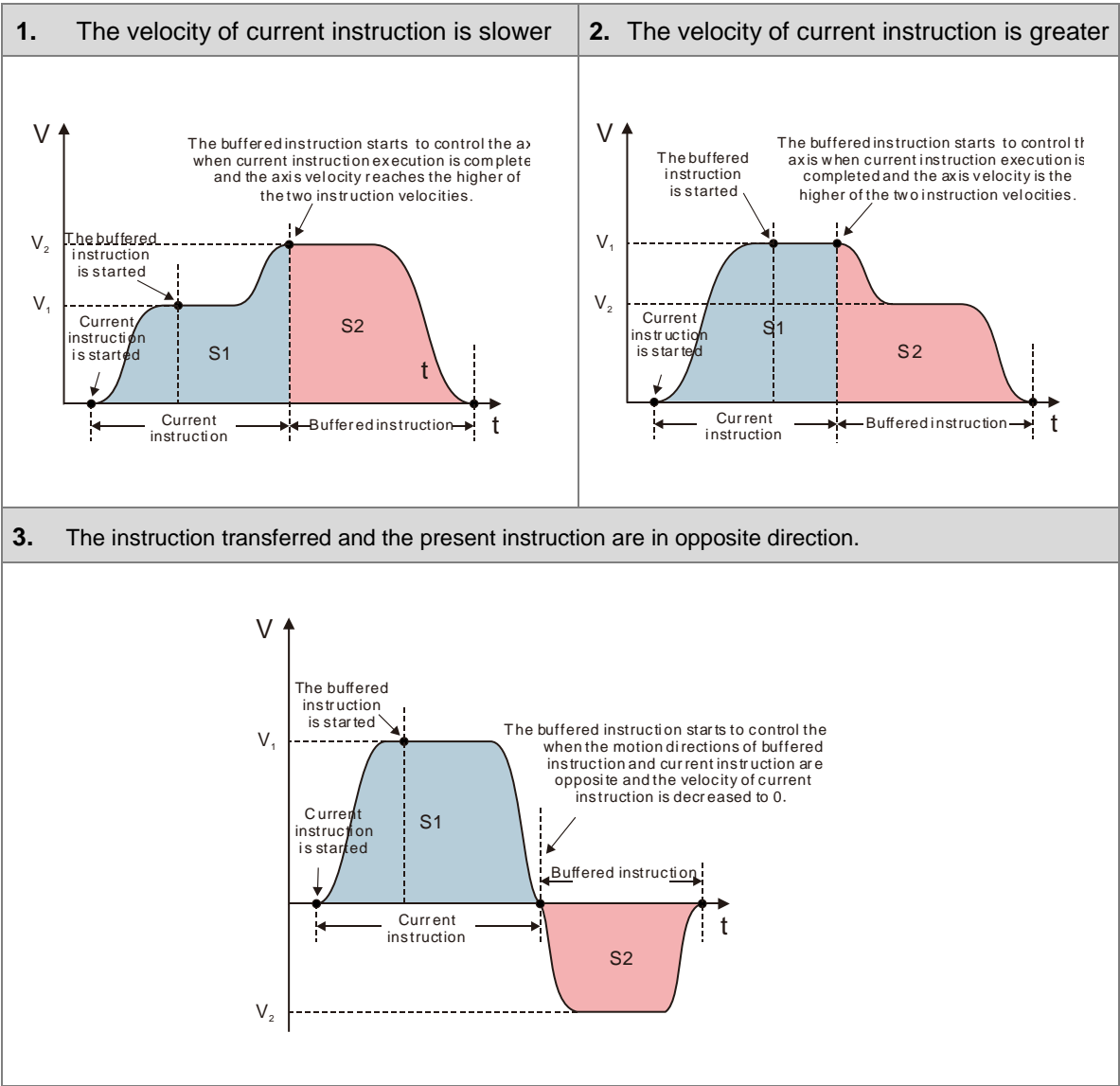
■ Buffermode=mcBlendingPrevious



■ Buffermode=mcBlendingNext



■ Buffermode=mcBlendingHigh



***Note:** Single-axis motion instructions MC support only Buffermode=mcAborting while motion instructions for axis group support all of the above BufferMode.

7.6.4 Position

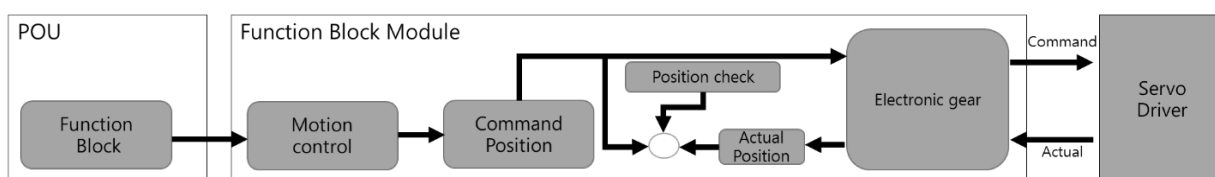
This section describes the position processes of motion control programming.

7.6.4.1 Types of Positions

MC function blocks are formed by the following two types of positions.

- Command position: MC function block provides command position.
- Actual position: The actual feedback position from servo drives.

The following figure indicates the relationship between the command position and the actual position.



The following item of command position and actual position is the same.

Position Type	Description
Command position	This is the position that motion controller outputs to servo drive
Actual (feedback) position	This is the position feedback from servo drive or encoder

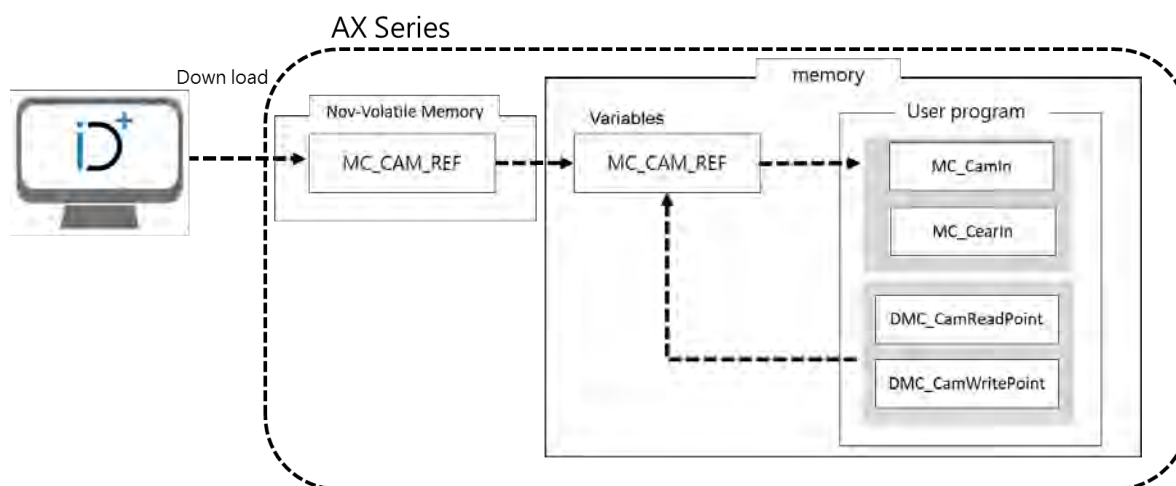
***Note:** For axes configured as Virtual, the actual position is equal to the command.

7.6.5 CAM Tables and Framework

This section introduces electronic cam (E-CAM) operation and using DIADesigner-AX to generate CAM table settings as well as E-CAM applications. For details regarding instructions, please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

7.6.5.1 E-CAM Framework

Adopt CAM Editor function from software DIADesigner-AX for planning CAM curves and download to PLC via communication protocols so that MC function blocks can be used to control CAM.



7.6.5.2 Creating E-CAM

The data that defines the relationship between master/slave (CAM axis) is called E-CAM data.

When using CAM Editor of DIADesigner-AX, it is crucial to know the relationship between master and slave axis position through the two methods described below:

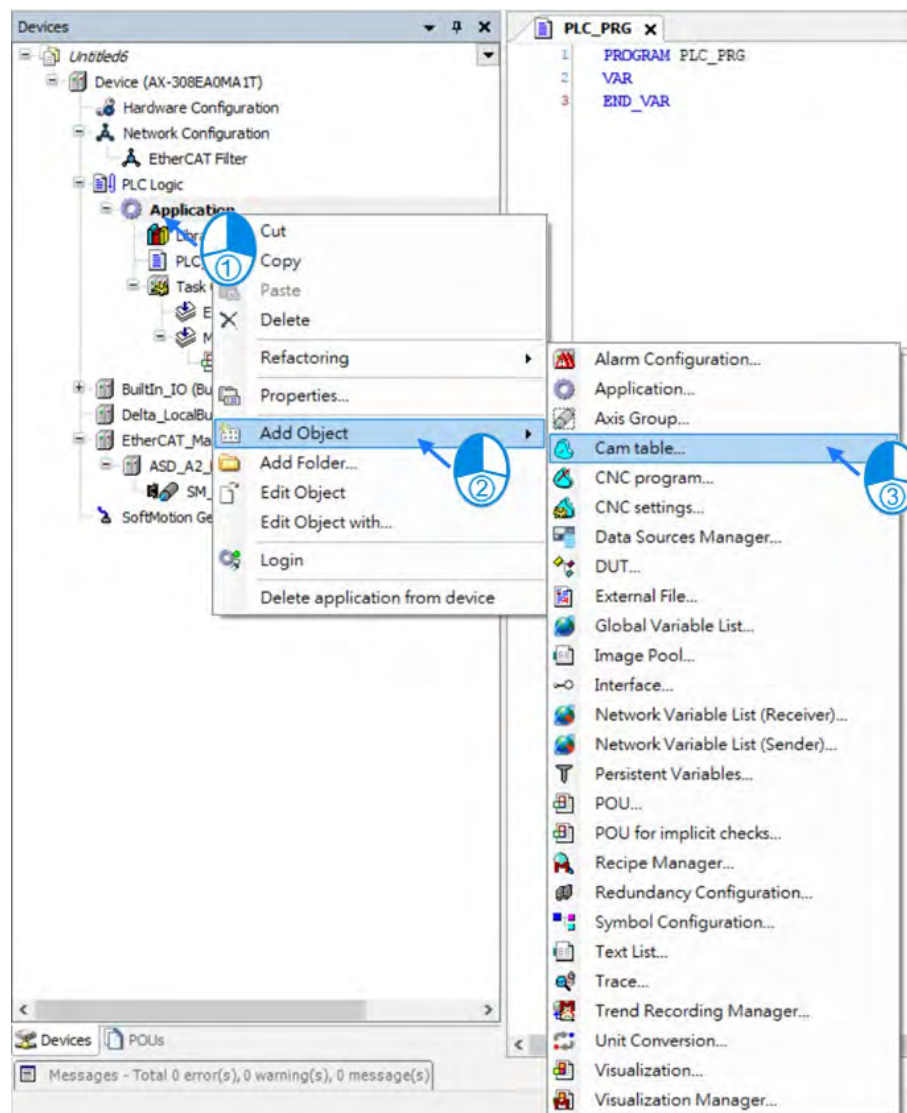
Method 1: Obtains the relationship between master and slave axis position based on E-CAM data setting.

Method 2: Measures the corresponding relationship between master and slave axis position through real task.

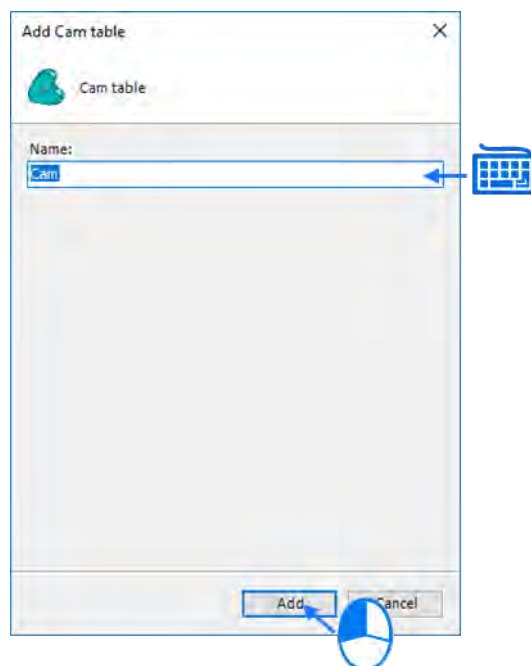
When the CAM master and slave relationship is confirmed, the slave position can be obtained based on the master axis position.

• Create DIADesigner-AX CAM tables

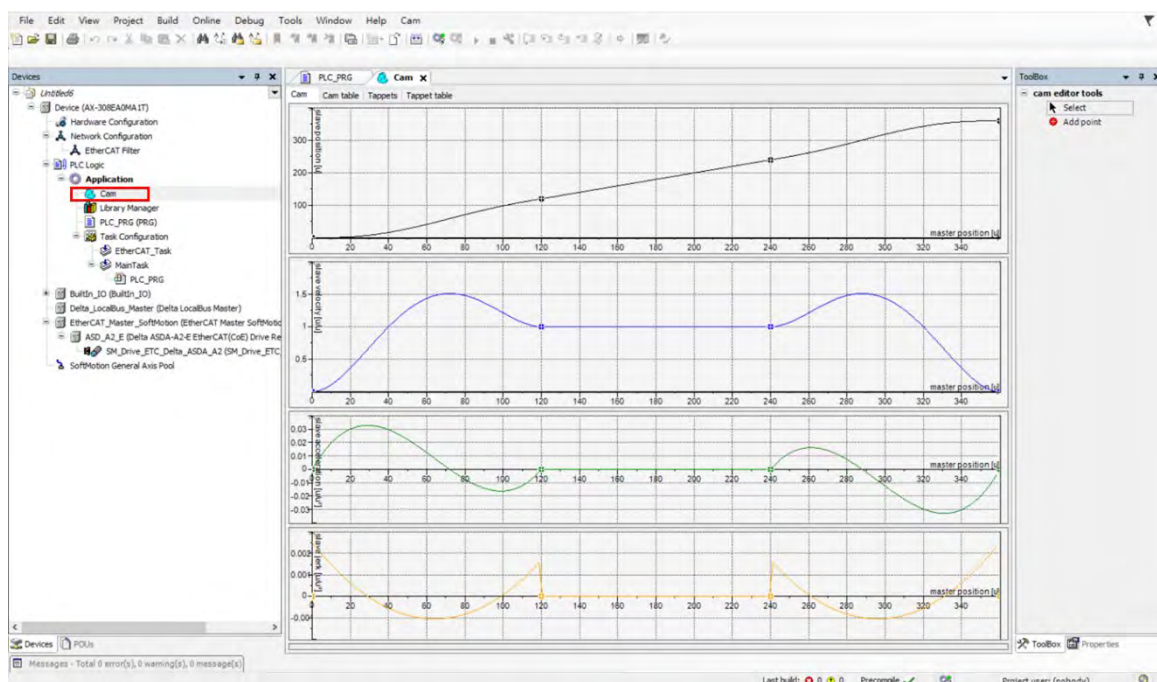
- (1) Right-click "Application", choose "Add Object" and then select "CAM Table".



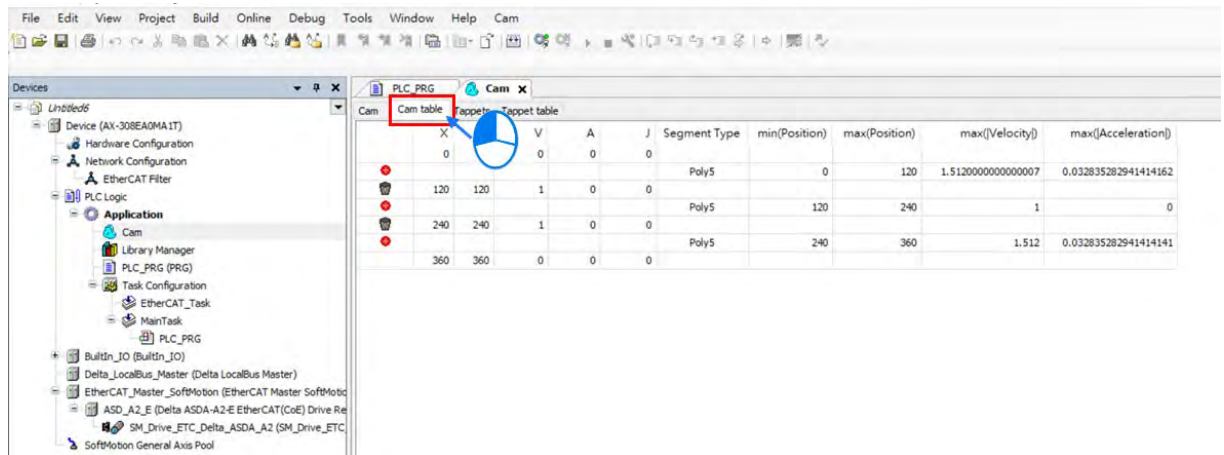
(2) Type the name of the CAM table.



(3) After clicking “Add”, CAM icon is shown on the left item box.



(4) Click “Cam Table” on the CAM page.

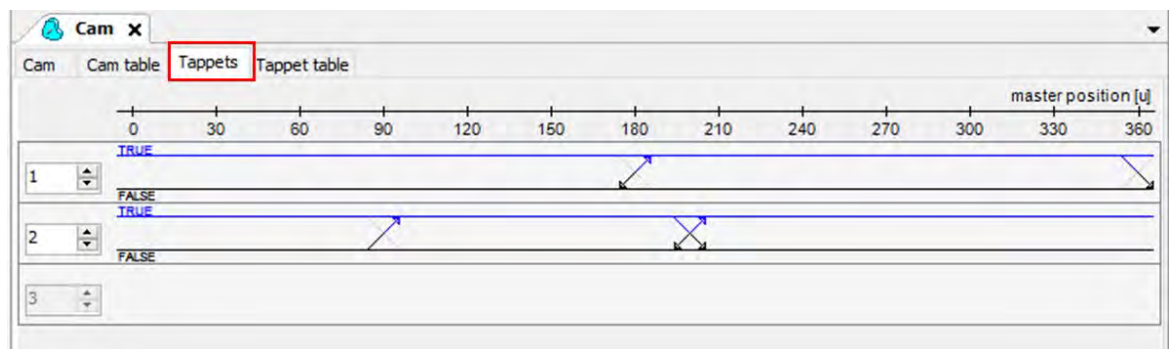


(5) Add or delete CAM data on the CAM Table screen



- Click to add new CAM data
- Click to delete CAM data
- X: Position data of master axis
- Y: Position data of slave axis
- A: Acceleration of slave axis
- J: Jerk of slave axis
- Segment Type: Curve type

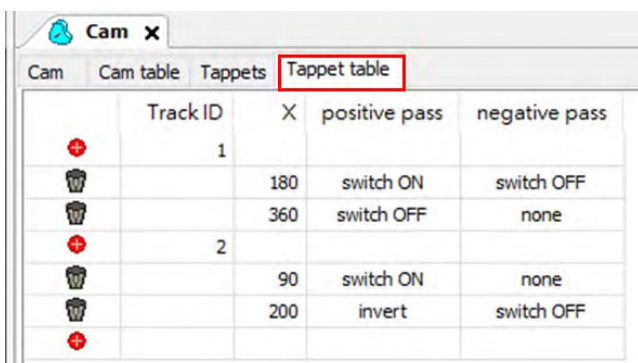
Cam	X	Y	V	A	J	Segment Type	min(Position)	max(Position)	max(Velocity)	max(Acceleration)
0	0	0	0	0	0	Poly5	0	120	1.5120000000000007	0.032835282941414162
120	120	120	1	0	0	Poly5	120	240	1	0
240	240	240	1	0	0	Poly5	240	360	1.512	0.032835282941414141








(6) You can configure multiple tappets on “Tappets” page and several tappets can be set for each tappet ID. After finishing setting “Tappet table”, a diagram which illustrates the relation between tappets and master axes would be shown on “Tappets” page. While moving the points on Tappets page, the setting parameters on Tappet table page would be changed simultaneously.



(7) You can configure tappets on "Tappet table" page and read the status of tappets with SMC_GetTappetValue, which can also be modified according to the settings in "Tappet table" and the direction when CAM master passing the tappets.

- Click  to add new Track ID.
- Click  to delete TrackID.
- Track ID: Tappet ID
- X: Master position
- Positive pass: Axis passes tappets in positive direction, which the setting is as below:
 - ◆ None: No action
 - ◆ Switch to ON: TRUE
 - ◆ Switch to OFF: FALSE
 - ◆ Invert: Opposite direction
- Negative pass: Axis passes tappets in negative direction, which the setting is as below:
 - ◆ None: No action
 - ◆ Switch to ON: TRUE
 - ◆ Switch to OFF: FALSE
 - ◆ Invert: Opposite direction



	Track ID	X	positive pass	negative pass
	1			
		180	switch ON	switch OFF
		360	switch OFF	none
	2			
		90	switch ON	none
		200	invert	switch OFF
				

7.7 Motion Control Functions

7.7.1 System Structure

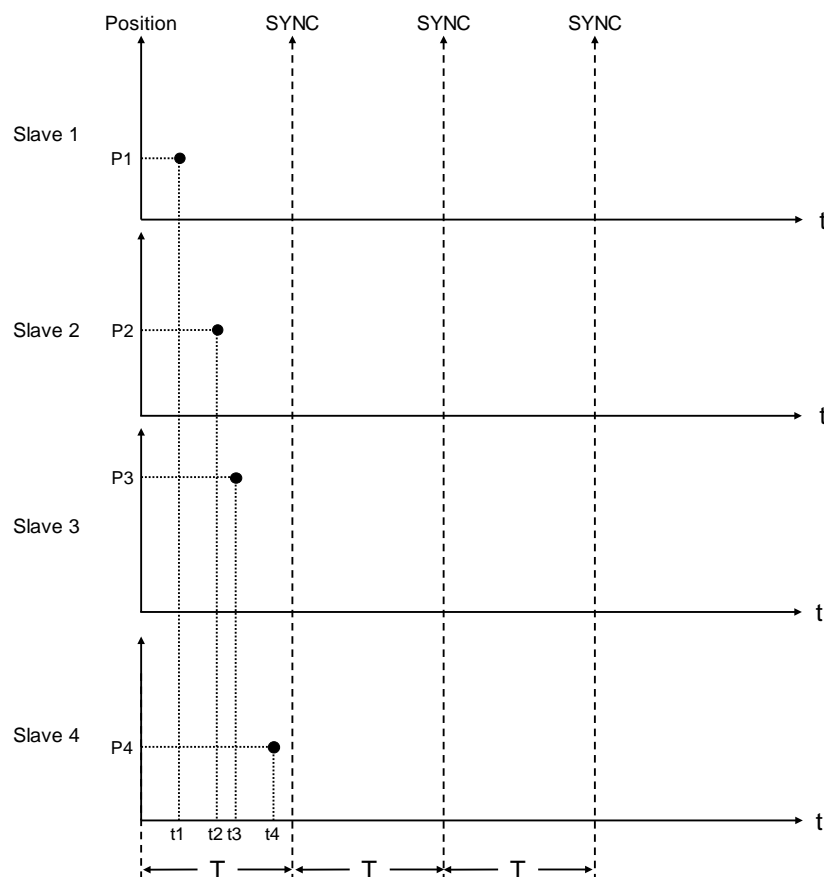
The single axis motion instructions of MC function blocks can generate specified motion path for axis based on user-defined parameters under three control modes including position control, velocity control, and torque control.

The CANopen over EtherCAT (CoE) protocol is based on standard CiA402 which includes Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode, Cyclic Synchronous Velocity Mode and Cyclic Synchronous Torque Mode (explained in the following sections).

7.7.2 Single-axis Control

7.7.2.1 Cyclic Synchronous Position Mode

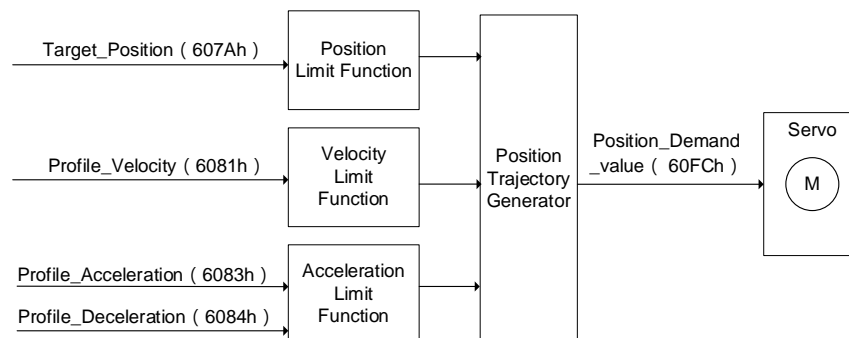
The synchronization between AX series controllers and servo drives is implemented via sync signal transmission sent by controllers. These incoming data would not be valid until the Distributed Clocks (DC)* in each servo drives are synchronized. In the following figure, four servo drives receive control data at different timing (t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4) within a synchronous cyclic time (T). However, the data is valid after all servo drives are synchronized with the SYNC event of the distributed clock system.



***Note:** Cyclic synchronous position mode is used only for synchronous axes.

7.7.2.2 Profile Position Mode

After the servo drive receives position demands from the master device, the drive controls the motor to reach the target position. Under profile position mode*, at first the master device only inform the drive about configuration relating to target position, velocity command, acceleration, and deceleration. All motion plannings are executed by the trajectory generator inside servo drive, from triggering demand to reaching target position.



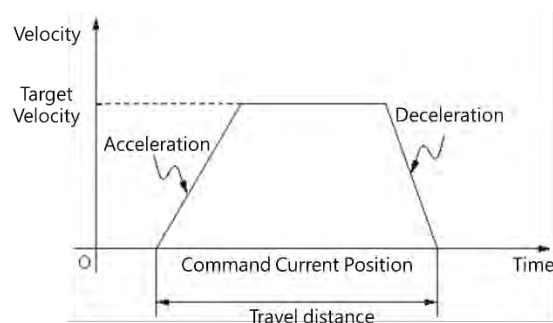
* Profile position mode is only used for positioning axes.

7.7.2.3 Positioning

- **Absolute positioning**

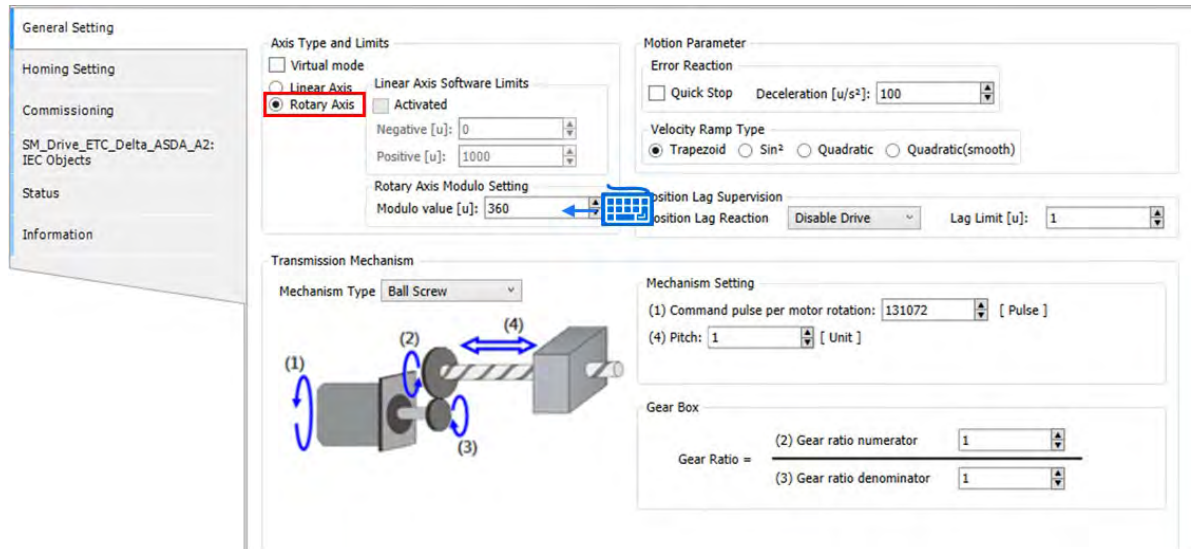
The curves for motion planning allows axis to move to the absolute coordinates of the target position in relation to home. In addition, the absolute positioning range for modulo axis is limited to the range of its cyclic rotation. Please refer to MC_MoveAbsolute function block for more information.

The following figure shows the motion trajectory for absolute positioning.



- **Rotary axes setting**

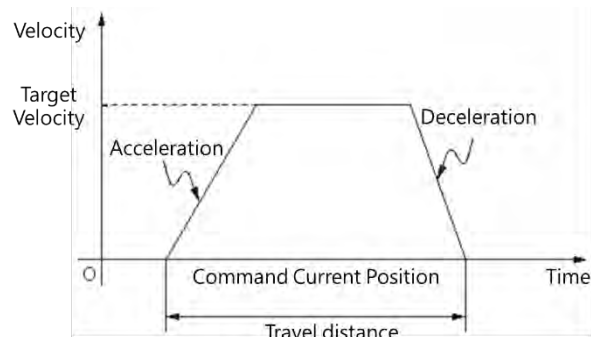
- After choosing “Rotary Axis” for axis type, set the angle of rotation for rotary axis in “Modulo value” area.



- **Relative positioning**

The curves for motion planning allow axis to move to the relative coordinates of the target position in relation to the actual position. Please refer to MC_MoveRelative function block for more information.

The following figure shows the motion trajectory for relative positioning.



7.7.2.4 Stop Method

The stopping state includes using motion instructions or enabled limit input as well as error stop input to stop axis operation. The stop behavior regarding clear error and limit input differs depending on the servo drives.

■ Using motion instructions to stop

To stop single-axis movement, use MC_Stop or MC_Halt instruction.

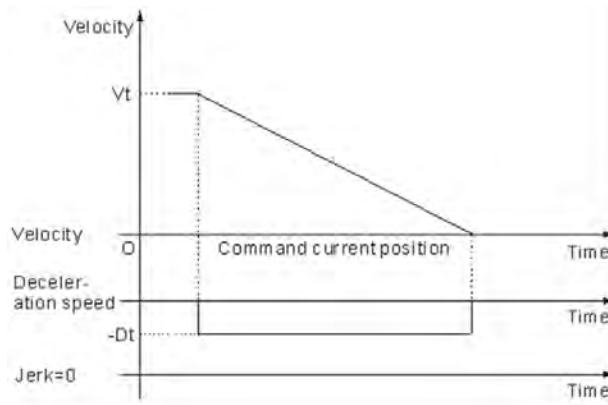
■ MC_Stop

- MC_Stop stops an axis in motion based on specified method and changes the state to “Stopping”.
- The instruction aborts any instructions in execution. When the axis state is “Stopping”, no instructions can be executed.

- The state of “Stopping” continues until velocity reaches 0 or Execute becomes False. When velocity is 0, Done changes to True.
- When Done becomes True and Execute is False, the axis changes to “Standstill” state.

The following diagram shows MC_Stop motion trajectory.

Velocity is determined by specified deceleration (DT).



Vt : Velocity before the deceleration slope starts Dt : The specified deceleration rate

MC_Halt

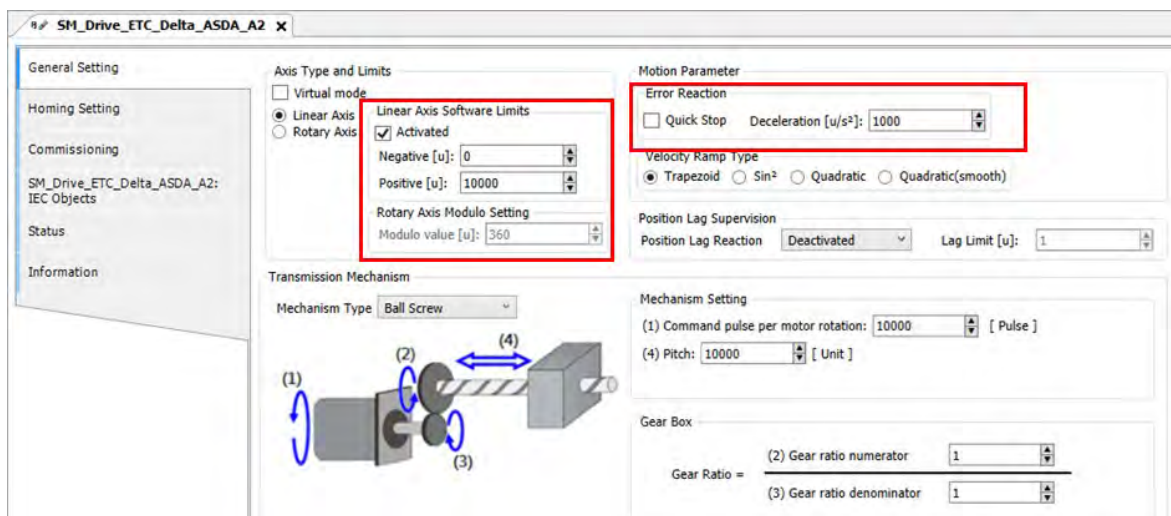
- MC_Halt temporarily stops an axis in motion and changes axis state to “DsicreteMotion” until axis velocity reaches 0. When the axis stops, the axis state changes to “Standstill”.
- During axis deceleration, other motion instructions can be executed to immediately abort MC_Halt operation.

Limit input stop

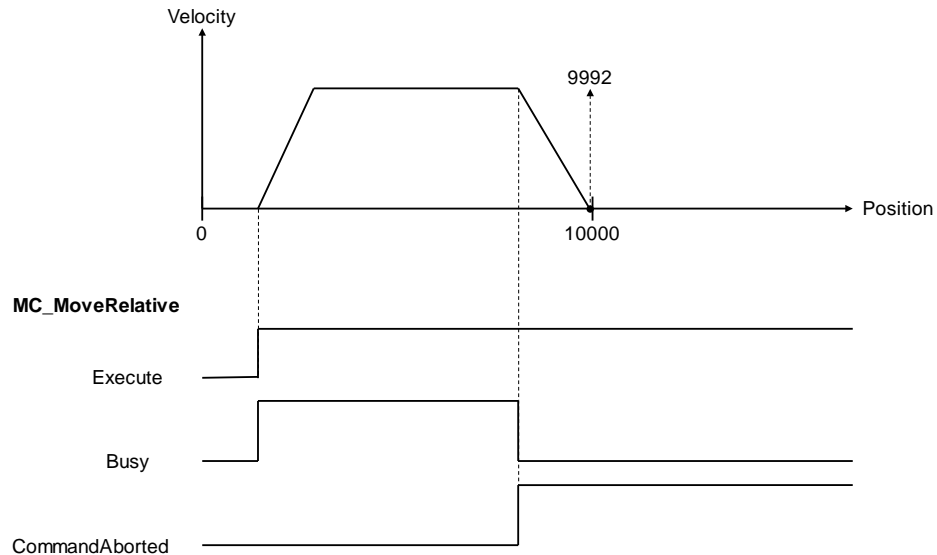
Software limit: You can activate/ inactivate software limit and configure its parameter settings on axis parameter setting page. When the axis is close to software limit during the movement, it will start the deceleration stop based on the axis parameters and stop under the software limit.

The example is shown as below:

- The positive and negative limit are respectively set as 10000 and 0 with “Activated” being selected. Then set 1000 for Deceleration.

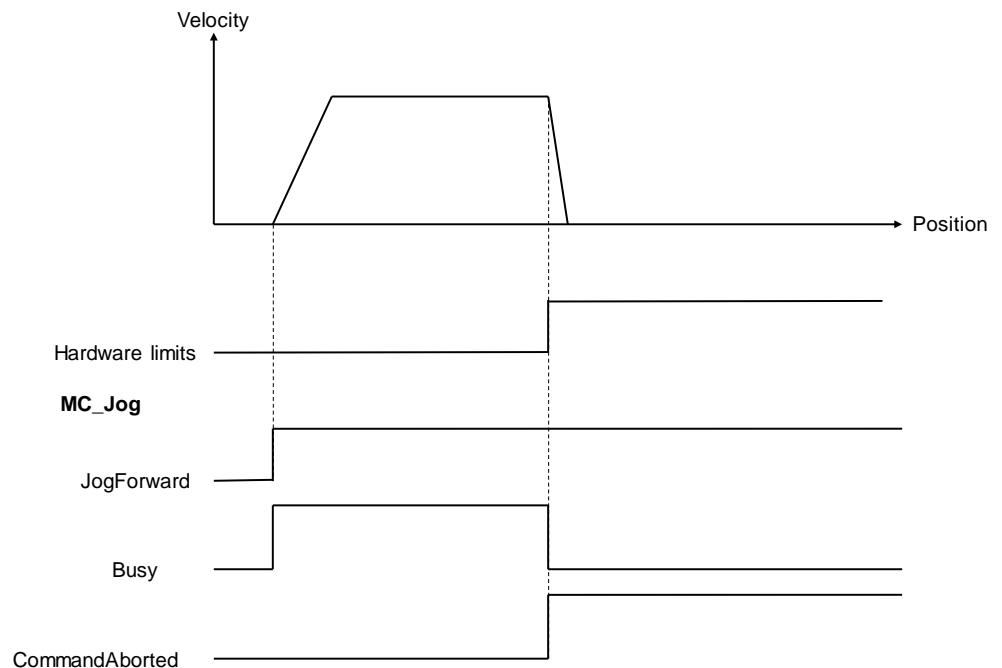


- Use function block MC_MoveRelative and activate the function block when the position reaches 11,000. After the axis moving to about 8,000, Busy of the function block will shift from TRUE to FALSE, while CommandAborted shifts from FALSE to TRUE. The axis then starts to decelerate and stop at the position inside software limit



Hardware limit: Since the EtherCAT servo wires carry the hardware limit signals, the stop method for hardware limit may be different between companies and brands. The following description takes Delta ASDA-A2-E servo drive as example:

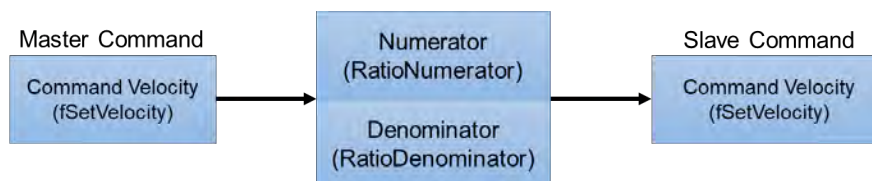
- Use MC_Jog function block to perform axis rotating in positive direction. Once the hardware limit is reached during the rotation, ASDA-A2-E servo drive will be stopped and report error messages via communication.



After using MC_Reset to clear errors for reaching software/ hardware limit, the system synchronizes the command position with the values of return position automatically and move away from the direction of limit so as to operate properly.

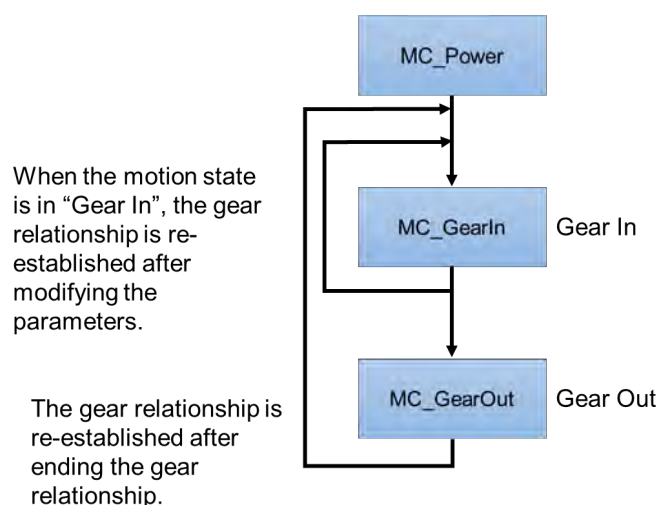
7.7.2.5 MC_GearIn

Use MC_GearIn instruction to control gear movement and cancel synchronization via MC_Gear Out instruction



In MC_GearIn, the master and slave axes, gear ratio numerator and gear ratio denominator, acceleration, deceleration as well as jerk are specified.

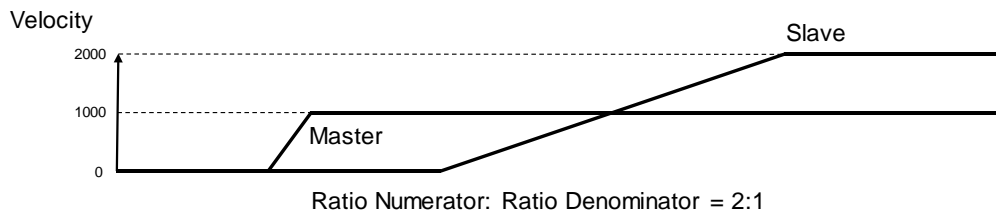
■ The following diagram shows the execution steps of instructions for electronic gears:



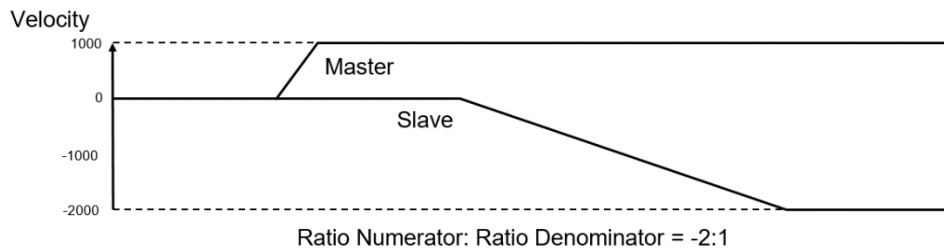
- When executing MC_GearIn, the slave axis enters the state of synchronized motion, while for MC_GearOut execution, the slave axis shifts away from sync state and maintains instant velocity to continue the movement and enters the state of continuous motion.
- During synchronized motion, when executing MC_Stop on the slave axis, MC_GearIn is aborted while master axis maintains the state of continuous motion and the slave axis enters to stopping state that will return to standstill once MC_Stop is Done.
- When slave axis is in synchronized motion state, its velocity may alter according to the master axis velocity and gear ratio.
- When both master and slave axes enters state of synchronization, use MC_SetPosition to prevent motors from generating accidents due to high speed operation.

■ Using RatioNumerator, RatioDenominator in MC_GearIn to setup the gear ratio between master and slave axes.

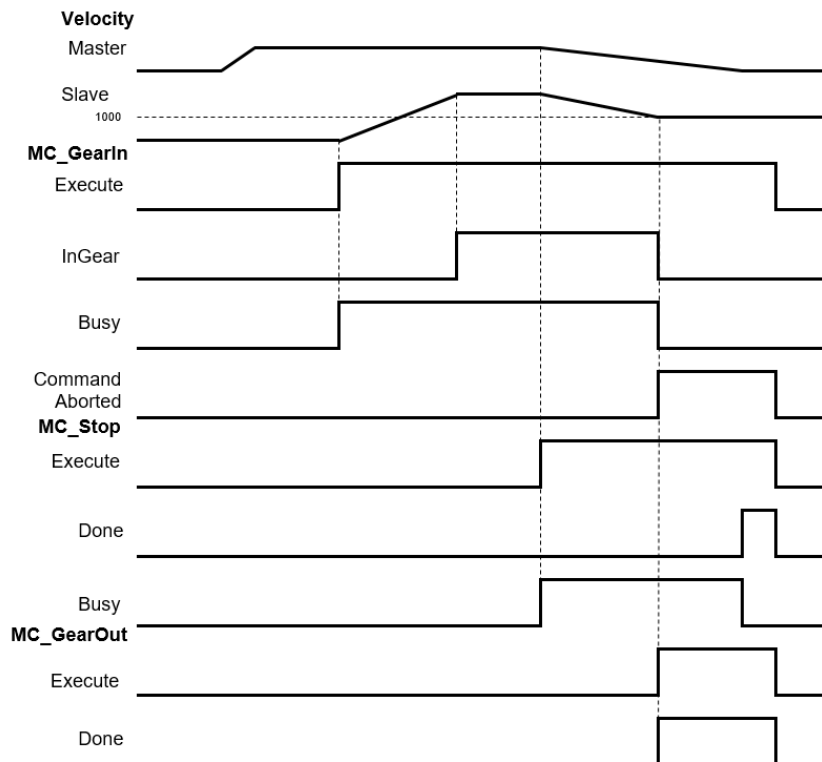
- When gear ratio is positive, the master and slave axes are moving in the same direction.



- When gear ratio is negative, the master and slave axes are moving in the opposite direction.



- Synchronization of master and slave axes is completed once slave velocity reaches the setting in the instruction.



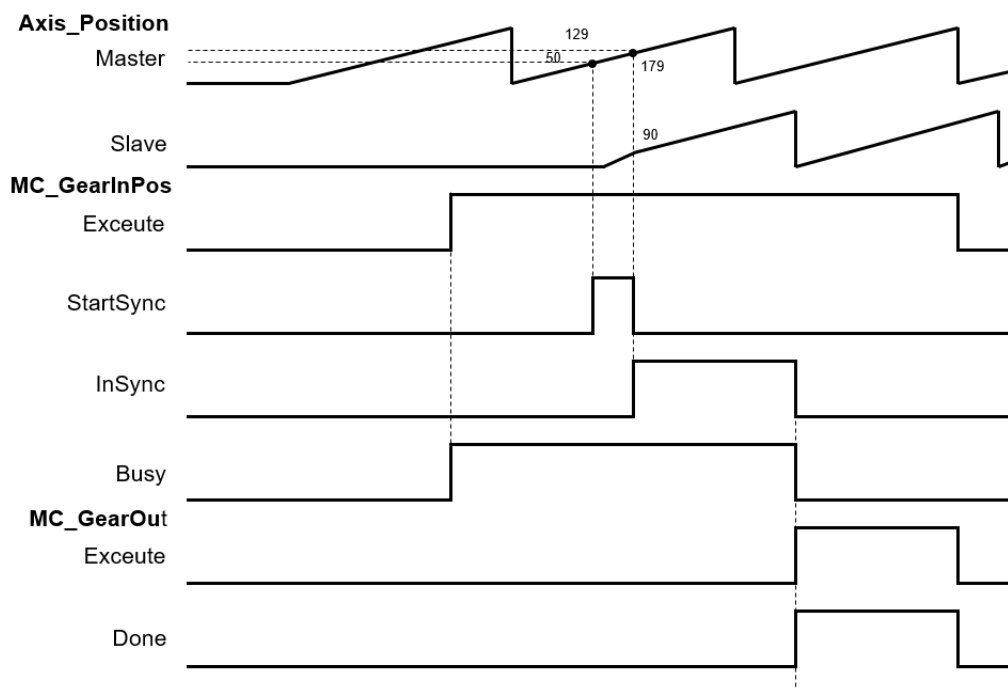
1. When MC_GearIn is enabled, the slave starts to engage with the master axis and the slave velocity is twice the speed of the master velocity (RatioNumerator : RatioDenominator = 2:1).
2. When InGear is True, synchronization of master and slave axes are completed and slave axis is in synchronized motion state.
3. When MC_Stop is enabled, the master axis starts decelerating and the slave axis in sync also decelerates based on the gear ratio.
4. When MC_Stop is operating, MC_GearOut is enabled, the sync between master and slave axes is aborted but maintains that velocity and is in continuous motion state.

7.7.2.6 MC_GearInPos

You can adopt MC_GearInPos to assign the synchronous starting positions of master and slave axis.

■ MC_GearInPos sequence

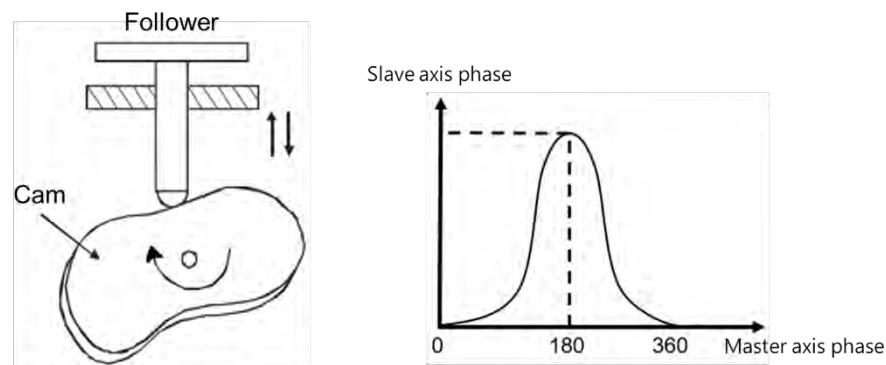
The assigned master and slave, gear ratio numerator and denominator, synchronous starting positions of master and slave axis in MC_GearInPos executes the master start distance in sync as well as whether or not to permit reversal. The function block engages both master and slave axis in the assigned position based on the curve of the slave axis.



- The master axis starts to execute sync position as MasterSyncPosition(180) – MasterStartDistance(50); When the axis reaches to that position, StartSync is True.
- The slave axis generates a motion curve based on other parameters; When the master reaches MasterSyncPosition(180) and the slave axis also reaches SlaveSyncPosition(90), the StartSync is False and InSync is True.
- When $\text{MasterStartDistance} \leq 0$, the function block executes and synchronization is completed; Meanwhile, the slave axis position will move up and down to the assigned sync position.
- When slave reversal is not permitted, you need to set AvoidReversal to True.

7.7.2.7 MC_CamIn

The slave axis follows the master axis for synchronized motion based on CAM table. The master and slave axes are assigned via the pre-assigned CAM table (MC_CamTableSelect). Use MC_CamIn for CAM engagement, and MC_CamOut to remove gear engagement.



After the engagement, synchronization between master and slave axis is completed successfully and the state of slave axis is Synchronized Motion. The following is the information about creating E-CAM:

- Initial setting

- Create E-CAM data

The following two methods can create E-CAM curve data:

Method 1: Master and slave positions are determined base on standard functions.

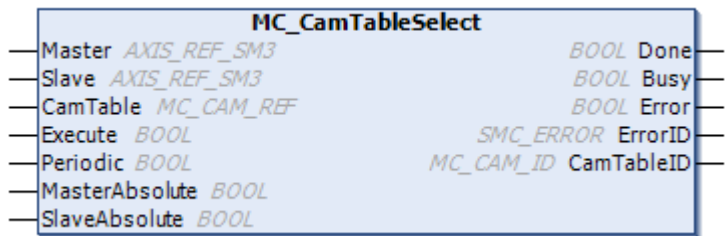
Method 2: The corresponding relationship between master and slave base on actual measurement.

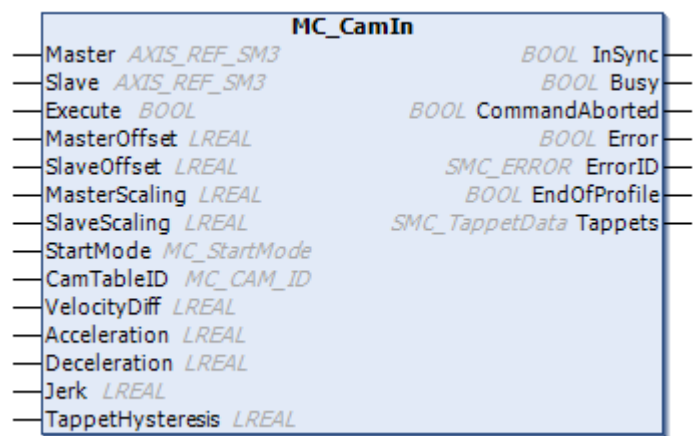
- E-CAM master and slave setting and operation

By using MC_CamIn and MC_CamTableSelect, E-CAM slave and master as well as basic operation setups can be completed.

- Master and slave source setting

In MC_CamTableSelect and MC_CamIn function blocks, the master input pins determines the master source while slave input pin determines the slave source.



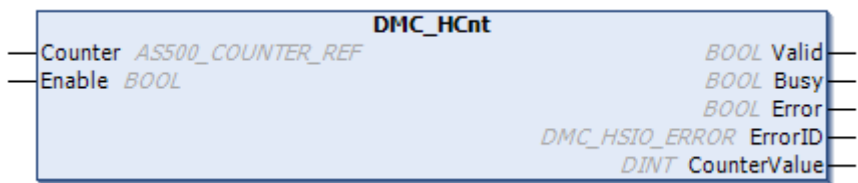
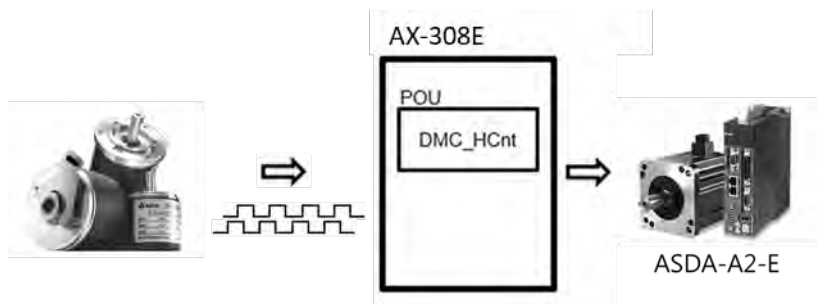


***Note:** For more details of pins definition, please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

- Master as external pulse counter

The sources of E-CAM master include actual and virtual axes as well as the counter. When using the external counter as master's source, use DMC_HCnt function block.

- System structure and DMC_HCnt



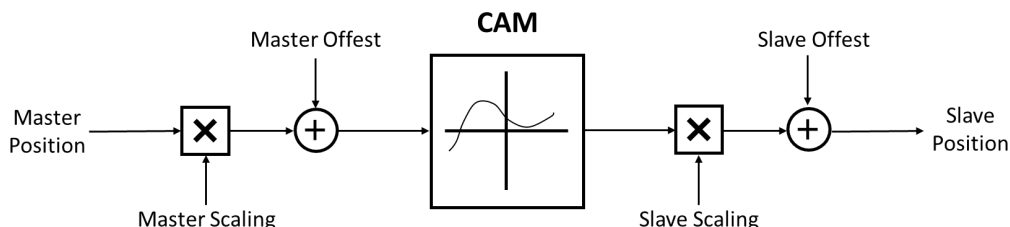
- Relationship between master and slave positions

By using the software to pre-plane the relationship between CAM master and slave positions, the positions in the CAM table rather than actual axis positions define the phase of the master and slave axes. When the pre-planned CAM mechanism defined as CAM function, the input is the CAM master phase and the output is the CAM slave phase. For example:

x: CAM master phase ; y: CAM slave phase

$$y = \text{CAM}(x)$$

The CAM phase derives from the axis position and conversion may take place. The conversion between axis position and CAM phase is related to parameters including MasterAbsolute, SlaveAbsolute, MasterOffset, SlaveOffset, MasterScaling and SlaveScaling. The slave follows the master axis to perform synchronized motion under MC_CamIn instruction. The relationship between master and slave positions should be based on the pre-planned CAM relationship (relation curve or CAM table). The process of calculating slave position from the master position is shown below:



The above diagram resulted in the following calculation method:

$$\text{Position_Slave} = \text{SlaveScaling} \times \text{CAM} (\text{MasterScaling} \times \text{MasterPosition} + \text{MasterOffset}) + \text{SlaveOffset}$$

When master is in absolute mode, the current master position is the arithmetic result of the rotating axis; when in relative mode, the master position is the starting point (usually 0) in correspondence to CAM.

- Relationship between Startmode and MasterAbsolute, SlaveAbsolute in CamTableSelect
 - Absolute mode (StartMode=0): When E-CAM synchronization starts, the CAM calculation and current slave position is irrelevant. When current slave position is different from the starting position that is calculated, then Jump is generated.
 - Relative mode (StartMode=1): CAM changes based on current slave positions; the slave positions are added from its current position. When the engaging position of the slave is different from the starting position plus the current position that is calculated, then Jump is generated.
 - Ramp mode (StartMode = 2, 3, 4): Add a curve of motion compensation based on VelocityDiff, Acceleration, Deceleration, Jerk to prevent the Jump during CAM engagement.

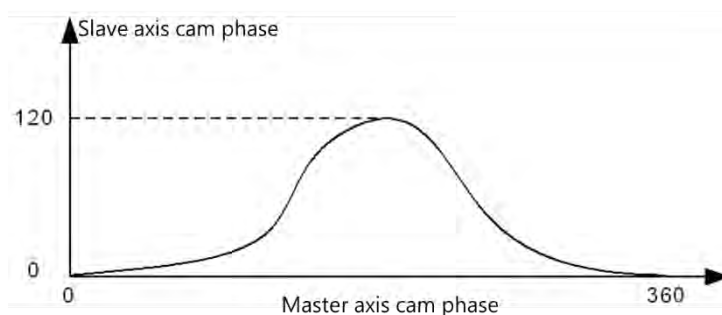
MC_CamTableSelect.MasterAbsolute	Master mode
absolute	Absolute mode
relative	Relative mode

MC_CamIn.StartMode	MC_CamTableSelect.SlaveAbsolute	Slave mode
absolute	True	Absolute mode
absolute	False	Relative mode
relative	True	Relative mode
relative	False	Relative mode
ramp_in	True	Ramp in absolute mode
ramp_in	False	Ramp in relative mode
ramp_in_pos	True	Positive ramp in absolute mode
ramp_in_pos	False	Positive ramp in relative mode
ramp_in_neg	True	Negative ramp in absolute mode
ramp_in_neg	False	Negative ramp in relative mode

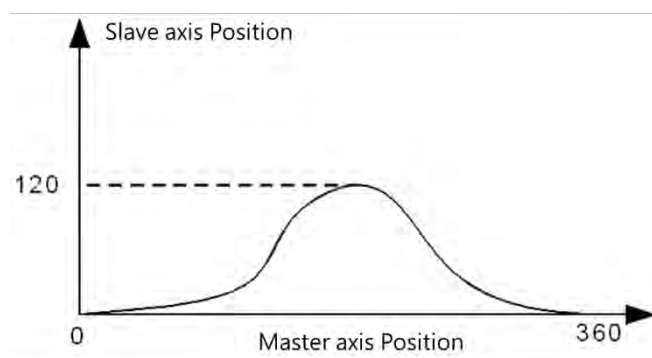
- Offset and scaling (MasterOffset/MasterScaling/SlaveOffset/Slavescaling)

Since the CAM mechanism between master and slave are pre-planned, when executing CAM, you can adopt Offset and Scaling parameters to pre-plane position offset or scaling. For example, the processing product has different dimensions, but only one CAM mechanism is required for programming, therefore, by changing offset and scaling parameters, the switching of processing products amongst different dimensions can be adjusted. You can input specific scaling values for master scaling of CAM and slave offset. The master and slave can setup offset and scaling values accordingly.

The master and slave offset and scaling both determine the actual CAM in relation to the effect that is described in the following example. The diagram below demonstrates pre-planned CAM mechanism:



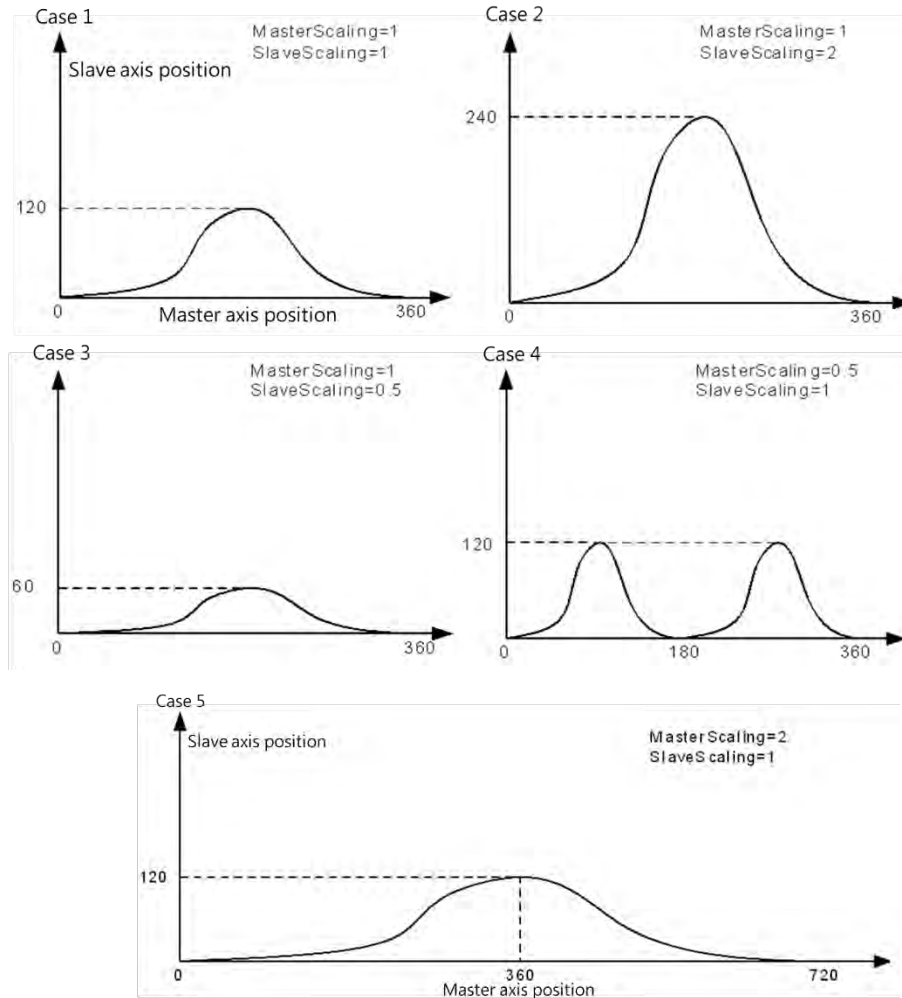
When master and slave are both in absolute mode and executes engagement, both master and slave positions are 0; when not using offset and scaling (default value), the following diagram shows the actual corresponding relationship between master and slave during the process of executing CAM:



When position offset or scaling is not in default value, the following diagrams show the effects of the corresponding relationship between master and slave actual positions during CAM execution:

For master and slave offset as 0, the effects from scaling of master and slave for actual CAM execution

Situations:

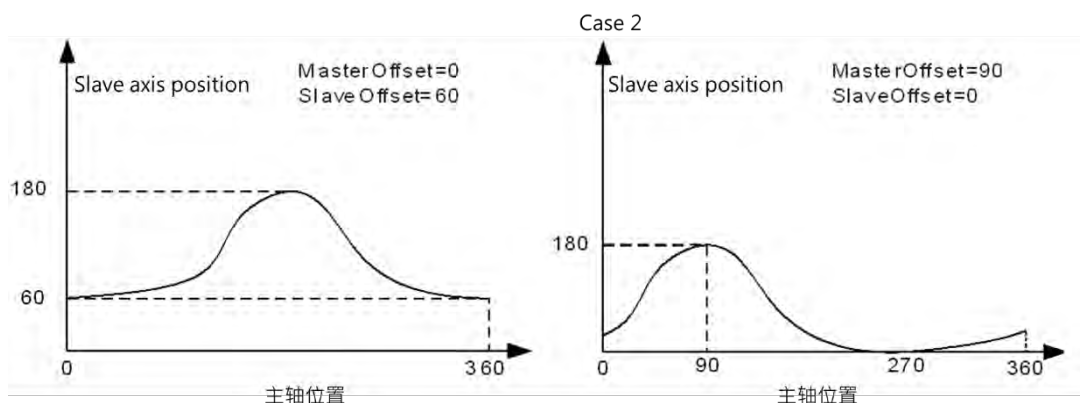


- Situation 1: When scaling ratio for master and slave is 1, offset is 0, the actual CAM mechanism is the same as pre-planned.
- Situation 2: When master scaling ratio is 1, slave scaling ratio is 2 and offset for both axes is 0, the slave position that corresponds to the master position is twice the amount of pre-planned measurement.
- Situation 3: When master scaling ratio is 1, slave scaling ratio is 0.5 and offset for both axes is 0, the slave position that corresponds to the master position is half the amount of pre-planned measurement.
- Situation 4: When master scaling ratio is 2, slave scaling ratio is 1 and offset for both axes is 0, the master position that corresponds to the slave position is twice the amount of pre-planned measurement. From CAM phase perspective, the Master CAM is twice the amount of pre-planned measurement, meaning the Master CAM changes from 360 to 180, while Slave CAM phase remains the same.

Situation 5: When master scaling ratio is 0.5, slave scaling ratio is 1 and offset for both axes is 0, the master position that corresponds to the slave position is half the amount of pre-planned measurement. From CAM phase perspective, the Master CAM is half the amount of pre-planned measurement, meaning the Master CAM changes from 360 to 720, while Slave CAM phase remains the same.

The scaling ratio for master and slave is 1 and the CAM effect when executing actual master and slave offset. The master offset means that the position curve of actual axis position moves horizontally during CAM execution; the slave offset means that the position curve moves vertically during CAM execution.

Situations:

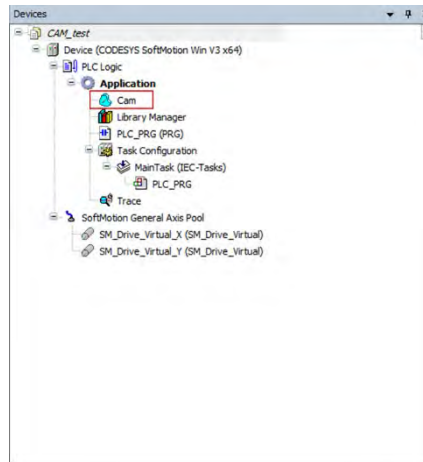


Situation 1: When the scaling ratio of master and slave is 1, the master offset is 0 and the slave offset is 60, the slave position that corresponds to the master position need to add 60 based on the pre-planned measurement. For instance, the master position is 180 and corresponds to the slave position that is 180 in CAM mechanism, but the slave position is 240 ($240=180+60$) during actual execution.

Situation 2: When the scaling ratio of master and slave is 1, the master offset is 90 and the slave offset is 0, the master position that corresponds to the slave position offsets by 90 (adding offset value) based on the pre-planned measurement. For instance, the master position is 180 and corresponds to the slave position that is 180 in CAM mechanism. However, during actual execution, the master position is 90 and corresponds to the slave position of 180, meaning the slave position corresponds to the master position that is 180 ($180=90+90$) in pre-planned CAM mechanism.

- **CAM table**

By selecting CAM in **DIADesigner-AX** project tree, you can edit the CAM curve that determines the operating characteristics of CAM.

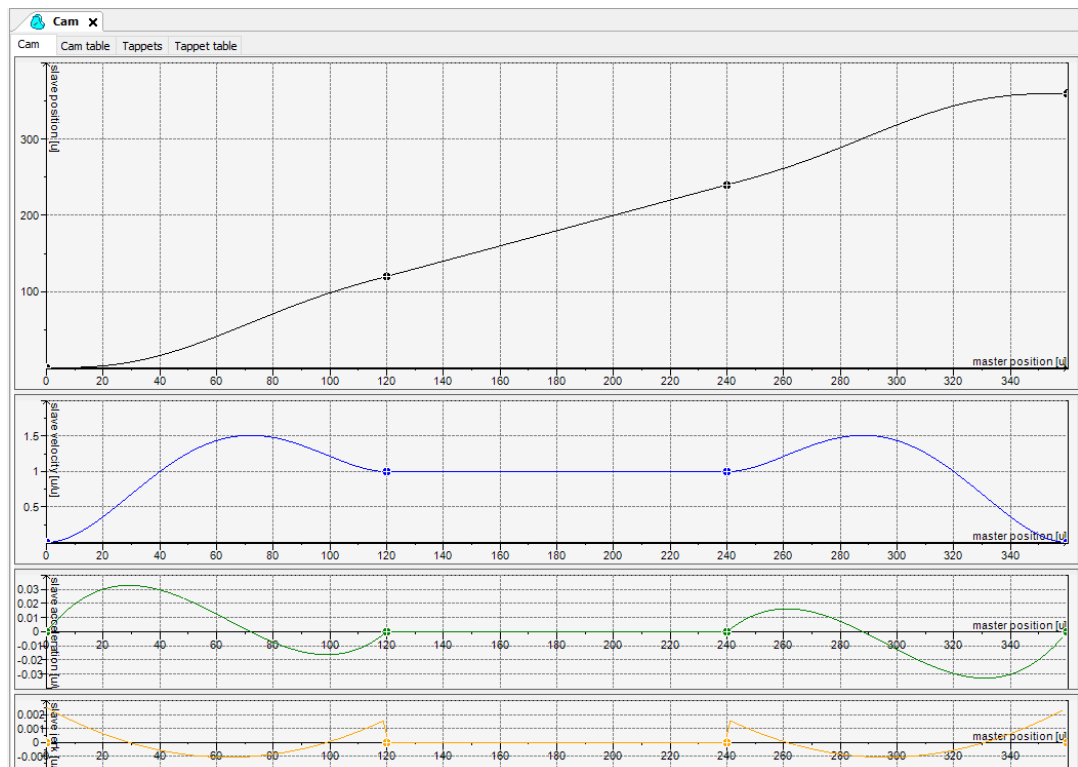


- **Features of CAM table**

- ◆ Direct observation on the changes of CAM curves in corresponds to the slave motion range, velocity, acceleration, and jerk at any time.
- ◆ The master starting coordinate by default begins from 0 and ends at 360. You can make modifications based on real physical range

- **Editing method for CAM curves**

- ◆ **Graph editing on DIADesigner-AX**



You adopt graphs to edit CAM table, horizontal coordinates as master position and master axis length to determine CAM operating range. The four kinds of curves shown in the page (see below) represents position, speed, acceleration and jerk. When designing CAM, position and speed curve can be used to make motion range adjustment, while adjusting acceleration curve allows stabilization in movement.

◆ CAM table editing on DIADesigner-AX

Besides using graphs for editing, the CAM table is also used to modify any increase or decrease on critical points and positions directly on the CAM table page

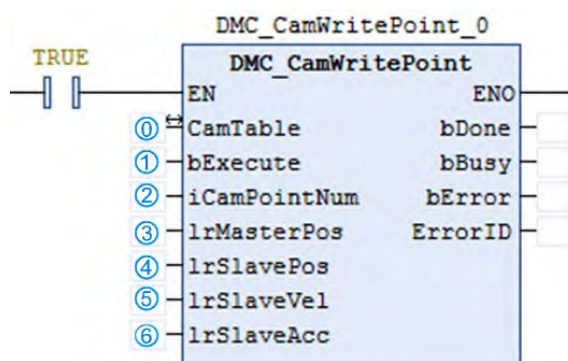
Cam X										
Cam	Cam table		Tappets		Tappet table					
	X	Y	V	A	J	Segm...	min(P...	max(P...	max(V...	max(A...
	0	0	0	0	0					
+						Poly5	0	120	1.5120...	0.0328...
+	120	120	1	0	0	Poly5	120	240	1	0
+	240	240	1	0	0	Poly5	240	360	1.512	0.0328...
+	360	360	0	0	0					

◆ Programming editing

You can also adopt programming to make modifications regarding critical points on the CAM table. To modify a program (see below), the starting position (master, slave) of CAM table moves from (0,0) to (0, 30), but image displayed in the software will not be changed.

For using DMC_CamWritePoint function block to modify CAM table in programming, descriptions are as follows:

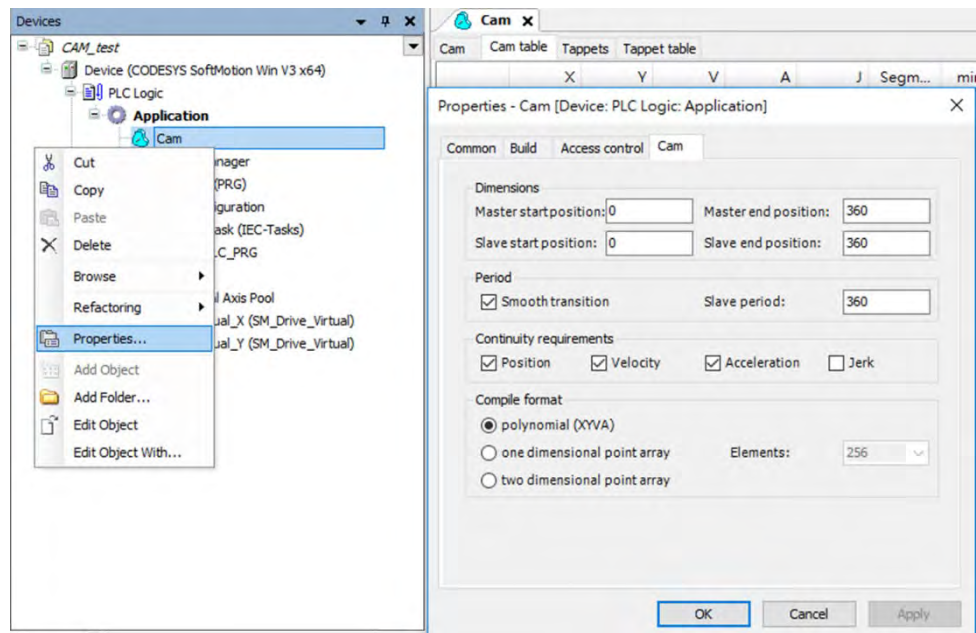
- ① Assigned CAM table
- ② Execute function blocks
- ③ Choose the CAM point number to read
- ④ Position of the CAM master axis
- ⑤ Position of the CAM slave axis
- ⑥ Velocity of the CAM slave axis
- ⑦ Acceleration of the CAM slave axis



***Note:** For more details of function blocks, please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual**.

- **CAM table properties:**

In Properties window, you can adjust the properties regarding CAM table. For example, the starting and ending position of master and slave, periodic parameters setups, required curve continuation and editing formats.



- **Steps on using E-CAM:**

1. CAM table configuration: setup master range, slave range, create starting point, ending point and other critical points as well as curve type adjustments.
2. Use instruction MC_CamTableSelect to connect configured CAM table with the actual one and receive CAM ID to be used for later instructions.
3. After receiving CAM ID, use instruction MC_CamIn to execute engagement for assigned master and slave.
4. Use instruction MC_Camout for the master and slave relationship disengagement. For synchronous movement, use instruction MC_Stop and MC_Halt on slave axis for disengaging synchronous relation between master and slave.

- **Switching of CAM tables:**

When CAM table is operating, please refer to MC_CAM_REF for switching the CAM table of MC_CamTableSelect.

- Declaring variables

```
P : MC_CAM_REF;      //CamTable reference
CamTableID : INT;    //CamTable Switch
```

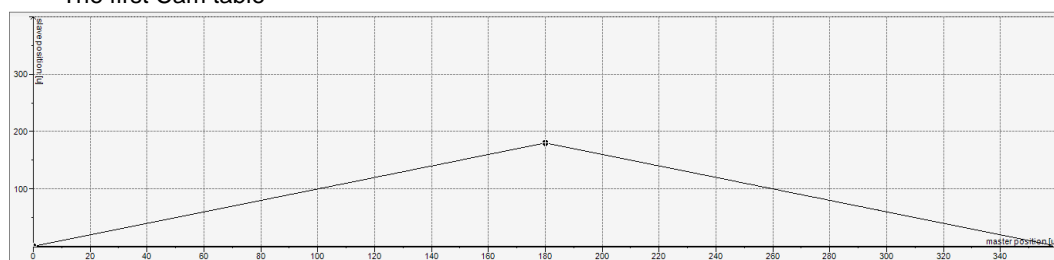
- Switching of CAM tables

```
CASE CamTableID OF
  0: P:=Cam;
  1: P:=Cam_1;
END_CASE
```

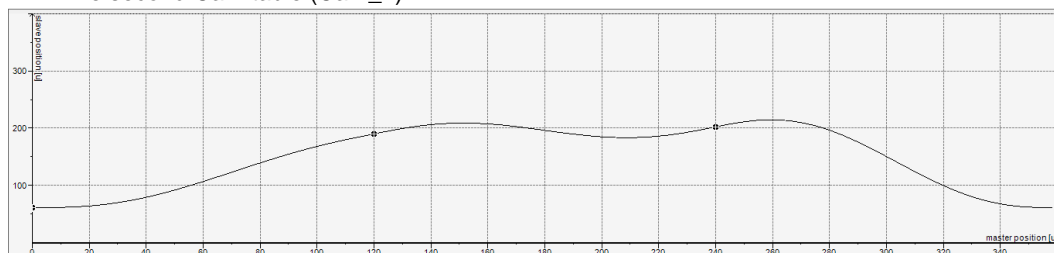
In the programming examples shown above, use the switching of CamTableID to change MC_CAM_REF to achieve switching of multiple CAM tables.

Below are the two CAM tables:

► The first Cam table

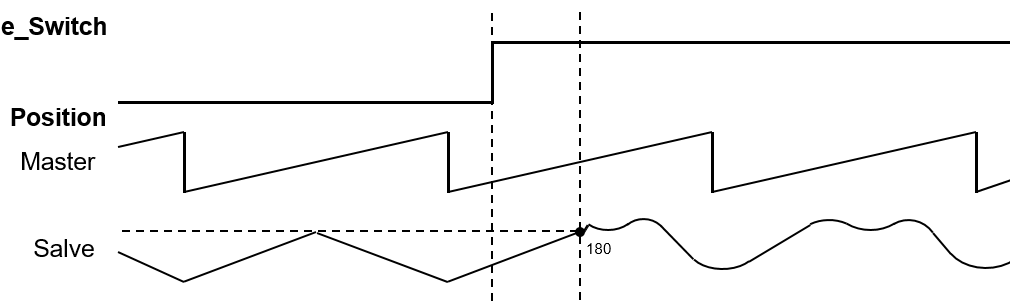


► The second Cam table (Cam_1)



► Timing diagram for switching of Cam table

Cam Table_Switch



When switching Cam tables, the slave moves along the motion path based on the first CAM table until the master position reaches to the next critical point and then start to follow th motion path based on the second.

7.7.3 Velocity Control

There are three kinds of motion control modes, the Cyclic Synchronous Position (CSP), the Cyclic Synchronous Velocity mode (CSV), and Profile Velocity mode (PV).

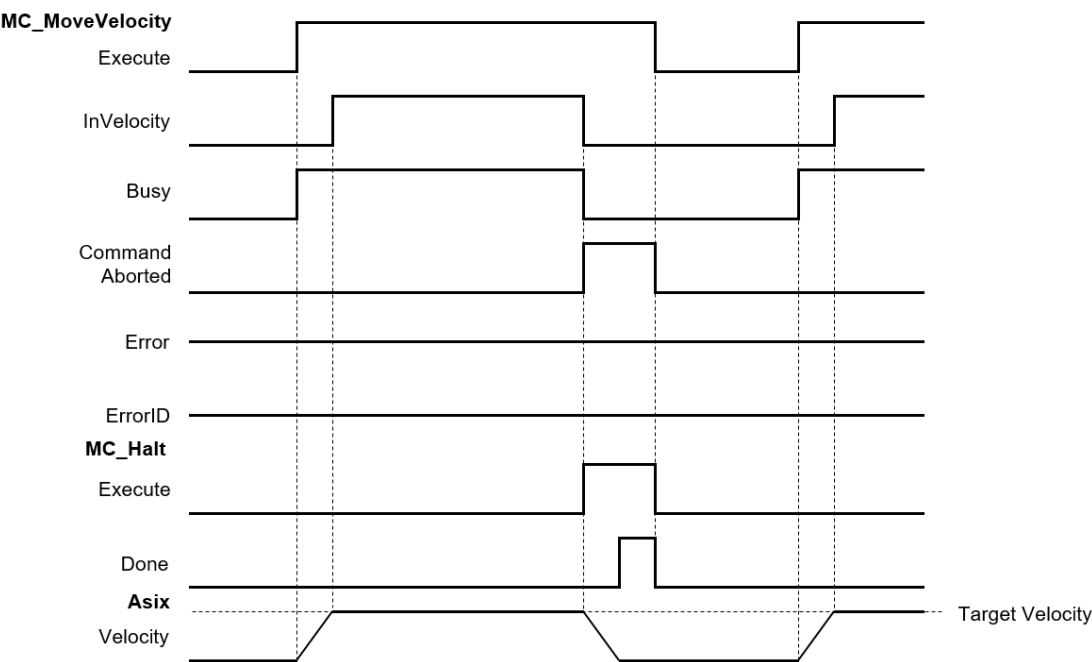
7.7.3.1 CSP Mode

The CSP mode is described as cyclic synchronous position in section 7.7.2.1. Under this mode, the controller can calculate the position of a command per cycle based on assigned velocity (including acceleration, deceleration and jerk) then send this command to the servo for execution.

In CSP mode, when external interference causes the current servo position to lag behind the position command of the controller, vibrations may appear as a result to compensate these position errors.

The use of motion instruction MC_MoveVelocity can execute velocity and motion control in CSP mode. When executing, the axis state enters continuous_motion state. The assigned acceleration, deceleration and jerk can be set during velocity adjustment (before reaching assigned velocity or during buffering). MC_Stop and MC_Halt or other motion instructions can be used to stop the control mode when needed.

The following diagram uses MC_MoveVelocity to proceed velocity and motion control, as well as MC_Halt for discontinue in the timing diagram:

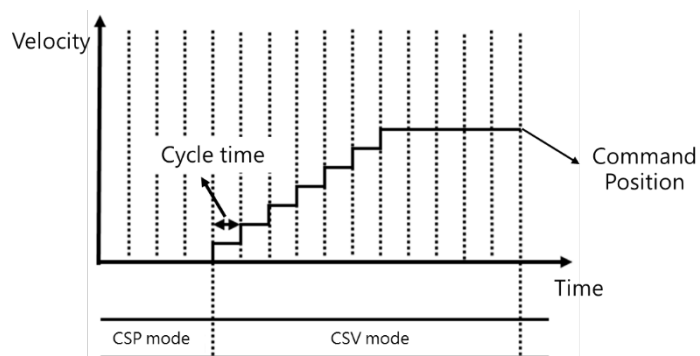


Assign velocity to 0, though the current movement is static but the system will be in continuous_motion status.

In AX series, use instruction MC_MoveVelocity to execute velocity control for single axis in CSP mode. Please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual** for more function block details.

7.7.3.2 CSV Mode

The CSV mode is the cyclic synchronous velocity mode (CSV). Under this mode, the controller can calculate the velocity for per cycle based on the assigned velocity (including acceleration, deceleration and jerk) then send this command to the servo for execution.

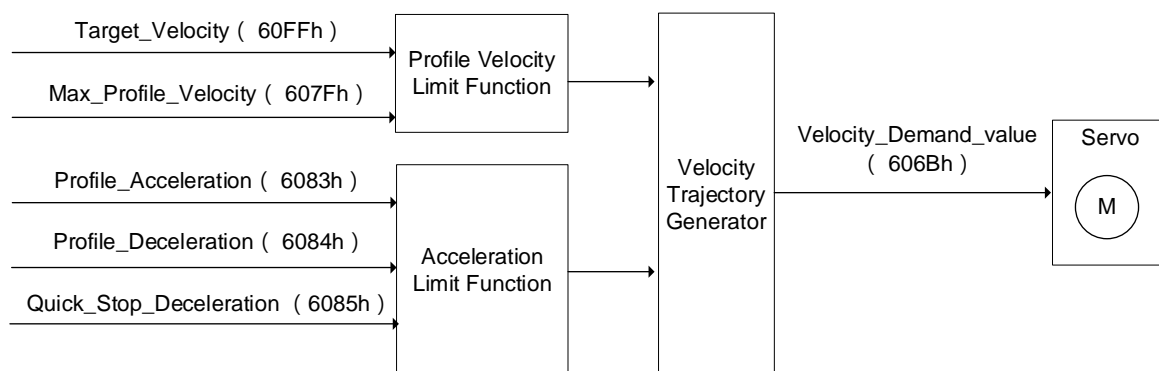


Despite external interference, cyclic velocity commands in CSV mode are send to servos that are unlikely to cause vibrations due to compensating positions found in CSP mode.

In AX series, use instruction MC_VelocityControl to execute velocity control for single axis in CSV mode. Please refer to **AX Series Motion Controller Manual** for more function block details.

7.7.3.3 Profile Velocity Mode

Under this mode, velocity trajectory generator performs motion path planning based on conditions assigned by master devices, such as velocity command and acceleration as well as deceleration.



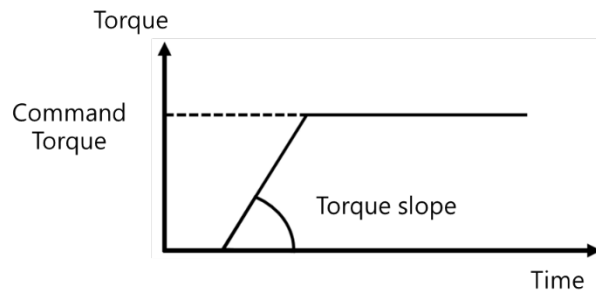
***Note:** Profile Velocity mode is used for positioning axes.

7.7.4 Torque control

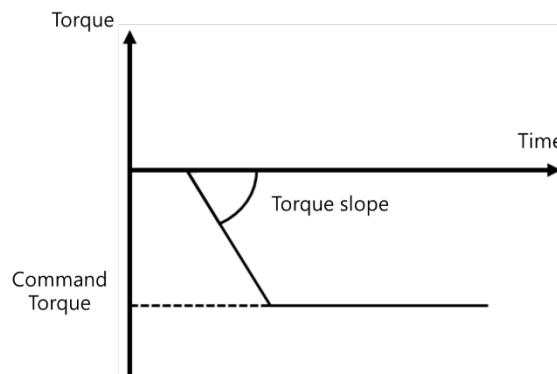
Torque control can be categorized into Cyclic Synchronous Torque mode (CST) and Profile Torque mode (PT).

- Profile Torque mode (PT)

- Use DMC_TorqueControl to generate assigned torque output continuously through single axes.
- Notification
 - When using DMC_TorqueControl, switch the control mode to cyclic synchronous torque mode.
 - When using MC_TorqueControl, the control mode switches to torque mode and cannot use function blocks regarding shifts or velocity. Use MC_TorqueControl Enable instead of MC_Stop to stop motors.
 - Do not set Torque to 0, when setting is 0, MC_TorqueControl is reported as error.
 - Use the velocity of DMC_TorqueControl to set the maximum velocity limit for servo motors which avoids high speed rotation as motor load declines in torque mode.
 - Adopt TorqueRamp to achieve the target torque value.
 - When Torque is bigger than 0 (Torque > 0), the motor operates in positive direction.



- When Torque is smaller than 0 (Torque < 0), the motor operates in negative direction.



7.7.5 Common Functions for Single-axis Control

The common functions for single-axis control are described in the following section.

7.7.5.1 Command Position

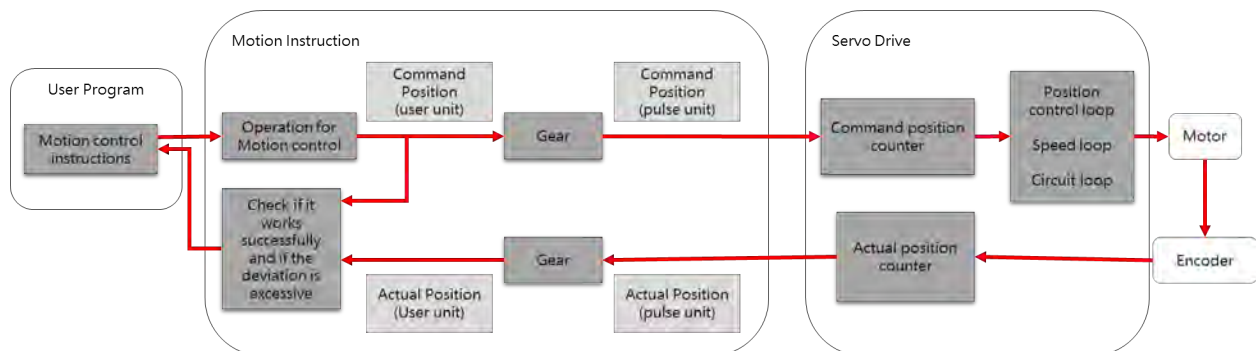
- Types of positions

The axis motion function modules adopt the following two types of positions.

Type of position	Meaning
Command position	The position that MC function modules outputs to control an axis.
Actual position	The position as feedback from the servo drive*

***Note:** For virtual axis, there is no position feedback from the servo drive, so the command position will replace the actual position.

The following figure shows the relationship between the command position and actual position:



A comparison between the command position and actual position:

Item	Command position	Actual position
Count mode	Linear axis / rotary axis	The same count mode setting as in command position
Command unit	Length unit (m, mm, inch...) / angle unit (degree) / ...	The same unit setting as in command position
Software limits	Set the range limit for MC function modules	The same range limit setting as in command position
Positioning	Change to any desire position within the range limit	The same position setting as in command position, but position lag may appear*

***Note:** Due to the settings of servomechanism, the so-called position lag may be generated between command and actual positions. As motion velocity increases, position lag also increases slightly. When limiting the lag, you can adjust axis setting to monitor the position lag and set operation for position lag being too large. For virtual axis, actual position equals to command position and position lag does not exist.

Descriptions for the relevant parameters are as follows:

- **Position unit**

The unit refers to “command unit”.

- **Position lag**

Setting	Value	Meaning
Position lag supervision	Deactivated	Position lag not checked
	Disable drive	When position lag exceeds the limit, the axis is in servo off.
	Do quick stop	When position lag exceeds the limit, the axis is in quick stop.
	Stay enabled	When position lag exceeds the limit, the axis maintains servo on.
Lag limit [u]	LREAL	Allowable lag limit

Besides deactivated setting value, when other settings exceeds lag limits, the axis reports error as in SMC_ERROR.SMC_DI_POSITIONLAGERROR.

- **Software limits**

Setting	Value	Meaning
Software limits Activated	Checked / Unchecked	Whether or not software limits is activated.
Negative [u]	LREAL	Negative software limit
Positive [u]	LREAL	Positive software limit

- **Description of positions in MC function modules**

Please take note of the following input variables with two different interpretations that are related to positions in MC function modules:

Item	Meaning
Position	Target position (absolute position)
Distance	Moving distance (relative position)

- **Monitoring positions**

To observe change in position, you can focus on the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type) for monitoring:

Variable name	Position type	Data type
.fSetPosition	Command position	LREAL
.fActPosition	Actual position	LREAL

7.7.5.2 Velocity Command

● Types of velocity

The following two types of velocity are used in MC function modules.

Position type	Meaning
Command velocity	The velocity in which MC function module outputs for axis control
Actual velocity	The velocity based on the actual feedback position of servo drives at each point in time*

***Note:** For virtual axis, there is no position feedback from the servo drive, so the command position will replace the actual position.

● Velocity unit

The velocity unit is “command unit/s”.

● Velocity ramp type

Setting	Value	Meaning
Velocity ramp type	Trapezoid	A trapezoidal velocity ramp (Each section is constant acceleration)
	Sin ²	The velocity ramp equals to sin ² function (acceleration ramp is fixed)
	Quadratic	Acceleration ramp with trapezoidal profile (jerk limited)
	Quadratic (smooth)	Adopts the same meaning as in Quadratic, but with continuous S-curve velocity (jerk limited).

● Description of velocity in MC function modules

The following input variable that is related to velocity in MC function modules:

Item	Meaning
Velocity	Target velocity*

***Note:** Due to inadequate trajectory length, small acceleration and jerk as well as other factors, it is not possible to obtain the target velocity.

● Monitoring velocity

To observe change in velocity, you can focus on the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type) for monitoring:

Variable name	Position type	Data type
.fSetVelocity	Command velocity	LREAL
.fActVelocity	Actual velocity	LREAL

7.7.5.3 Acceleration and Deceleration Command

● Types of acceleration

The following two types of acceleration are used in the MC function modules.

Position type	Meaning
Acceleration command	The outputs of MC function modules to control axis acceleration
Actual acceleration	The acceleration calculated based on actual velocity

● Acceleration unit

The acceleration rates are in “command units/ s²”.

● Axis settings related to acceleration

(1) Types of acceleration waveform

Please refer to “7.7.5.2 Velocity Command- Velocity ramp type” for more information.

● Description of acceleration in MC function modules

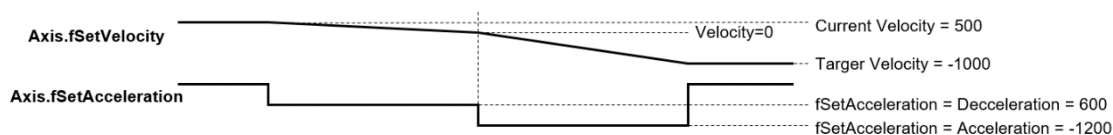
The following input variables that are related to acceleration/deceleration in MC function modules:

Item	Meaning
Acceleration	Target acceleration*
Deceleration	Target deceleration*

***Note:** Due to inadequate trajectory length, small jerk and other factors, it is not possible to obtain target acceleration or target deceleration.

According to standard acceleration and deceleration rates, if demand for absolute value of current velocity decreases, deceleration rate is performed; if the demand for absolute value of current velocity increases, acceleration rate is performed.

For instance, when the current axis velocity is 500, the motion control instructions during execution is in reverse direction (Velocity = 1000, Acceleration = 1200, Deceleration = 600). The following diagram shows the velocity and acceleration waveform:



● Monitoring acceleration

To observe change in acceleration, you can focus on the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type) for monitoring:

Variable name	Position type	Data type
.fSetAcceleration	Command acceleration	LREAL
.fActAcceleration	Actual acceleration	LREAL

7.7.5.4 Jerk Command

The jerk assigns the changes in acceleration or deceleration rate. When the jerk is specified, the velocity waveform is in S-curve (the ramp of acceleration increases or decreases, no jerk) can reduce the shock on machines.

● Types of jerk

The following two types of jerk are used in the MC function modules.

Position type	Meaning
Command jerk	The outputs of MC function modules to control axis
Actual jerk	The jerk that is calculated based on actual acceleration

● Jerk unit

The jerk is in "command units/s³".

● Axis settings related to jerk

(1) Types of jerk waveform

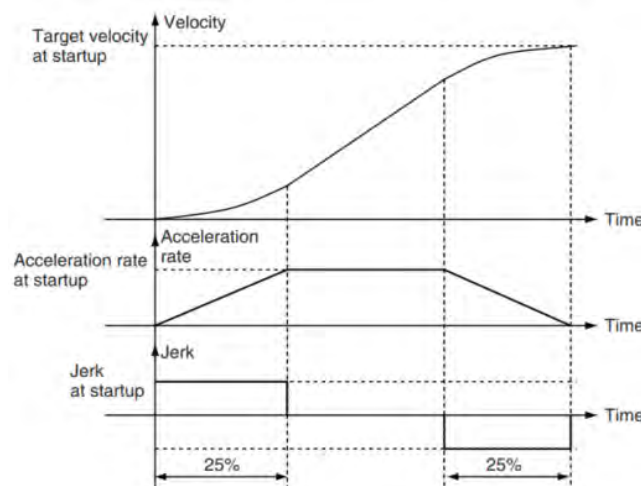
Please refer to "7.7.5.2 Velocity Command- Velocity ramp type" for more information.

● Description of jerk in MC function modules

The following input variable that is related to jerk in MC function modules:

Item	Meaning
Jerk	Target jerk*

***Note:** When velocity ramp type is trapezoid or in Sin², the setting values of jerk are not applied in the movement; when velocity ramp type is quadratic or quadratic (smooth), the jerk does affect the velocity ramp.



● Monitoring jerk

To observe change in jerk, you can focus on the following two axis variables (AXIS_REF_SM3 type) for monitoring:

Variable name	Position type	Data type
.fSetJerk	Command jerk	LREAL
.fActJerk	Actual jerk	LREAL

7.7.5.5 Axis Direction

The following situation requires specified operation directions:

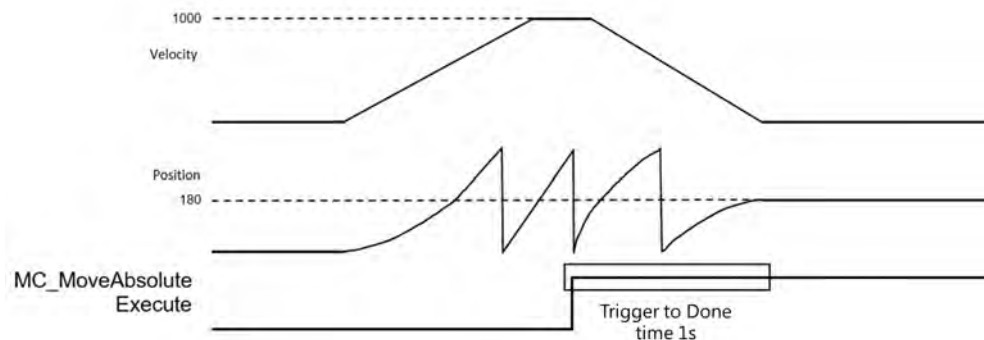
- When input value of absolute during constant velocity, specified direction is required.
- When setting rotation axis, movement towards either positive or negative direction can reach the target position, therefore, operation direction is required.
- Description of directions in MC function modules

The following input variable that is related to direction in MC function modules:

Item	Setting	Meaning
Direction	negative	Motion operates in a negative direction
	shortest	Motion operates the shortest way (Only for rotation axis)*
	positive	Motion operates in a positive direction
	current	Motion operates based on the current direction (Only for rotation axis)
	fastest	Motion operates in the fastest way (Only for rotation axis)*

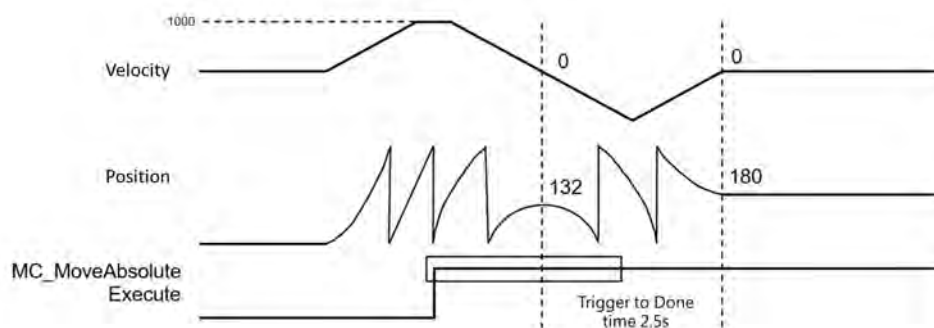
***Note:** The concept of shortest (moving distance) and fastest (moving time) are similar but not completely the same, please refer to the following example:

- Setup:
 - Set axis as rotation axis, range 360°
 - Set velocity ramp type of axis as Trapezoid.
- Procedure:
 - Use MC_MoveVelocity to execute constant velocity motion. (Velocity=1000)
 - When motor reaches 350 and velocity reaches 1000, execute MC_MoveAbsolute with 2 different direction settings
 - (1) Execute MC_MoveAbsolute (Position=180, Velocity = Acceleration = Deceleration = 1000, Direction = fastest)



When MC_MoveAbsolute.Execute triggers, the system determines the shortest way to reach position 180 is to move in positive direction and decrease velocity to 0. The process takes about 1 sec.

- (2) Execute MC_MoveAbsolute (Position = 180, Velocity = Acceleration = Deceleration = 1000, Direction = shortest)



When MC_MoveAbsolute.Execute triggers, the system determines the shortest way to reach position 180 is to move in negative direction ($350 - 180 = 170$). However, since the process requires velocity to be in reverse, therefore, more turns are included. The process takes about 2.5 sec.

7.7.6 Axis Group Control

An axis group must consists of at least one axis configured via DIADesigner-AX. Up to six axes can be supported for linear axes, while three axes are supported by rotary type with three extra axes as the follow axes.

7.7.6.1 Linear Interpolation

TransitionMode: The resulting noises and vibration of machines may occur if the trajectory of interpolation changes while in motion. By using the input variable "TransitionMode", the chances of the above situation will be minimized.

Available transition modes

Mode	Description
None	No effects (default)
Overlap	Continue by combining the deceleration of the previous motion and the acceleration of the current motion.

Supported buffer modes

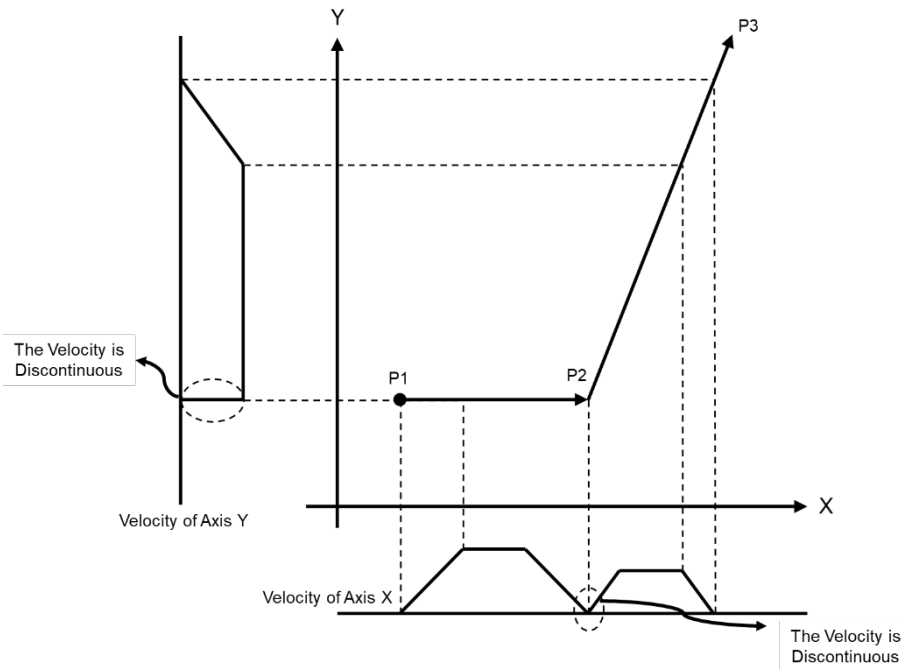
Mode	Aborting	Buffered	Blending Low	Blending Previous	Blending Next	Blending High
None	A	A	N	N	N	N
Overlap	A	A	D	D	D	D

A = Supported

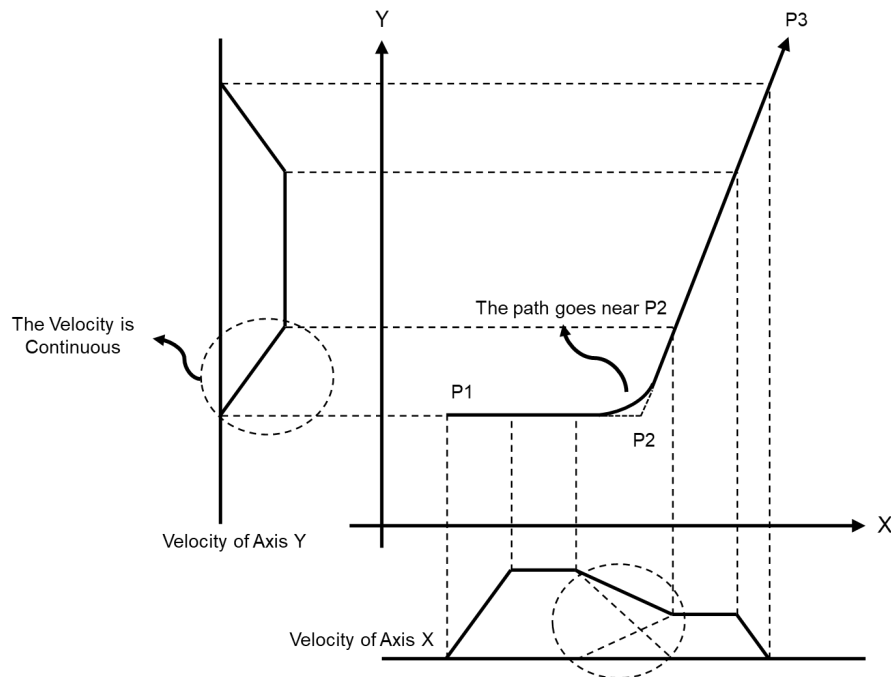
N = Not supported

D = Continue with Blending mode

- TransitionMode: For the below situation, set the mode to be None or Overlap, then choose buffered.

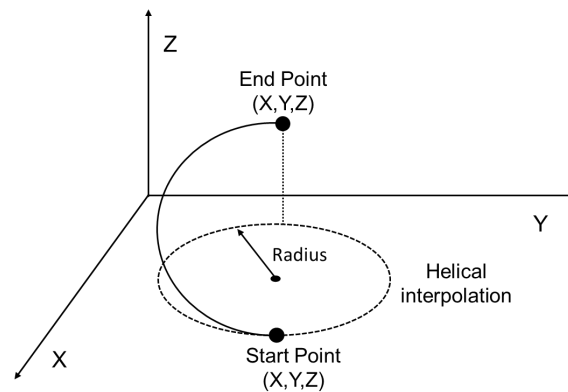


- **TransitionMode:** For the below situation, set the mode to be Overlap, then choose Blending. Plan with reference to acceleration and deceleration given to the motion function block of each axis group.



7.7.6.2 Circular Interpolation

Circular movements can be run in the three main planes of the spatial coordinate system, only using X, Y, Z axis and three additional follower axes.

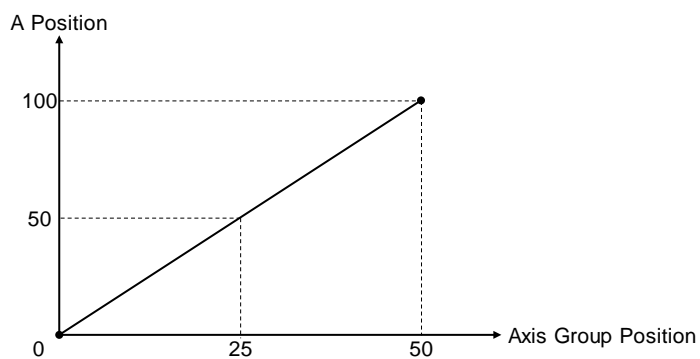


- **Concept of follower axes:**

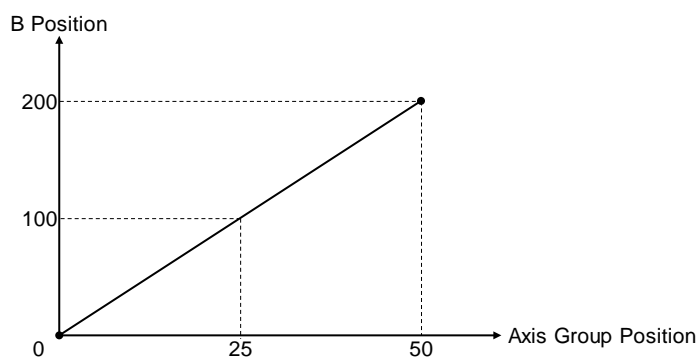
Follower axes A, B, C move in a proportional and synchronized motion as axes X, Y, Z moving.

The axis group moves to position (30, 40, 0) with the start point of 0, which the combined moving distance is 50, while follower axes moving to position (100, 200, 300). The synchronized movement between axis group and follower axes is shown as following figures.

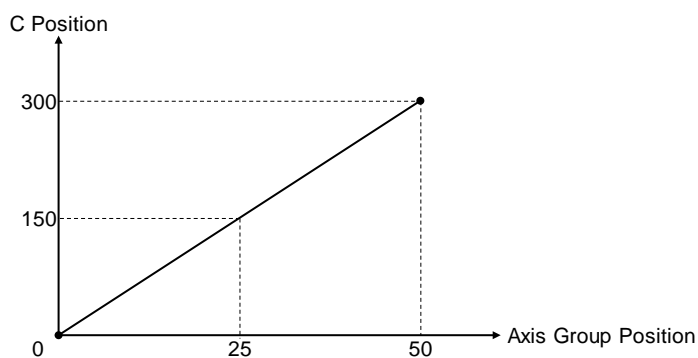
■ Follower A



■ Follower B



■ Follower C



***Note:** When the axis group is not in motion, the input velocity given to axis group function block is used for the follower axis whichever the distance is the longest. At the same time, other follower axes move in synchronized motion based on the proportion of distances.

7.7.6.3 Group Stop Command

There're two different ways to stop axis group motion:

- Programming stop

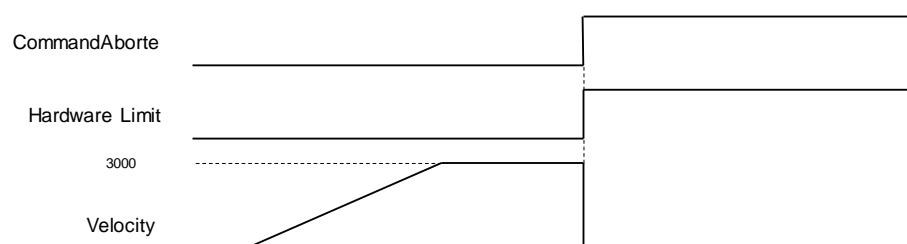
Use DMC_GroupStop in the programming to decelerate the moving axis group to a stop. Then the group state switches to GroupStopping, which no motion instruction can be executed under this status.

The velocity for a deceleration stop must be set to the IrDeceleration pin.

- Error stop

As soon as an error occurs in group motion, the axis group stops operating.

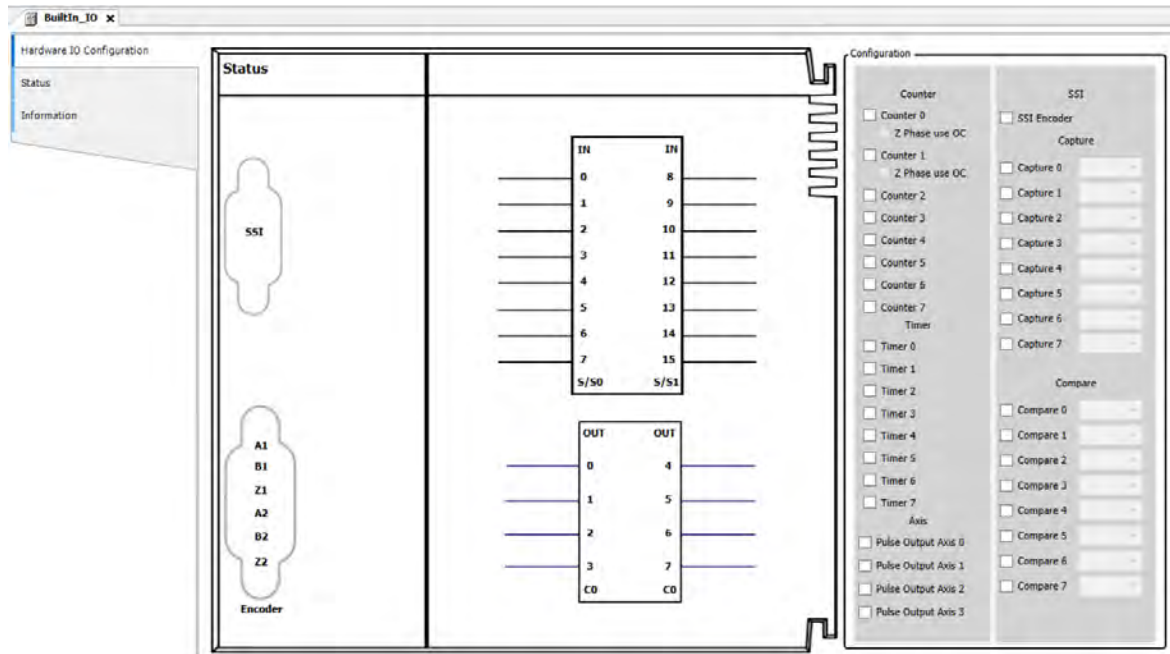
For example, Hardware Limit is reached while the axis group is moving. The velocity drops to zero as a result of the output CommandAborted.



7.7.7 High-speed IO

The chapter contains information regarding CPU with IOs for configuration and parameter settings.

7.7.7.1 IO Configuration



DIO: Set functions including interrupt, filter and polarity. Refer to section 7.7.7.2 for more information.

SSI Encoder: Set functions such as SSI coding type, clock frequency and SSI data length. Refer to section 7.7.7.3 for more information.

Pulse Encoder: Set functions including high speed counter variables, count modes, enable or disable Z phase signal as well as declare high speed timer variables. Refer to section 7.7.7.4 for more information.

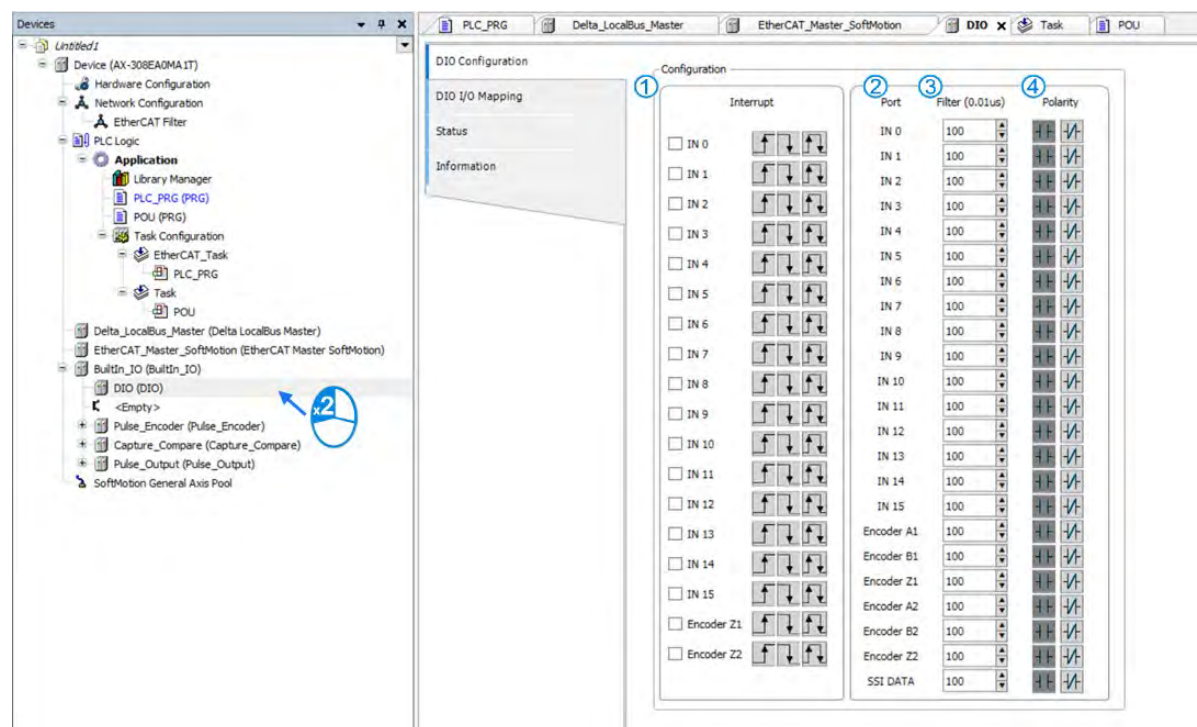
Capture/ Compare: Declares variables regarding high speed capture and compare. Refer to section 7.7.7.5 for more information.

Pulse Output: Set functions including pulse output, direction and homing mode. Refer to section 7.7.7.6 for more information.

7.7.7.2 DIO Setting

The section describes setting functions including interrupt, filter and polarity of IOs in DIO device.

Double-click on "DIO" to enter the configuration page.

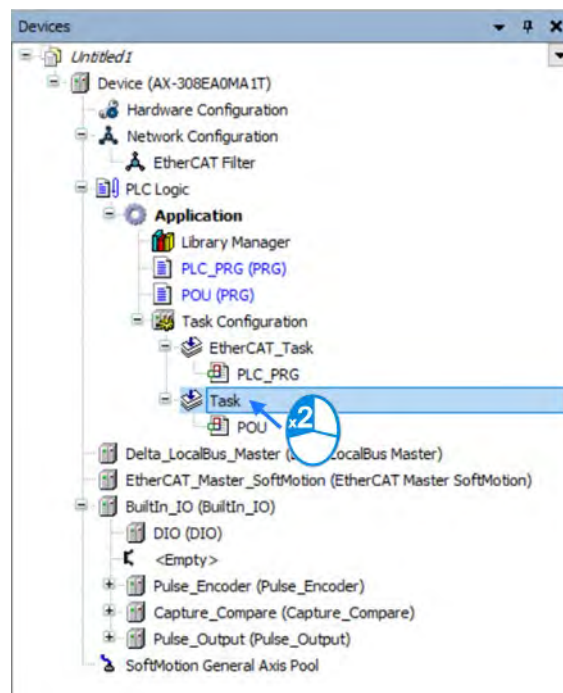


● Configuration

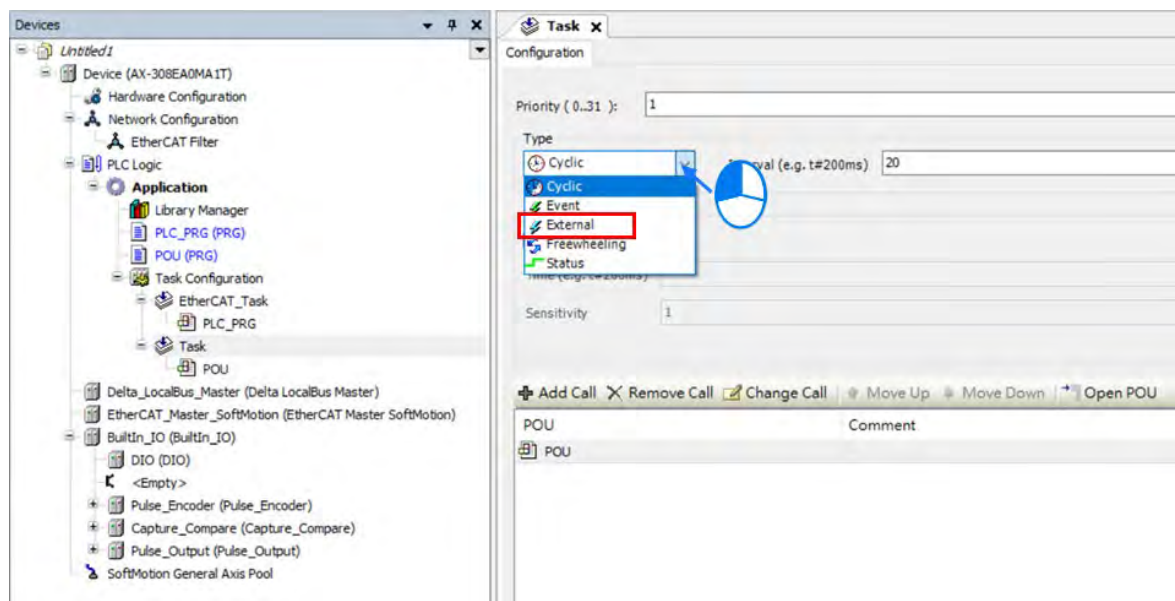
Function	Description
① External Interrupt Setting	<input type="checkbox"/> Default value
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Activate external interrupt
	When external interrupt is activated, set input signals as rising edge.
	When external interrupt is activated, set input signals as falling edge.
② Port	When external interrupt is activated, set input signals as rising and falling edge.
③ Filter	Port number
④ Polarity	Set filter time (us), setting range is from 0 to 100000000. The default is 100us.
	Set input polarity. The default is contact A .
	Set input polarity, The default is contact B.

- **IO interrupt mode setting**

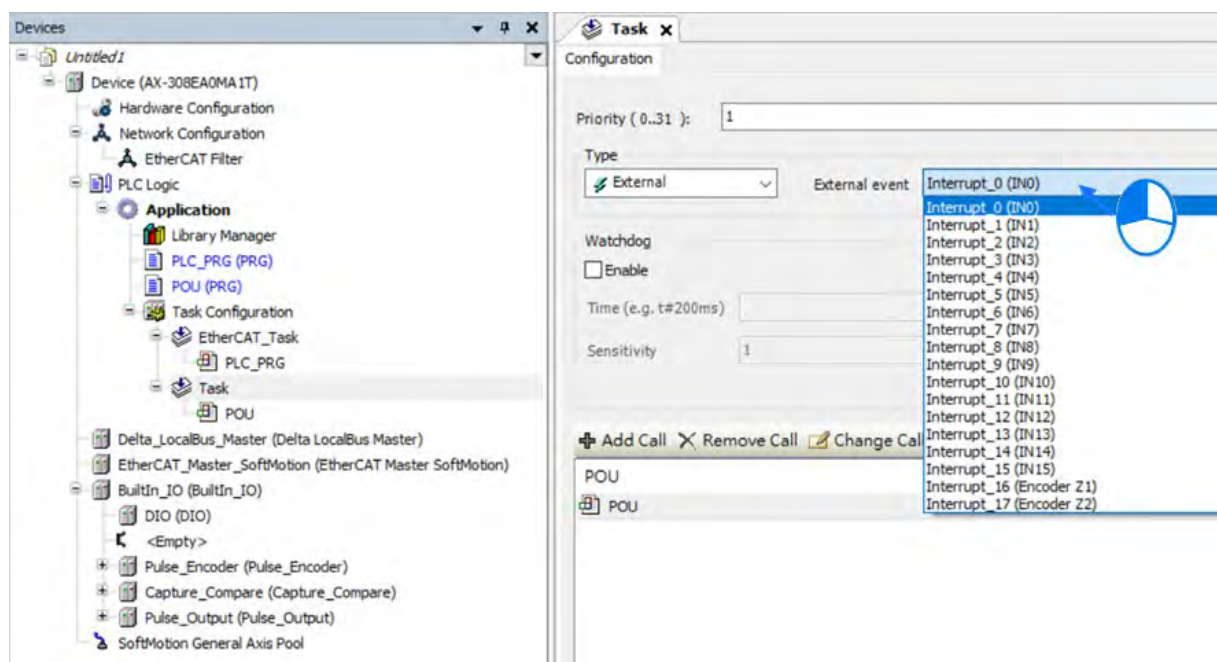
- After activate the interrupt function on DIO setting page, click on “Task” to proceed.



- Enter Task configuration page and choose “External” from the drop down list for Type.

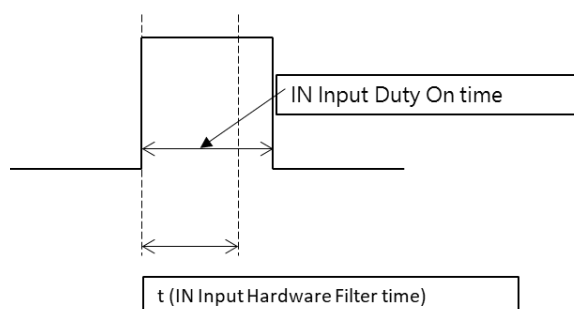


- Then choose the corresponding interrupt contact from the drop down list of External event.



- The setting value for hardware filter time is smaller than IN input duty on time as shown below:

- The input range for hardware filter is from 0 to 50,000,000, unit as 0.01μs



- The relation between filter frequency and filter time:

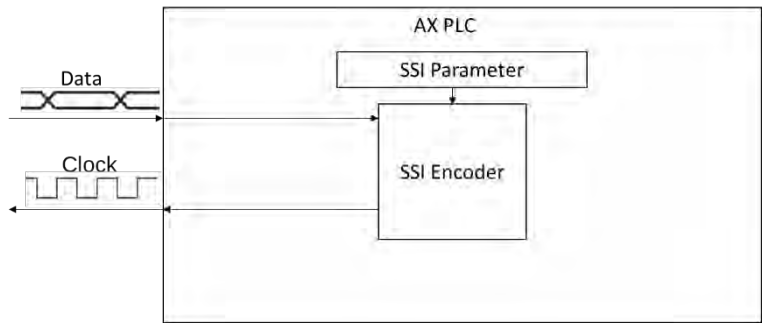
Filter frequency*1 (Hz): Filter frequency= $1 / (2 \cdot t)$; t is the filter time setting value (unit: 0.01μs). When input frequency is higher than the filter frequency range, signals are filtered.

The function focuses on the X input point used in DFB_Capture, DFB_Hcnt, DFB_HTmr, DFB_Compare and IO interrupt.

7.7.7.3 SSI Encoder Setting

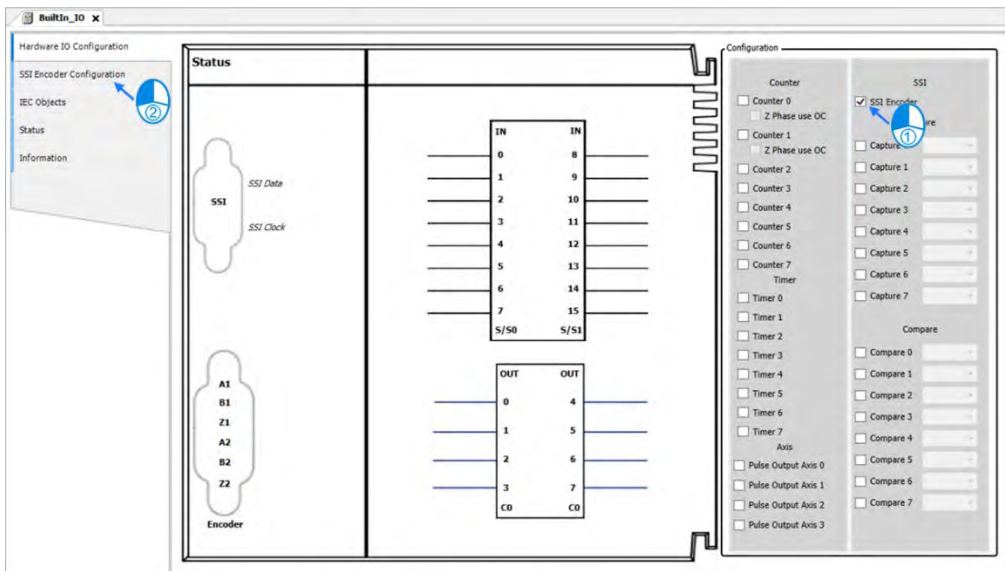
The IO end of AS508ECT supports one set of SSI encoder function. Through connecting D-SUB port and PLC, the port provides 5V encoder power output. You can click and enable SSI encoder function to setup the required parameters as well as receive data via hardware configuration channels.

- SSI encoder structure



- Enable SSI encoder

- Click SSI Encoder and choose SSI Encoder Configuration on BuiltIn_IO page.



- The SSI related configuration can be set on the SSI Encoder Configuration page. Refer to below descriptions for settings respectively.

Hardware IO Configuration
SSI Encoder Configuration
IEC Objects
Status
Information

1 General

Encoder Type: Gray Code
Clock Frequency: 500 kHz
Clock Pause Time: 80 us
Single Turn Setting: 13
Multiple Turns Setting: 12

2 Axis Standard

Encoder Type: SSI Encoder

3 Axis Type

☒ Linear Axis
☐ Rotary Axis
Modulo: 360 [Unit]

4

Positive Command
Negative Command

☒ Reverse OFF
☐ Reverse On

5 Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism Type: Ball Screw

Mechanism Setting
(1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1 [Pulse]
(4) Pitch: 1 [Unit]

Gear Box
(2) Gear ratio numerator: 1
(3) Gear ratio denominator: 1
Gear Ratio =

- ① General

Item	Function	Setting value (Default value)
EncoderType	Set SSI encoder type	Gray code / Binary code (Gray code)
Clock Frequency	Set SSI clock frequencies (Need SSI encoder datasheet as reference)	(500)
MultiTurnsSetup	Set SSI encoder multiturn setup (Need SSI encoder datasheet as reference)	(12)

Item	Function	Setting value (Default value)
SingleTurnsSetup	Set SSI encoder singleturn setup (Need SSI encoder datasheet as reference)	(13)
Clock Pause Time	After the last falling edge of clock, the data line keeps at a low level for a while before the line rises. (Need SSI encoder datasheet as reference)	(80)

■ ② Axis Standard

Item	Function	Setting value (Default value)
Encoder Type	Display encoder type	-

■ ③ Axis Type

Item	Function	Setting value (Default value)
Linear Axis / Rotary Axis	Set the axis type to be Linear Axis or Rotary Axis.	Linear Axis Rotary Axis (Linear Axis)
Modulo	Choose the axis type to be rotary axis first and set the value for the rotation area for a turn.	(360)

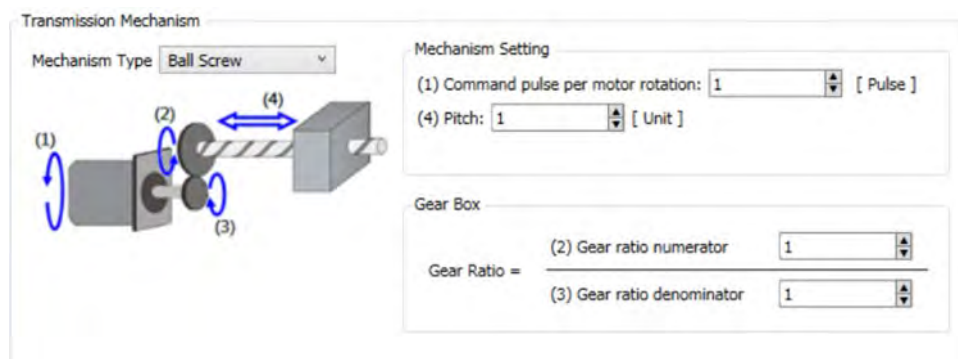
■ ④ Positive / Negative Command

Item	Function
Reverse OFF / ON	Decide on the rotation direction for positive and negative commands.

■ ⑤ Transmission Mechanism

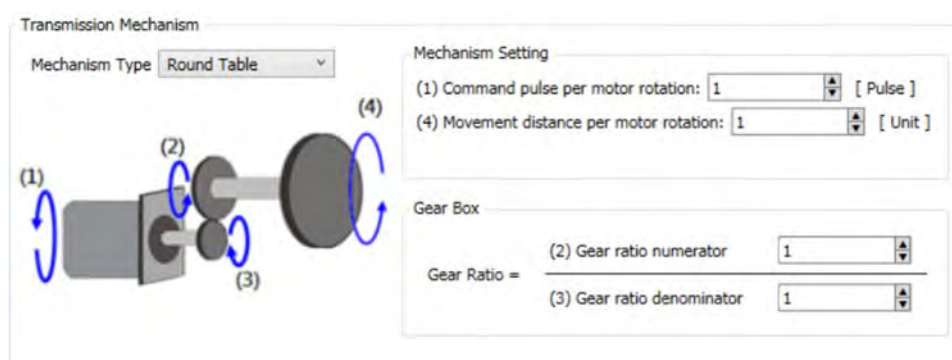
Different structures are presented in the following descriptions:

◆ Ball Screw



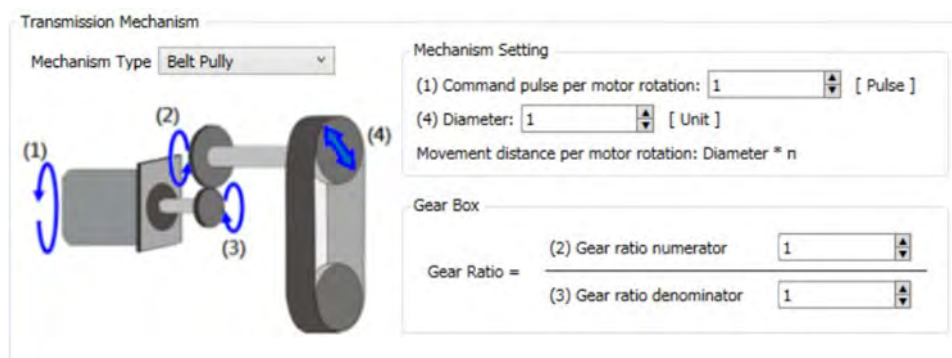
Item	Description
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	Amount of pulses that the encoder counts per revolution of the motor
(4) Pitch	Pitch of screw
(2) Gear ratio numerator	The numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	The denominator of gear ratio

◆ Round Table



Item	Description
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	Amount of pulses that the encoder counts per revolution of the motor
(4) Movement distance per motor rotation	Distance of movement per revolution of the motor.
(2) Gear ratio numerator	The numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	The denominator of gear ratio

◆ Belt Pully



Item	Description
(1) Command Pulse per motor rotation	Amount of pulses that the encoder counts per revolution of the motor
(4) Diameter (Movement distance motor rotation : Diameter *n)	Distance of movement per revolution of the motor. (Movement distance per rotation : Diameter *n)
(2) Gear ratio numerator	The numerator of gear ratio
(3) Gear ratio denominator	The denominator of gear ratio

● **SSI Encoder mapping variable setting**

- The actual position and ErrorID can be read by SSI Encoder via the following parameters.

Parameter	Description
EncoderPosition	Actual position of SSI Encoder
ErrorID	Status of SSI Encoder Communication. 0 : No Error 1 : Error Communication 2 : Wrong Parameter Setting

***Note:**

ErrorID:

1. When SSI encoder is not connected or SSI encoder and CPU is disconnected, then ErrorID=1.
2. When MultiTurns + SingleTurns is bigger than 32, then ErrorID=2.

The error situations mentioned above allows BusCycle to stop updating EncoderPosition and the EncoderPosition will keep the last value, the purpose is to avoid jump from other slave axis when main axis encoder is in synchronized motion.

ErrorID Clear:

1. When SSI encoder is not connected or SSI encoder and CPU is disconnected, then Status Data=1, the BusCycle stops to update and the EncoderPosition keeps the last value, the purpose is to avoid jump from other slave axis when main axis encoder is in synchronized motion.

Ans: Check the connection between SSI encoder and CPU. The modified firmware will make sure the communication channel is properly connected to restore EncoderPosition updates of BusCycle. There are many reasons for cause of errors, for example: SSI encoder not properly connected, broken SSI encoder and abnormal drive board.

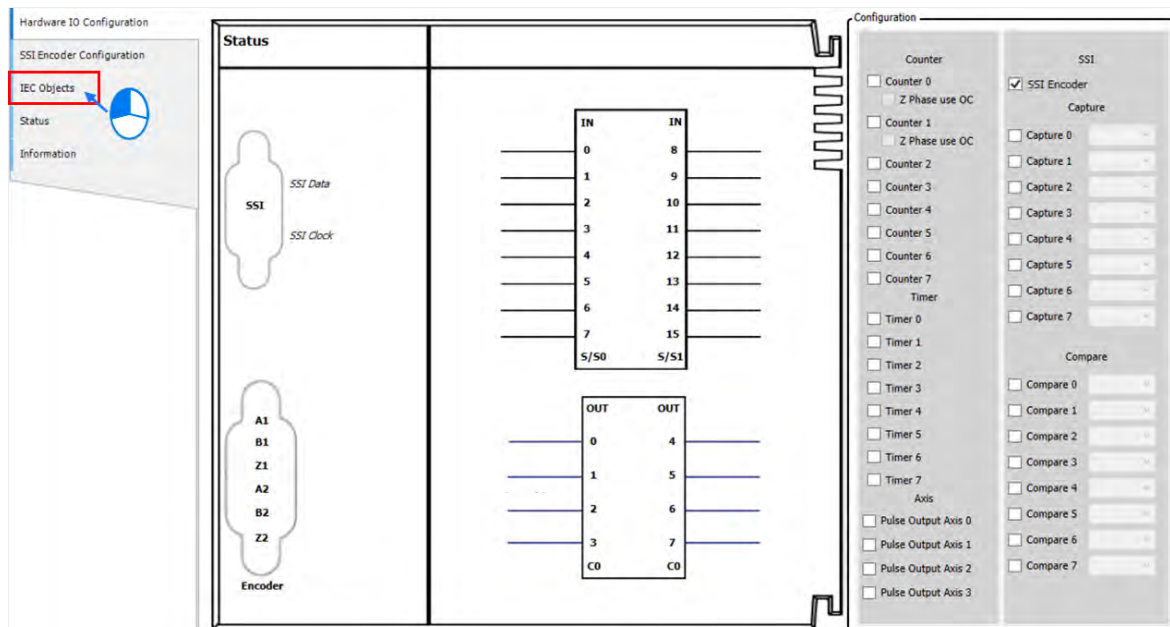
2. When MultiTurns + SingleTurns is bigger than 32, then Status Data =2:

Ans: When the parameter setting value of MultiTurns + SingleTurns does not exceed 32, then download again.

● Use SSI Encoder in program

The SSI encoder device contains variables of axis encoder that can be used for MC function blocks in POU. (Ex. MC_CamIn).

- Click "IEC Objects" on BuiltIn_IO page.



- Example of variable reading

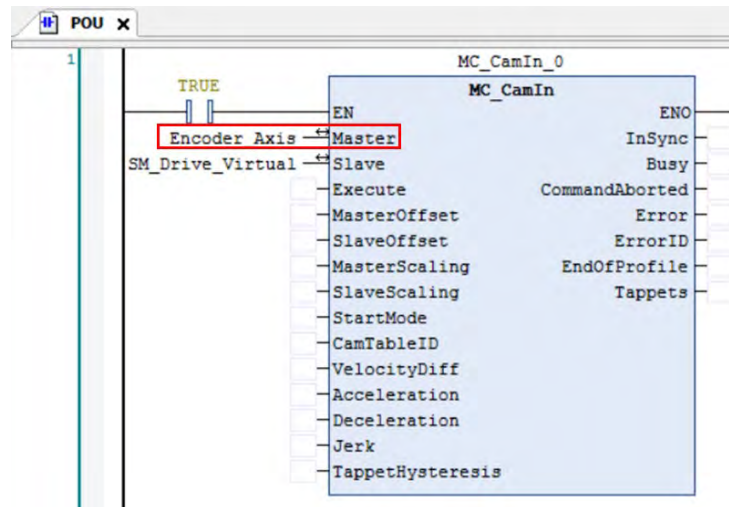
Hardware IO Configuration	Variable	Type	Configuration Function
SSI Encoder Configuration	SSI_Encoder	DFB_SSI_ENCODER_REF	SSI Encoder
IEC Objects	Encoder_Axis_1	DMC_ENCODER_AXIS_REF	SSI Encoder/FreeEncoder_Axis
Status			
Information			

The actual position and ErrorID can be accessed via the variable with red border, such as "SSI_Encoder.EncoderPosition" and "SSI_Encoder.ErrorID".

- The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function for each variable. For the axis used in POU, the axis name should be set as Encoder_Axis.

Hardware IO Configuration	Variable	Type	Configuration Function
SSI Encoder Configuration	SSI_Encoder	DFB_SSI_ENCODER_REF	SSI Encoder
IEC Objects	Encoder_Axis	DMC_ENCODER_AXIS_REF	SSI Encoder/FreeEncoder_Axis
Status			
Information			

- For MC_CamIn function block in POU, SSI can be used for master source, while the input name of Master axis is Encoder_Axis.



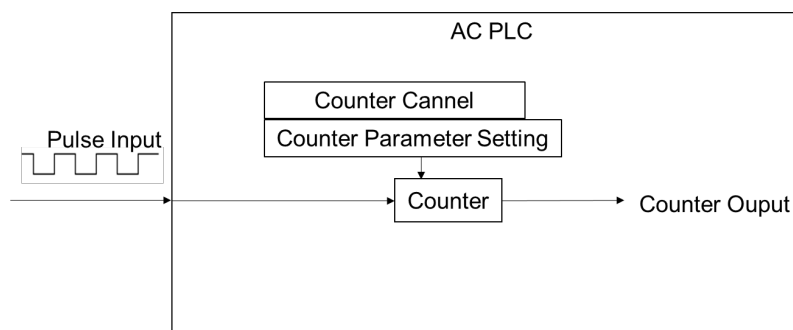
7.7.7.4 Pulse Encoder Setting

The connecting method for AX series and pulse-type encoders supports interface regarding differential input (2 sets) and open collector for pulse input (6 sets). Through connecting D-SUB15 port and PLC, the differential interface has 2 sets of high-speed counter to count the amount of encoder's pulse value or frequency; the open collector for pulse input regarding the external encoder requires connecting input points on the IO boards, the section contains 6 sets of high speed counter to count the amount of encoder's pulse value or frequency. You need to click and enable pulse-type encoder function for required parameter settings, then receive encoder's data via hardware configuration channels.

The section describes the pulse-type encoder function modules of the IO (see below), the maximum amount concerning AS508ECT-B support for high speed counter and the total of high speed timers are 8 sets.

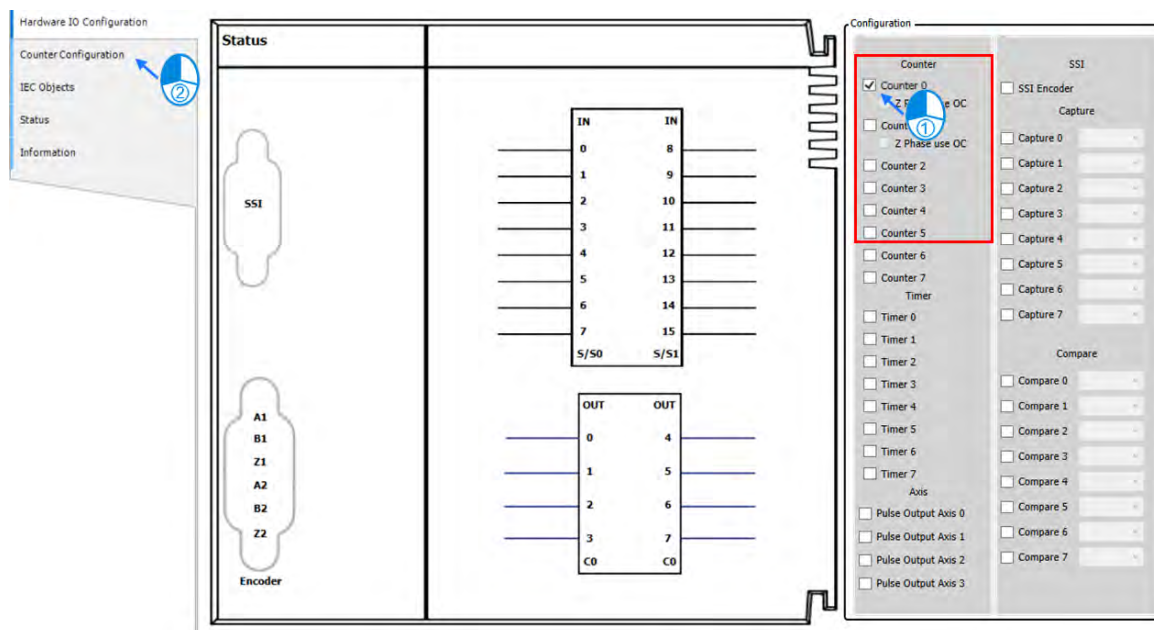
● High speed counter (Cnt)

When selecting Cnt function in Hardware IO Configuration, you can also setup the high speed counter and encoder sections.

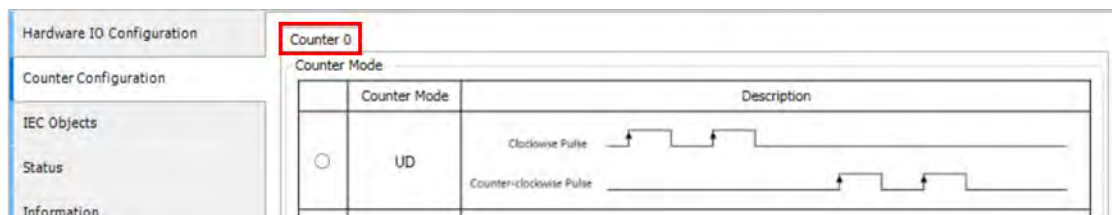


- **Enable high speed IO function**

- A number of 8 counters are displayed on BuiltIn_IO page. Select Counter 0, then click “Counter Configuration” tag.



- On Counter Configuration page, choose Counter 0, which has been selected on the previous page.



- Configure Counter-related settings on Counter Configuration page. Descriptions are as follows.

Hardware IO Configuration

Counter Configuration

IEC Objects

Status

Information

Counter 0

① Counter Mode

	Counter Mode	Description
<input type="radio"/>	UD	Clockwise Pulse Counter-clockwise Pulse
<input type="radio"/>	PD	Pulse Direction: Clockwise / Counter-clockwise
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	AB	A-Phase Pulse B-Phase Pulse
<input type="radio"/>	4AB	A-Phase Pulse B-Phase Pulse

☐ External Trigger

② Axis Standard

Encoder Type: Incremental Encoder

③ Axis Type

☒ Linear Axis ☐ Rotary Axis

Modulo: 360 [Unit]

④

Positive Command Negative Command

☒ Reverse OFF

CW CCW

☐ Reverse On

CCW CW

⑤ Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism Type: Ball Screw

Mechanism Setting

(1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 1 [Pulse]

(4) Pitch: 1 [Unit]

Gear Box

Gear Ratio =

(2) Gear ratio numerator 1

(3) Gear ratio denominator 1

① Counter Mode

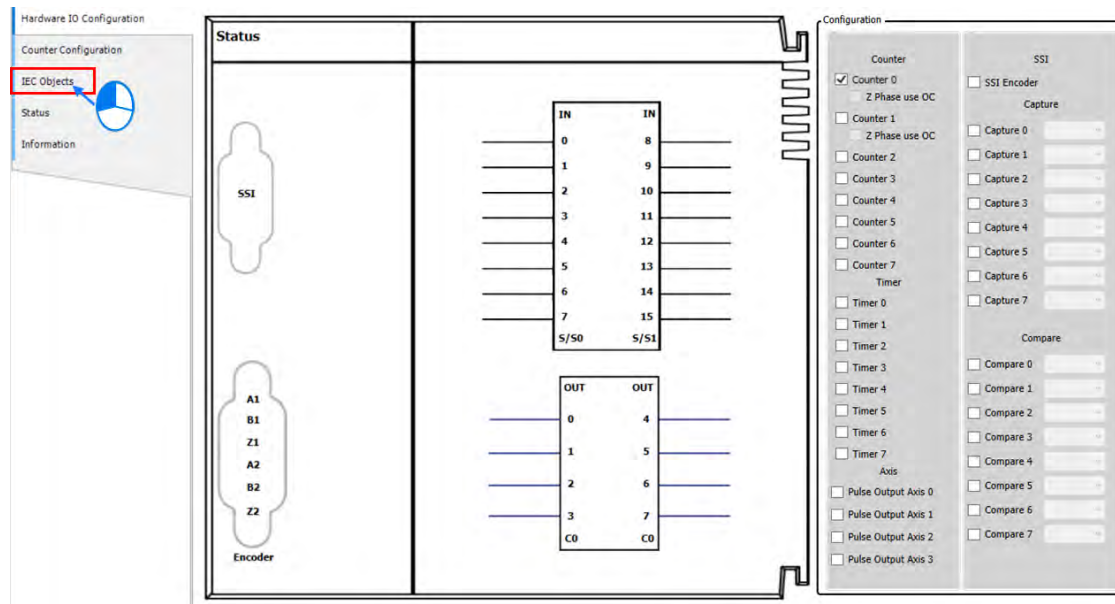
Pulse Counter Mode	Description
UD	Forward rotation pulse train and reverse rotation pulse train
PD	Pulse and direction
AB	A-phase and B-phase pulse
4AB	A-phase and B-phase pulse (4x)
External Trigger	Activate Z-phase signals

Refer to section 7.7.7.3 SSI Encoder Setting for ② ③ ④ ⑤ on configuration page.

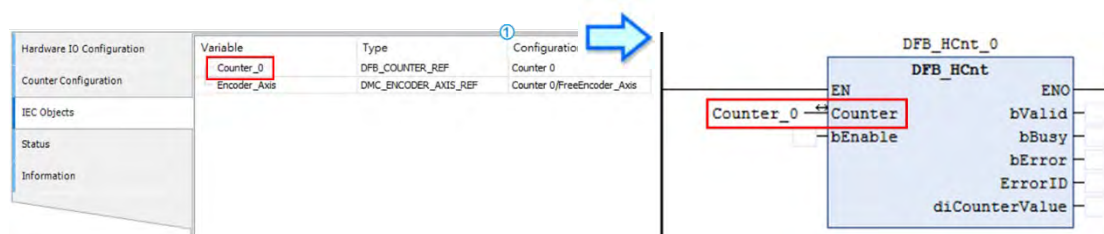
● Use Counter in program

The high speed counter contains variables of axis encoder that can be used for MC function blocks in POU.

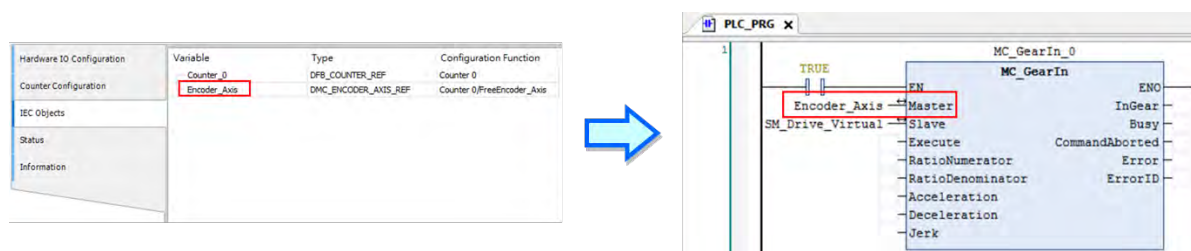
- Click on “IEC Objects” tab on BuiltIn_IO page.



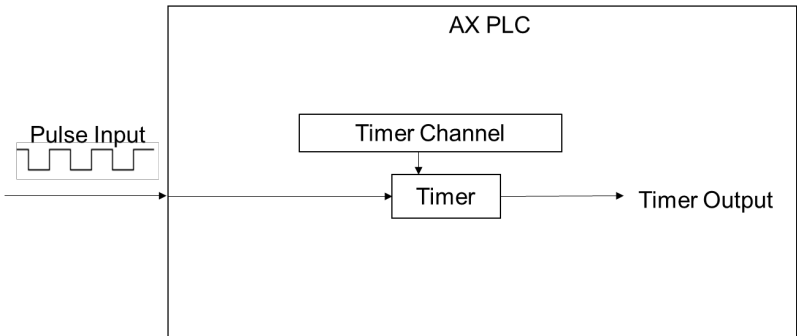
- The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function of each variable. To enable counter function, the variable Counter_0 needs to be input to the Counter pin of DFB_HCnt.



- For MC_CamIn function block in POU, the input variable corresponding to Master should be Encoder_Axis while using variable Counter_0 SSI as the source of the master axis.

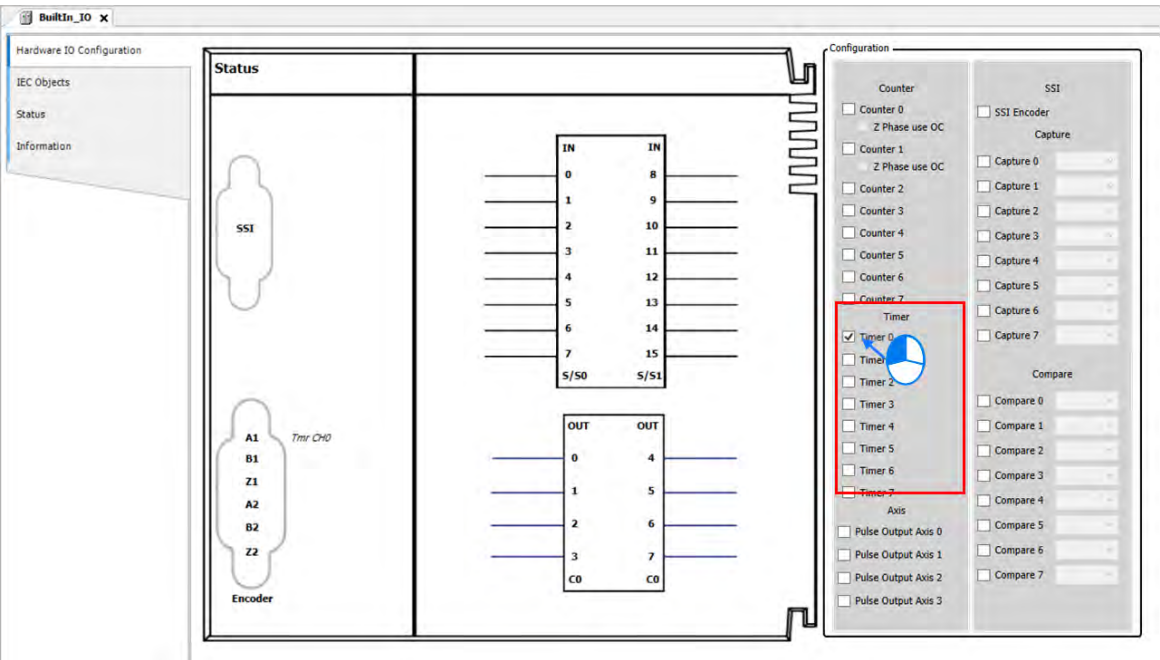


● High speed timer (Tmr)



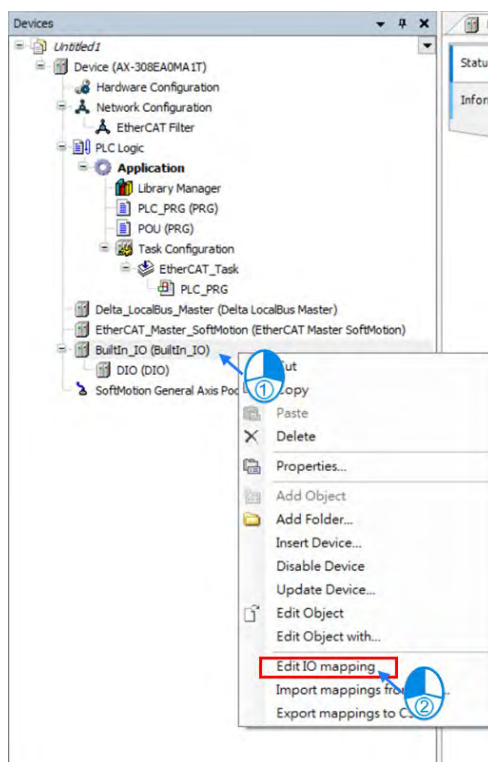
● Enable high speed timer function

When selecting Tmr function in Hardware IO Configuration, the high speed timer in AX series is set as 0.1μs. To enable timer function, select Timer 0 between 8 sets of Timer on BuiltIn_IO page to activate with no configuration page required.



- **Timer mapping variable setting**

- Right click "BuiltIn_IO" and choose Edit IO Mapping.



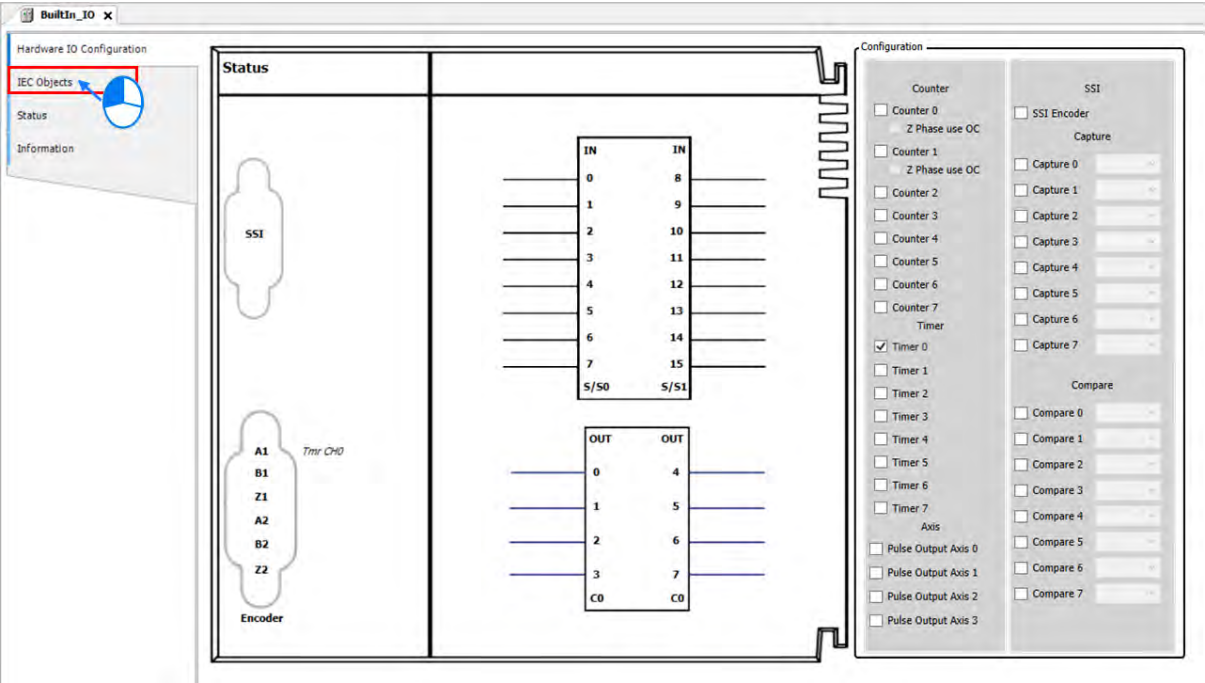
- Click  to add new variables on Edit IO Mapping page.

Edit IO mapping X				
Find	Filter	Show all	Add FB for IO Channel...	
Variable	Channel	Address	Type	Description
BuiltIn_IO				
DIO				
+	IN:0-7	%IB0	BYTE	8-CH Open Collector Input
+	IN:8-15	%IB1	BYTE	8-CH Open Collector Input
+	Encoder	%IB2	BYTE	2-CH of Incremental Encoder Input
+	OUT:0-7	%QB0	BYTE	8-CH Open Collector Output
Pulse_Encoder				
Timer_0				
+	Timer Value	%ID1	DWORD	HSIO Timer Value

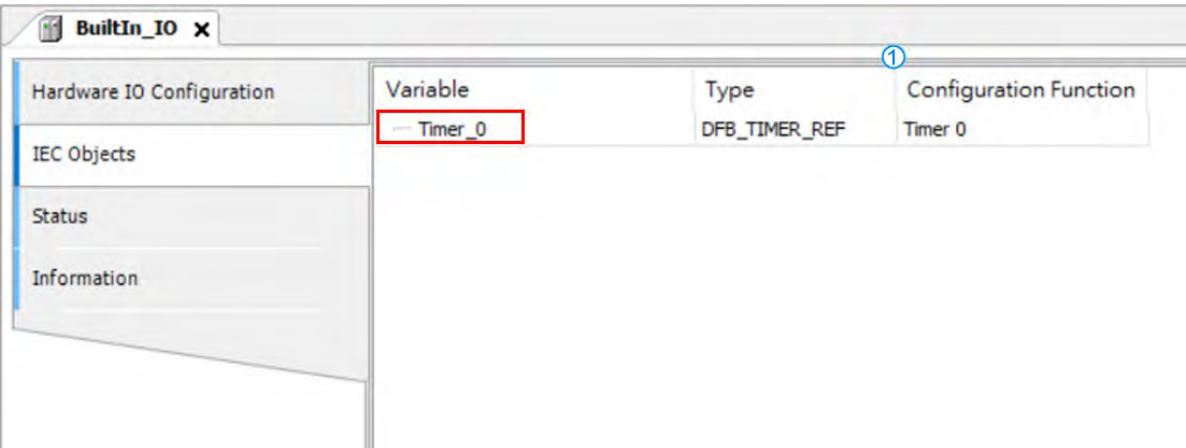
● Use Timer in program

The Timer variables can be used for MC function blocks in POU.

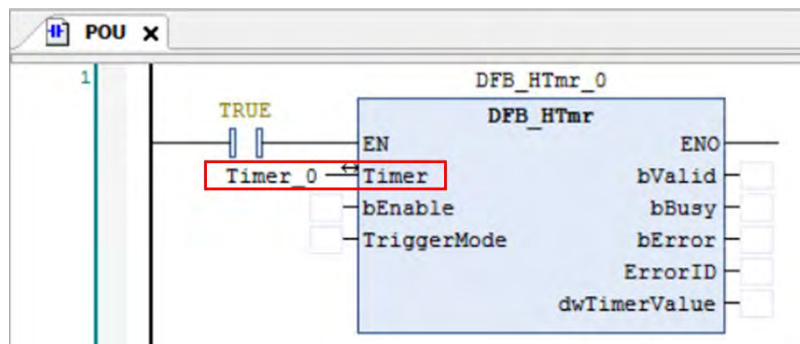
- Click “IEC Objects” on BuiltIn_IO page.



- The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function of each variable. For the axis used in POU, the axis name should be set as Timer_0.



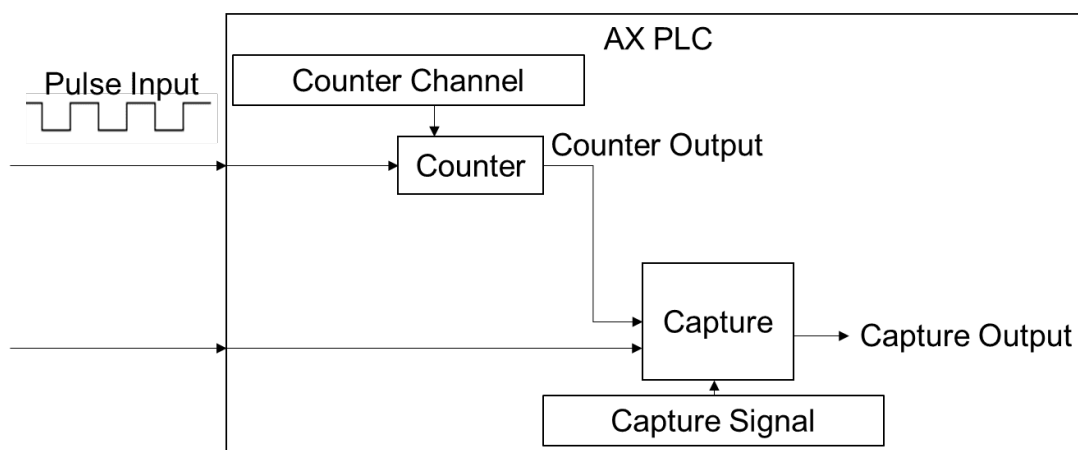
- To enable Timer function, DFB_HTmr_0 is required to use. For DFB_HTmr_0 function block in POU, enter Timer_0 as the axis name.



7.7.7.5 Capture/Compare Function Setting

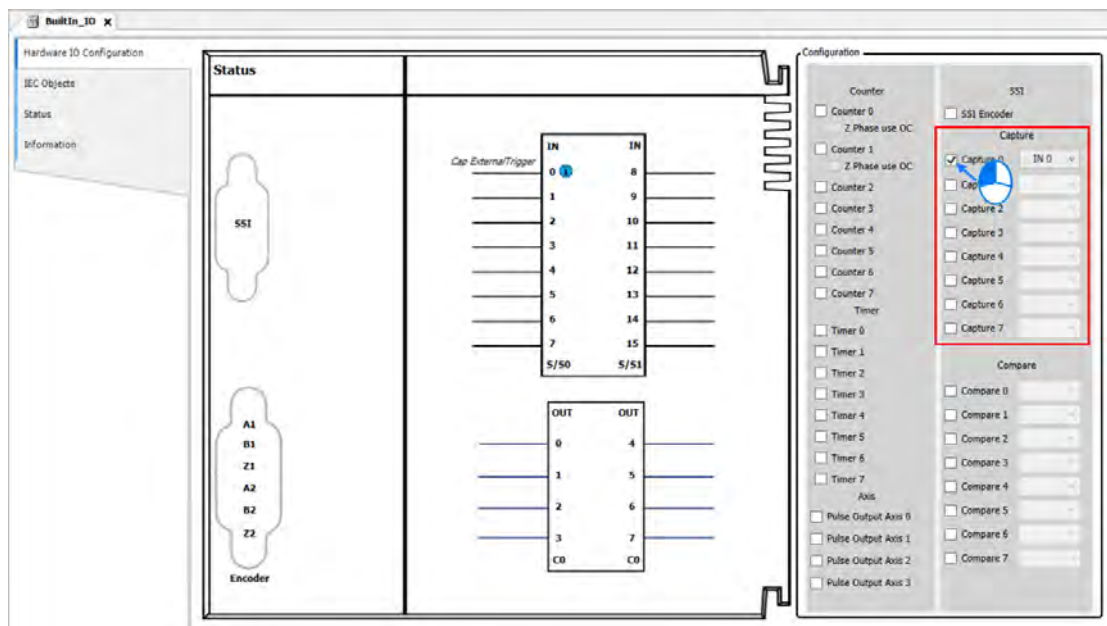
This section introduces the Capture and Compare function modules with built-in high-speed counters. A maximum of 8 groups of high-speed captures and compares can be supported by AX series motion controllers.

- **Capture**

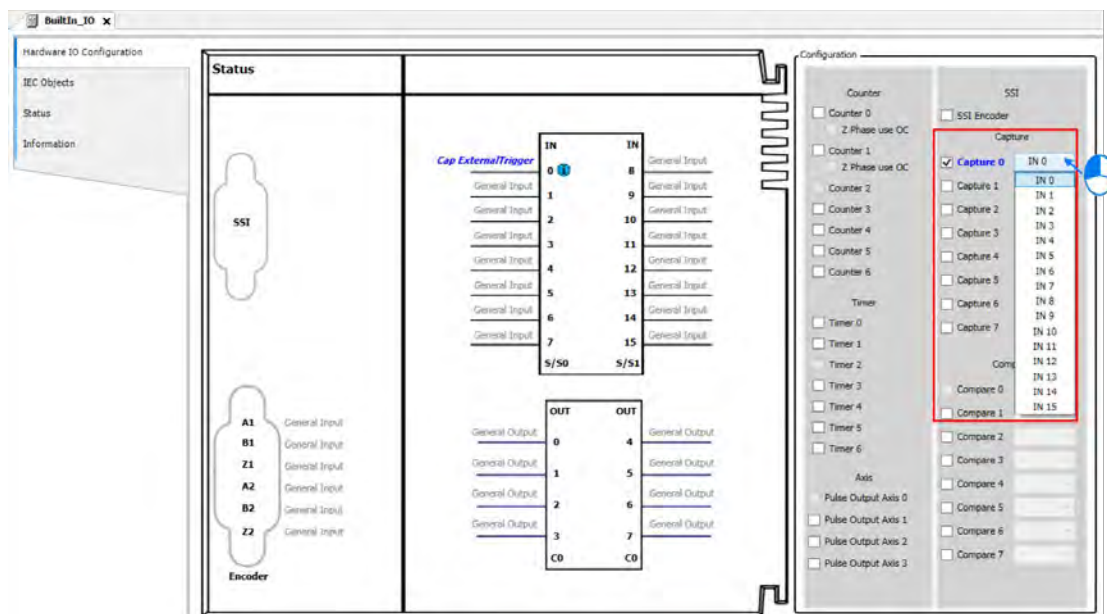


- **Enable Capture function**

- Select one of the 8 Capture groups to activate on the BuiltIn_IO page.



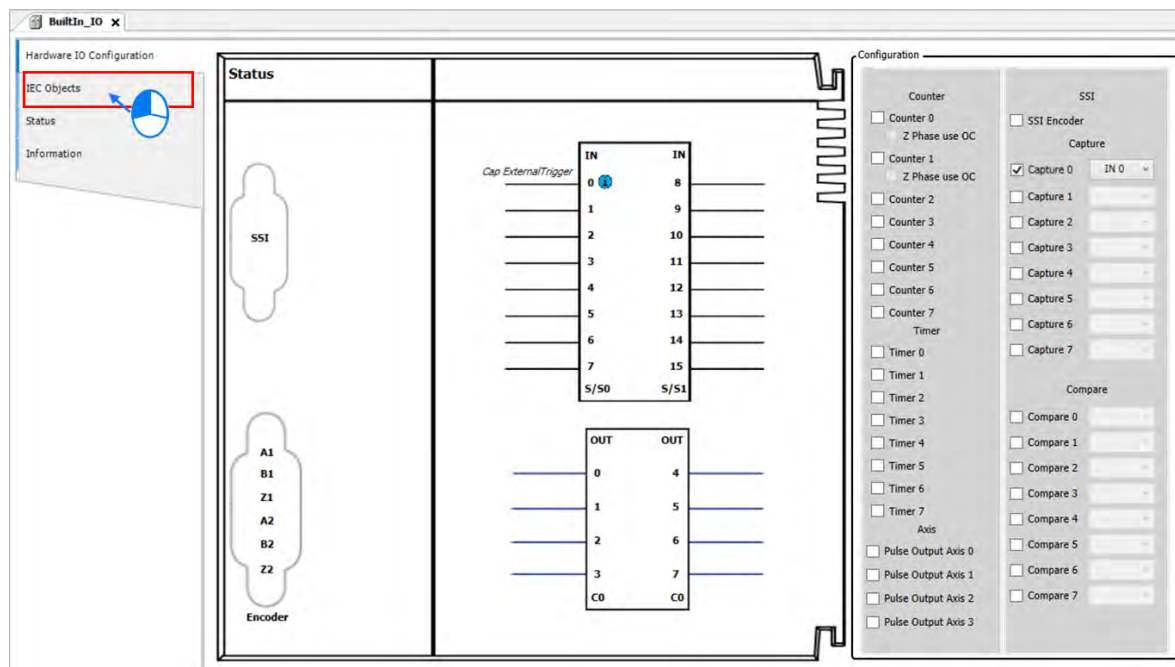
- Then choose the external trigger input from the drop-down list after activating Capture.



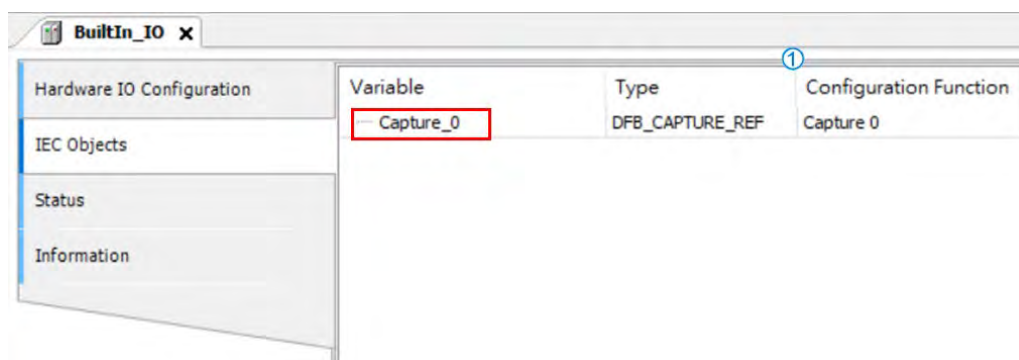
● Use Capture in program

The Capture variables can be used for MC function blocks in POU.

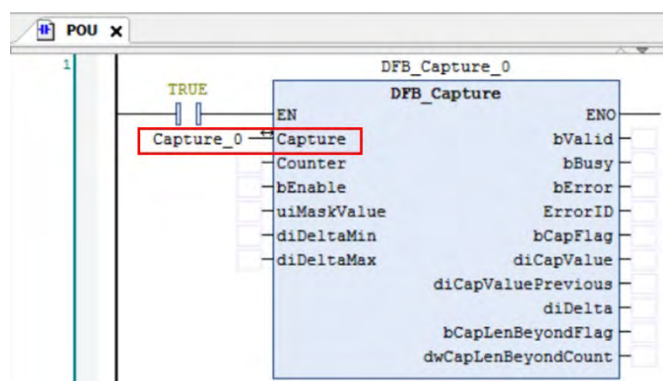
- Click "IEC Objects" on BuiltIn_IO page.



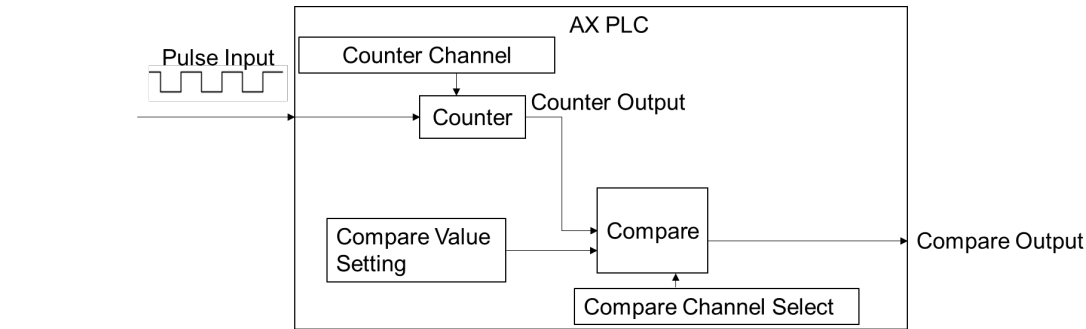
- The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function of each variable. For the axis used in POU, the axis name should be set as Capture _0.



- For DFB_Capture function block in POU, enter Capture _0 as the axis name.

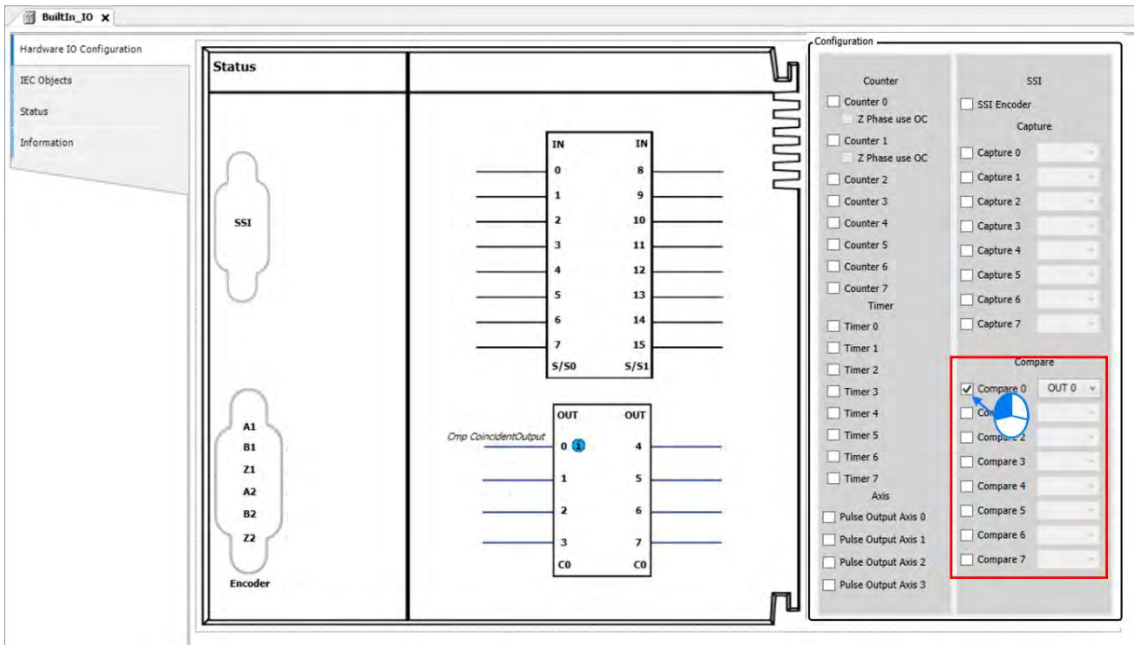


● Compare

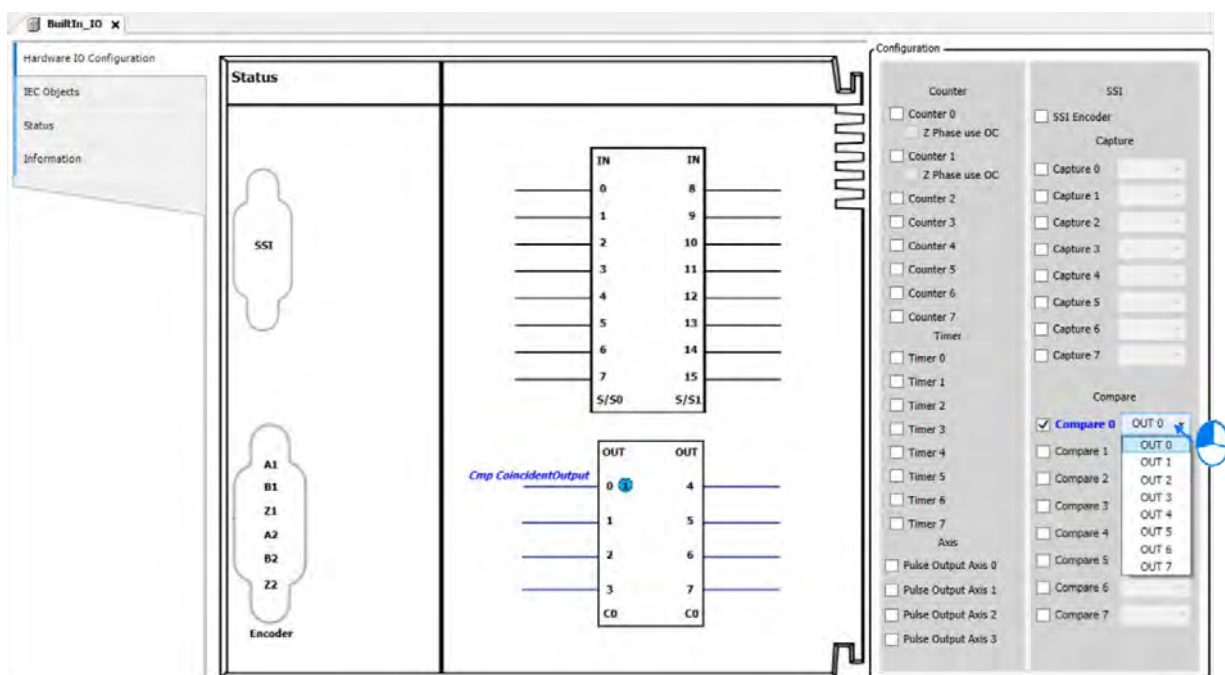


● Enable Compare function

- Select one of the 8 Compare groups to activate on the BuiltIn_IO page.



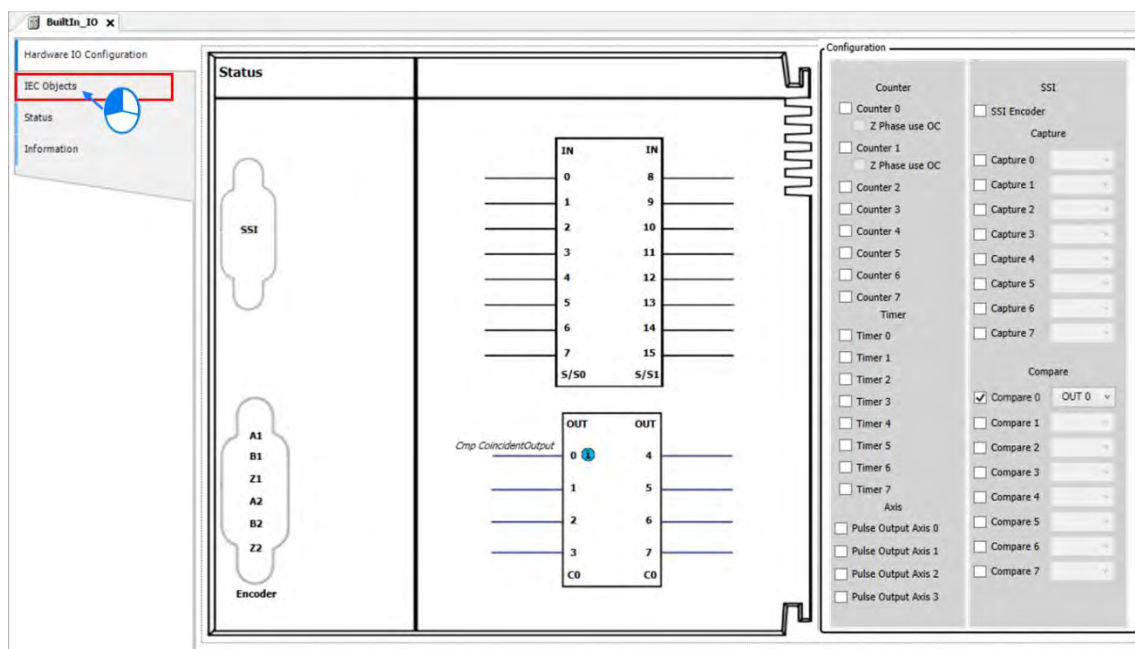
- Then choose the external trigger output from the drop-down list after activating Compare.



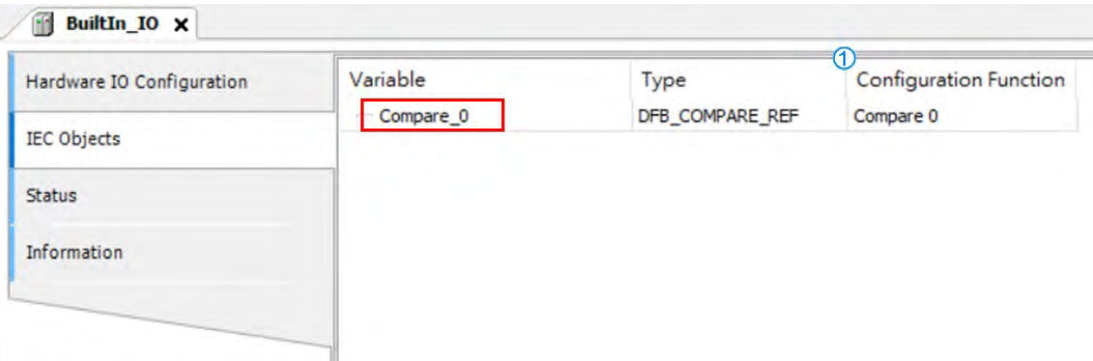
● Use Compare in program

The Compare variables can be used for MC function blocks in POU.

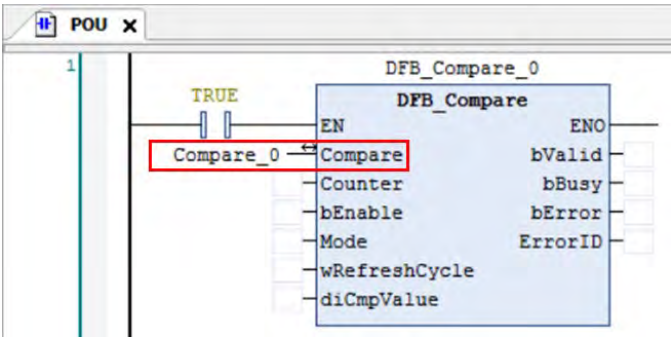
- Click "IEC Objects" on BuiltIn_IO page.



- The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function of each variable. For the axis used in POU, the axis name should be set as Compare _0.



- For DFB_Compare function block in POU, enter Compare _0 as the axis name.

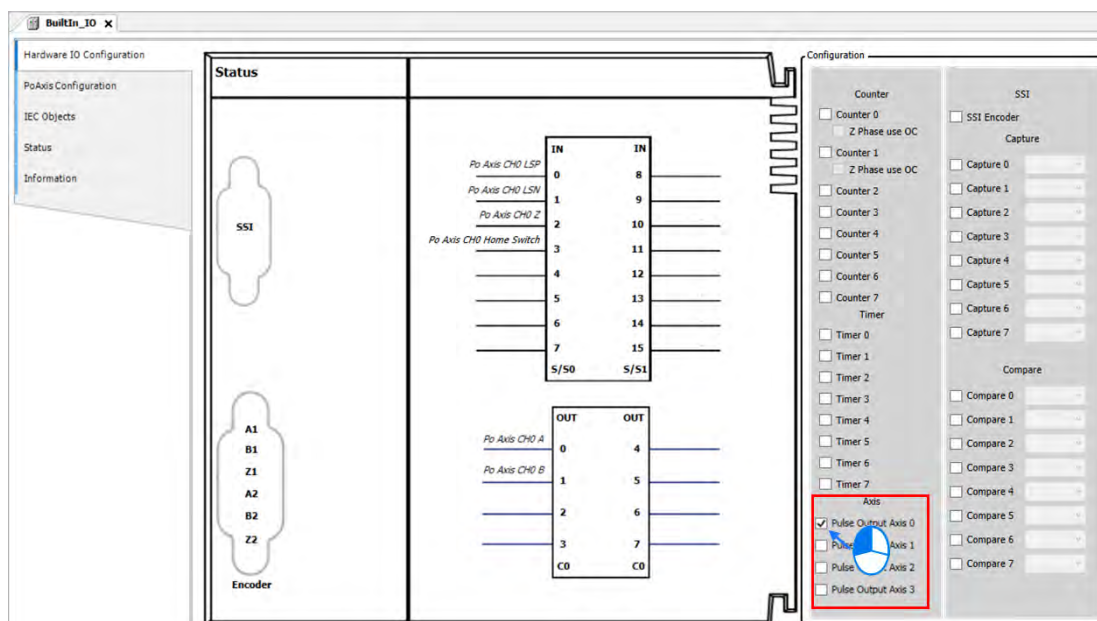


7.7.7.6 Pulse Output Function Setting

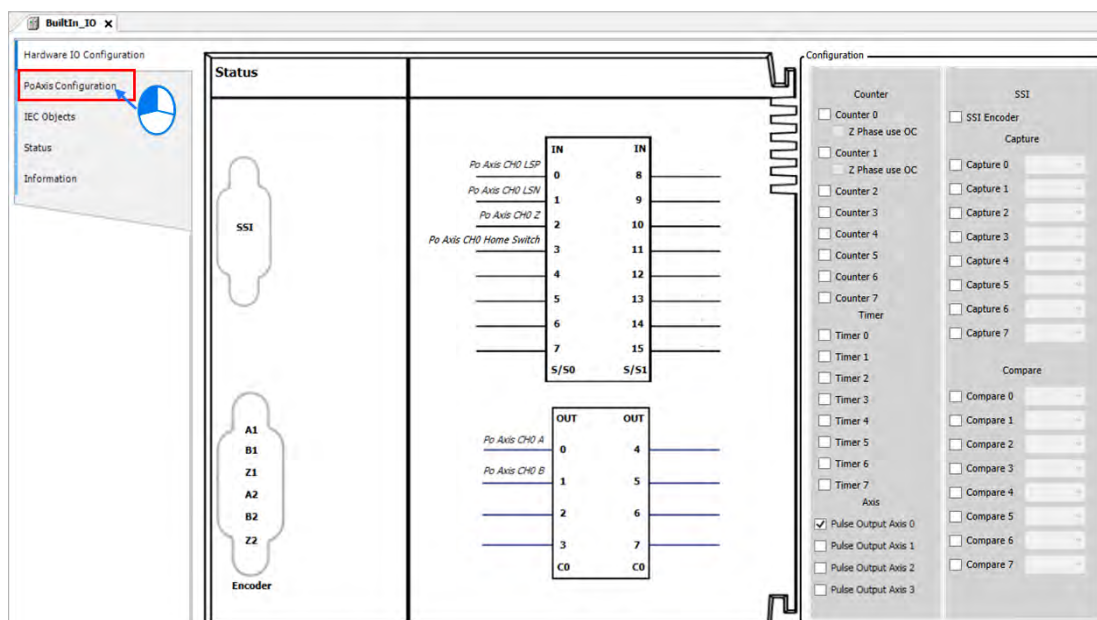
This section introduces pulse output function modules with built in IO shown as follows. A maximum of 4 groups pulse-output unit can be chosen to use with AX series motion controllers.

- **Activate axis function**

- Choose one of the four pulse output axes to activate on BuiltIn_IO page.



- Click "PoAxis Configuration" after activating Axis.



- Click to enter Axis 0 tab on PoAxis Configuration page.

Axis 0

Pulse Output Mode Setting

ModeA/B

Reverse OFF

Positive Command

CCW

Negative Command

CW

Reverse On

CW

CCW

Axis Type and Limits

☐ Virtual mode

☒ Linear Axis

☐ Rotary Axis

Linear Axis Software Limits

☐ Activated

Negative [u]:0

Positive [u]:1000

Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

Modulo value [u]:360

Motion Parameter

Error Reaction

☐ Quick Stop

Deceleration [u/s²]:1000

Velocity Ramp Type

☒ Trapezoid

☐ Sin²

☐ Quadratic

☐ Quadratic(smooth)

Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism TypeBall Screw

(1)

(2)

(3)

(4)

Mechanism Setting

(1) Command pulse per motor rotation:10000 [Pulse]

(4) Pitch:10000 [Unit]

Gear Box

Gear Ratio =

(2) Gear ratio numerator1

(3) Gear ratio denominator1

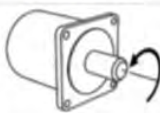
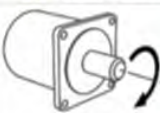
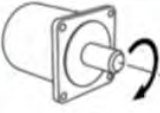
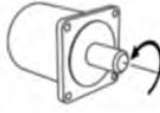
7

7-123

- Axis-related settings can be configured on Pulse Output Setting page, which is described in the following information.

Axis 0

① Pulse Output Setting
Mode Setting
Mode: A/B

	Positive Command	Negative Command
● Reverse OFF	 CCW	 CW
○ Reverse On	 CW	 CCW

② Axis Type and Limits

☐ Virtual mode

③ Linear Axis Software Limits

☒ Linear Axis ☐ Activated

Negative [u]: 0

Positive [u]: 1000

④ Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

Modulo value [u]: 360

Motion Parameter

⑤ Error Reaction

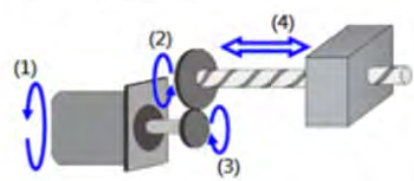
☐ Quick Stop Deceleration [u/s²]: 1000

⑥ Velocity Ramp Type

☒ Trapezoid ☐ Sin² ☐ Quadratic ☐ Quadratic(smooth)

⑦ Transmission Mechanism

Mechanism Type: Ball Screw



Mechanism Setting

(1) Command pulse per motor rotation: 10000 [Pulse]

(4) Pitch: 10000 [Unit]

Gear Box

(2) Gear ratio numerator: 1

(3) Gear ratio denominator: 1

⑧ Homing Setting

Homing Mode: Mode 35

Homing speed during search for switch: 100 [Unit/s]

Homing speed during search for z phase pulse: 50 [Unit/s]

Homing Acceleration: 1000 [Unit/s²]

Description

Mode 35 : Depending on the current position

In mode 35, The homing instruction is executed, the axis does not move and its current position is regarded as the home position.

■ ① Mode setting

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Mode	Set the type of pulse output.	CW/CCW Pulse and Direction (A/B)
Reverse ONn Reverse OFF	Set the pulse axis to rotate in positive or negative direction.	Reverse ONn Reverse OFF (Reverse OFF)

■ ② Axis Type and Limits

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Virtual	Activate virtual axes.	TRUE FALSE (FALSE)
Linear Axis/Rotary Axis	Set the axis type to be linear axis or rotary axis.	Linear Axis Rotary Axis (Linear Axis)

■ ③ Linear Axis Software Limits

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Activated	Activate software limit (only supports linear axis)	TRUE/FALSE (FALSE)
Negative[u]	Set the negative software limit.	(0)
Positive[u]	Set the positive software limit.	(10000)

■ ④ Rotary Axis Modulo Setting

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Modulo Value[u]	Set the area of rotation for a turn. (only supports rotary axes)	(360)

■ ⑤ Error Reaction

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Quick Stop	Stop the axis immediately.	(360)
Deceleration[u/s ²]	The axis will perform a deceleration stop. (functional only when Quick Stop is not activated)	(10000)

■ ⑥ Velocity Ramp Type

Item	Funtion	Setting Value (Default)
Trapezoid/Sin ² /Quadratic/ Quadratic (Smooth)	Set the ramp type for axis motion.	(Trapezoid)

■ ⑦ Software Configuration Page: Please refer to **7.7.7.3 SSI Encoder Setting**

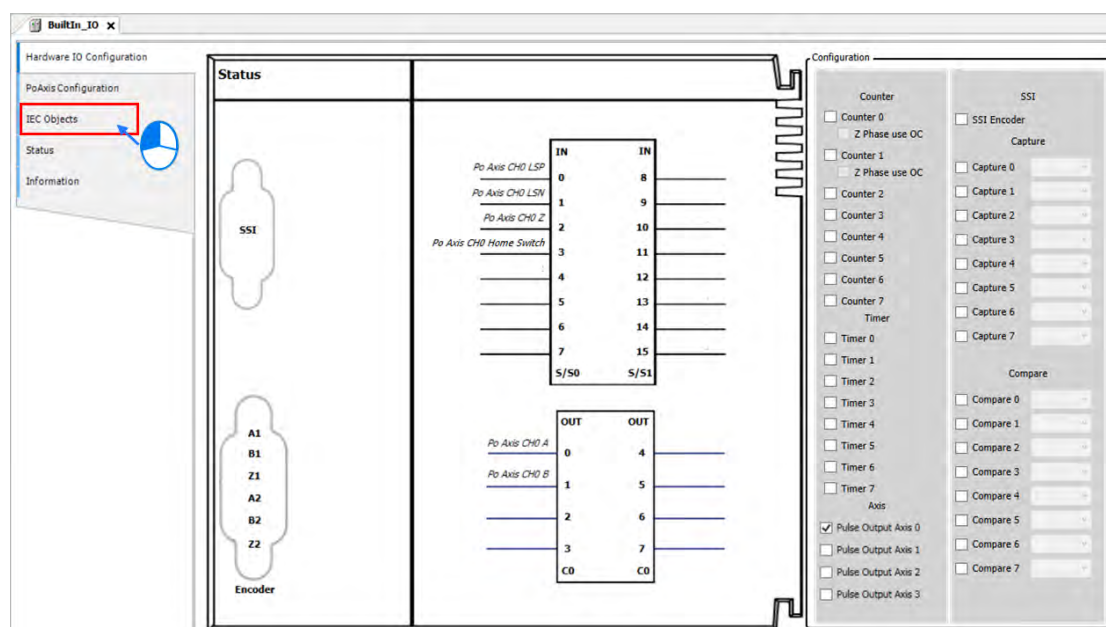
■ ⑧ Homing Setting

Item	Function	Setting Value (Default)
Homing Mode	Set the homing mode.	(Mode 351)
Homing speed during search for switch	Set the homing speed during search for switch.	(1000)
Homing speed during search for z phase pulse	Set the homing speed during search for z phase pulse.	(50)
Homing Acceleration	Set the homing acceleration.	(10000)

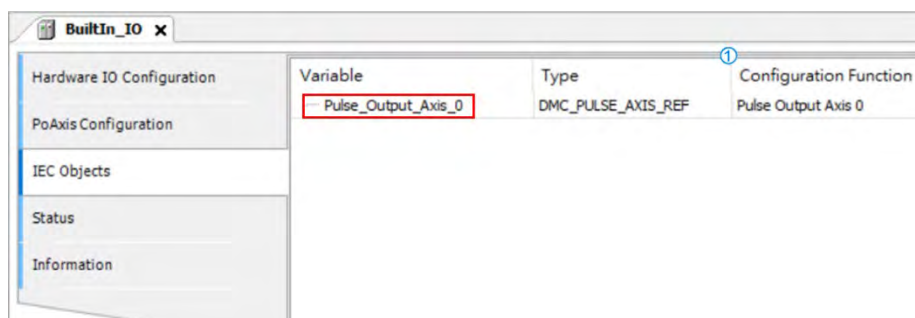
● Use Pulse Axis in program

To use Pulse Axis in POU, Pulse Output Axis variables are required for MC function blocks in POU.

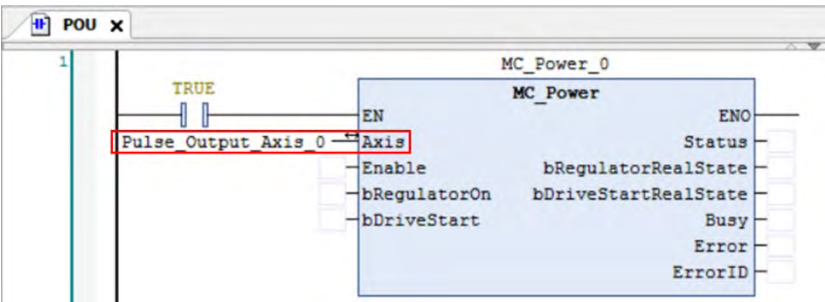
■ Click "IEC Objects" on BuiltIn_IO page.



■ The column marked ① on the IEC Objects tab is the configuration function of each variable. For the axis used in POU, the axis name should be set as Pulse_Output_Axis_0.

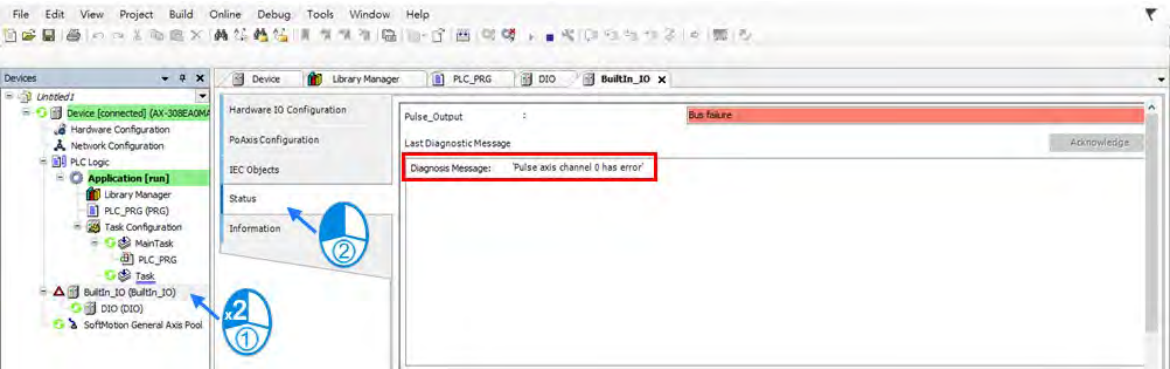


- For MC_Power function block in POU, enter Pulse_Output_Axis_0 as the axis name.

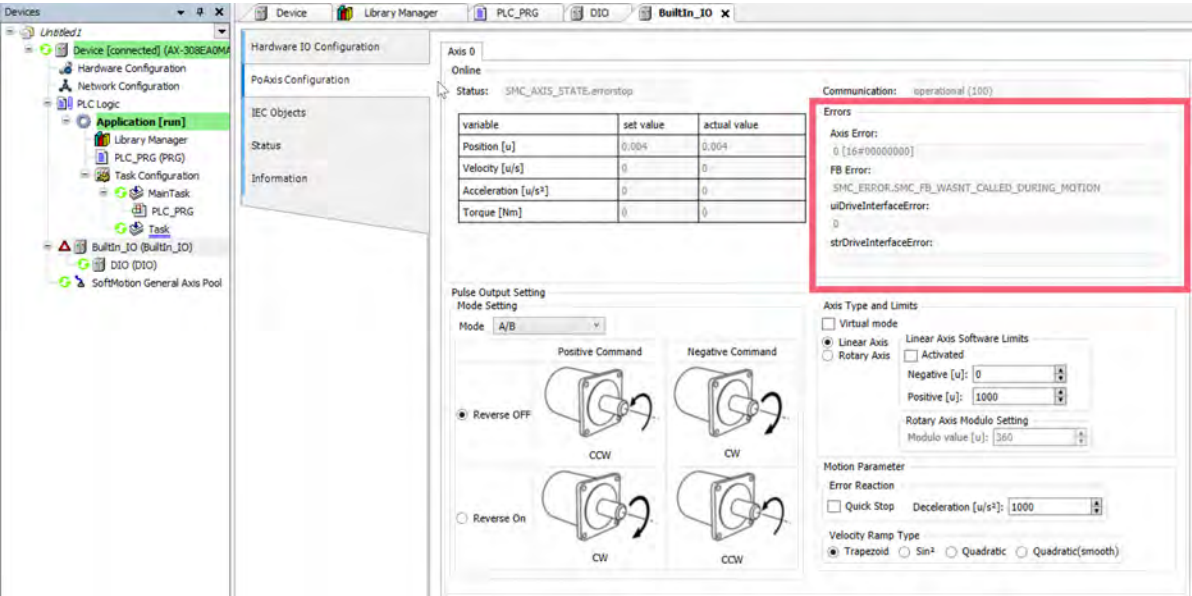


7.7.7.7 Confirm High-Speed IO Errors

Errors in Pulse Output Axis are displayed on Status tab under BuiltIn_IO page with messages notifying you of which pulse axis has error.



You can continue to check and monitor the error information on PoAxis Configuration tab page.



7.7.8 Other Features

7.7.8.1 Change Current Position

■ MC_SetPosition

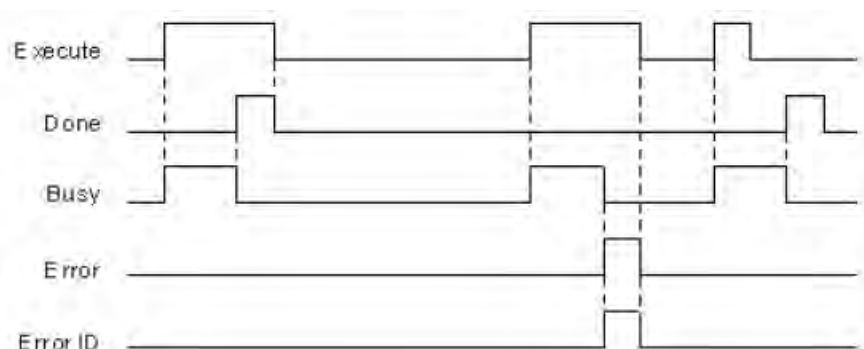
This function block is to change the current position by shifting the coordinate system of an axis.

The changing of the coordinate system is made by modifying both the current position of the instruction (command position) and the actual position from the feedback signals with the same value.

The following error between command position and actual position remains the same value.

The function block is used to change the coordinate system and does not lead to servo drive and motor movement.

■ Timing diagram



7.7.8.2 Software Limit

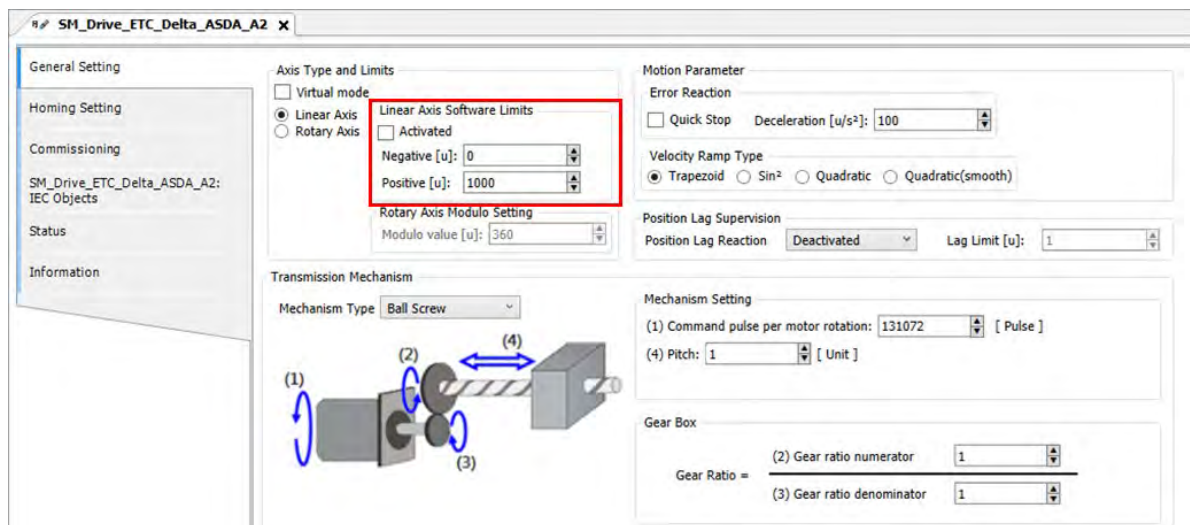
In addition to hardware limit, the range of axis motion can also be limited by software limit.

Values for forward and reverse limit range need to be set before activating software limit. Software limit is set to be not activated as default so as to prevent any damage to the device when an operator error occurs.



- **Software display**

Can be configured via DIADesigner-AX software.



The positive and negative position are able to be resized on the configuration page:

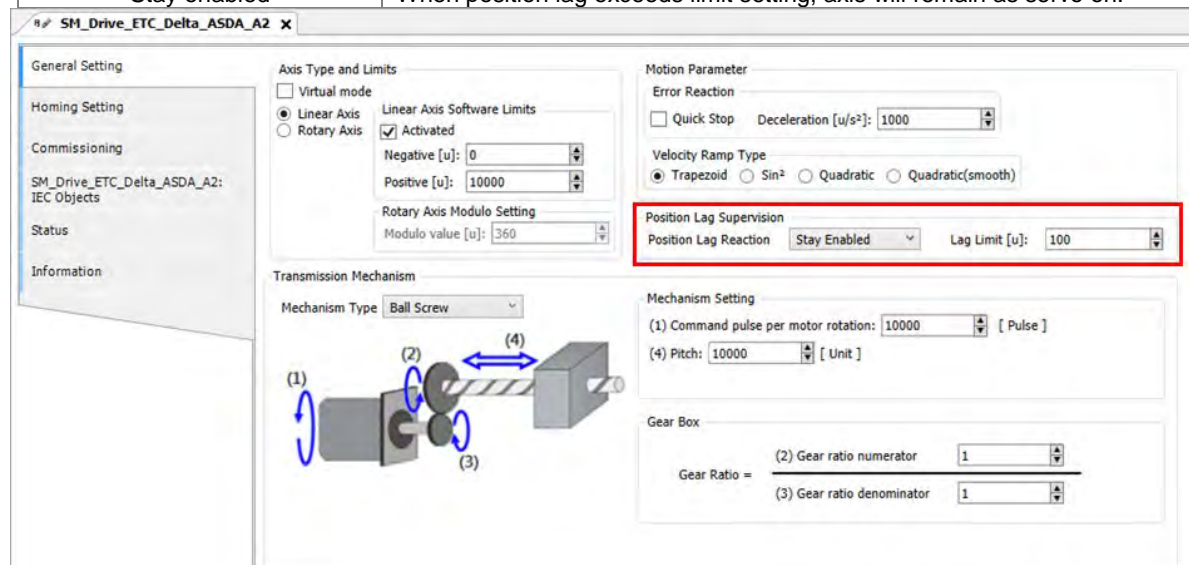
Item	Data Type	Default Setting
Negative	LRAEL	0.0
Position	LRAEL	10000.0

7.7.8.3 Position Lag Setting

The command position as well as feedback position are located at zero while the axis is in motion. If there's a great difference between command position and feedback position, an error will be reported.

The position lag reaction is set to be "Stay Enabled" as default.

Setting mode	Function
Deactivated	Not activated.
Disable drive	When position lag exceeds limit setting, axis will shift to servo off.
Do quickstop	When position lag exceeds limit setting, axis will shift to quick stop.
Stay enabled	When position lag exceeds limit setting, axis will remain as servo on.



7.7.8.4 Cam Switch Function

MC_DigitalCamSwitch

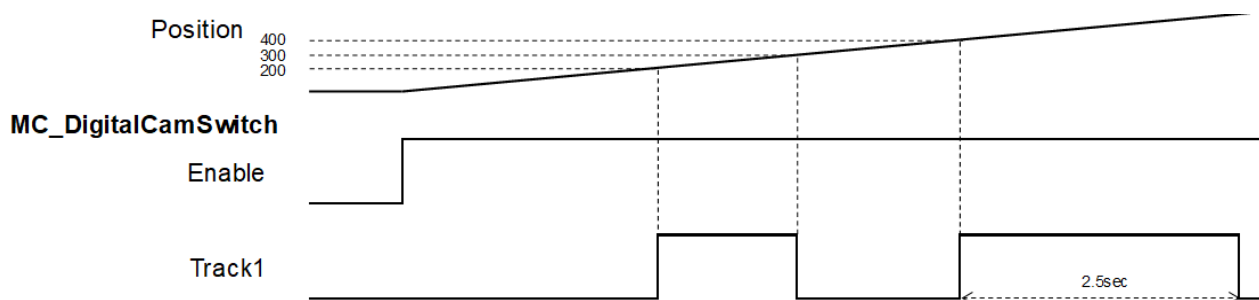
Specify the tappet position. True when the moving axis reaches the specified position, then turn to False when passing it. The following example regards to configuration settings.

- Example: Use two switches in the same track with MC_DigitalCamSwitch instruction.

■ Parameter setting

Parameter	Type	Switch1	Switch2
TrackNumber	INT	1	1
FirstOnPosition [u]	REAL	200	400
LastOnPosition [u]	REAL	300	-
AxisDirection	INT	0=Both	0=Both
CamSwitchMode	INT	0=Position	1=TIME
Duration	TIME	-	2500ms

■ Trigger and timing



- Switch 1 on Track 1 is ON when the position reaches 200 and turns to OFF once the axis position reaches 300.
- When the position reaches 400, Switch 1 turns to ON again for 2500ms and then shifts to OFF.

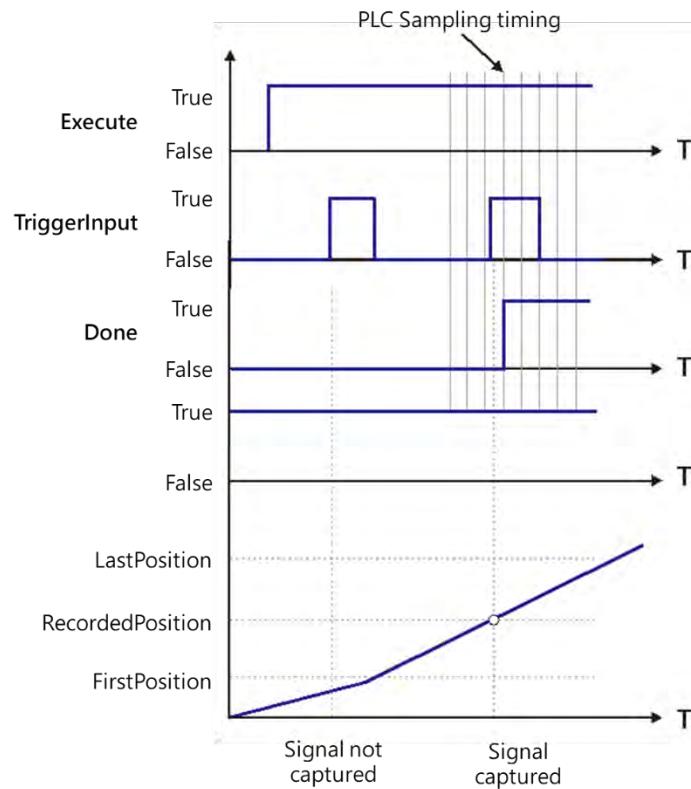
7.7.8.5 Position Capture

MC_TorchProbe captures and records an axis position when a trigger event occurs.

A total of two trigger signals can be configured for each axis. MC_AbortTrigger is used to abort capture function.

Function description:

- The touch probe operation activates for only one time for recording the very first trigger signal after Execute is set as True. When a valid position is captured and recorded, the following trigger signals will be ignored.
- One function block instance should relate to only one MC_TouchProbe instruction.
- If there were multiple function block instances on the same capture and axis, the members of MC_TRIGGER_REF should be added with TouchProbeID, which identifies different TouchProbe actions. The definition of TouchProbeID can be associated to MC_AbortTrigger.
- The operation of MC_TouchProbe with window mask function is demonstrated as below:



- At the first activation of the trigger input signal, the signal is not accepted because the axis position hasn't reach the specified window mask section.
- When the axis position enters the window mask section, the second activation of the trigger input signal is accepted, and after a period Done changes to True.

7.8 Programming Example

The following section explains on the basis of the programming example.

7.8.1 Device Framework

The following devices are used in the example.

Device	Model Name
CPU	AX-308E
Power	DVP-PS02
Servo driver	Delta ASDA-A2-E
Servo motor	Delta ECMA-C

7.8.1.1 Utilization

Please refer to the following manuals for information regarding device configuration and wiring.

Device	Reference
CPU and Power	Chapter 2 in this manual
Servo driver	Related configuration description in Delta servo drive user manuals
Wiring for EtherCAT slave device	Delta ASDA A2-E EtherCAT Interface Servo Drive User Manual

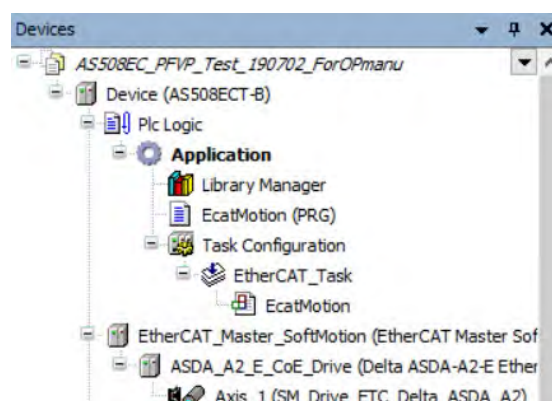
7.8.1.2 Configuration

The following configuration is applied in the example in the next section.

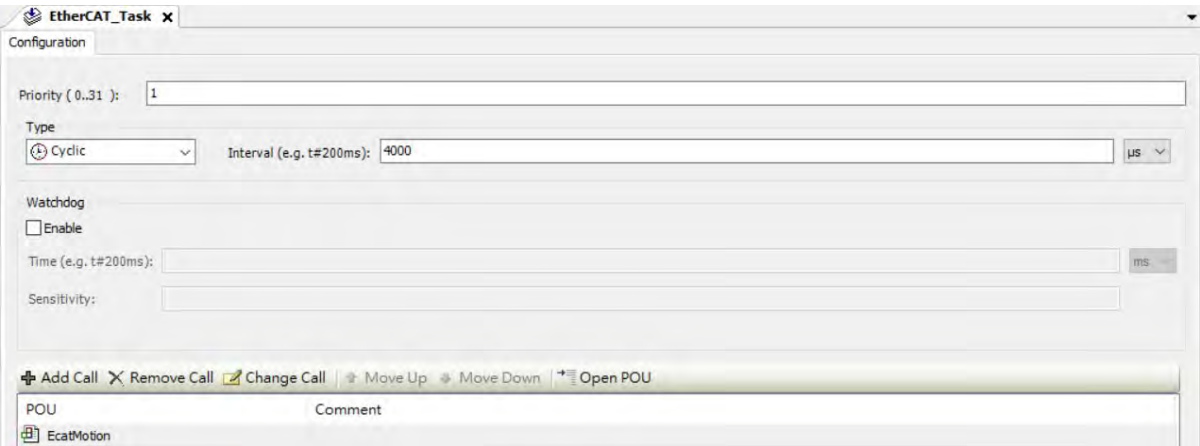
Device	Configuration setting
Controller	Chapter 2 in this manual
Motion control settings	Chapter 7 in this manual
Servo parameters	Use the default settings of ASDA-A2-E slave, gear ratio=10000 : 10000

7.8.2 Examples

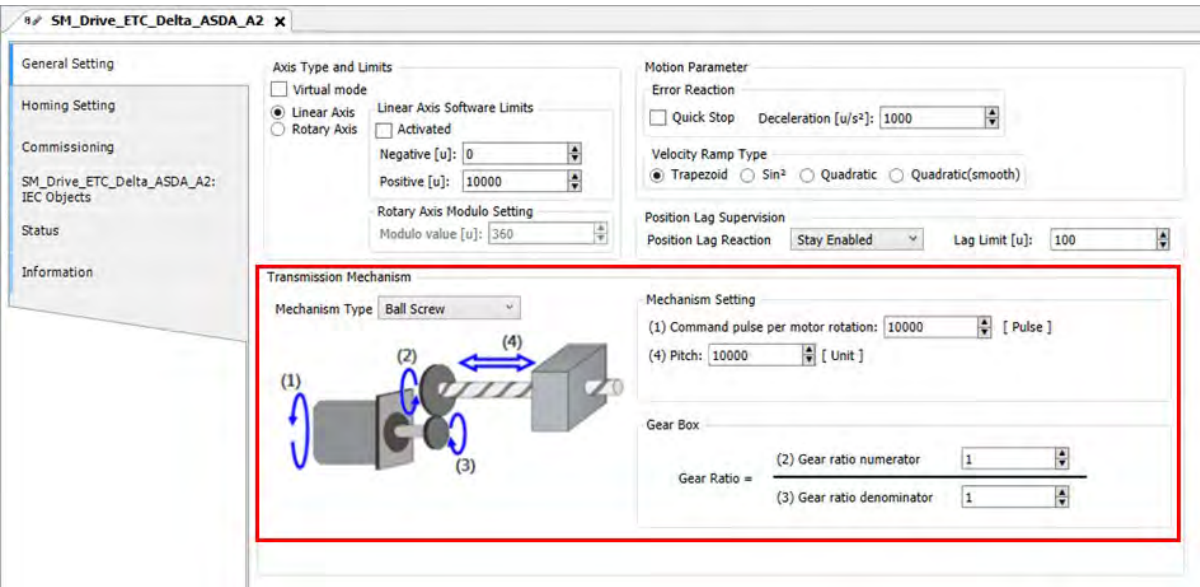
The following example uses the same POU in EtherCAT task to explain. Also, the required variables will be declared and used in this POU Task. (The POU naming in LD and ST languages will be different for illustration purpose.)



The Interval time for ECAT synchronization is set to be 4 ms.



Set the gear ratio as 10000:10000 for mechanism setting.



7.8.2.1 Servo On

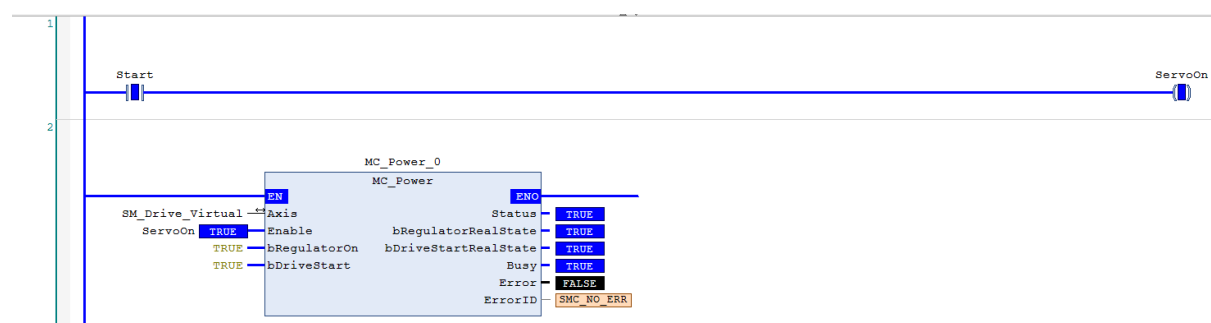
Execute MC_Power (Servo on) instruction to activate the servo driver after the EtherCAT communication is built in the following example with LD and ST programming languages supported.

■ Main variables used in programming

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
SM_Drive_Virtual	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Virtual axis variable
Start	BOOL	FALSE	Shift to True when start the server and enable Servo On

■ LD language

Check for the successful EtherCAT communication when Start is True so as to enable MC_Power via ServoOn output, which the status should be True.



■ ST language

Check for the successful EtherCAT communication when Start is True so as to enable MC_Power via ServoOn output, which the status should be True.

Monitoring window can also be used to observe the variable output status with no need for naming the output variables.

IF Start THEN

ServoOn := TRUE;

ELSE

ServoOn := FALSE;

END_IF

//MC_Power

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,

Enable:= ServoOn,

bRegulatorOn:= TRUE,

bDriveStart:= TRUE,

Status=> ,

bRegulatorRealState=> ,

bDriveStartRealState=> ,

Busy=> ,

Error=> ,

ErrorID=>);

7.8.2.2 Reset and Control Single-axis Error

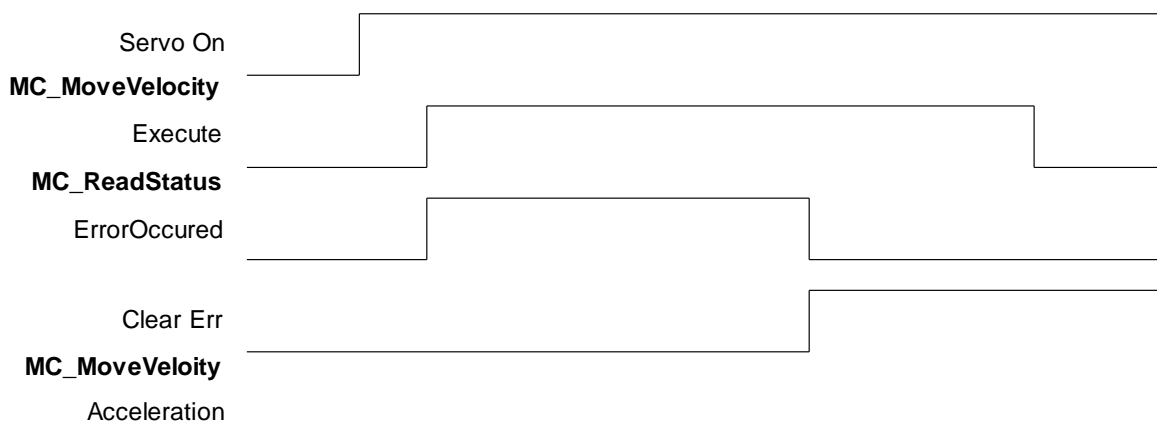
You can view the error information of variable status through Watch table. Take MC_MoveVelocity input as example, when acceleration value is set as 0 and Execute is True, an error will occur in the function block and the ErrorID displays Row Data 301. You can find the complete error message in the Watch table, which is SMC_MV_INVALID_ACCDEC_VALUES. After troubleshooting with manual's help, MC_MoveVelocity can function normally by shifting the Execute status from False to True. As for MC_Reset, it is used for clearing servo errors.

The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

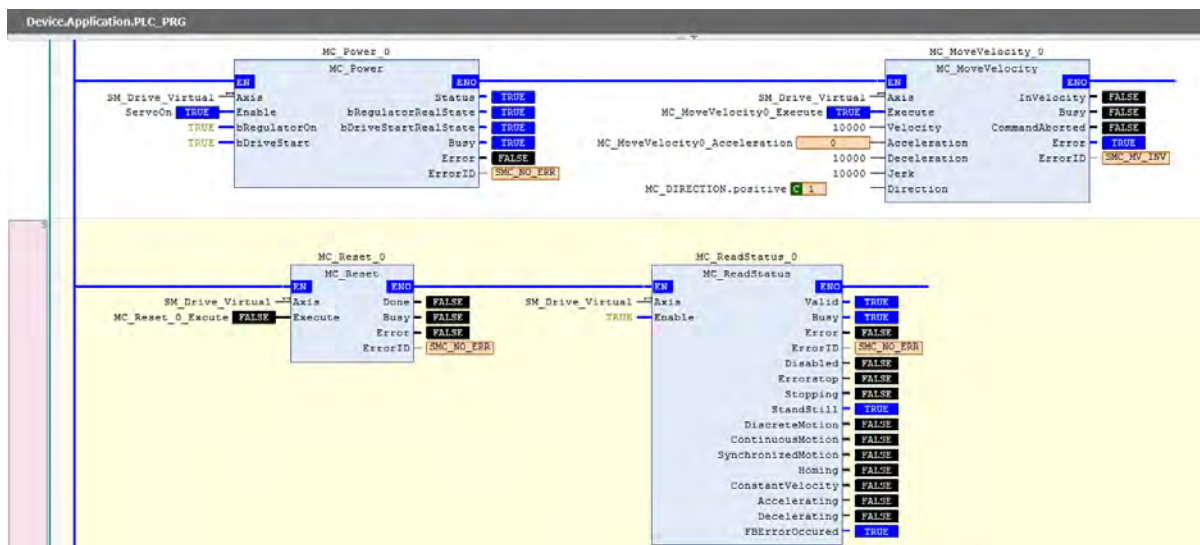
- **Main variables used in programming**

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
SM_Drive_Virtual	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Virtual axis variables
ServoOn	BOOL	FALSE	To enable MC_Power
MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	Execute input of velocity instruction
MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration	LREAL	0	Acceleration input of velocity instruction, for setting acceleration.
MC_DIRECTION.positive	MC_Direction	-	Assigned moving direction-positive
FBErrorOccured	MC_ReadStatus	FALSE	True when an error occurs in the function block
ClearErr	BOOL	FALSE	When FBErrorOccured is True, FB errors can be clear by triggering SMC_ClearFBError

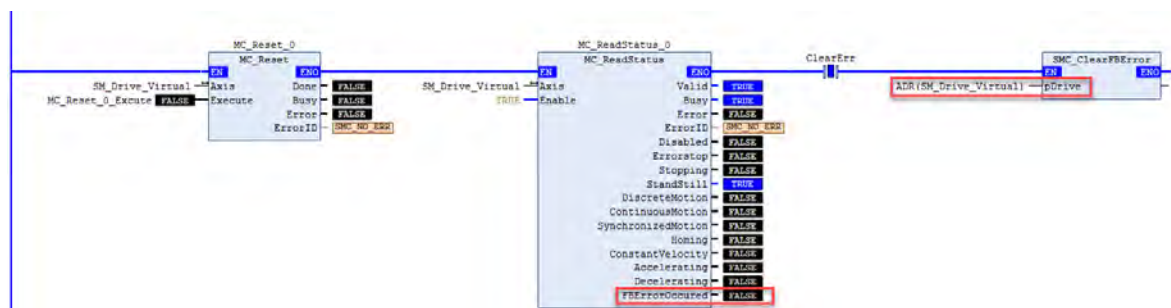
- **Timing Diagram**



● LD Language

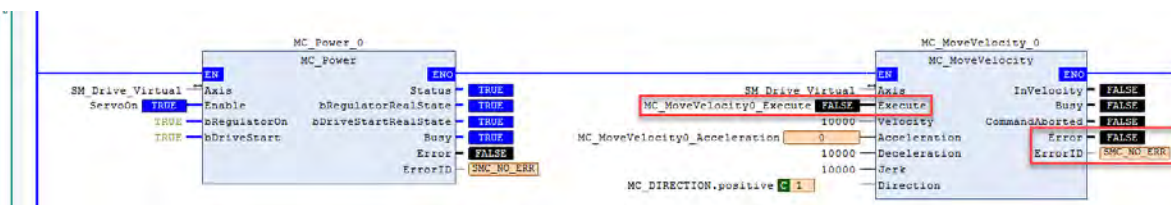


Via function SMC_ClearFBError that error can be deleted and output FBErrorOccurred of MC_ReadStatus would shift to False, once an error occurs in the function block. In addition, since input of SMC_ClearFBError need to be transferred via pointers, ADR(input) must be fed and use bool to clear FB error flag.

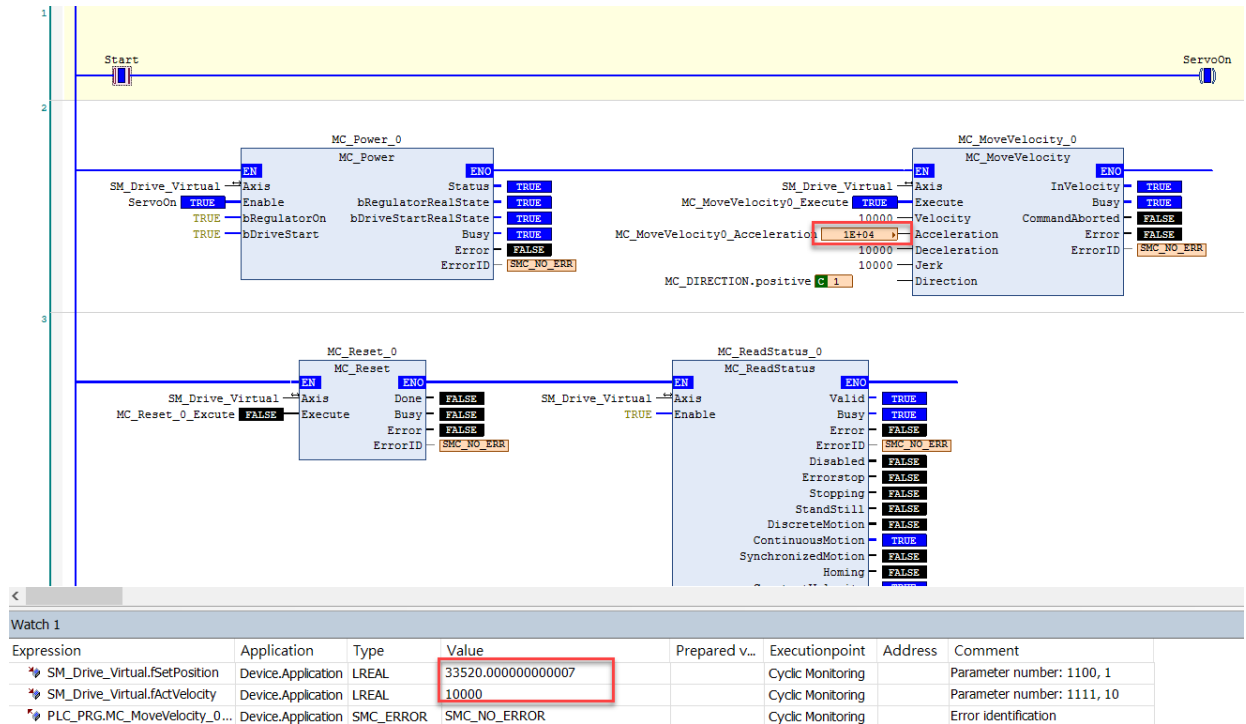


Watch 1							
Expression	Application	Type	Value	Prepared v...	Executionpoint	Address	Comment
PLC_PRG.MC_MoveVelocity_0...	Device.Application	SMC_ERROR	SMC_MV_INVALID_ACCEDEC_VALUES		Cyclic Monitoring		Error identification
'SMC_ERROR.SMC_MV_INVALID_ACCEDEC_VALUES' represents raw value '301'							

Disable Execute input of MC_MoveVelocity to update the status of Error output.



Set acceleration of MC_MoveVelocity to be 10000 and restart (Execute is True). The output of MC_MoveVelocity would be Busy with values of fSetVelocity and fSetPosition shown on the Watch table under normal operation.



● ST Language

```
MC_MoveVelocity_0(
  Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
  Execute:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute,
  Velocity:= 10000,
  Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration,
  Deceleration:= 10000,
  Jerk:= 10000,
  Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive,
  InVelocity=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  CommandAborted=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=>);
```

```
MC_ReadStatus_0(
  Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
  Enable:= TRUE);
```

Set acceleration of MC_MoveVelocity to be 10000 and restart (Execute is True). The output of MC_MoveVelocity would be Busy with values of fSetVelocity and fSetPosition shown on the Watch table under normal operation.

```
MC_MoveVelocity_0(
  Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
  Execute:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Execute,
  Velocity:= 10000,
  Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity0_Acceleration := 10000,
  Deceleration:= 10000,
  Jerk:= 10000,
  Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive,
```

```

InVelocity=> ,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );

```

```

MC_ReadStatus_0(
  Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
  Enable:= TRUE );

```

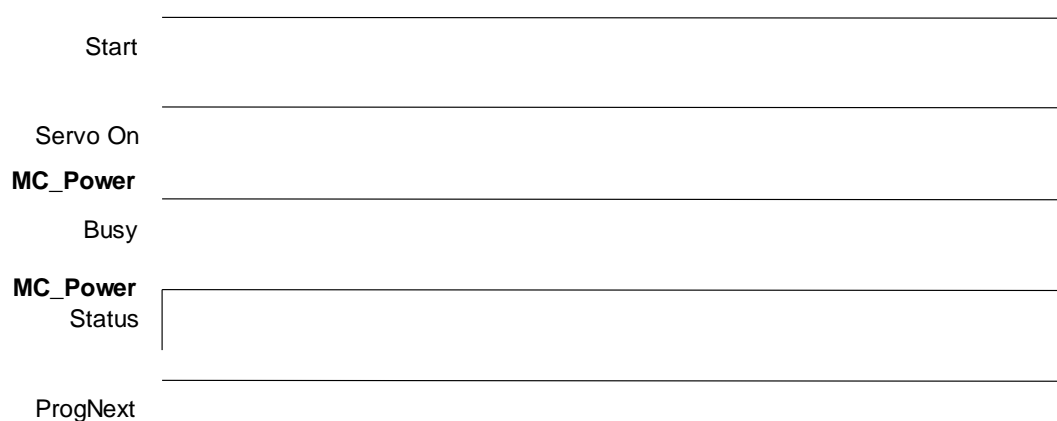
7.8.2.3 Control on Instruction Errors

If an error occurs while executing instruction MC_Power (Servo On), no further action will be taken, while ProgNext indicates whether execution can be moved on. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

- **Main variables used in programming**

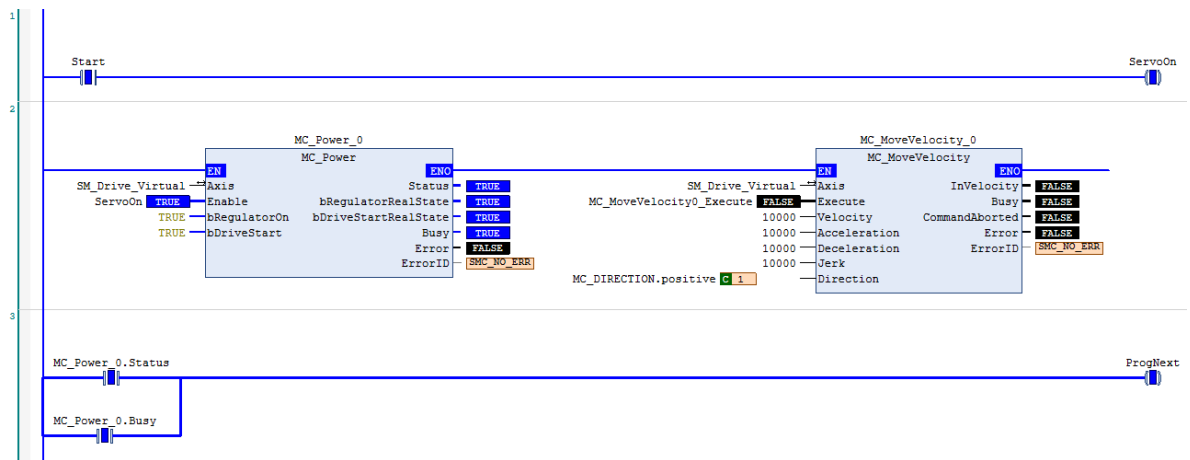
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
SM_Drive_Virtual	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Virtual axis variables
ServoOn	BOOL	FALSE	To enable MC_Power
ProgNext	BOOL	FALSE	ProgNext indicator shows whether to take further action
MC_Power_0.Status	BOOL	FALSE	Axis is ready to move when the status is True.
MC_Power_0.Busy	BOOL	FALSE	Execution of FB has not been completed when the status is True.

- **Timing Diagram**



● LD Language

Check if any errors have occurred in MC_Power before moving onto the next step.



● ST Language

IF Start THEN

ServoOn := TRUE;

ELSE

ServoOn := FALSE;

END_IF

IF (MC_Power_0.Status=TRUE) OR (MC_Power_0.Busy=TRUE) THEN

ProgNext := TRUE;

ELSE

ProgNext := FALSE;

END_IF

//MC_Power

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,

Enable:= ServoOn,

bRegulatorOn:= TRUE,

bDriveStart:= TRUE,

Status=> ,

bRegulatorRealState=> ,

bDriveStartRealState=> ,

Busy=> ,

Error=> ,

ErrorID=>);

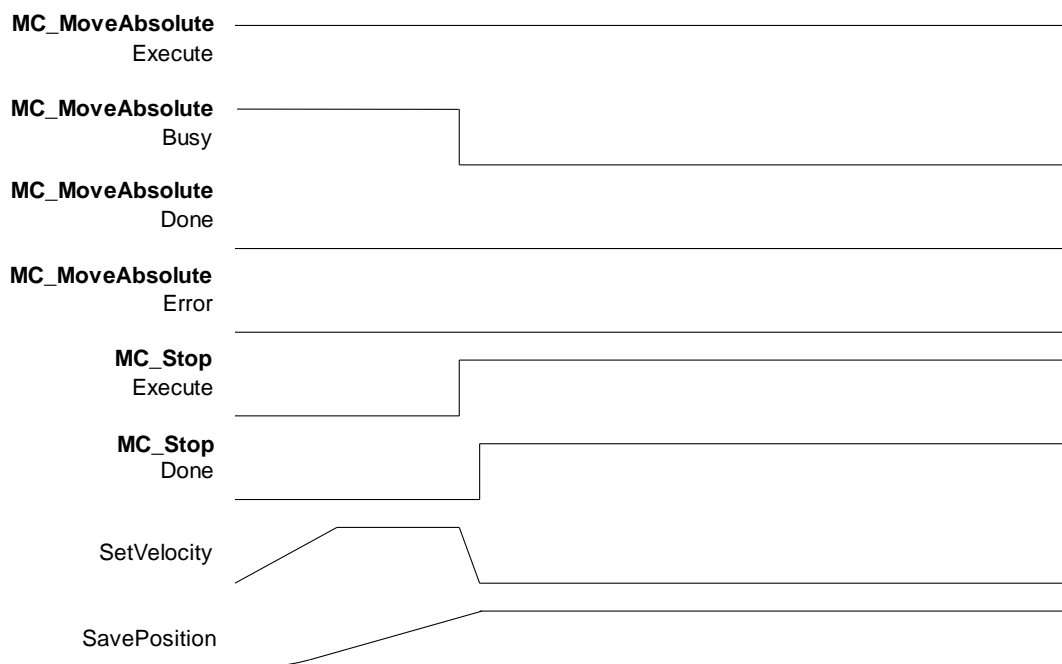
7.8.2.4 Quick Stop for Single Axes

MC_Stop can be used to stop the moving axis when an error occurs during execution of MC_MoveAbsolute instruction. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

- **Main variables used in programming**

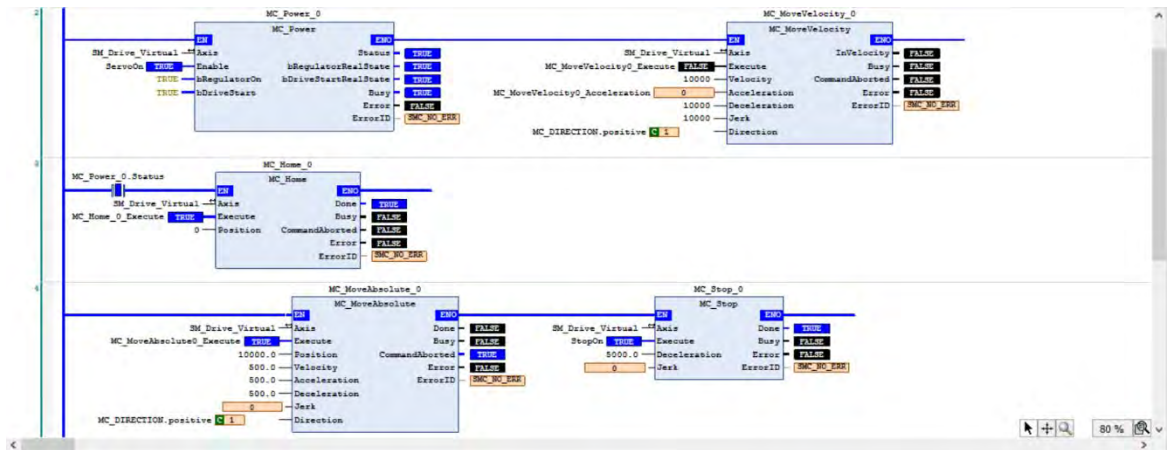
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
SM_Drive_Virtual	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Virtual axis variables
ServoOn	BOOL	FALSE	To enable MC_Power
MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	Execute input of MC_MoveAbsolute
MC_DIRECTION.positive	MC_Direction	-	Assigned moving direction-positive (valid for rotary axes)
StopOn	BOOL	FALSE	Activate MC_Stop when the status is True
MC_Stop_0.Done	BOOL	FALSE	Execution of MC_Stop is done when the status is True

- **Timing Diagram**



● LD Language

Execute homing under normal output status of MC_Power. Once homing is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute. At the same time, MC_Stop can be executed for a quick stop if needed, which would abort MC_MoveAbsolute with state True of CommandAborted output so as to command a deceleration stop for axis based on the setting of deceleration, then the Done output of MC_Stop shifts to True after the stop command completed.



● ST Language

The process is same as LD. After MC_Home is done, the state would be Standstill.

```
//MC_Power
MC_Power_0(
    Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
    Enable:= ServoOn,
    bRegulatorOn:= TRUE,
    bDriveStart:= TRUE,
    Status=> ,
    bRegulatorRealState=> ,
    bDriveStartRealState=> ,
    Busy=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );

//MC_Home
IF MC_Power_0.Status THEN
    MC_Home_0(
        Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,
        Execute:= MC_Home_0_Execute,
        Position:= 0,
        Done=> ,
        Busy=> ,
        CommandAborted=> ,
        Error=> ,
        ErrorID=> );
END_IF
```

If a quick stop is performed by MC_Stop during execution of MC_MoveAbsolute, MC_MoveAbsolute would be aborted and be in Stopping state.

//MC_MoveAbsolute & MC_Stop

```
MC_MoveAbsolute_0(  
    Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,  
    Execute:= MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute,  
    Position:= 10000.0,  
    Velocity:= 500.0,  
    Acceleration:= 500.0,  
    Deceleration:= 500.0,  
    Jerk:= ,  
    Direction:= MC_DIRECTION.positive,  
    Done=> ,  
    Busy=> ,  
    CommandAborted=> ,  
    Error=> ,  
    ErrorID=>);  
  
MC_Stop_0(  
    Axis:= SM_Drive_Virtual,  
    Execute:= StopOn,  
    Deceleration:= 5000.0,  
    Jerk:= ,  
    Done=> ,  
    Busy=> ,  
    Error=> ,  
    ErrorID=>);
```

7.8.2.5 Home Positioning

Use homing instruction in the the following example to let you understand how to perform the homing operation. Currently, a total of 36 homing modes (0~35) are supported and the OD is 6098(Homing method) /6099sub1(Speed during search for switch) /6099sub2(Speed during search for zero). For more details, please refer to Delta High Resolution AC Servo Drive ASDA-A2 Series User Manual.

For the following example, specify the parameters of OD as mentioned above after adding A2-E servo in EtherCAT Slave.

Choose mode 33 for Homing Method (Perform homing operation once meet the first Z pulse.)

Speed during search for switch =1000 (Unit: 0.1rpm) (Search for limit switch at the speed of 100rpm.)

Speed during search for zero =100 (Unit: 0.1rpm) (Search for zero at the speed of 10rpm.)

After settings are completed, the homing method for executing MC_Home with LD/ ST language would be corresponding to the one specified as above.

General Setting

Homing Setting

Commissioning

SM_Drive_ETC_Delta_ASDA_A2:
IEC Objects

Status

Information

Homing Mode Mode 33

Homing speed during search for switch 1000 [0.1 rpm]

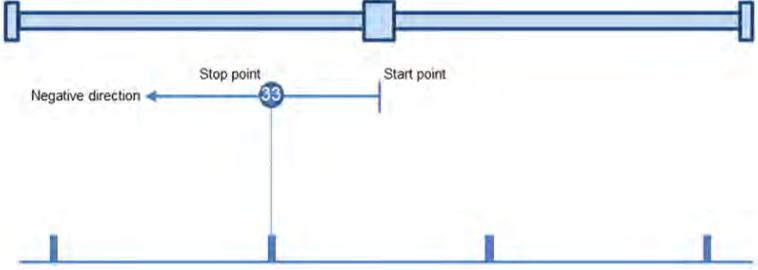
Homing speed during search for z phase pulse 100 [0.1 rpm]

Homing Acceleration 100 [ms]

Description

Mode 33 : Depending on Z pulse in the negative direction

In mode 33, The homing instruction is executed and the axis moves at the second-phase speed (Homing speed during search for Z phase pulse) in the negative direction. And the place where the axis stands is the home position once the first Z pulse is met.



● Main variables used in programming

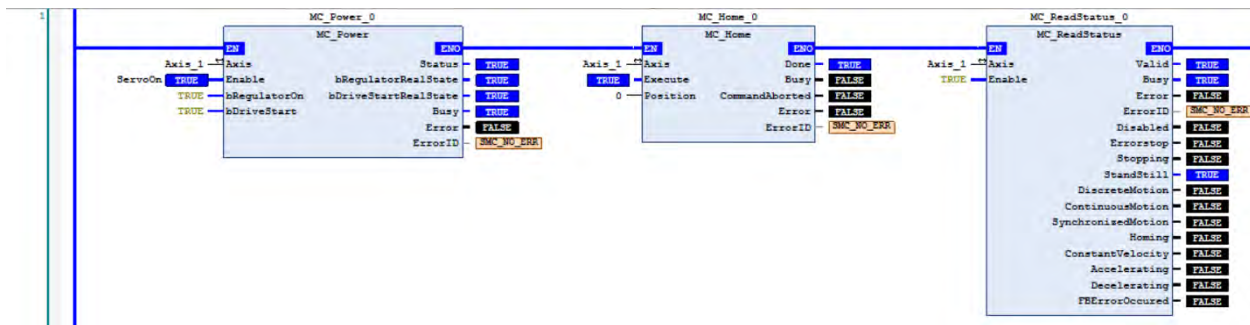
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_1	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Real axis variables
ServoOn	BOOL	FALSE	To enable MC_Power

● Timing diagram



- **LD language**

The state would be Standstill when the outputs of MC_Power are under normal status. Shift to state Homing when execute MC_Home, then back to Standstill after home positioning is completed.



- **ST language**

Process is same as LD. The state is Standstill after execution of MC_Home is completed, which the output status can be checked via variables and Watch tables.

```
MC_Home_0(
  Axis:= Axis_1,
  Execute:= ,
  Position:= 0,
  Done=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  CommandAborted=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> );
```

```
MC_ReadStatus_0(
  Axis:= Axis_1,
  Enable:= TRUE,
  Valid=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> ,
  Disabled=> ,
  Errorstop=> ,
  Stopping=> ,
  StandStill=> ,
  DiscreteMotion=> ,
  ContinuousMotion=> ,
  SynchronisedMotion=> ,
  Homing=> ,
  ConstantVelocity=> ,
  Accelerating=> ,
  Decelerating=> ,
  FBErrorOccured=>);
```

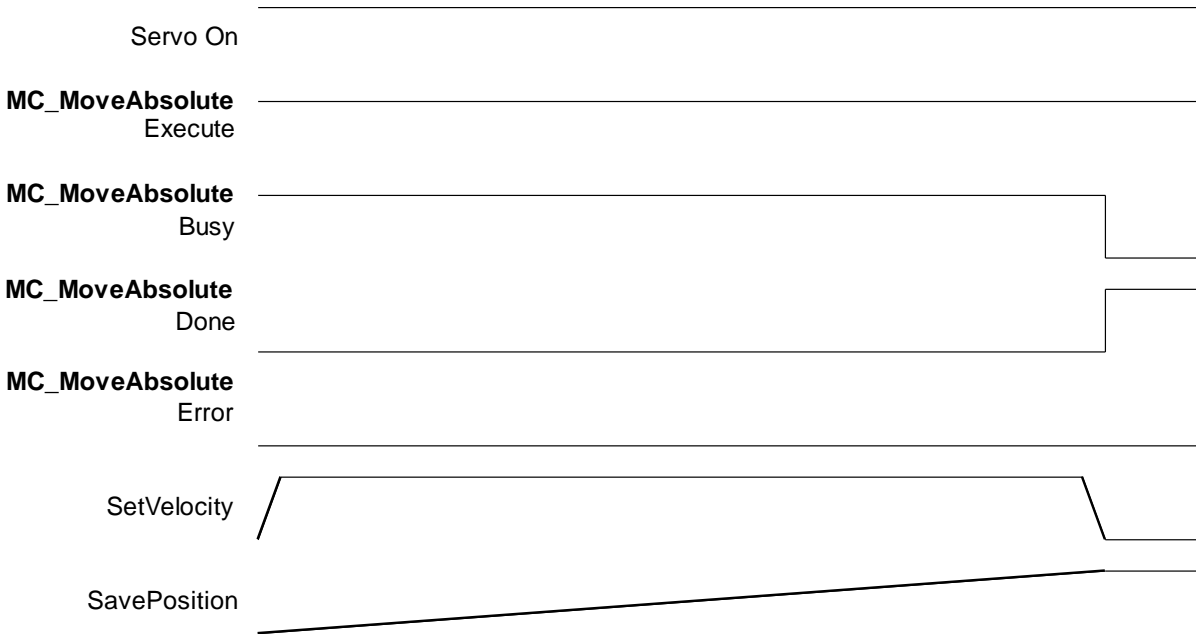
7.8.2.6 Absolute Positioning

Via MC_MoveAbsolute instruction used in the following example that you are able to understand how to perform displacement at one speed. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

● Main variables used in programming

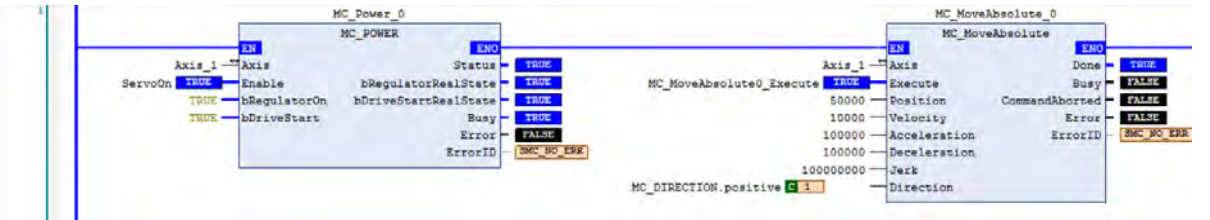
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_1	AXIS_REF_SM3	-	Real axis variables
ServoOn	BOOL	FALSE	To enable MC_Power
MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	Execute input of MC_MoveAbsolute
MC_DIRECTION.positive	MC_Direction	-	Assigned moving direction-positive (valid for rotary axes)

● Timing diagram



● LD language

Check if the outputs of MC_Power is under normal status, then execute MC_MoveAbsolute to move from the start position 0 to the assigned position 50000.



- **ST language**

```

MC_Home_0(
    Axis:= Axis_1,
    Execute:= ,
    Position:= 0,
    Done=> ,
    Busy=> ,
    CommandAborted=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );

MC_MoveAbsolute_0(
    Axis:= Axis_1,
    Execute:= MC_MoveAbsolute0_Execute,
    Position:= 50000,
    Velocity:= 10000,
    Acceleration:= 100000,
    Deceleration:= 100000,
    Jerk:= 100000,
    Direction:= SM3_Basic.MC_DIRECTION.positive,
    Done=> ,
    Busy=> ,
    CommandAborted=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );

```

7.8.2.7 Switch CAM Table during CAM Operation

The following example illustrates that CAM table can be switched while executing MC_CamIn.

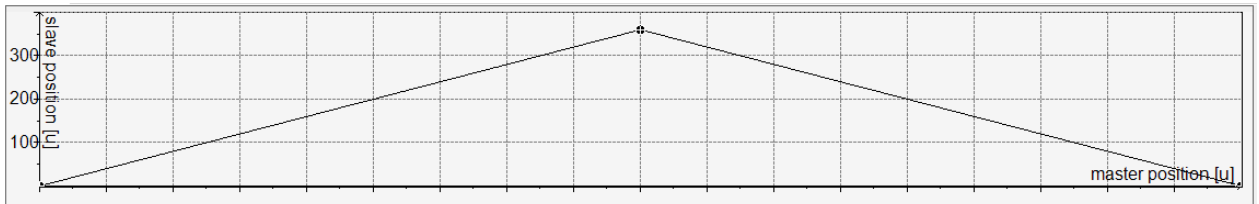
Perform switching between two CAM tables configured with different output parameters by adding master and slave axes as well as using two MC_CamIn instructions. Use CamTable 1 when the instruction position of master axis is below 3000. Once the position is over 3000, it will switch to CamTable 2.

- Main variables used in programming

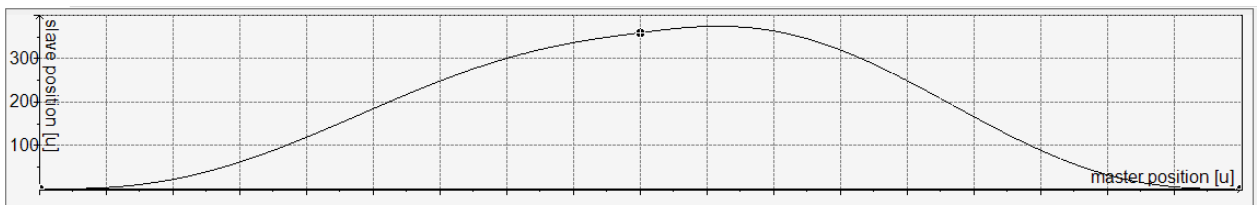
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_Master	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Master-related axis variables
Axis_Slave	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Slave-related axis variables
CamTable1	MC_CAM_REF	-	Relating variables for Cam table1
CamTable2	MC_CAM_REF	-	Relating variables for Cam table2
StartFlag	BOOL	FALSE	If this variable is TRUE and the communication with axes is normal, Servo ON will be activated and continue on further actions.
MC_Power0_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for master, TRUE when Servo On
MC_Power1_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for slave, TRUE when Servo On

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
MC_Home0_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for master, TRUE when homing completed.
MC_Home1_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for slave, TRUE when homing completed.
MC_MoveAbs_Busy	BOOL	FALSE	Output Bust variables of MC_MoveAbsolute for master, TRUE when the FB is executed.
CamTableSelect	MC_CAM_REF	-	Specify the corresponding Cam table.
CamTable1_En	BOOL	FALSE	TRUE when CamTable1 is chosen to be used.
CamTable2_En	BOOL	FALSE	TRUE when CamTable2 is chosen to be used.
CamTableID	MC_CAM_ID	-	The internal data structure of the selectedCam table, which is from MC_CamTableSelect and used as input of MC_CamIn.
MC_CamIn1_InSync	BOOL	FALSE	Output InSync variables of CamTable1, TRUE when master and slave axis are synchronized with cam.
MC_CamIn2_InSync	BOOL	FALSE	Output InSync variables of CamTable2, TRUE when master and slave axis are synchronized with cam.

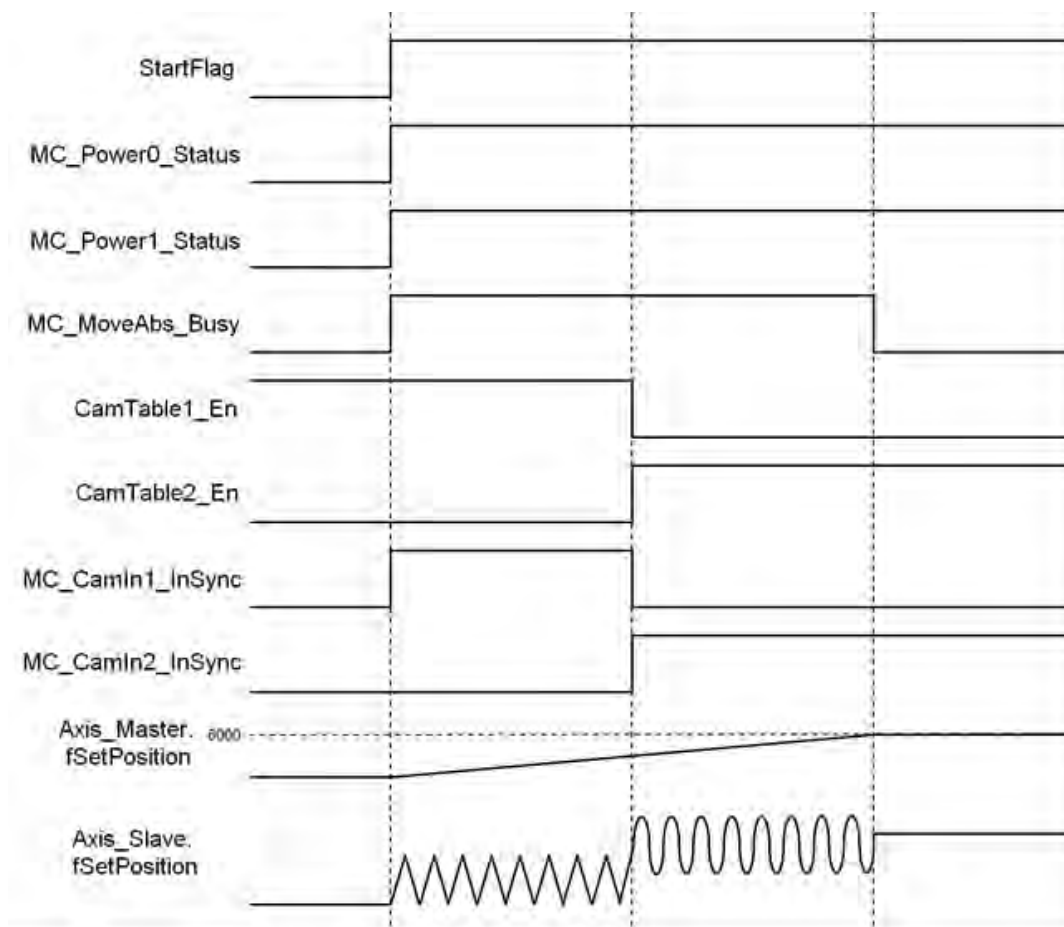
CamTable1 :



CamTable2 :

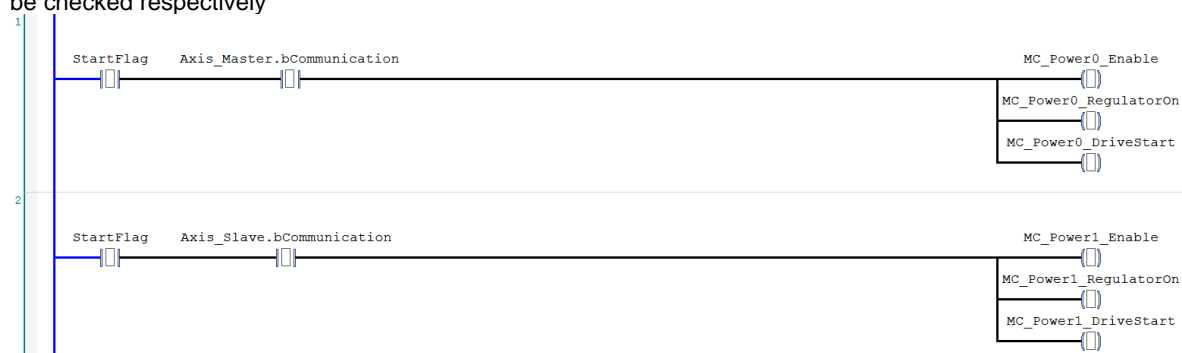


- **Timing diagram**

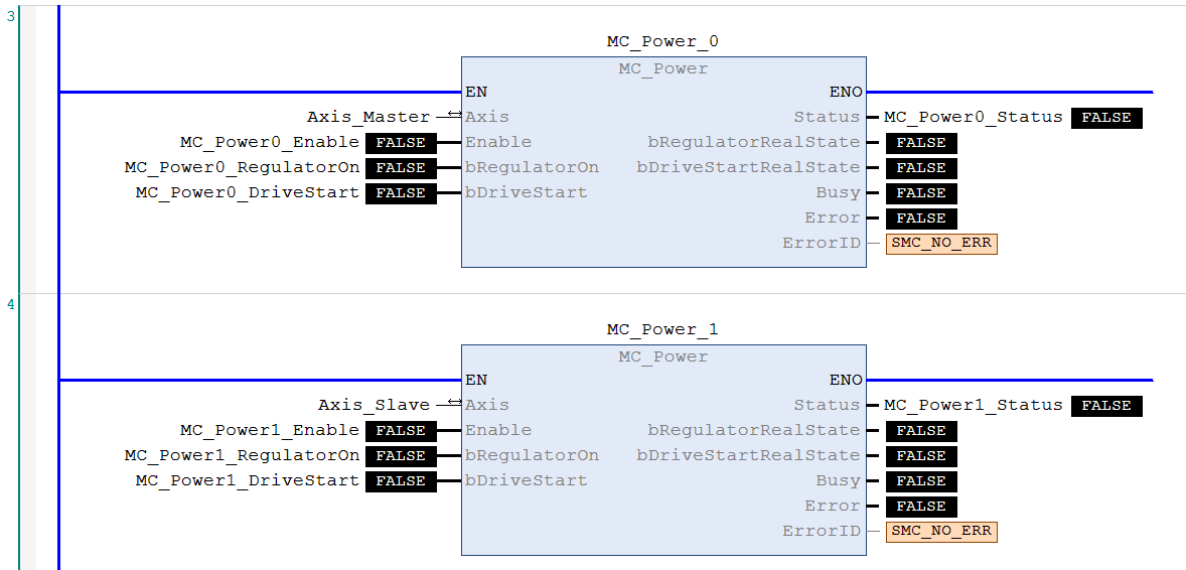


- **LD language**

Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communications for both master and slave axis would be checked respectively



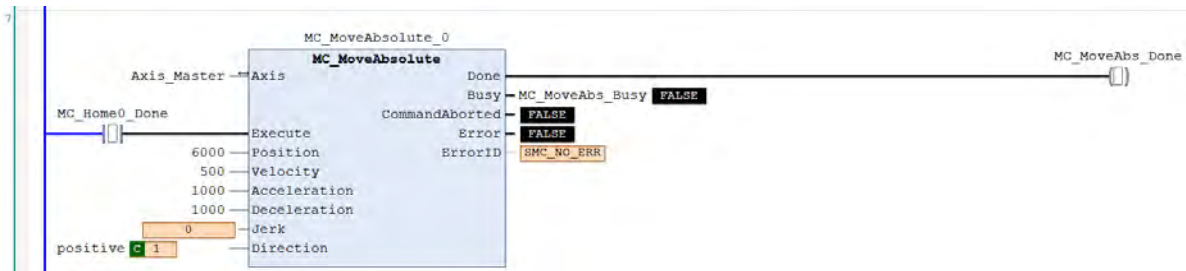
Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.



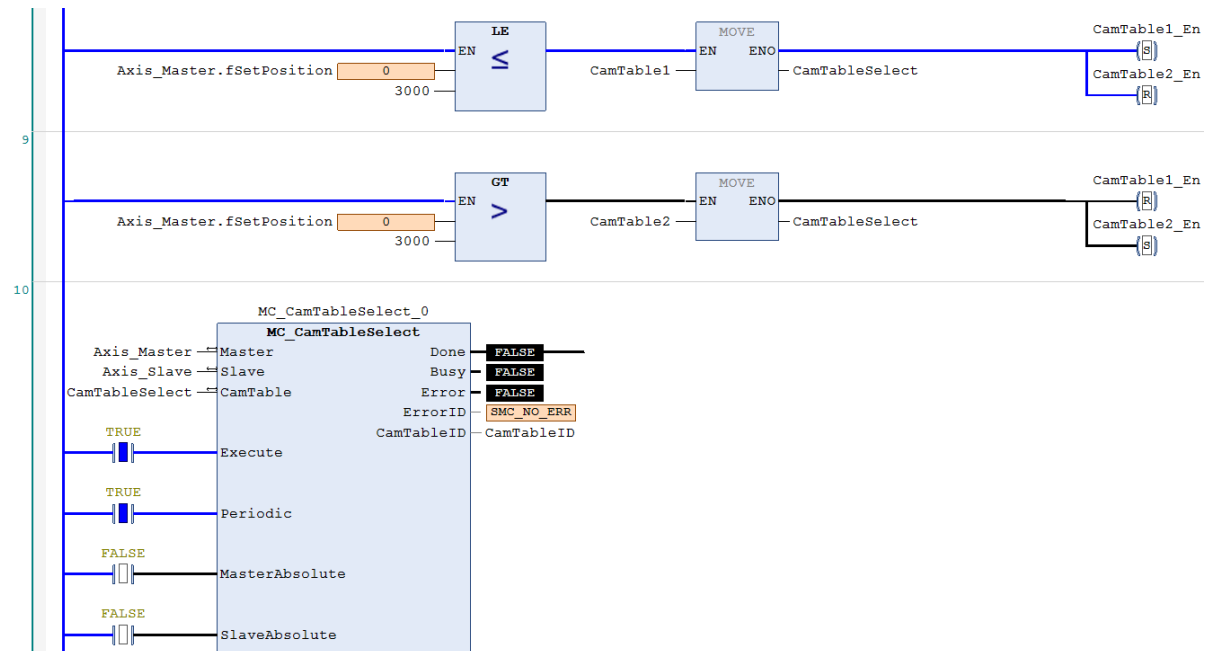
Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning will be operated first.



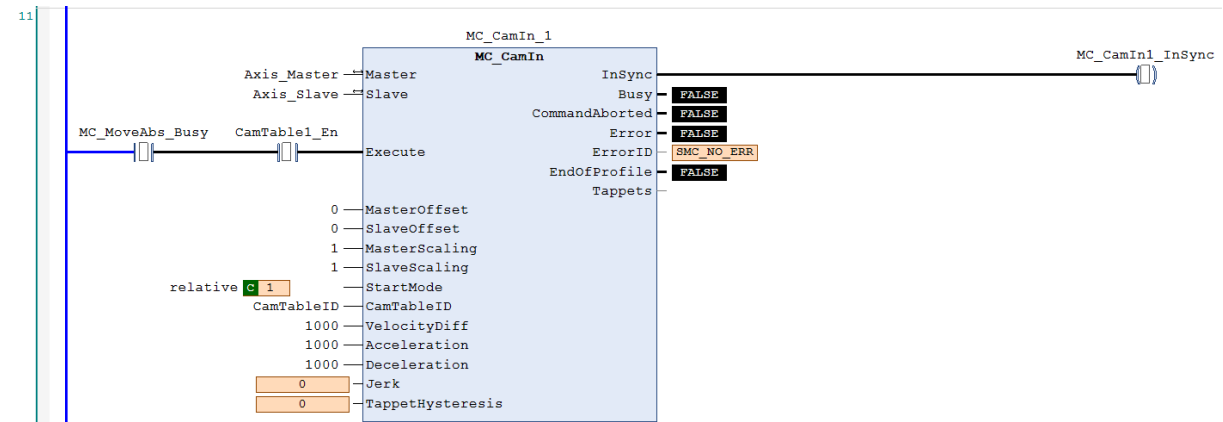
After the homing operation of master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute instruction.



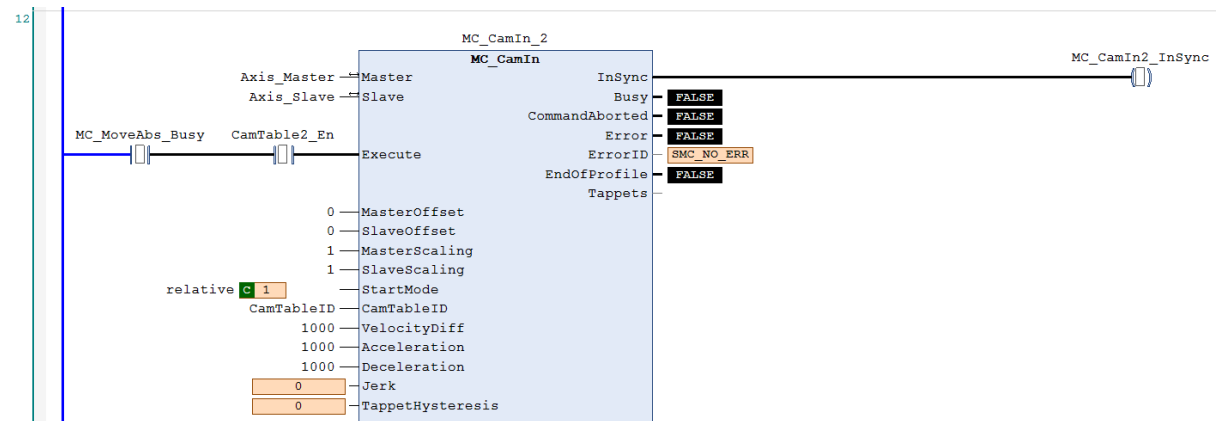
When the instruction position of master axis is below 3000, use CamTable1 (CamTable1_En=True, CamTable2_En=False). Conversely, when position is over 3000, use CamTable2 (CamTable1_En=False, CamTable2_En=True). Under both conditions, set the corresponding Cam table with MC_CamTableSelect instruction.



When absolute positioning is operated for master axis and CamTable1_En is True, execute with CamTable1.



When absolute positioning is operated for master axis and CamTable2_En is True, execute with CamTable2.



● ST language

// Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communications for both master and slave axis would be //checked respectively

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
  IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
    MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;
  END_IF

  IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
    MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;
    MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
    MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;
  END_IF
END_IF
```

//Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.

```
MC_Power_0(
  Axis:= Axis_Master,
  Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable,
  bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn,
  bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart,
  Status=> MC_Power0_Status,
  bRegulatorRealState=> ,
  bDriveStartRealState=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> );
```

```
MC_Power_1(
  Axis:= Axis_Slave,
  Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable,
  bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn,
  bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart,
  Status=> MC_Power1_Status,
  bRegulatorRealState=> ,
  bDriveStartRealState=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> );
```

// Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning will be operated first.

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN
  MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN
  MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
MC_Home_0(
  Axis:= Axis_Master,
```

```
Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute,  
Position:= 0,  
Done=> MC_Home0_Done,  
Busy=> ,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=>);
```

```
MC_Home_1(  
Axis:= Axis_Slave,  
Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute,  
Position:= 0,  
Done=> MC_Home1_Done,  
Busy=> ,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

// After the homing operation of master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveAbsolute instruction.

```
//MC_MoveAbsolute(  
Axis:= Axis_Master,  
Execute:= MC_Home1_Done,  
Position:= 6000,  
Velocity:= 500,  
Acceleration:= 1000,  
Deceleration:= 1000,  
Jerk:= ,  
Direction:= positive,  
Done=> MC_MoveAbs_Done,  
Busy=> MC_MoveAbs_Busy,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

// When the instruction position of master axis is below 3000, use CamTable1 (CamTable1_En=True,
//CamTable2_En=False).

//When position is over 3000, use CamTable2 (CamTable1_En=False, CamTable2_En=True).

//Under both conditions, set the corresponding Cam table with MC_CamTableSelect instruction.

```
IF Axis_Master.fSetPosition > 3000 THEN  
    CamTableSelect := CamTable2;  
    CamTable1_En := FALSE;  
    CamTable2_En := TRUE;  
ELSE  
    CamTableSelect := CamTable1;  
    CamTable1_En := TRUE;  
    CamTable2_En := FALSE;  
END_IF  
  
IF (CamTable1_En = TRUE) OR (CamTable2_En = TRUE) THEN  
    CamTable_En := TRUE;  
END_IF
```

```

MC_CamTableSelect(
    Master:= Axis_Master,
    Slave:= Axis_Slave,
    CamTable:= CamTableSelect,
    Execute:= CamTable_En,
    Periodic:= TRUE,
    MasterAbsolute:= FALSE,
    SlaveAbsolute:= FALSE,
    Done=> MC_CamTableSelect_Done,
    Busy=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> ,
    CamTableID=> CamTableID);

```

// When absolute positioning is operated for master axis and CamTable1_En is True, execute with //CamTable1.

```

IF (MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE) AND (CamTable1_En = TRUE) THEN

```

```

    MC_CamIn_1(
        Master:= Axis_Master,
        Slave:= Axis_Slave,
        Execute:= TRUE,
        MasterOffset:= 0,
        SlaveOffset:= 0,
        MasterScaling:= 1,
        SlaveScaling:= 1,
        StartMode:= relative,
        CamTableID:= CamTableID,
        VelocityDiff:= 1000,
        Acceleration:= 1000,
        Deceleration:= 1000,
        Jerk:= ,
        TappetHysteresis:= ,
        InSync=> MC_CamIn1_Insync,
        Busy=> ,
        CommandAborted=> ,
        Error=> ,
        ErrorID=> ,
        EndOfProfile=> ,
        Tappets=> );
END_IF

```

// When absolute positioning is operated for master axis and CamTable2_En is True, execute with //CamTable2

```

IF (MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE) AND (CamTable2_En = TRUE) THEN

```

```

    MC_CamIn_2(
        Master:= Axis_Master,
        Slave:= Axis_Slave,
        Execute:= TRUE,
        MasterOffset:= 0,
        SlaveOffset:= 0,
        MasterScaling:= 1,
        SlaveScaling:= 1,
        StartMode:= relative,
        CamTableID:= CamTableID,
        VelocityDiff:= 1000,
        Acceleration:= 1000,

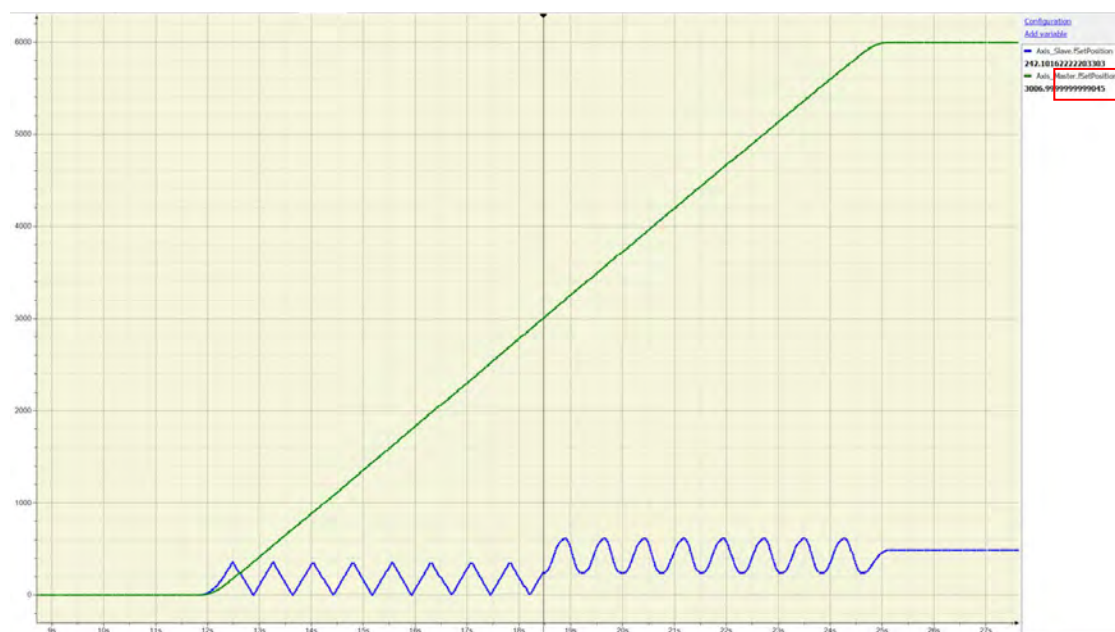
```

```

Deceleration:= 1000,
Jerk:= ,
TappetHysteresis:= ,
InSync=> MC_CamIn2_Insync,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> ,
EndOfProfile=> ,
Tappets=> );
END_IF

```

Based on the above settings to perform switching Cam tables. Switch the table when the position of master axis is over 3000.



7.8.2.8 Perform Master PhaseOffset for CAM

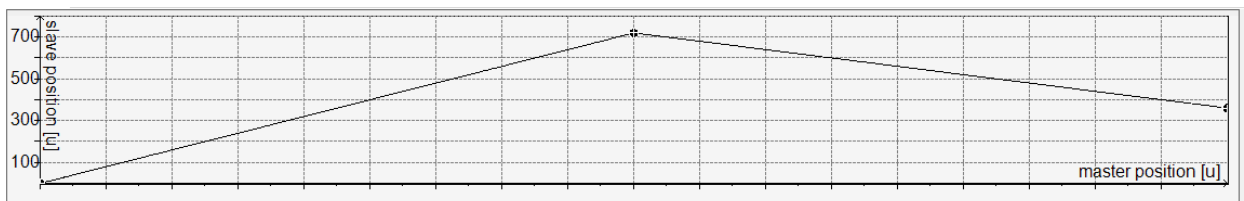
After the motion of slave axis being aborted during original CAM operation, it starts to synchronize with the controlled master axis. Phase offset of the master axis is operated by executing MC_Phasing when PhasingActive is TRUE. and the slave axis synchronizes with the phase after offset completed. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

● Main variables used in programming

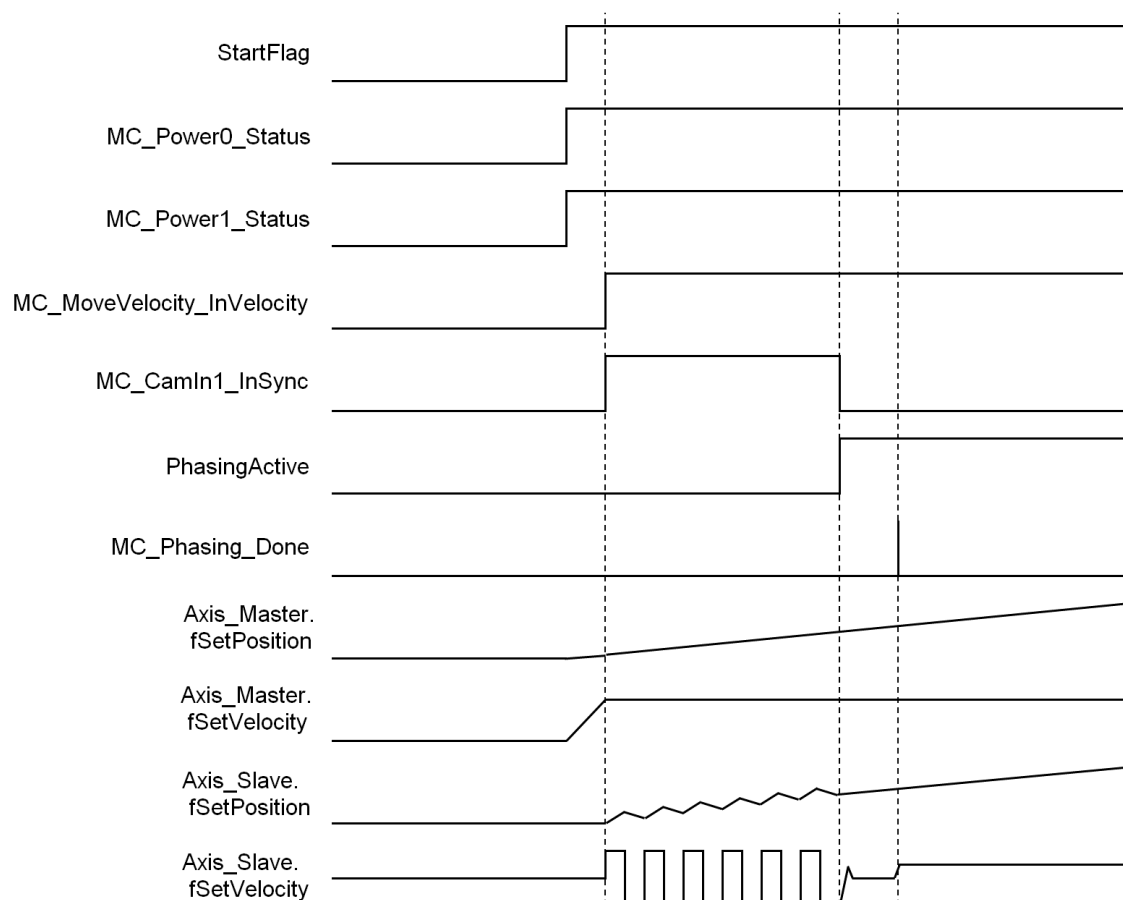
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_Master	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Master-related axis variables.
Axis_Slave	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Slave-related axis variables.
CamTable	MC_CAM_REF	-	Variables relating to Cam table.
StartFlag	BOOL	FALSE	If this variable is TRUE and the communication with axes is normal, Servo ON will be activated and continue on further actions.

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
MC_Power0_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for master, TRUE when Servo On.
MC_Power1_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for slave, TRUE when Servo On.
MC_Home0_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for master, TRUE when homing completed.
MC_Home1_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for slave, TRUE when homing completed.
MC_MoveVelocity_Velocity	LREAL	500	The target velocity for master axis to move in constant velocity motion.
MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity	BOOL	FALSE	The InVelocity output variables of MC_MoveVelocity, TRUE when the target velocity is reached.
CamTableID	MC_CAM_ID	-	The internal data structure of the selectedCam table, which is from MC_CamTableSelect and used as input of MC_CamIn.
MC_CamIn1_InSync	BOOL	FALSE	Output InSync variables of CamTable1, TRUE when master and slave axis are synchronized with cam.
PhasingActive	BOOL	FALSE	If the variable is TRUE and Cam is InSync, MC_Phasing will starts to be executed.
MC_Phasing_PhaseShift	LREAL	500	Specify the phaseshift values for the master and slave axis.
MC_Phasing_Velocity	LREAL	300	Specify the relative velocity for phasing operating between the master and slave axis.
MC_Phasing_Done	BOOL	FALSE	The Done output variables of MC_Phasing. TRUE when phase offset is completed.

CamTable :



● **Timing diagram**

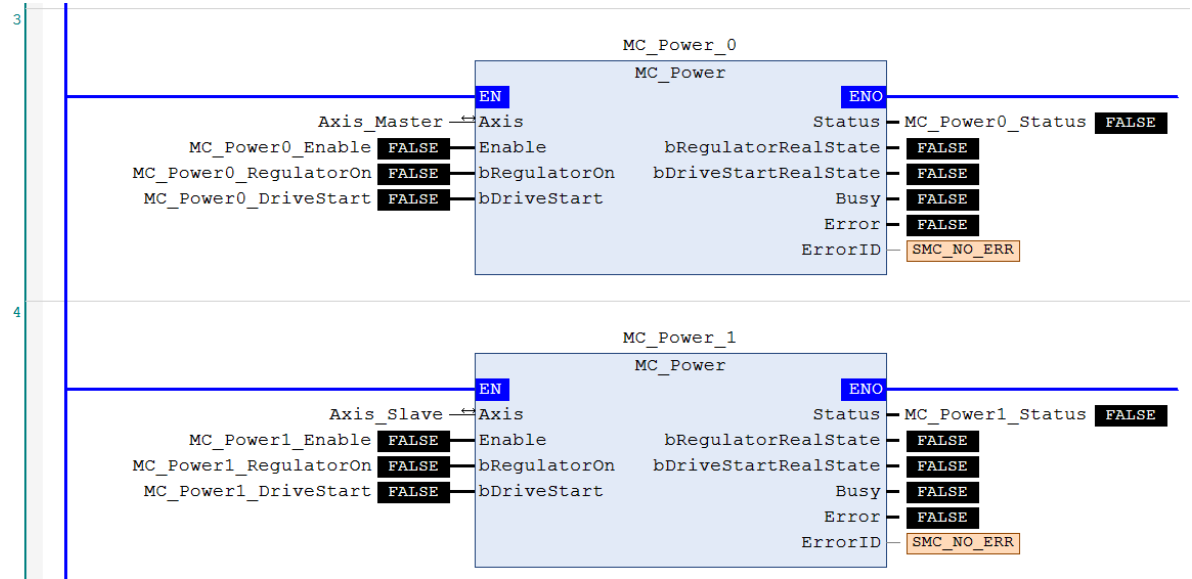


● **LD language**

Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communications for both master and slave axis would be checked respectively.



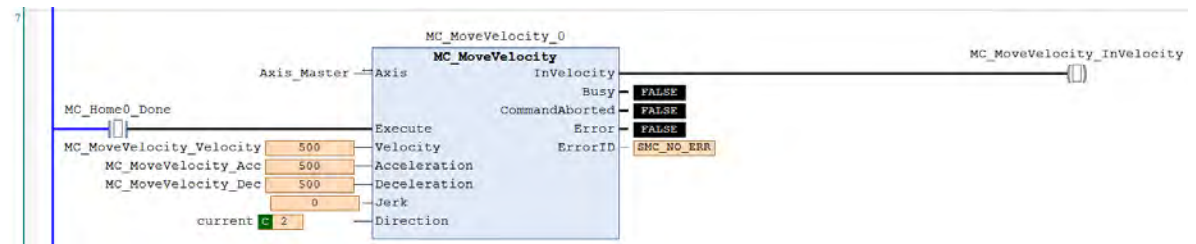
Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.



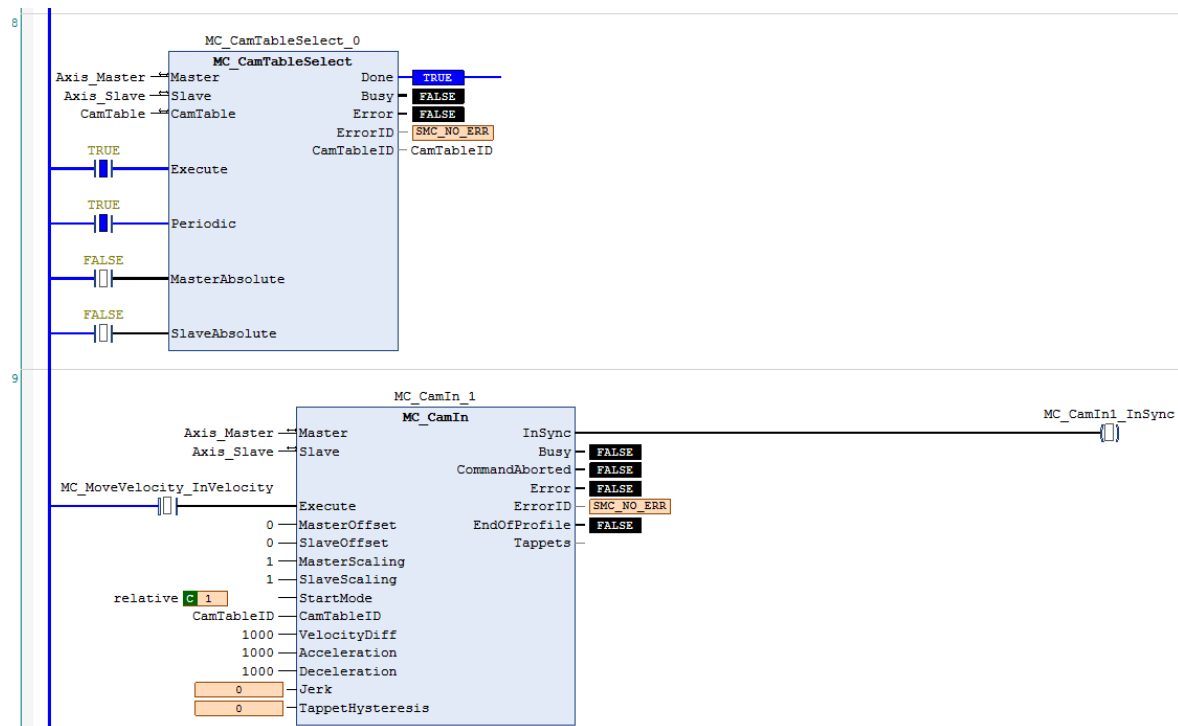
Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning will be operated first.



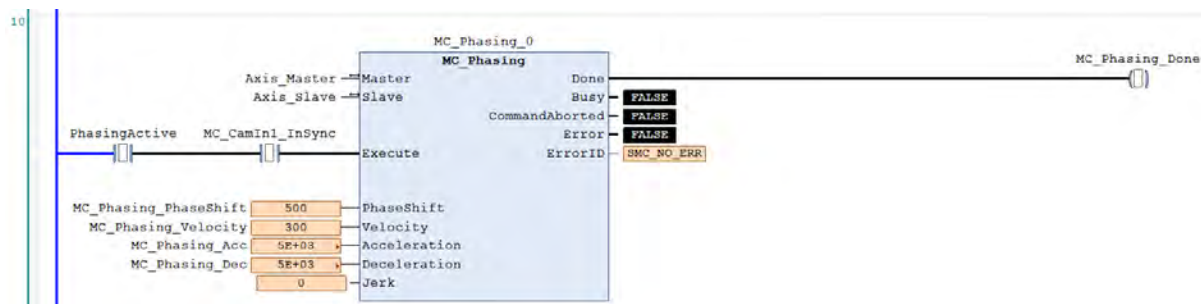
After the homing operation of master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveVelocity.



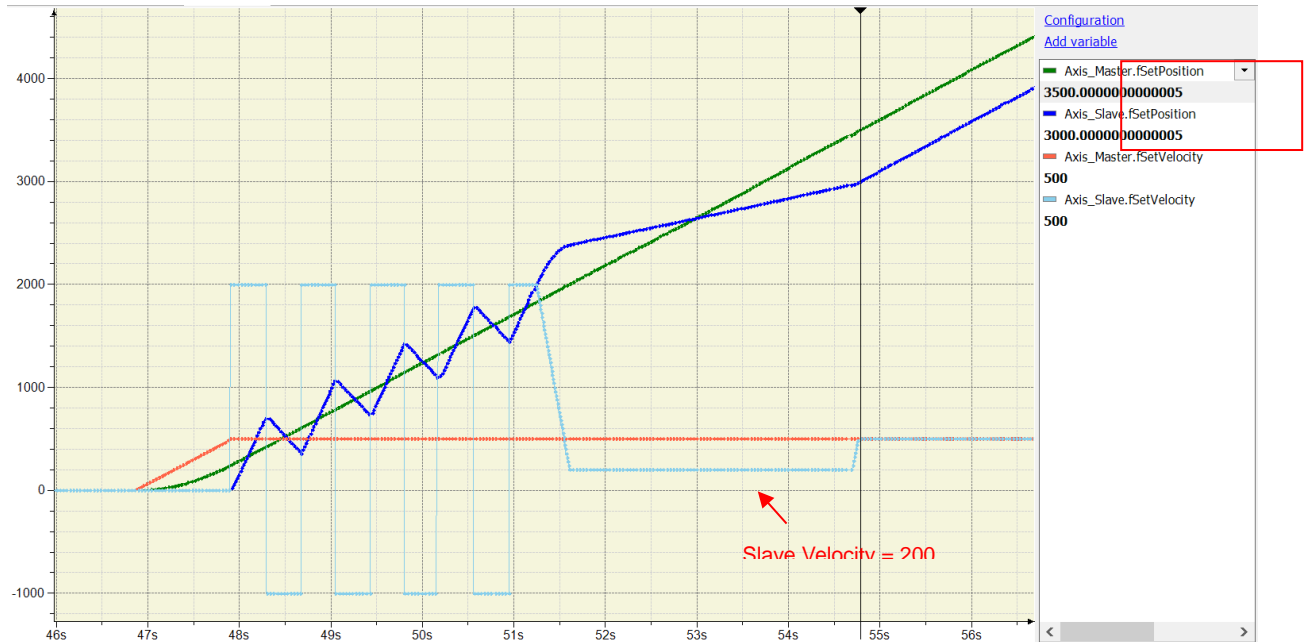
After the master axis reaches the target velocity, execute MC_CamIn with the Cam table specified by MC_CamTableSelect.



If PhasingActive is TRUE and the slave axis is in synchronized with the master axis based on the setting of MC_Phasing, master and slave axis start performing phase offset, which breaks the original master-slave relationship in Cam.



According to above setting to perform phase offset of the master axis, the slave axis synchronizes with the phase after offset completed and the PhaseShift would be fixed, which the PhaseShift between master and slave would be 500, taking the cursor timing 3500-3000 as example, and the velocity of slave axis would be 200 while performing phase offset (velocity of master axis 500 minus velocity 300).



● ST language

//Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communication for both master and slave axis
//would be checked respectively.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
  IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
    MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;
  END_IF

  IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
    MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;
    MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
    MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;
  END_IF
END_IF
```

//Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.

```
MC_Power_0(
  Axis:= Axis_Master,
  Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable,
  bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn,
  bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart,
  Status=> MC_Power0_Status,
  bRegulatorRealState=> ,
```

```
bDriveStartRealState=> ,  
Busy=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

```
MC_Power_1(  
Axis:= Axis_Slave,  
Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable,  
bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn,  
bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart,  
Status=> MC_Power1_Status,  
bRegulatorRealState=> ,  
bDriveStartRealState=> ,  
Busy=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

//Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning will be operated first

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN  
MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;  
END_IF
```

```
IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN  
MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;  
END_IF
```

```
MC_Home_0(  
Axis:= Axis_Master,  
Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute,  
Position:= 0,  
Done=> MC_Home0_Done,  
Busy=> ,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

```
MC_Home_1(  
Axis:= Axis_Slave,  
Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute,  
Position:= 0,  
Done=> MC_Home1_Done,  
Busy=> ,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

//After the homing operation of master axis is completed, execute MC_MoveVelocity.

```
MC_MoveVelocity(  
Axis:= Axis_Master,  
Execute:= MC_Home0_Done,  
Velocity:= MC_MoveVelocity_Velocity,  
Acceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity_Acc,  
Deceleration:= MC_MoveVelocity_Dec,  
Jerk:= ,  
Direction:= current,
```

```

InVelocity=> MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );

```

// After the master axis reaches the target velocity, execute MC_CamIn with the Cam table specified by
//MC_CamTableSelect.

```

MC_CamTableSelect(
    Master:= Axis_Master,
    Slave:= Axis_Slave,
    CamTable:= CamTable,
    Execute:= TRUE,
    Periodic:= TRUE,
    MasterAbsolute:= FALSE,
    SlaveAbsolute:= FALSE,
    Done=> MC_CamTableSelect_Done,
    Busy=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> ,
    CamTableID=> CamTableID);

```

IF MC_MoveVelocity_InVelocity = TRUE THEN

```

    MC_CamIn_1(
        Master:= Axis_Master,
        Slave:= Axis_Slave,
        Execute:= TRUE,
        MasterOffset:= 0,
        SlaveOffset:= 0,
        MasterScaling:= 1,
        SlaveScaling:= 1,
        StartMode:= relative,
        CamTableID:= CamTableID,
        VelocityDiff:= 1000,
        Acceleration:= 1000,
        Deceleration:= 1000,
        Jerk:= ,
        TappetHysteresis:= ,
        InSync=> MC_CamIn1_Insync,
        Busy=> ,
        CommandAborted=> ,
        Error=> ,
        ErrorID=> ,
        EndOfProfile=> ,
        Tappets=> );

```

END_IF

//If PhasingActive is TRUE and the slave axis is in synchronized with the master axis based on the setting of
//MC_Phasing, master and slave axis start performing phase offset, which breaks the original master-slave
//relationship in Cam.

IF (PhasingActive = TRUE) AND (MC_CamIn1_Insync = TRUE) THEN

```

    MC_Phasing_Execute := TRUE;

```

END_IF

```

MC_Phasing(
  Master:= Axis_Master,
  Slave:= Axis_Slave,
  Execute:= MC_Phasing_Execute,
  PhaseShift:= MC_Phasing_PhaseShift,
  Velocity:= MC_Phasing_Velocity,
  Acceleration:= MC_Phasing_Acc,
  Deceleration:= MC_Phasing_Dec,
  Jerk:= ,
  Done=> MC_Phasing_Done,
  Busy=> ,
  CommandAborted=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> );

```

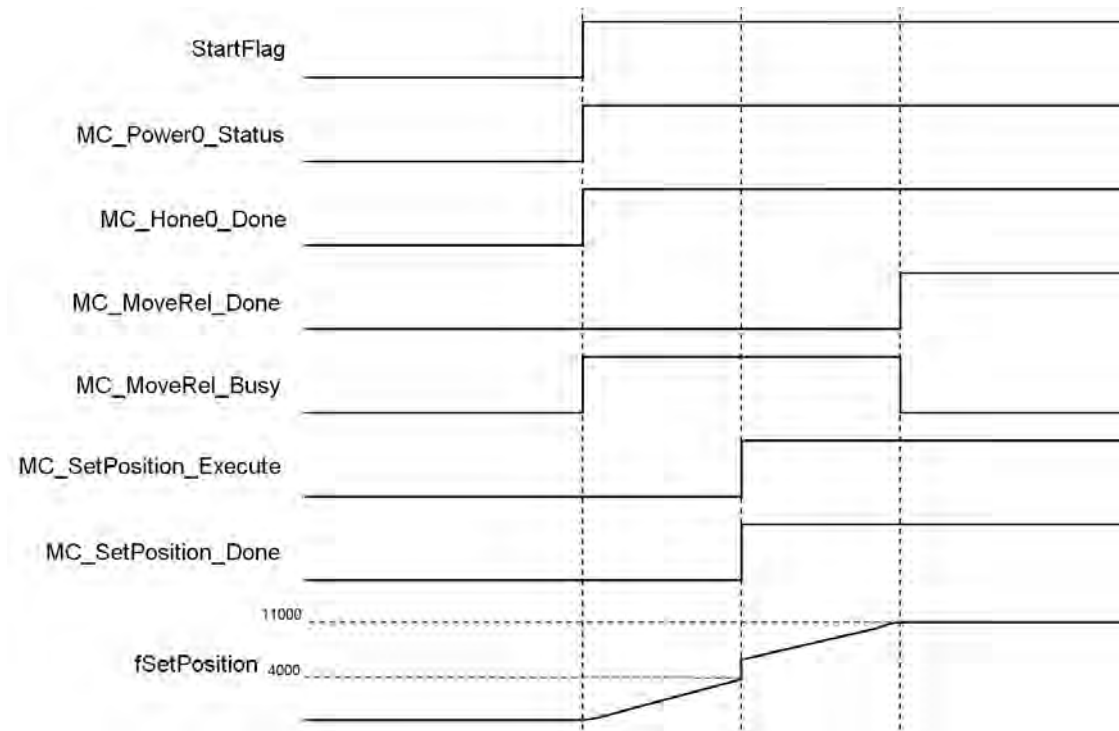
7.8.2.9 Change Current Position in Movement

Change the current position of axis to the target position in the coordinate system with the feedback of the current position. The interacting effects between MC_MoveRelative and MC_SetPosition are explained in the below example. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

- **Main variables used in programming**

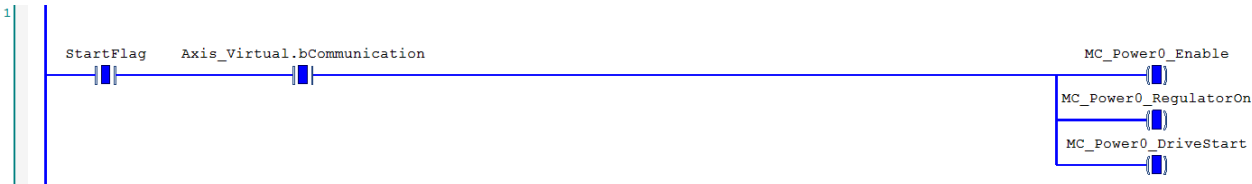
Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_Virtual	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Associate variables of axis.
StartFlag	BOOL	FALSE	If this variable is TRUE and the communication with axes is normal, Servo ON will be activated and continue on further actions.
MC_Power0_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for master, TRUE when Servo On.
MC_Home0_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for master, TRUE when homing completed.
MC_MoveRel_Distance	LREAL	8000	The target relative positions of MC_MoveRelative.
MC_MoveRel_Done	BOOL	FALSE	The output Done variables of MC_MoveRelative. TRUE when the relative positioning is completed.
MC_MoveRel_Busy	BOOL	FALSE	The output Busy variables of MC_MoveRelative. TRUE when the instruction is triggered and executed.
MC_SetPosition_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	If TRUE, MC_SetPosition starts to be executed.
MC_SetPosition_Position	LREAL	3000	The absolute position and relative distance changed by MC_SetPosition.
MC_SetPosition_Mode	BOOL	TRUE	MC_SetPosition is to set the axis position to be absolute position or relative position.
MC_SetPosition_Done	BOOL	FALSE	The output Done variables of MC_SetPosition. TRUE when the position is changed.

● Timing diagram

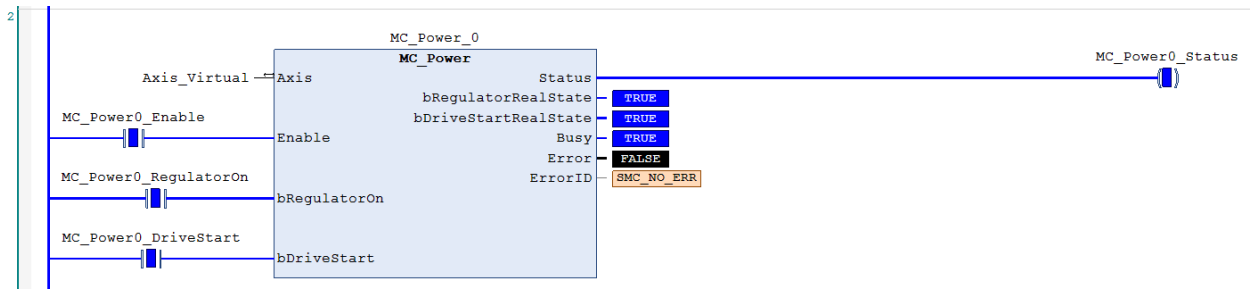


● LD language

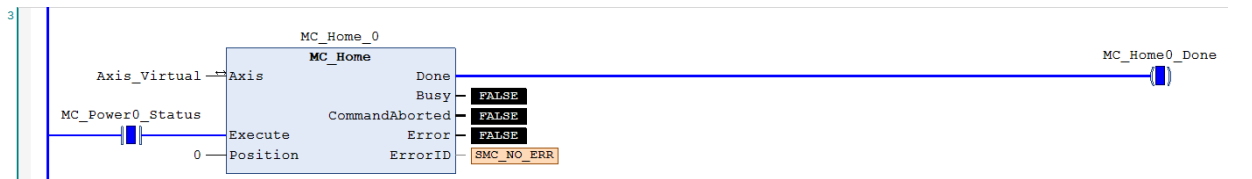
Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communication for axis would be checked.



Under normal condition, set the axis to be in state Servo On.

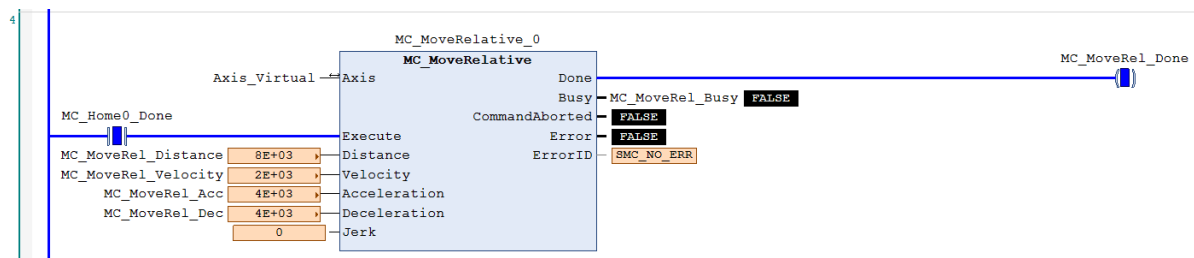


Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning operation will be required.

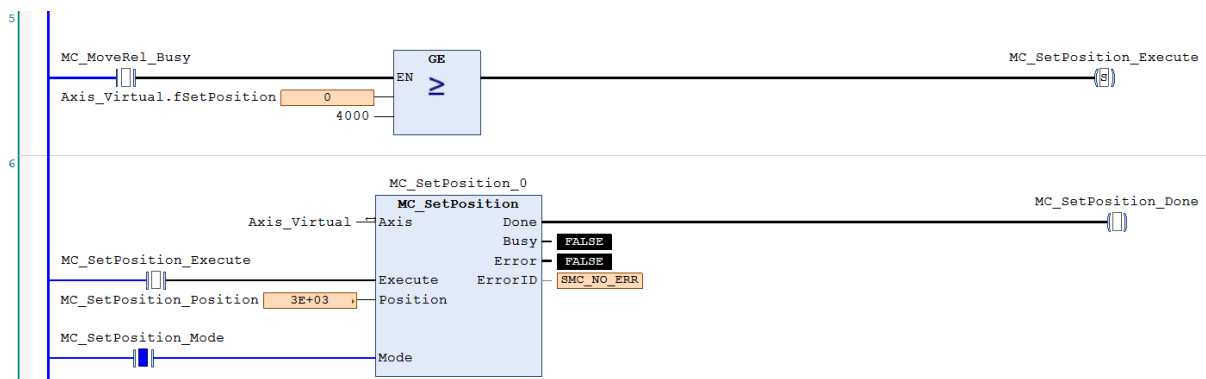


After the homing operation of axis is completed, execute MC_MoveRelative.

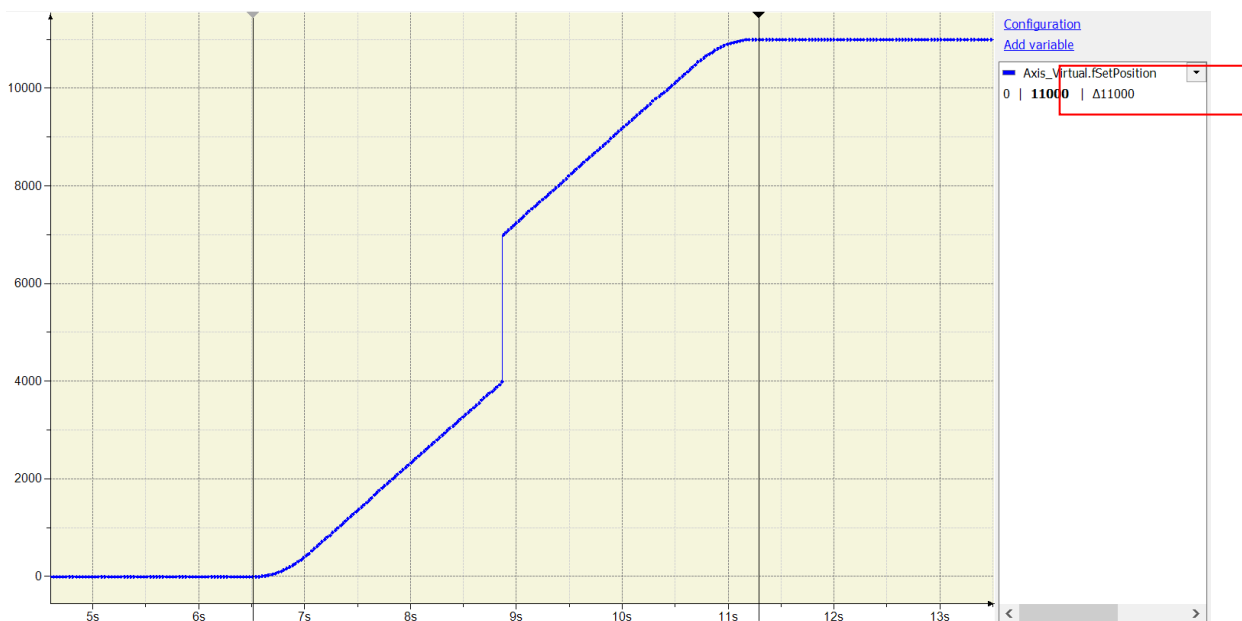
The target position of relative displacement = 8000



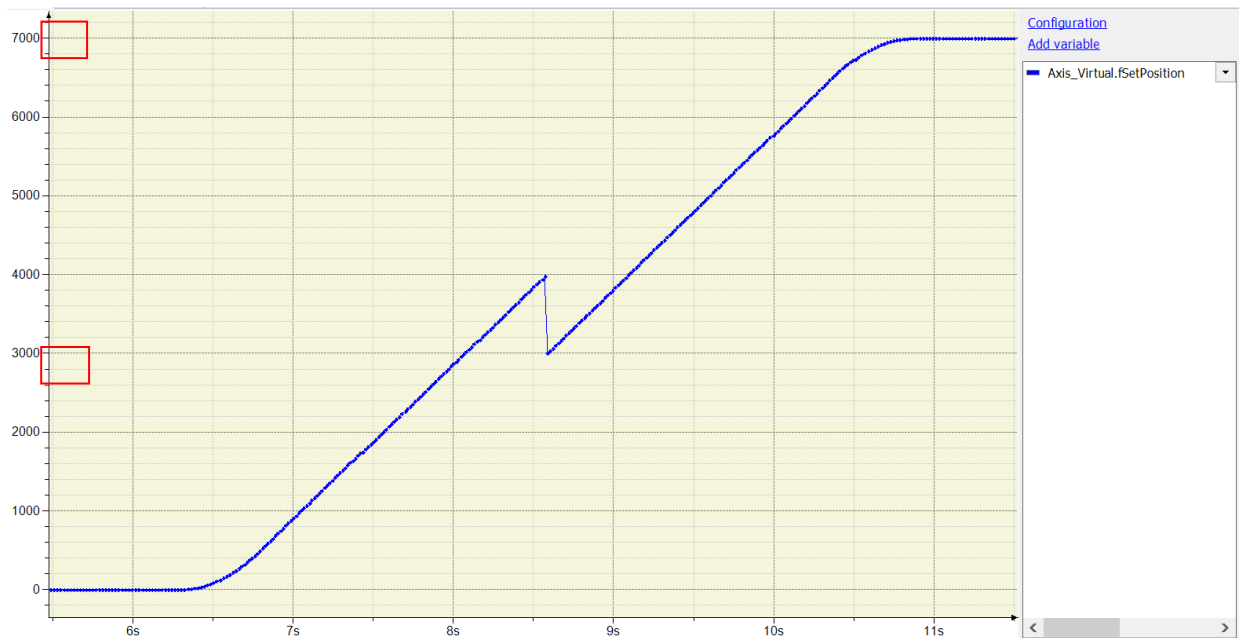
When the current position of axis passes 4000, execute MC_SetPosition (Mode = Relative · Distance = 3000) so as to change the current position to be the assigned target position.



Start a relative positioning procedure based on the current set position in coordinate system according to the above settings, which the position would finally reach 11000 ($11000 = 4000 + 3000 + (8000 - 4000)$) without influencing the displacement of motion body controlled by MC_MoveRelative. The displacement is 8000 ($8000 = (4000 - 0) + (11000 - 7000)$) same as the original setting.



The difference between the above and the picture below is that the mode of MC_SetPosition is changed to Absolute (Position = 3000). The actual position is set to the parameterized absolute target Position value, and the position would finally reach 7000 ($7000 = 3000 + (8000 - 4000)$) without influencing the displacement of motion body controlled by MC_MoveRelative. The displacement would be 8000 ($8000 = (4000 - 0) + (7000 - 3000)$) same as the original setting.



● ST language

Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communication for axis would be checked.

```
IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN
  IF Axis_Virtual.bCommunication = TRUE THEN
    MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;
    MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;
  END_IF
END_IF
```

// Under normal condition, set the axis to be in state Servo On.

```
MC_Power_0(
  Axis:= Axis_Virtual,
  Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable,
  bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn,
  bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart,
  Status=> MC_Power0_Status,
  bRegulatorRealState=> ,
  bDriveStartRealState=> ,
  Busy=> ,
  Error=> ,
  ErrorID=> );
```

//Under Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning operation will be required.

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN
    MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
MC_Home_0(
    Axis:= Axis_Virtual,
    Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute,
    Position:= 0,
    Done=> MC_Home0_Done,
    Busy=> ,
    CommandAborted=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );
```

//After the homing operation of axis is completed, execute MC_MoveRelative.

//The target position of relative displacement = 8000

```
MC_MoveRelative(
    Axis:= Axis_Virtual,
    Execute:= MC_Home0_Done,
    Distance:= MC_MoveRel_Distance,
    Velocity:= MC_MoveRel_Velocity,
    Acceleration:= MC_MoveRel_Acc,
    Deceleration:= MC_MoveRel_Dec,
    Jerk:= ,
    Done=> MC_MoveRel_Done,
    Busy=> MC_MoveRel_Busy,
    CommandAborted=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );
```

//When the current position of axis passes 4000, execute MC_SetPosition (Mode = Relative , Distance = 3000) so as to //change the current position to be the assigned target position.

```
IF (MC_MoveRel_Busy = TRUE) AND (Axis_Virtual.fSetPosition >= 4000) THEN
    MC_SetPosition_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF
```

```
MC_SetPosition(
    Axis:= Axis_Virtual,
    Execute:= MC_SetPosition_Execute,
    Position:= MC_SetPosition_Position,
    Mode:= MC_SetPosition_Mode,
    Done=> MC_SetPosition_Done,
    Busy=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );
```

7.8.2.10 Perform Superimposed during Gear Engagment

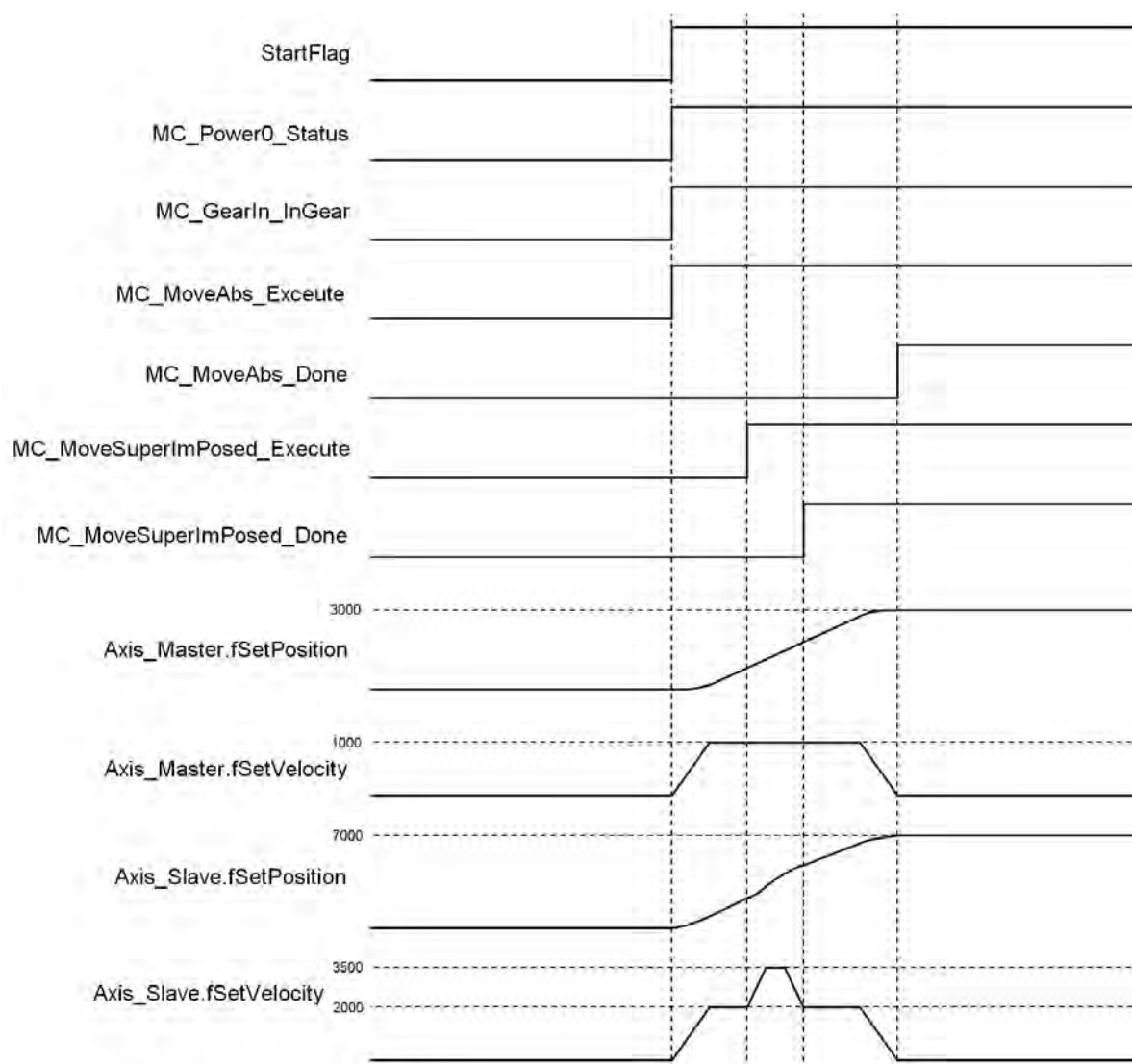
Perform MC_MoveSuperImposed on the particular slave axis while the gear has been engaged in the following example. The final position of slave axis would be the displacement of gear ratio relative to master axis and plus the specific distance superimposed in motion. The following example supports with LD and ST programming languages.

- **Main variables used in programming**

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
Axis_Master	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Master-related axis variables.
Axis_Slave	AXIS_REF_VIRTUAL_SM3	-	Slave-related axis variables.
StartFlag	BOOL	FALSE	If this variable is TRUE and the communication with axes is normal, Servo ON will be activated and continue on further actions.
MC_Power0_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for master, TRUE when Servo On.
MC_Power1_Status	BOOL	FALSE	Status output variables of MC_Power for slave, TRUE when Servo On.
MC_Home0_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for master, TRUE when homing operation completed.
MC_Home1_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Home for slave, TRUE when homing operation completed.
MC_GearIn_InGear	BOOL	FALSE	Output InGear variables of MC_GearIn. TRUE when the engage operation is completed.
MC_GearIn_RatioNumerator	DINT	2	Numerator of the gear ratio between master and slave axis.
MC_GearIn_RatioDenominator	UDINT	1	Denominator of the gear ratio between master and slave axis.
MC_MoveAbs_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	When the variable is TRUE, MC_MoveAbsolute is executed.
MC_MoveAbs_Position	LREAL	3000	Absolute target position of assigned master axis.
MC_MoveAbs_Velocity	LREAL	1000	Target velocity of assigned master axis.
MC_MoveAbs_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_MoveAbsolute for master, TRUE when absolute positioning completed.
MC_MoveAbs_Busy	BOOL	FALSE	Output Busy variables of MC_MoveAbsolute for master axis. TRUE when the instruction is executed.
MC_MoveSuperImposed_Execute	BOOL	FALSE	When the variable is TRUE, MC_MoveSuperImposed is executed.

Variable	Data Type	Default	Note
MC_MoveSuperImposed_Done	BOOL	FALSE	Output Done variables of MC_Move-SuperImposed for slave axis. TRUE when the superimposed movement is completed.
MC_MoveSuperImposed_Distance	LREAL	1000	Superimposed displacement of the assigned slave axis.
MC_MoveSuperImposed_VelocityDiff	LREAL	1500	Specify the relative velocity to the master axis while the superimposed movement operating on the slave axis.

● Timing diagram

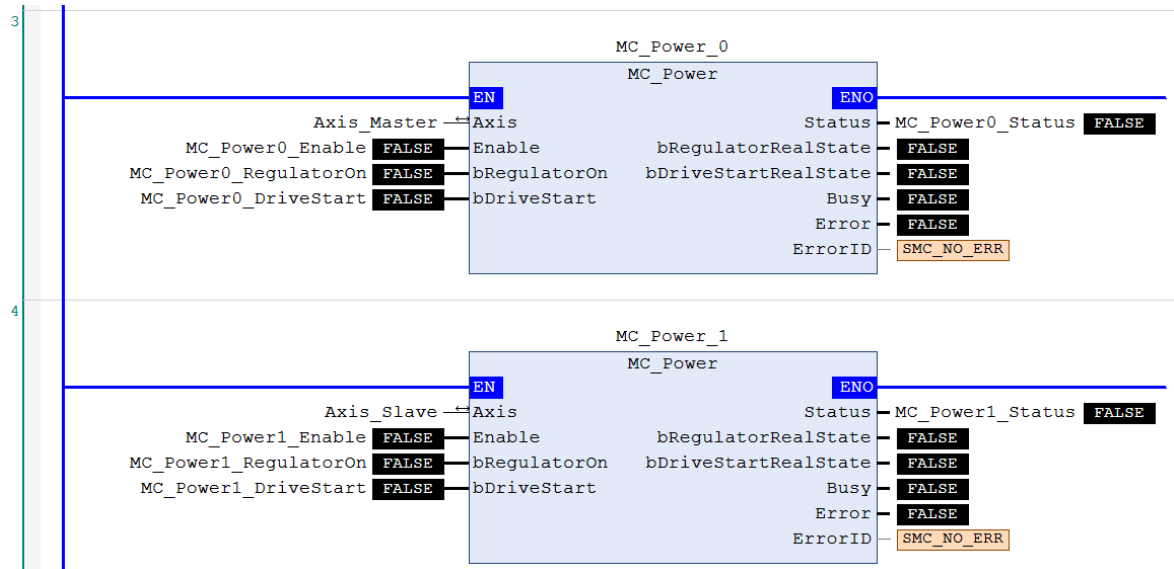


● LD language

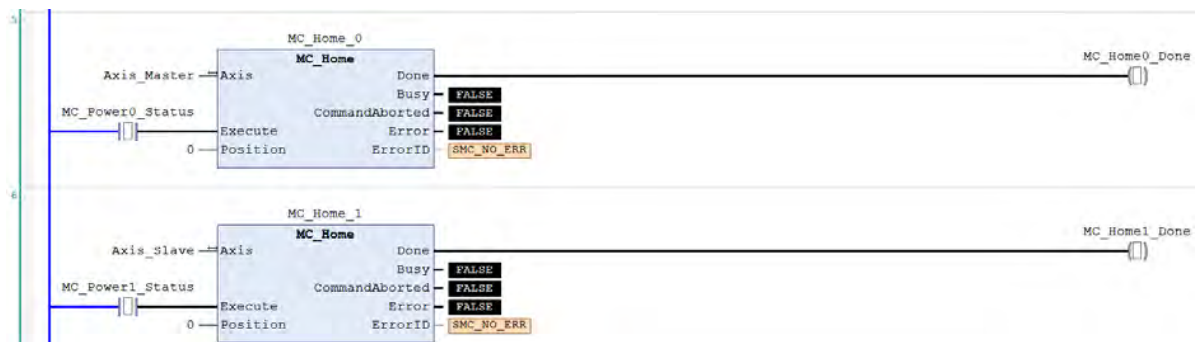
Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communications for both master and slave axis would be checked respectively.



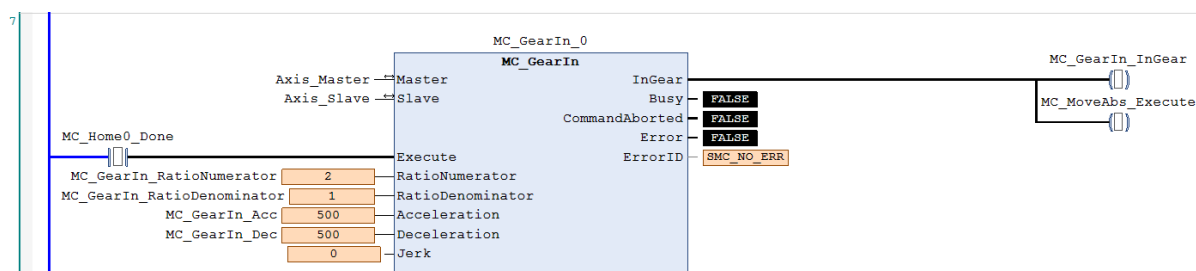
Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.



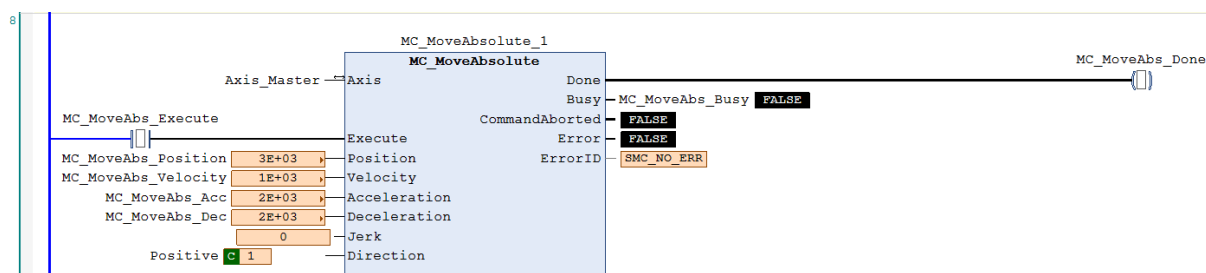
When the master and slave axis are in Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning operation will be required.



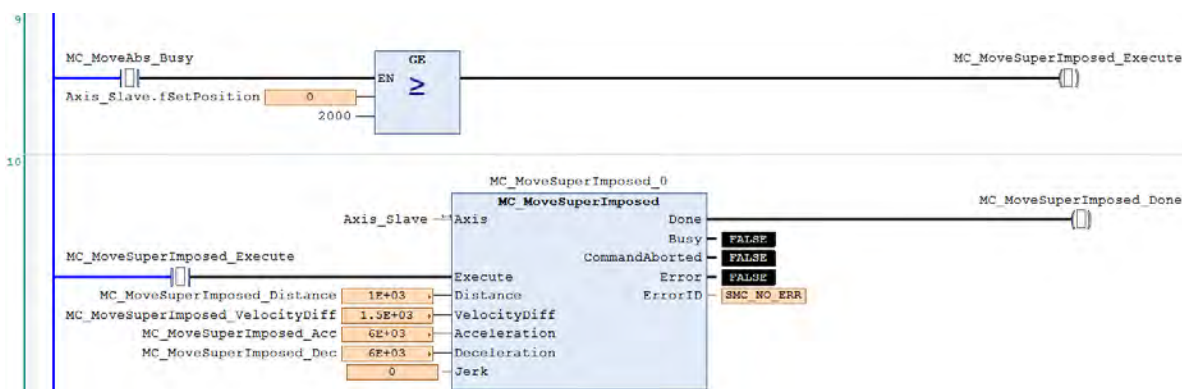
After the homing operation is completed, execute MC_GearIn to activate a master-slave coupling (gear coupling).



Right after the engage action completed with output InGear, execute MC_MoveAbsolute to the master axis.

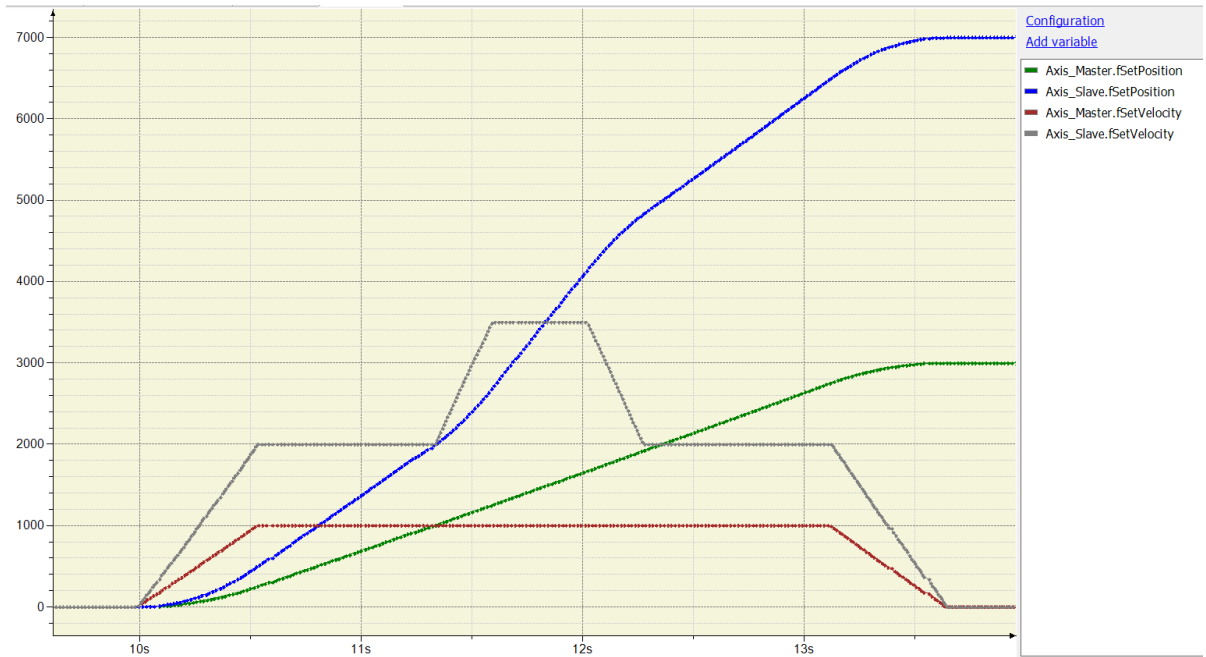


At the same time, when the slave axis moves to the preset triggering position=2000 based on the coupling relationship, MC_MoveSuperImposed would be executed which the slave axis would move a superimposed distance of specific displacement on the original preset target position.



According to the above settings, slave axis would move a displacement according to the gear ratio relative to the master axis and also the specific distance superimposed while in motion to reach the final target position.

The moving distance of master axis is 3000 and the original target position of slave axis would be 6000 calculated with the gear ratio 1:2. Therefore, the final target position of slave axis will changes to be 7000 (6000+1000) with an extra superimposed distance=1000. While coupling, the velocities of master and slave axis are respectively 1000 and 2000. Yet the velocity of slave axis changes to 3500 while superimposing (the original velocity 2000+ VelocityDiff 1500).



● ST language

Set StartFlag to be TRUE, then the normal operation of communications for both master and slave axis would be checked respectively.

IF StartFlag = TRUE THEN

IF Axis_Master.bCommunication = TRUE THEN

MC_Power0_Enable := TRUE;

MC_Power0_RegulatorOn := TRUE;

MC_Power0_DriveStart := TRUE;

END_IF

IF Axis_Slave.bCommunication = TRUE THEN

MC_Power1_Enable := TRUE;

MC_Power1_RegulatorOn := TRUE;

MC_Power1_DriveStart := TRUE;

END_IF

END_IF

Under normal condition, Servo ON state will be set to master and slave axis.

MC_Power_0(

Axis:= Axis_Master,

Enable:= MC_Power0_Enable,

bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power0_RegulatorOn,

bDriveStart:= MC_Power0_DriveStart,

Status=> MC_Power0_Status,

bRegulatorRealState=> ,

bDriveStartRealState=> ,

Busy=> ,

Error=> ,

ErrorID=>);

```
MC_Power_1(  
  Axis:= Axis_Slave,  
  Enable:= MC_Power1_Enable,  
  bRegulatorOn:= MC_Power1_RegulatorOn,  
  bDriveStart:= MC_Power1_DriveStart,  
  Status=> MC_Power1_Status,  
  bRegulatorRealState=> ,  
  bDriveStartRealState=> ,  
  Busy=> ,  
  Error=> ,  
  ErrorID=> );
```

When the master and slave axis are in Servo On state and unsure of the start position, home positioning operation will be required.

```
IF MC_Power0_Status = TRUE THEN  
  MC_Home0_Execute := TRUE;  
END_IF
```

```
IF MC_Power1_Status = TRUE THEN  
  MC_Home1_Execute := TRUE;  
END_IF
```

```
MC_Home_0(  
  Axis:= Axis_Master,  
  Execute:= MC_Home0_Execute,  
  Position:= 0,  
  Done=> MC_Home0_Done,  
  Busy=> ,  
  CommandAborted=> ,  
  Error=> ,  
  ErrorID=> );
```

```
MC_Home_1(  
  Axis:= Axis_Slave,  
  Execute:= MC_Home1_Execute,  
  Position:= 0,  
  Done=> MC_Home1_Done,  
  Busy=> ,  
  CommandAborted=> ,  
  Error=> ,  
  ErrorID=> );
```

After the homing operation is completed, execute MC_GearIn to activate a master-slave coupling (gear coupling).

```
MC_GearIn(  
  Master:= Axis_Master,  
  Slave:= Axis_Slave,
```

```

Execute:= MC_Home0_Done,
RatioNumerator:= MC_GearIn_RatioNumerator,
RatioDenominator:= MC_GearIn_RatioDenominator,
Acceleration:= MC_GearIn_Acc,
Deceleration:= MC_GearIn_Dec,
Jerk:= ,
InGear=> MC_GearIn_InGear,
Busy=> ,
CommandAborted=> ,
Error=> ,
ErrorID=> );

```

```

IF MC_GearIn_InGear = TRUE THEN
    MC_MoveAbs_Execute := TRUE;
END_IF

```

Right after the engage action completed with output InGear, execute MC_MoveAbsolute to the master axis.

```

MC_MoveAbsolute(
    Axis:= Axis_Master,
    Execute:= MC_MoveAbs_Execute,
    Position:= MC_MoveAbs_Position,
    Velocity:= MC_MoveAbs_Velocity,
    Acceleration:= MC_MoveAbs_Acc,
    Deceleration:= MC_MoveAbs_Dec,
    Jerk:= ,
    Direction:= Positive,
    Done=> MC_MoveAbs_Done,
    Busy=> MC_MoveAbs_Busy,
    CommandAborted=> ,
    Error=> ,
    ErrorID=> );

```

At the same time, when the slave axis moves to the preset triggering position=2000 based on the coupling relationship, MC_MoveSuperImposed would be executed which the slave axis would move a superimposed distance of specific displacement on the original preset target position.

```

IF MC_MoveAbs_Busy = TRUE THEN
    IF Axis_Slave.fSetPosition >= 2000 THEN
        MC_MoveSuperImposed_Execute := TRUE;
    END_IF
END_IF

```

```

MC_MoveSuperImposed(
    Axis:= Axis_Slave,
    Execute:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Execute,
    Distance:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Distance,
    VelocityDiff:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_VelocityDiff,
    Acceleration:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Acc,
    Deceleration:= MC_MoveSuperImposed_Dec,

```

```
Jerk:= ,  
Done=> MC_MoveSuperImposed_Done,  
Busy=> ,  
CommandAborted=> ,  
Error=> ,  
ErrorID=> );
```

Chapter 8 OPC UA Server

Table of Contents

8.1	OPC UA Server	8-2
8.1.1	Creating a Project for OPC UA Access	8-2
8.2	Setting up a Connection with the “UaExpert” Client	8-4
8.3	Setting up a Certificated Connection	8-8
8.3.1	Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Server	8-8
8.3.2	Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Client	8-12

8.1 OPC UA Server

The standard installation of DIADesigner-AX includes an OPC UA server. You can use it to access the variable interface of the controller via a client. The OPC UA server communicates with connected OPC UA clients over a separate TCP connection. Therefore, these connections have to be examined again separately with regard to security.

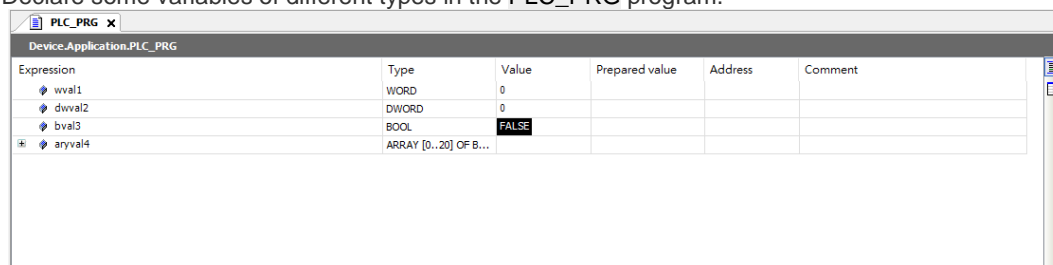
The OPC UA server can now be safeguarded by using encrypted communication to the client and OPC UA user management. See the following sections for these settings.

- Browsing of data types and variables
- Standard read/write services
- Notification for value changes: subscription and monitored item services
- Encrypted communication according to "OPC UA standard (profile: Basic256SHA256)"

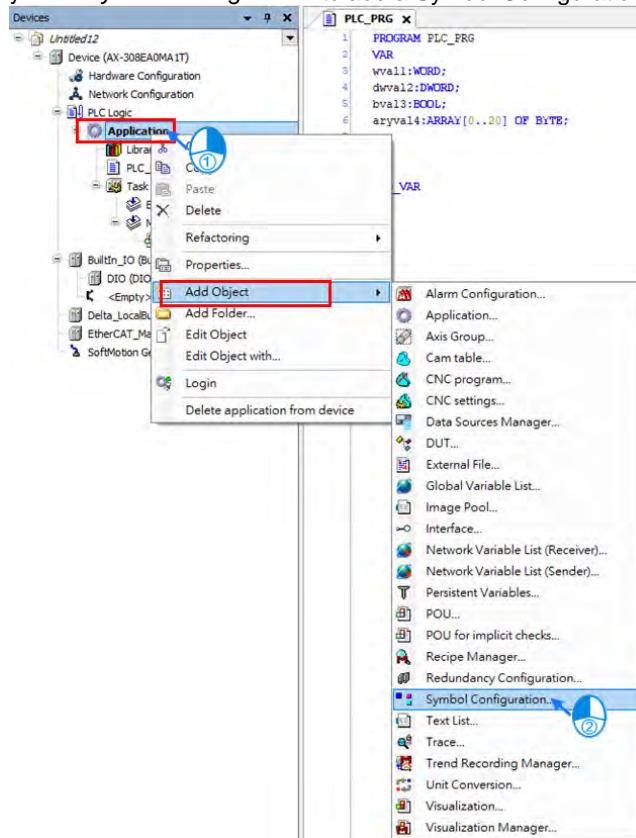
8.1.1 Creating a Project for OPC UA Access

You need to create a project for OPC UA access before using OPC UA Server. Follow the steps below.

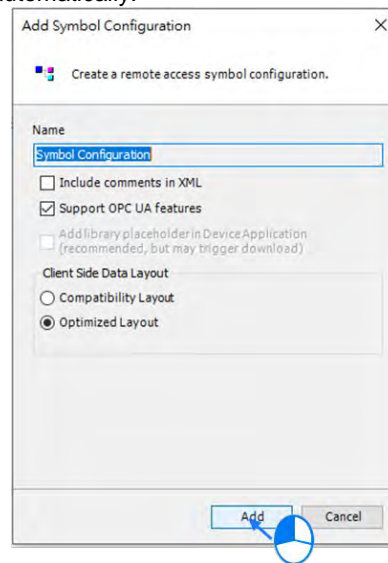
1. Create a new DIADesigner-AX project.
2. Declare some variables of different types in the PLC_PRG program.



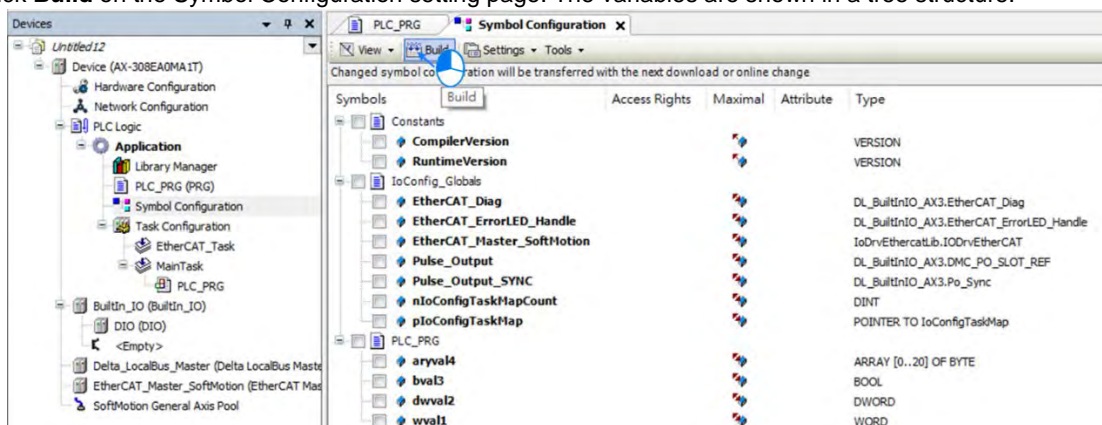
3. Go to *Application -> Add Object -> Symbol Configuration* to add a Symbol Configuration object.



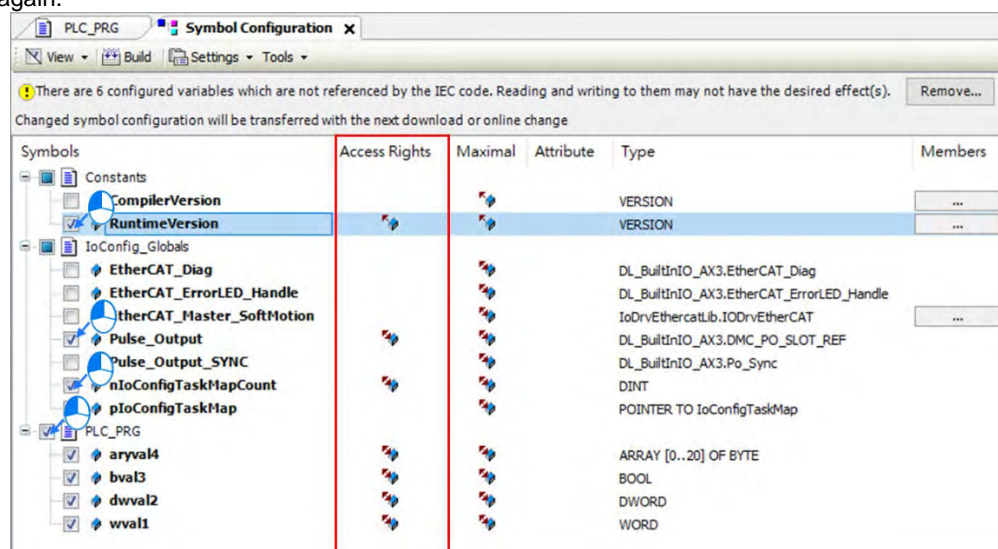
4. Select **Support OPC UA feature** and click **Add** on the setting page of Add Symbol Configuration. After that Symbol Configuration setting page shows up automatically.



5. Click **Build** on the Symbol Configuration setting page. The variables are shown in a tree structure.



6. Select the variables that you want to change with an OPC UA client. Specify the access rights. After setting, click **Build** again.

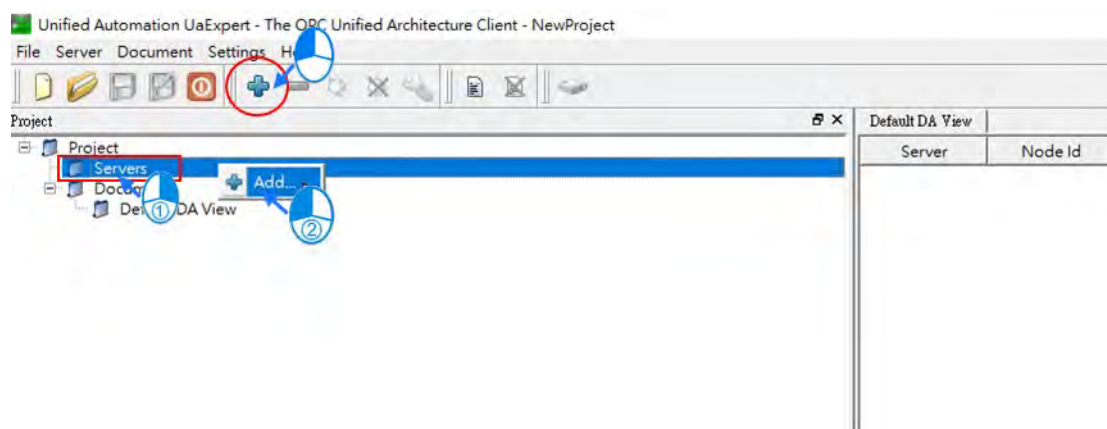


7. Download the project to the AX-3 Series PLC.

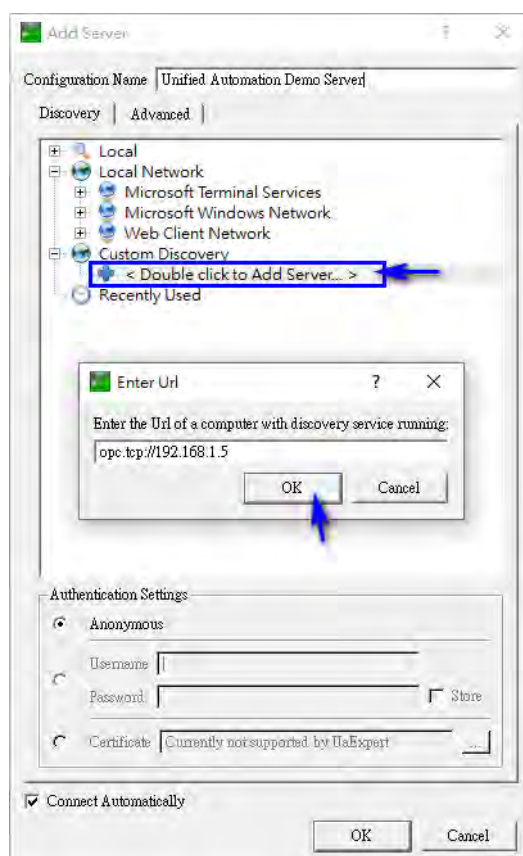
8.2 Setting up a Connection with the “UaExpert” Client

The OPC UA client “UaExpert” is freely accessible software. You can download the software here: <https://www.unified-automation.com/downloads/opc-ua-clients.html> Using this client, you can connect to the OPC UA server. The following description refers to this program. Other OPC UA clients work in a similar way. After download UAExpert, follow the following steps to set up a connection.

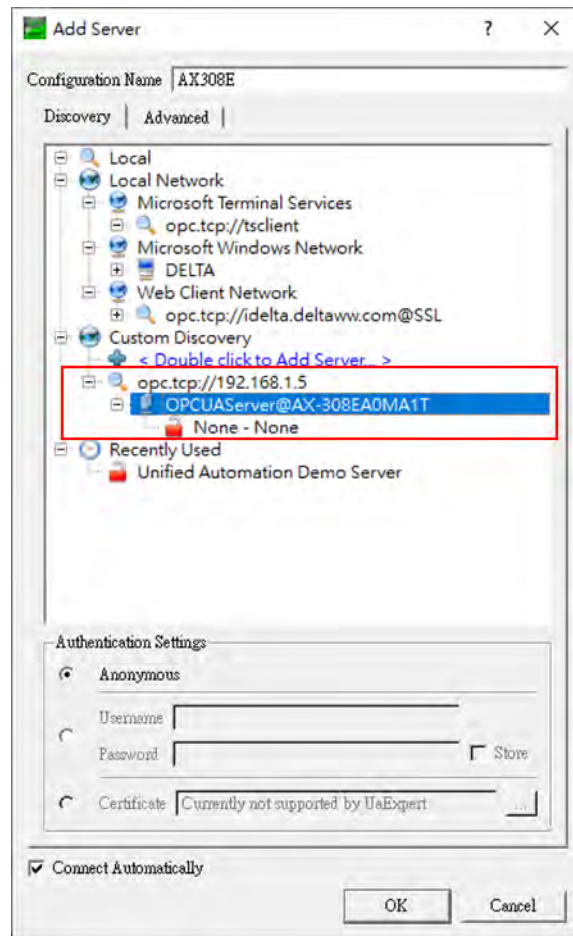
- (1) Double-click the UaExpert  to start the UaExpert.
- (2) Right-click **Server** and then click **Add** to open Add Server window.



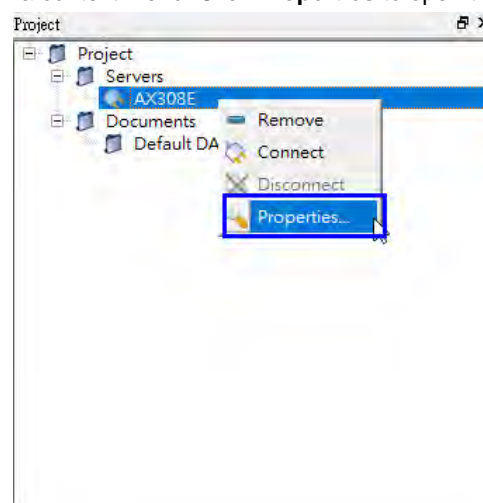
- (3) Go to **Custom Discovery** -> **Double click to Add Server...>** and then type in “opc.tcp://192.168.1.5” in the Enter Url dialog.



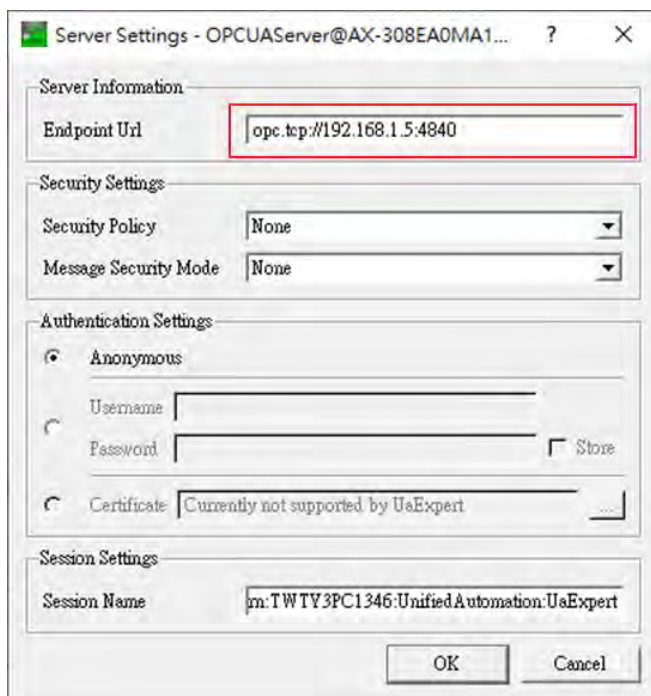
- (4) After that you can find **AX308E** under the **opc.tcp://192.168.1.5**. Select **OPCUAServer@AX-308EA0MA1T** and click **OK** to close the window. If the connection type is NOT an encrypted one, the node **None-None** appears under the added server.



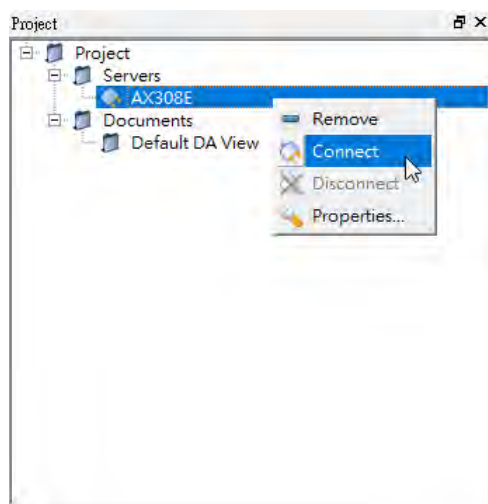
- (5) If you need to edit the server properties, go back to the starting window. Expand the option **Servers** under **Project** and then right-click **AX308** to open a context menu. Click **Properties** to open the Server Settings page.



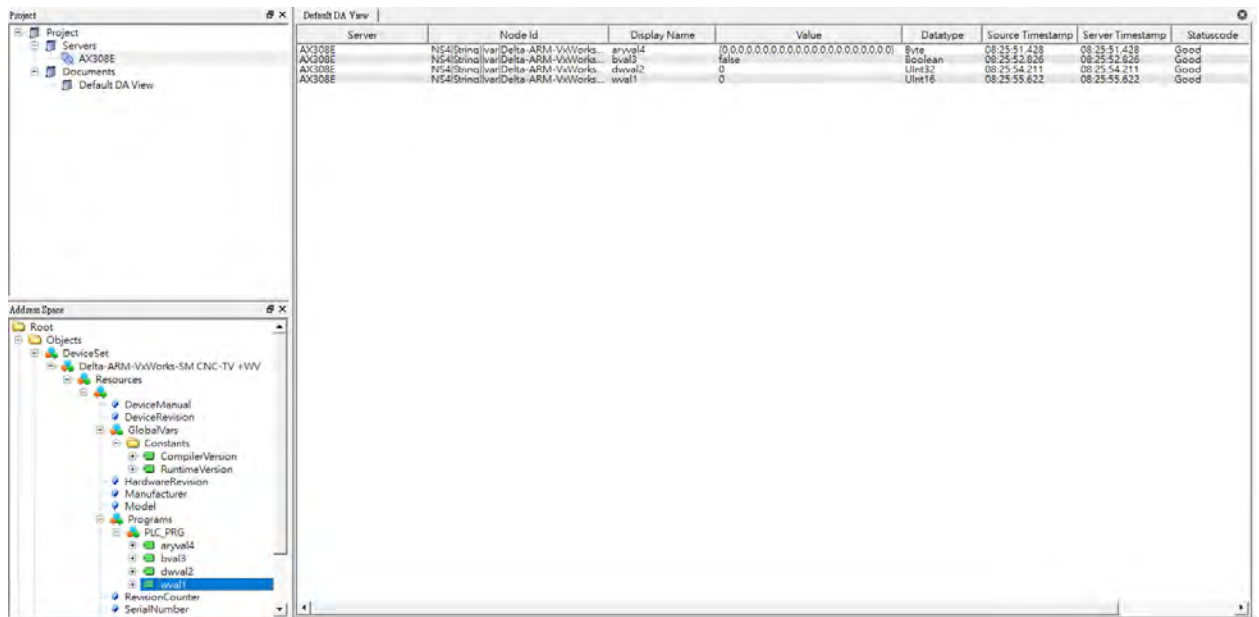
- (6) Change the Endpoint Url from OPCUAServer@AX-308EA0MA1T:4840 to **opc.tcp://192.168.1.5:4840** and click **OK** to close the window.



- (7) Right-click **AX308** to open a context menu. Click **Connect** to AX308E.



- (8) After establishing the connection, you can change the variables in AX308E through the OPC UA client UaExpert. Select and drag the variables you'd like to modify from the left view "Address Space" to the right view "Default DA View" and then double-click the item to be modified to edit.



8.3 Setting up an Encrypted Connection

To have a successful encrypted connection, you need to follow the sections below to create certificates for OPC UA server and OPC UA client.

8.3.1 Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Server

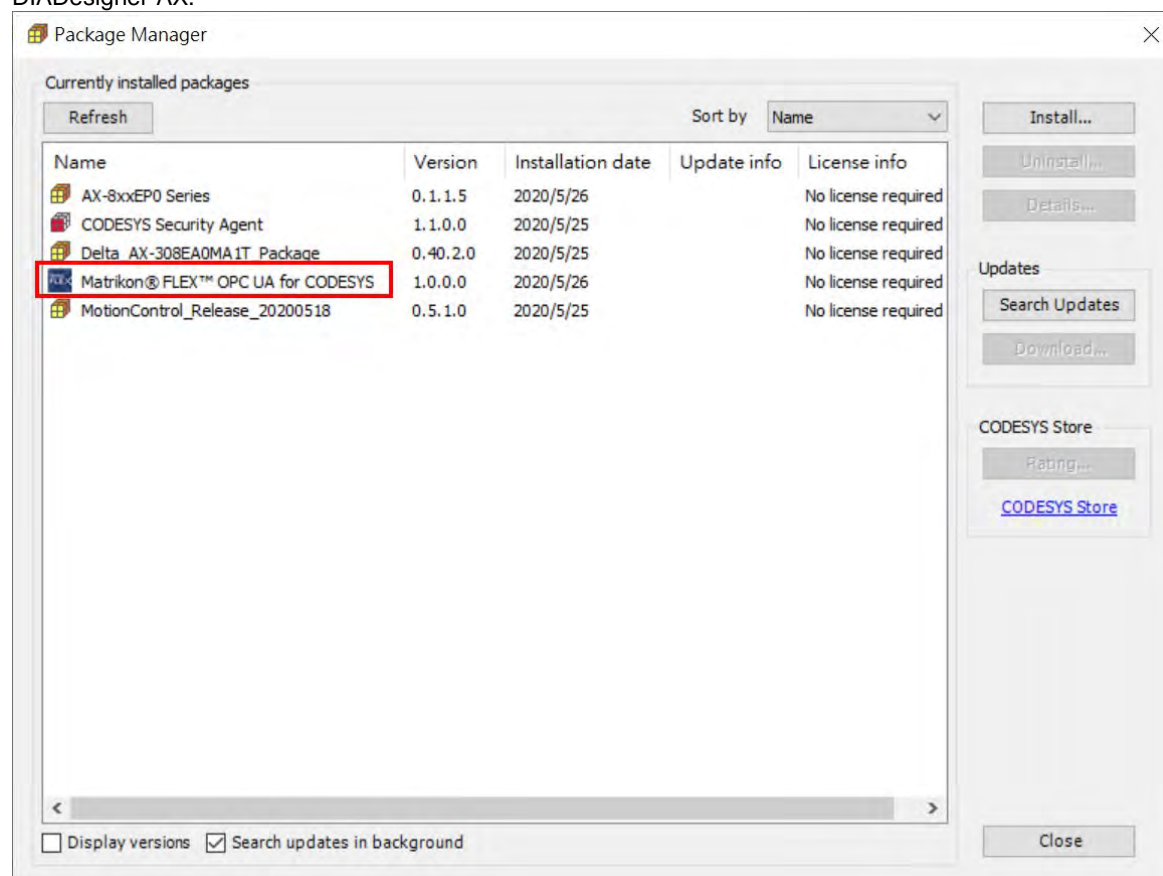
8.3.1.1 Matrikon ® FLEX™ OPC UA

In order to encrypt data and exchange it with the client safely, the server needs a certificate that the client must classify as trusted when a connection is established for the first time. You will need Matrikon ® FLEX™ OPC UA Editor for creating a certificate for the DIADesigner-AX. Go to CoDeSys Store to download the software:

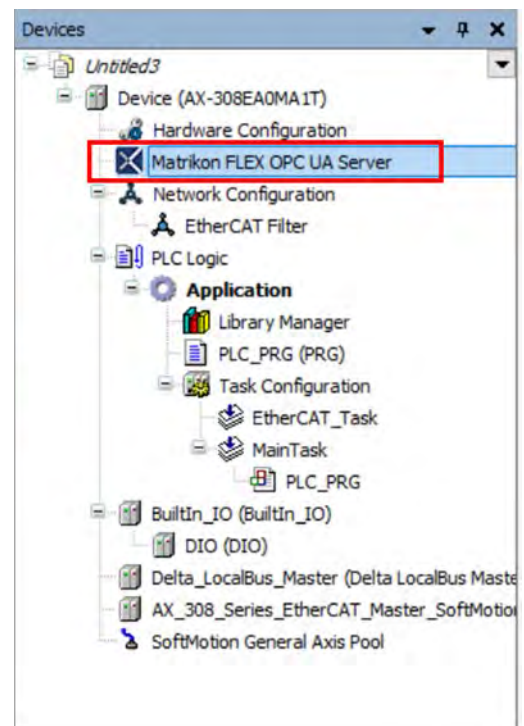
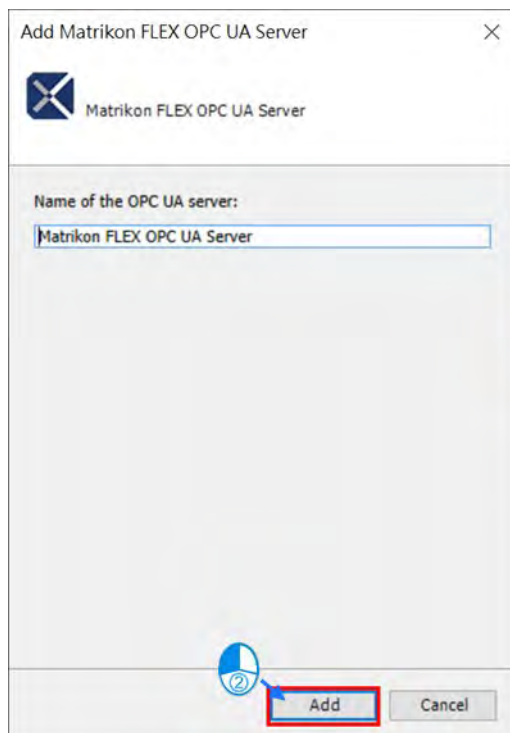
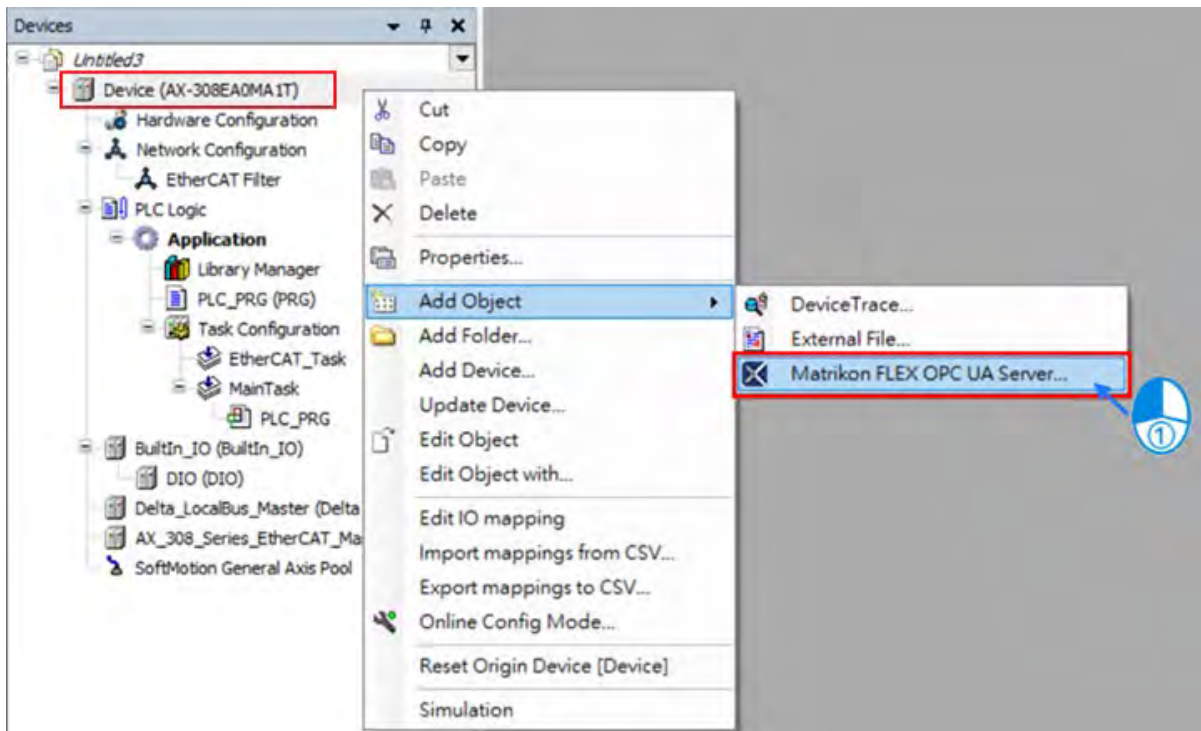
https://store.codesys.com/matrikon-flex-opc-ua-editor.html?_SID=U

- (1) Install the add-on  **Matrikon ® FLEX™ OPC UA for CODESYS**. After installing, you need to restart

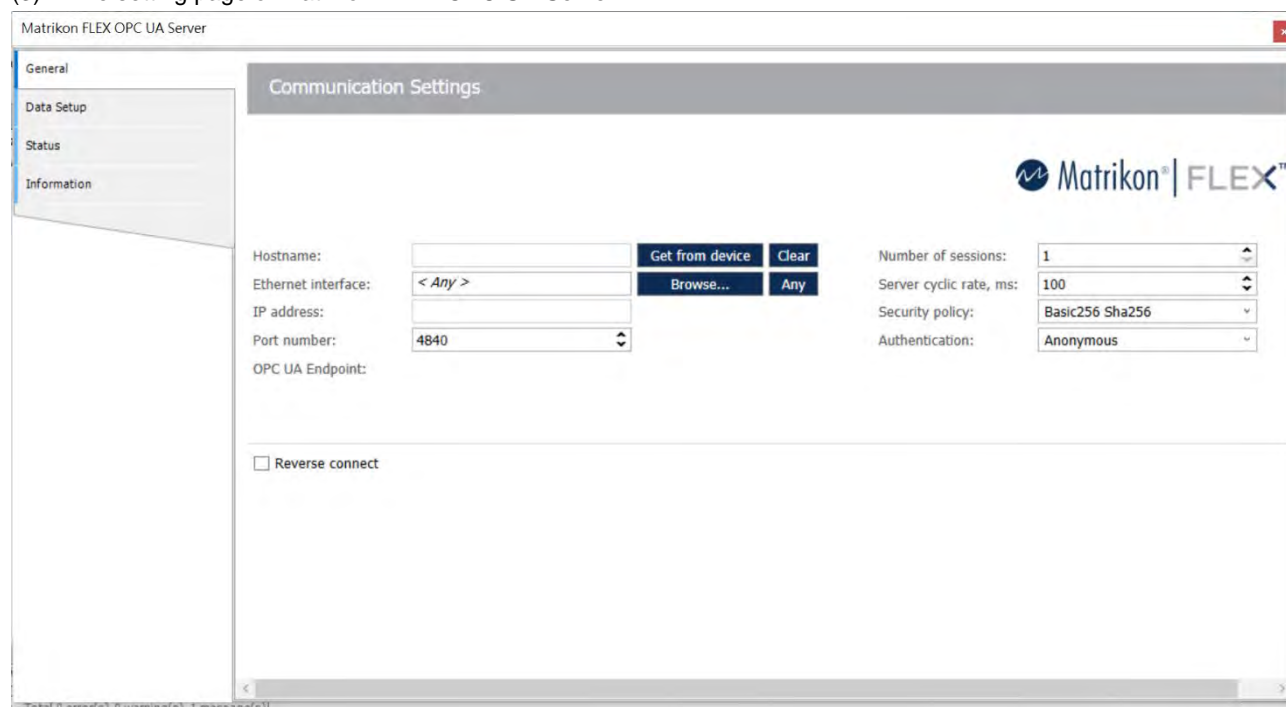
DIADesigner-AX.



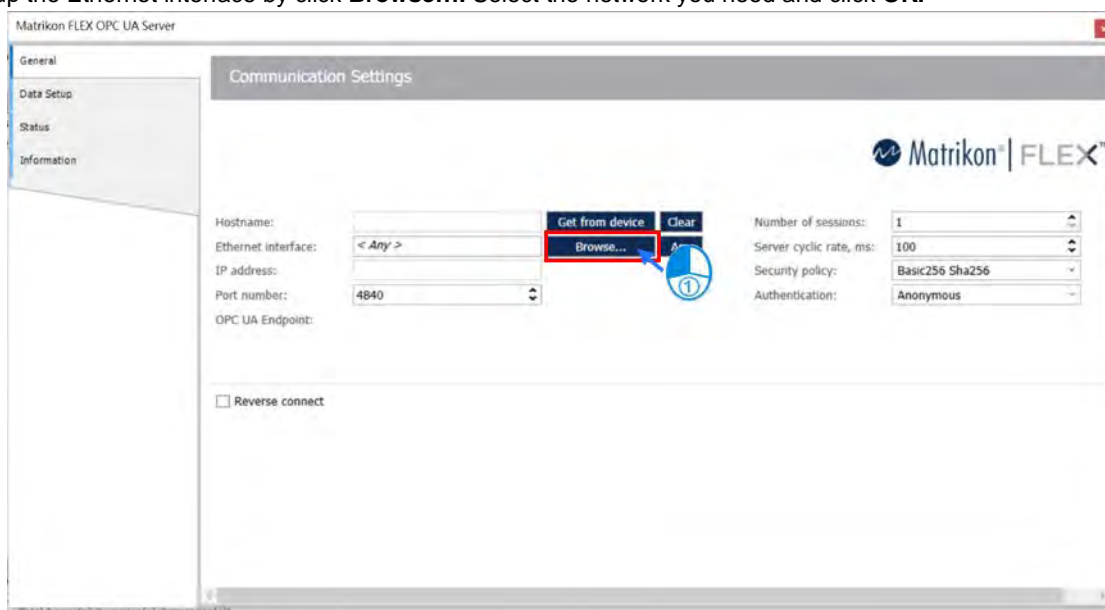
- (2) Open DIADesigner-AX to create a project and then right-click **AX-308EA0MA1T** to bring out a context menu. Click **Add Object** and select **Marikon FLEX OPC UA Server....** to open the setting page and add **Marikon FLEX IPC US Server** in.



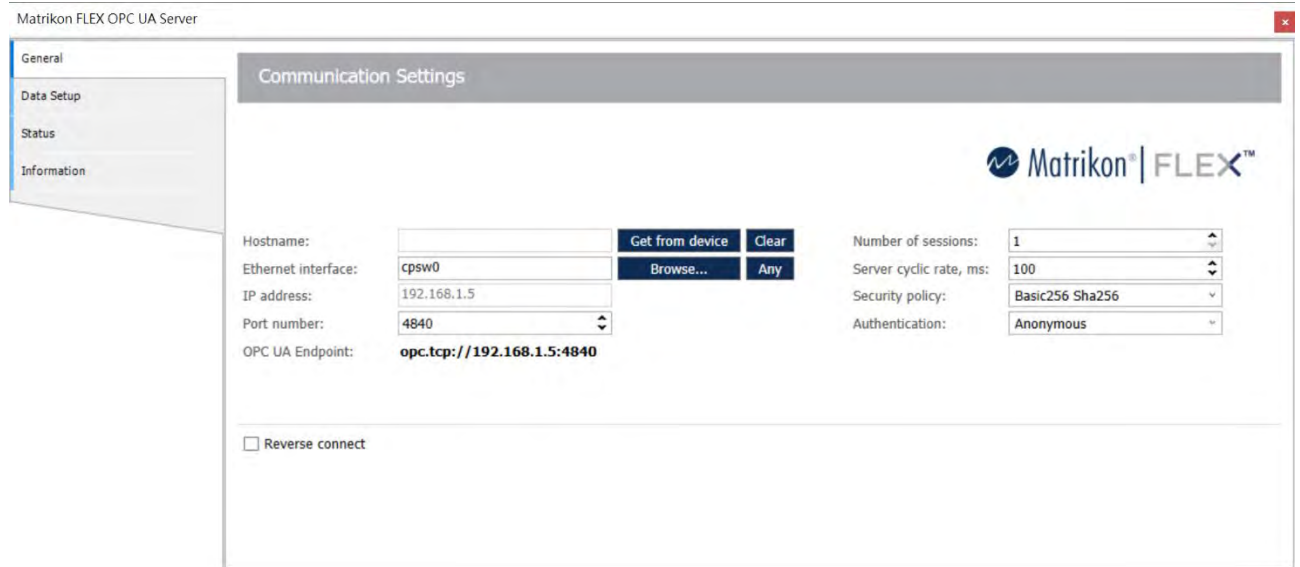
(3) The setting page of Matrikon FLEX OPC UA Server



(4) Setting up the Ethernet interface by click **Browse....** Select the network you need and click **OK**.



(5) After that, the setting is complete. Other fields do not require changing.

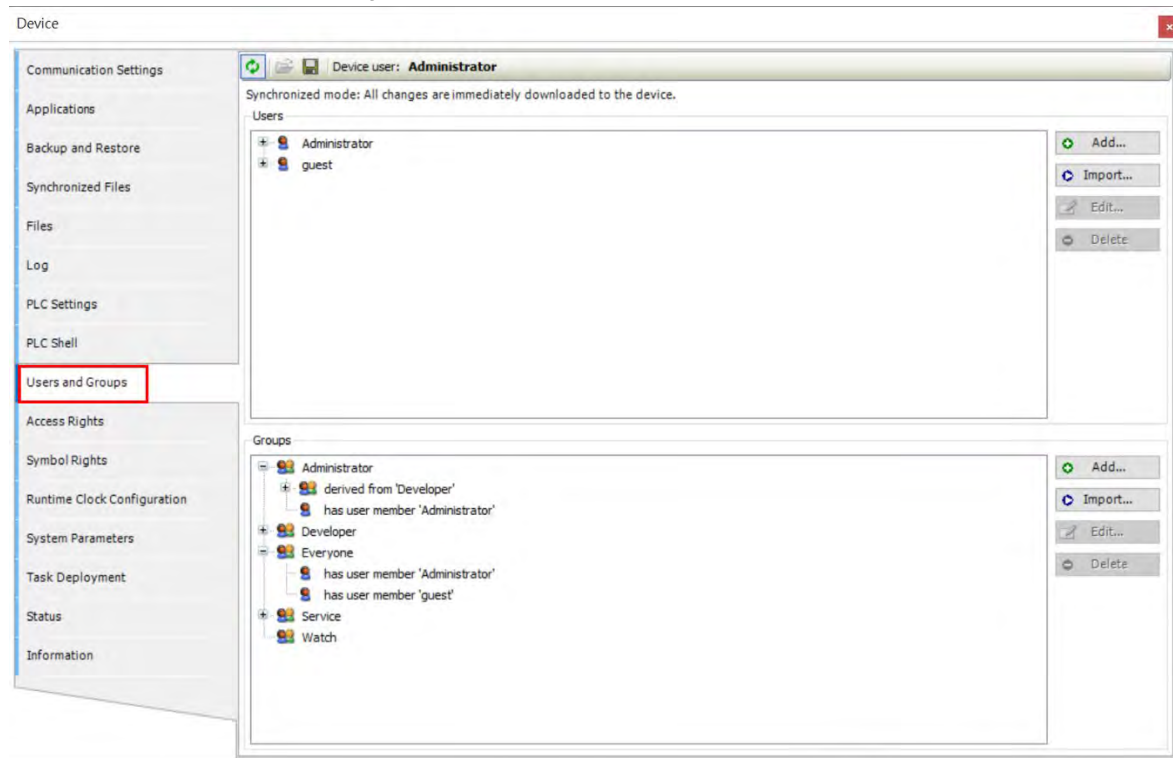


(6) Download the project to the AX-3 Series PLC.

8.3.1.2 Setting up User Account and Password

Setting up an account and password for OPC UA Server is the same as setting up the account for AX-3 Series PLC. Refer to section 4.2.1.8 of AX-3 Series Operation Manual for more information.

Below is an example for setting up a new account as guest. The default account is Administrator. And here you can see two accounts on the example image.

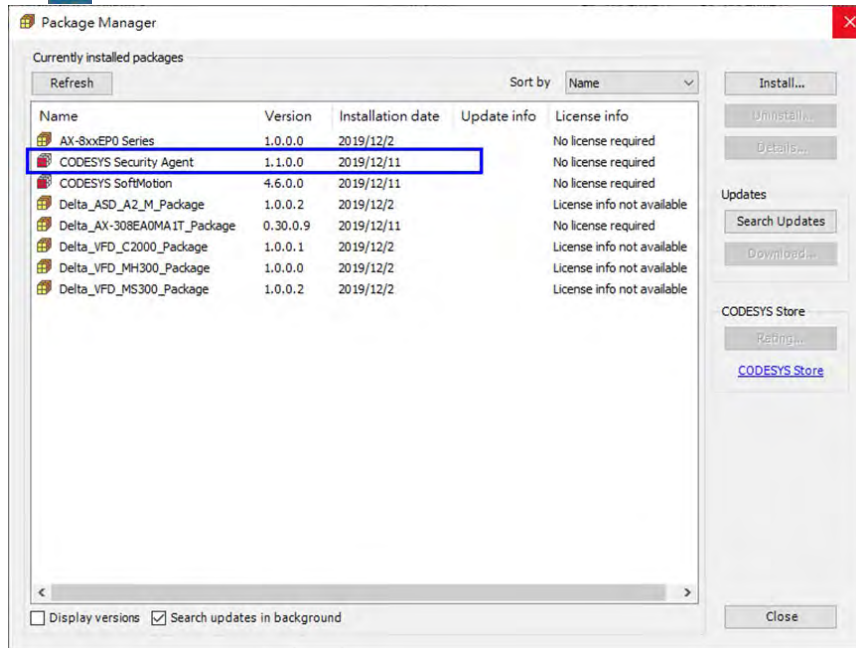


8.3.2 Creating a Certificate for the DIADesigner-AX OPC UA Client

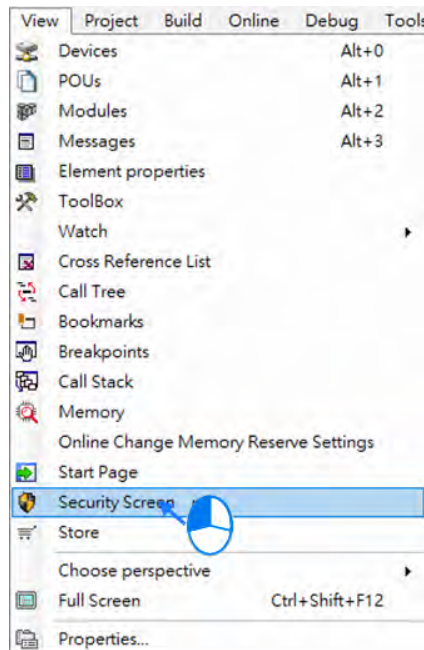
In order to encrypt data and exchange it with the client safely, the server needs a certificate that the client must classify as trusted when a connection is established for the first time. You will need **CODESYS Security Agent** for creating a certificate for the DIADesigner-AX. Go to CoDeSys Store to download the software: https://store.codesys.com/matrikon-flex-opc-ua-editor.html?_SID=U

8.3.2.1 CODESYS Security Agent

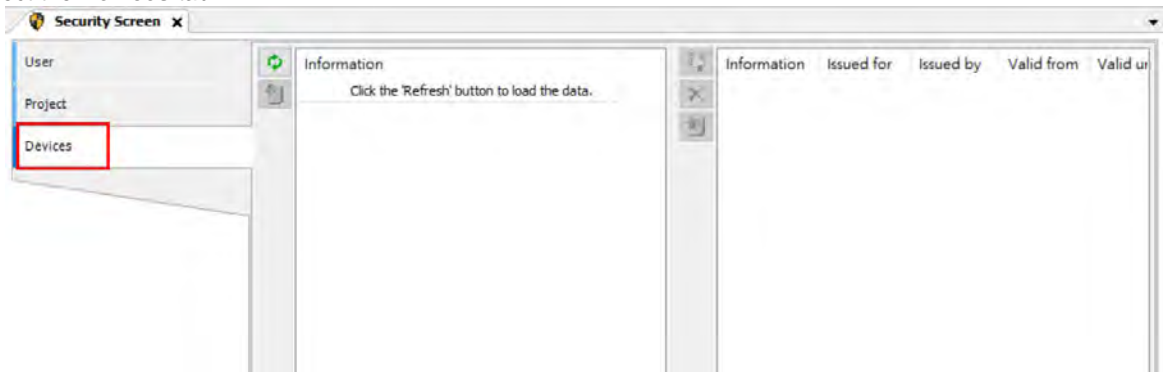
- (1) Install the add-on  **CODESYS Security Agent**. After installing, you need to restart DIADesigner-AX.



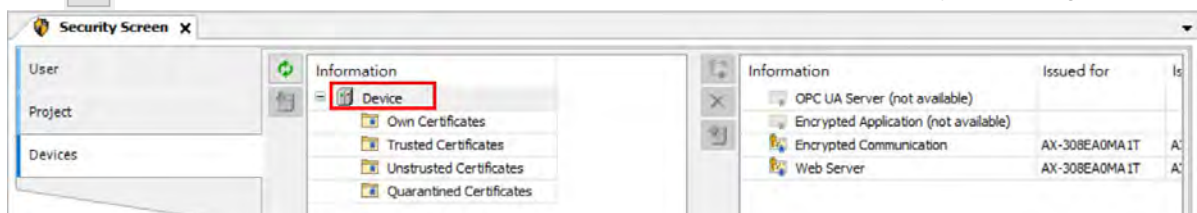
- (2) Open DIADesigner-AX to create a project. Click **View** on the toolbar and then click the option **Security Screen** to open the setting page.




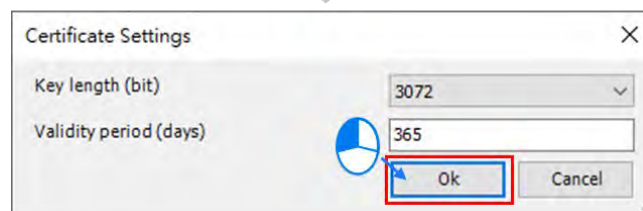
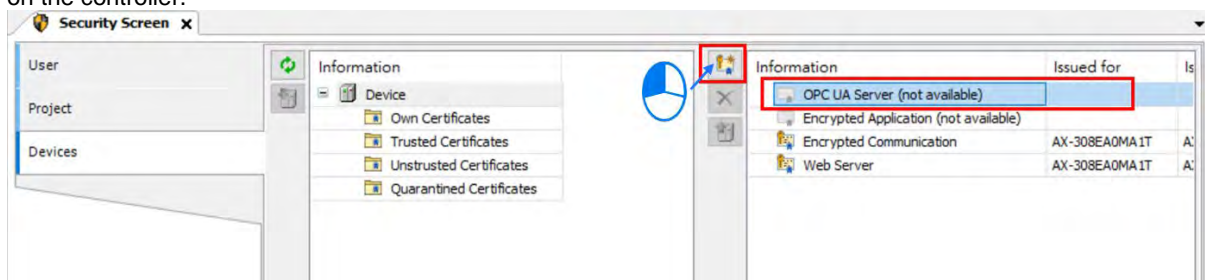
- (3) Select the **Devices** tab.




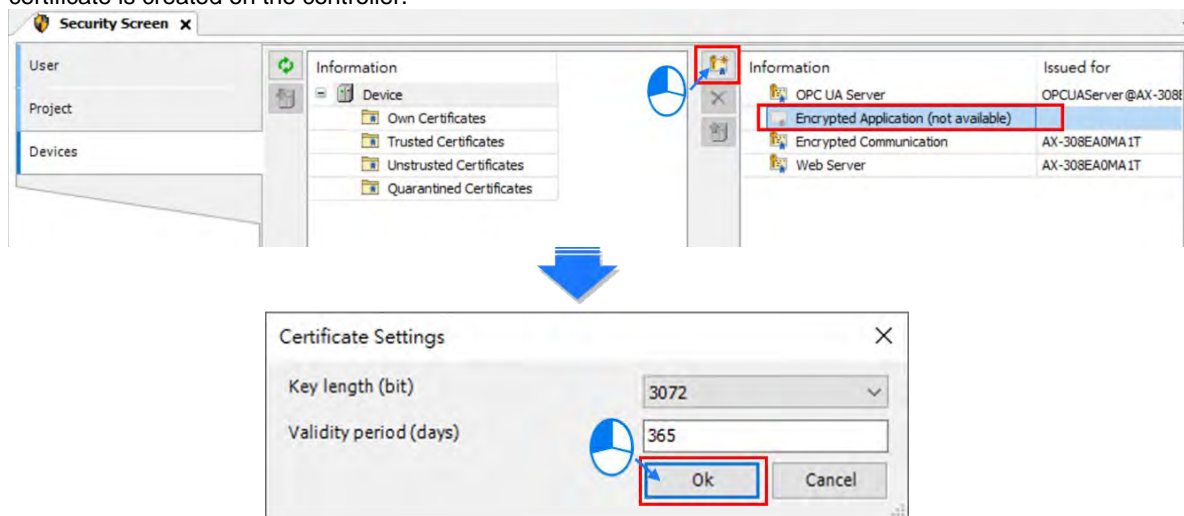
- (4) Click  to refresh and all services of the controller that require a certificate are displayed in the right view.



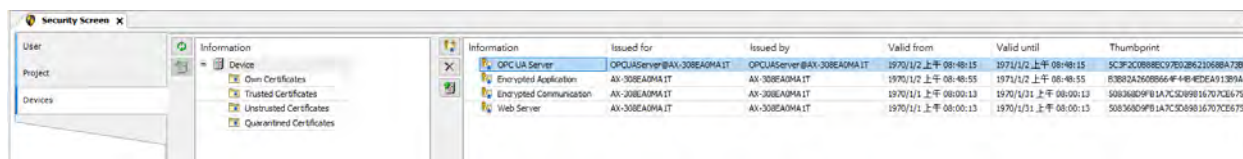
- (5) Select the service **OPC UA Server** and then click  to open the **Certificate Settings** page for the creation of a new certificate for the device. After setting up the certificate parameters, click OK. And the certificate is created on the controller.



- (6) Again select the service **Encrypted Application** and then click  to open the **Certificate Settings** page for the creation of a new certificate for the device. After setting up the certificate parameters, click OK. And the certificate is created on the controller.



- (7) And you have created two certificates **OPC UA Server** and **Encrypted Application** on the controller.




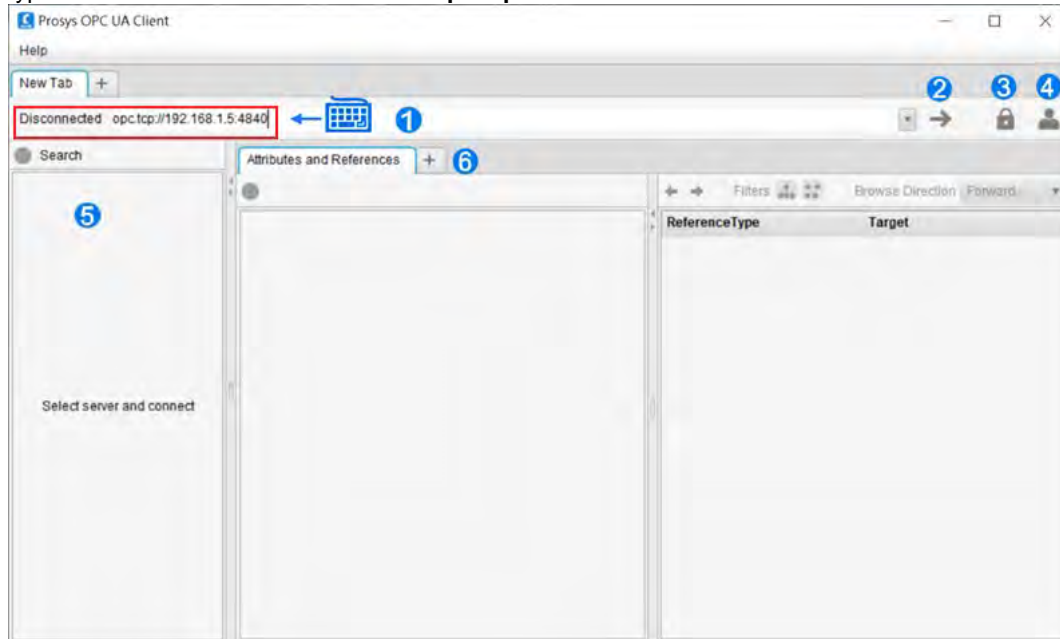
8.3.2.2 Setting up an Encrypted Connection with the “Prosys OPC UA Client”

The OPC UA client “Prosys OPC UA Client” is freely accessible software. You can download the software here:

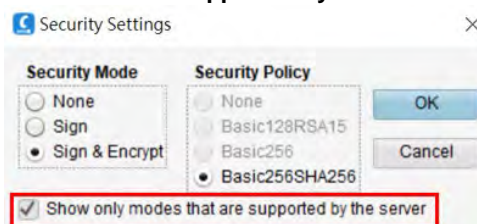
<https://downloads.prosysopc.com/opc-ua-client-downloads.php>


Using this client, you can connect to the OPC UA server. The following description refers to this program. Other OPC UA clients work in a similar way. After download Prosys OPC UA Client, follow the following steps to set up a connection.

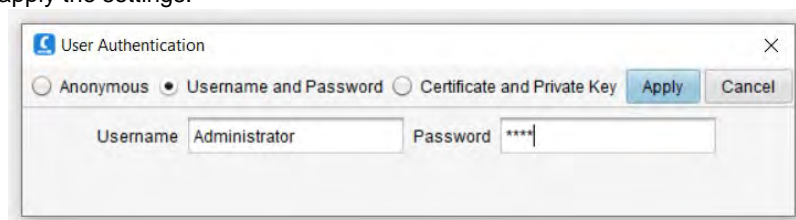
- (1) Double-click the Prosys OPC UA Client  to start the Prosys OPC UA Client.
- (2) Type in the OPC UA Server IP address “**opc.tcp://192.168.1.5:4840**” in the field of Disconnected as shown in ①.




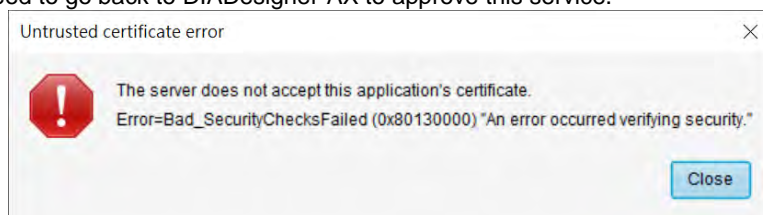
- (3) Click  as shown in ③ to open the **Security Settings** window. Only the connection type **Basic256SHA256** is supported. Select “**Show only modes that are supported by the server**”. Click **OK**.



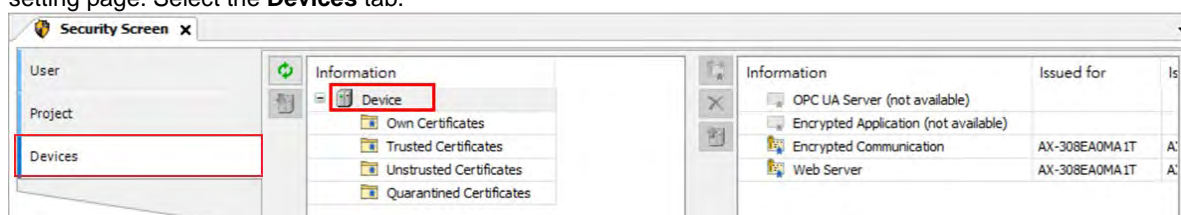
- (4) Click  as shown in ④ to open the User Authentication setting window. Set up the username and password and click **Apply** to apply the settings.




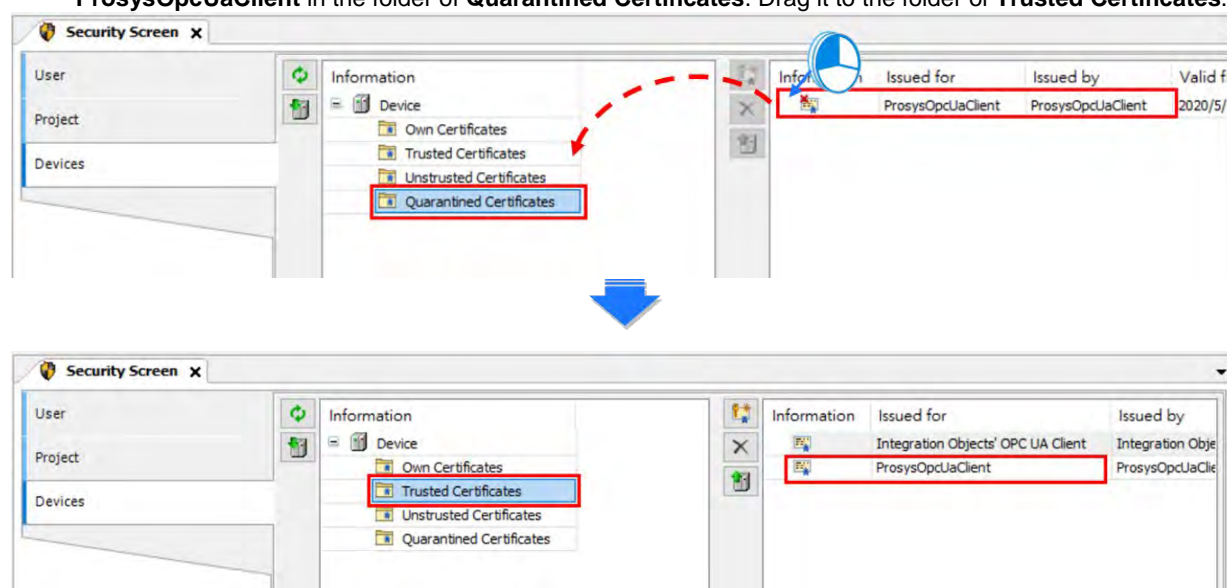
- (5) If you click  as shown in ② to connect to the AX-3 Series PLC. You will see a warning, stating the server does not accept this application's certificate. That is because ProsysOpcUaClient is not a trusted certificate for AX-3Series PLC. You need to go back to DIADesigner-AX to approve this service.




- (8) Go back to DIADesigner-AX. Click **View** on the toolbar and then click the option **Security Screen** to open the setting page. Select the **Devices** tab.

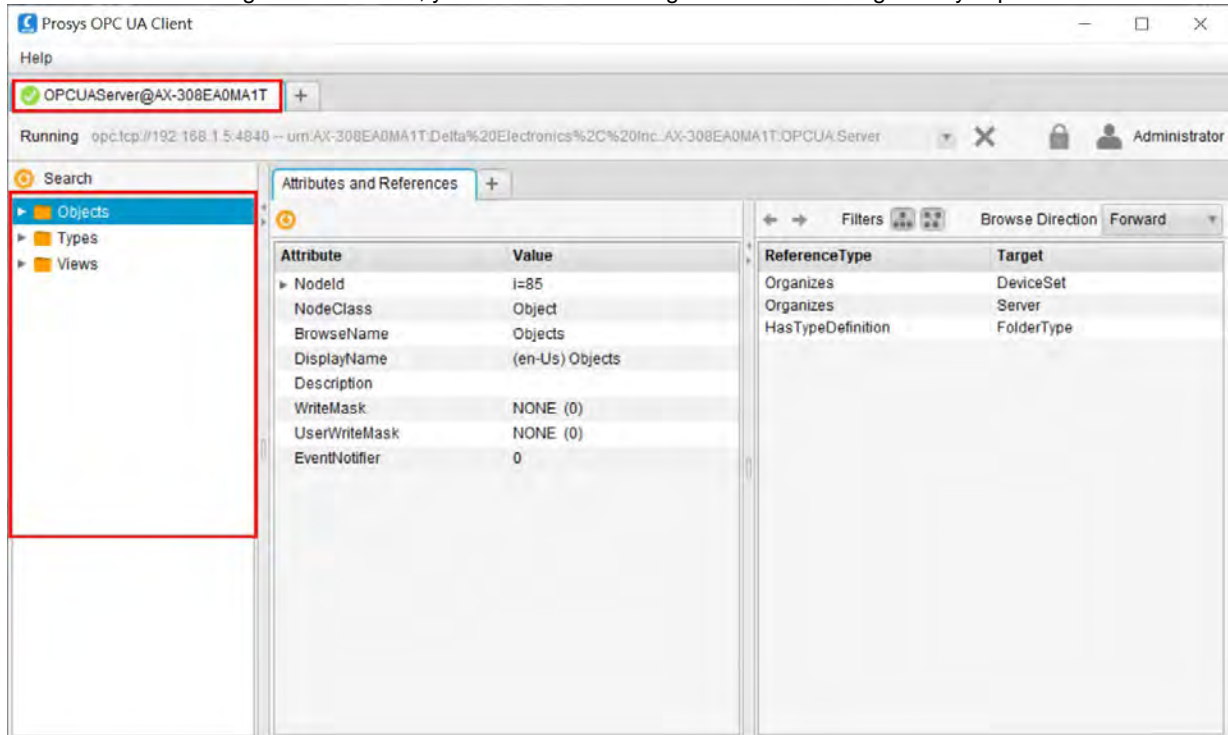


- (9) Click  to refresh and all services of the controller that require a certificate are displayed in the right view. Find **ProsysOpcUaClient** in the folder of **Quarantined Certificates**. Drag it to the folder of **Trusted Certificates**.

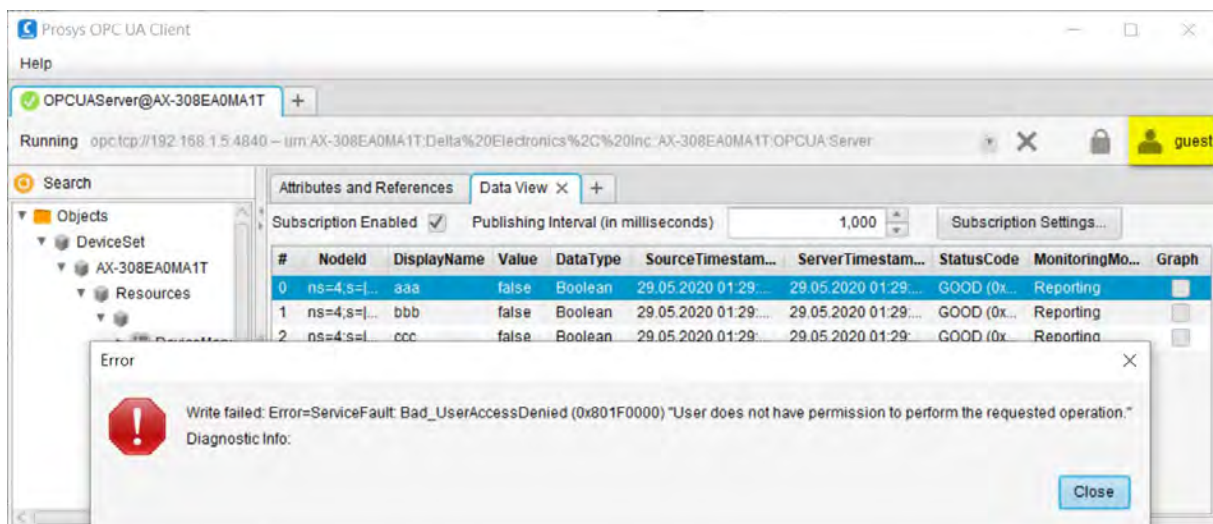


(10) Go back to ProsysOpcUaClient. Click  as shown in ② to connect to the AX-3 Series PLC as an Administrator.

After establishing the connection, you can edit the settings in AX308E through ProsysOpcUaClient.



If you connect to the AX-3 Series PLC as a guest. You do not have permission to make any change on the settings.



MEMO

Chapter 9 Communication

Table of Contents

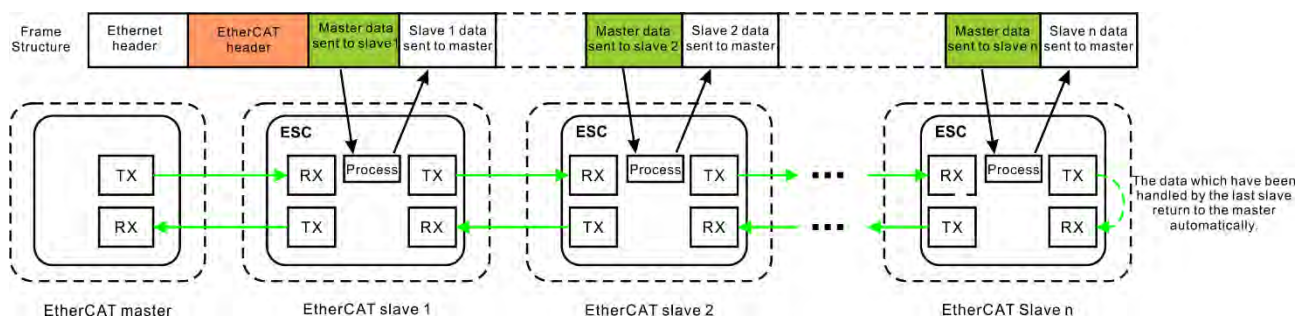
9.1 Introduction to EtherCAT Communication	9-2
9.1.1 Features of EtherCAT Fieldbus	9-2
9.1.2 Settings up EtherCAT Master	9-3
9.1.3 Setting up the EtherCAT Slave	9-5
9.2 Introduction to Modbus Serial Communication	9-8
9.2.1 Modbus Serial Port	9-8
9.2.2 Modbus Serial Master	9-11
9.2.3 Modbus Serial Slave	9-21
9.3 Introduction to Ethernet Communication	9-24
9.3.1 Ethernet Port	9-24
9.3.2 Modbus TCP Master (Client)	9-28
9.3.3 Modbus TCP Slave (Server)	9-38

9.1 Introduction to EtherCAT Communication

9.1.1 Features of EtherCAT Fieldbus

The EtherCAT bus is the Ethernet-based fieldbus. The communication rate of the EtherCAT network is 100Mbps and the distance between two adjacent nodes is within 50 metres. The EtherCAT network is noticeably very different from the general Ethernet network. One EtherCAT network has just one EtherCAT master and EtherCAT slaves contain ESC chips (EtherCAT Slave Controller) specially used for processing EtherCAT communication data and inserting the data which slaves need to transmit to the master into the EtherCAT frame. The last EtherCAT slave in the network will return the data which have been handled to the master in chronological order. See the illustration of data transmission shown below.

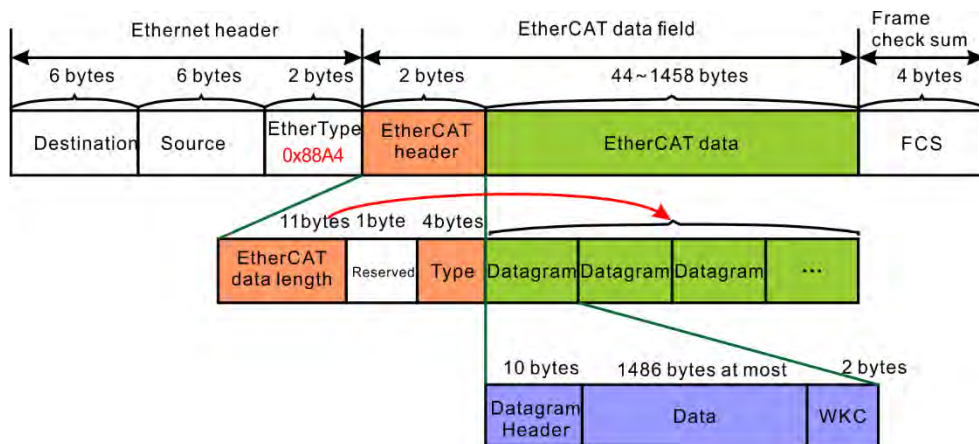
Thanks to the ESC chips in slaves, the master can make a communication with all slaves in an EtherCAT data frame and thus the communication efficiency is enhanced.



- **EtherCAT Communication between the Controller and Slaves**

Since the EtherCAT bus is the EtherNet-based fieldbus, the EtherCAT data frame still adopts the UDP/IP Ethernet data frame structure.

EtherCAT data field includes 2 bytes of EtherCAT data header and 44~1498 bytes of EtherCAT data. EtherCAT Data field consists of one or more EtherCAT datagrams. EtherCAT Data can be defined and analyzed in a protocol as long as the master and slaves comply with the protocol. Currently the mostly used two protocols are COE (CANopen Over EtherCAT) and SOE (Sercos Over EtherCAT). EtherCAT data frame structure is as displayed below.



9.1.2 Settings up EtherCAT Master

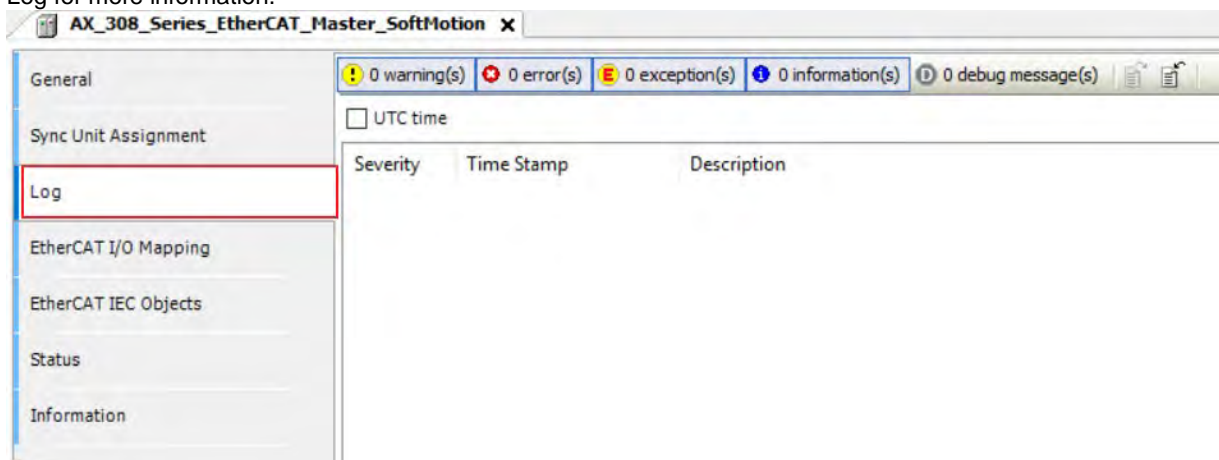
This section introduces functions in the tab of AX_308_Series_EtherCAT_Master_SoftMotion. Refer to Chapter 6 for Network Configuration and how to create an EtherCAT connection.

- **General**

- ① Autoconfig Master/Slaves: Enable this option to have basic configurations done. Suggested to use this option.
- ② EtherCAT NIC Setting
 - Destination address (MAC): MAC address of the device in the EtherCAT network that is to receive the telegrams.
 - Source address (MAC): MAC address of the controller (Select CPSW1 when you use Broswe... to find Slave)
 - Network Name: Name or MAC of the network, depending on which of the following options is activated:
 - Select Network by MAC: The network is specified by the MAC ID. (default: CPSW*1)
 - Select network by Name: Network is identified by the network name and the project is device-independent.
- ③ Distributed Clock
 - Cycle time: Master sends out corresponding data to the Slaves in a cycle time specified here.
 - Sync offset: Parameter for setting the delay time between the Distributed Clock time base of the EtherCAT slave and the cycle start of the PLC. With the default value of 20%, the PLC cycle starts 20% of the bus cycle time after the sync interrupt of the slave. For the controller program, 80% of the cycle is always available. Here the Sync offset determines only when the EtherCAT data of the master is exchanged to and from the slaves relative to the time base of the EtherCAT slave.
 - Sync window monitoring: Enabled to monitor the synchronization of the slaves.
 - Sync window: Time for Sync window monitoring.
- ④ Options
 - Use LRW instead of LWR/LRD: Use combined read/write commands/PDO (LRW) instead of separating read (LRD) and write commands (LWR).
 - Enabled messages per task: Read and write commands, i.e. the handling of the input and output messages, can be controlled with various tasks.
 - Automatic restart slaves: In the case of a communication breakdown, the master immediately attempts to restart the slaves.

- **Log**

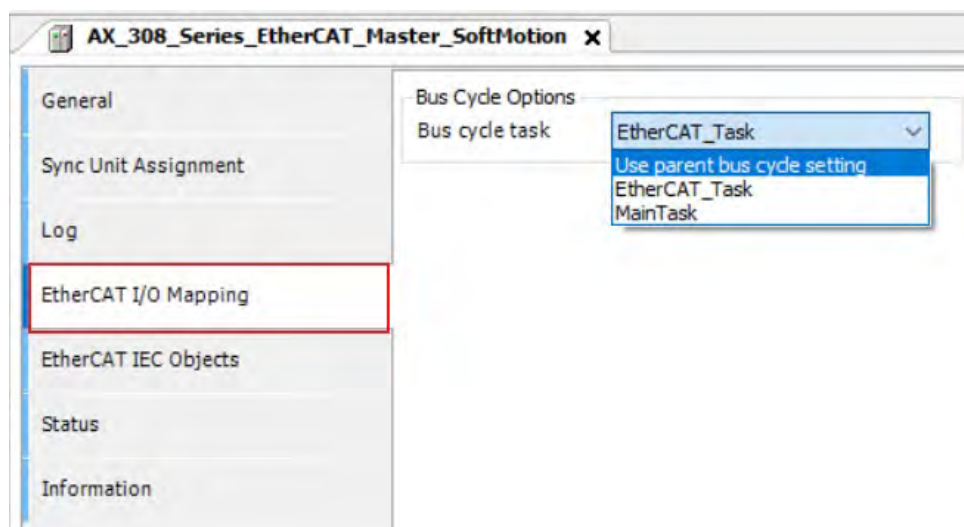
Here you can view the PLC log. It lists the events that were recorded on the target system. Refer to section 4.2.1.5 Log for more information.



- **EtherCAT I/O Mapping**

Here you can select the bus cycle task for EtherCAT communication. The bus cycle task selected will be synchronized with the specified EtherCAT_Master cycle time.

- **Bus cycle task:** Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the EtherCAT communication time. When the option "Use parent bus cycle setting is selected", the system uses the shortest cycle time as the EtherCAT cycle time.



9.1.3 Setting up the EtherCAT Slave

This section introduces functions in the tab of Slaves. You can either scan the network to add the slaves in or add slaves from the Product list. Refer to section 6.1.3 for more information.

- **General**

- **Address**

- ① EtherCAT address: Final address of the slaves, assigned by the master during bootup. The address is independent of the position of the slave in the network.

- **Distributed Clocks**

- ② Select DC: Cycle time for the data exchange.

● Process Data

The data mapping of the EtherCAT network is a cyclic data exchange between the master and slave through the CoE-based PDO mapping. The data that a slave sends to the master are packed in TxPDO and the data that the slave reads from the master are packed in RxPDO. The inputs and outputs on the pages of Select the Outputs and Select the Inputs contain the lists of PDOs which are available for data exchange and can be edited. For ESI file of a device, the PDOs and PDO contents for option have been defined and some PDO contents are allowed to be edited by users themselves as defined in ESI.

Select the Outputs

Name	Type	Index
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1600 1st RxPDO Mapping (exclu		
Control Word	UINT	16#6040:00
Target Position	DINT	16#607A:00
Target Velocity	DINT	16#60FF:00
Touch Probe Function	UINT	16#60B8:00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 16#1601 2nd RxPDO Mapping		
Control Word	UINT	16#6040:00
Target Position	DINT	16#607A:00
Target Velocity	DINT	16#60FF:00
Target Torque	INT	16#6071:00
Touch Probe Function	UINT	16#60B8:00
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1602 3rd RxPDO Mapping (exclu		
Control Word	UINT	16#6040:00
Target Position	DINT	16#607A:00
Target Velocity	DINT	16#60FF:00
Target Torque	INT	16#6071:00
Mode Of Operation	SINT	16#6060:00
Touch Probe Function	UINT	16#60B8:00
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1603 4th RxPDO Mapping (exclu		
Control Word	UINT	16#6040:00
Target Position	DINT	16#607A:00
Target Velocity	DINT	16#60FF:00
Target Torque	INT	16#6071:00
Mode Of Operation	SINT	16#6060:00
Positive torque limit	UINT	16#60E0:00
Negative torque limit	UINT	16#60E1:00

Select the Inputs

Name	Type	Index
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1A00 1st TxPDO Mapping (e		
Status Word	UINT	16#6041:00
Actual Position	DINT	16#6064:00
Velocity actual value	DINT	16#606C:00
Touch Probe Status	UINT	16#60B9:00
Touch Probe Pos1 Pos Value	DINT	16#60BA:00
Digital Inputs	UDINT	16#60FD:00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 16#1A01 2nd TxPDO Mapping		
Status Word	UINT	16#6041:00
Actual Position	DINT	16#6064:00
Velocity actual value	DINT	16#606C:00
Actual Torque	INT	16#6077:00
Touch Probe Status	UINT	16#60B9:00
Touch Probe Pos1 Pos Value	DINT	16#60BA:00
Digital Inputs	UDINT	16#60FD:00
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1A02 3rd TxPDO Mapping (e		
Status Word	UINT	16#6041:00
Actual Position	DINT	16#6064:00
Velocity actual value	DINT	16#606C:00
Actual Torque	INT	16#6077:00
Mode Of Operation Display	SINT	16#6061:00
Touch Probe Status	UINT	16#60B9:00
Touch Probe Pos1 Pos Value	DINT	16#60BA:00
Digital Inputs	UDINT	16#60FD:00
<input type="checkbox"/> 16#1A03 4th TxPDO Mapping (e		
Status Word	UINT	16#6041:00

If outputs of the device are activated here (for writing), these outputs can be assigned to project variables in the EtherCAT I/O Mapping window. And if inputs of the device are activated here (for reading), these inputs can be assigned to project variables in the EtherCAT I/O Mapping window. It takes more PLC system resources, if you use more PDOs.

- **Startup Parameters**

The table shows the commands which have been defined by default in ESI file when the master will read and write values to the slave in the specific status of EtherCAT network operation. Users can add or reduce or modify commands in the table.

Function Button	Description
Add	By specifying new index/subindex entries, a new object can be added to the SDO that is not yet described in the EDS file. This is useful if only an incomplete object directory or none at all is present.
Edit	In this window you can change the parameters of the SDO before the SDO is added to the configuration.
Move Up	Moves the selected line upwards by one line
Move Down	Moves the selected line downwards by one line

General	<div> <div>+</div> Add <div>✎</div> Edit <div>✕</div> Delete <div>↕</div> Move Up <div>↕</div> Move Down </div>
Process Data	
Startup Parameters	
EtherCAT I/O Mapping	
EtherCAT IEC Objects	
Status	
Information	

Line	Index:Subindex	Name	Value	Bit Length	Abort on Error	Jump to Line on Error	Next Line	Comment
1	16#0000:16#00	16#0000:16#00	0	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
2	16#6060:16#00	Op mode	8	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Op mode
3	16#2119:16#00	DRV's Parameter P1-25	0	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
4	16#1603:16#00	4th Receive PDO Mapping	0	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
5	16#1A02:16#00	3rd Transmit PDO Mapping	0	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
6	16#2104:16#00	DRV's Parameter P1-04	0	16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
7	16#2006:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-06	0	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Interpolati
8	16#6098:16#00	Homing method	35	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
9	16#60C2:16#01	Interpolation time period	2	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Interpolati
10	16#609A:16#00	Homing acceleration	100	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
11	16#6099:16#01	Speed during search for switch	100	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
12	16#1C13:16#00	TxPDO assign	0	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	
13	16#6099:16#02	Speed during search for zero	20	32	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	

Click **Add** button to open the **Select Item Object Directory** window. And select the parameter that you'd like to add and then click **OK** to add the item in.

Select Item from Object Directory

Index:Subindex	Name	Flags	Type	Default
16#1A01:16#00	2nd Transmit PDO Mapping			
16#1A02:16#00	3rd Transmit PDO Mapping			
16#1A03:16#00	4th Transmit PDO Mapping			
16#1C12:16#00	RxPDO assign			
16#1C13:16#00	TxPDO assign			
16#1C32:16#00	SM output parameter			
16#1C33:16#00	SM input parameter			
16#2001:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-01	RW	UINT	
16#2002:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-02	RW	UINT	
16#2003:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-03	RW	UINT	
16#2004:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-04	RW	UDINT	
16#2005:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-05	RW	UDINT	
16#2006:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-06	RW	UDINT	
16#2007:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-07	RW	UDINT	
16#2011:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-17	RW	UINT	
16#2012:16#00	DRV's Parameter P0-18	RW	UINT	

Name

DRV's Parameter P0-01

Index: 16#

2001

Bit length

16

SubIndex: 16#

0

Value

0

☐ Byte array

OK

Cancel

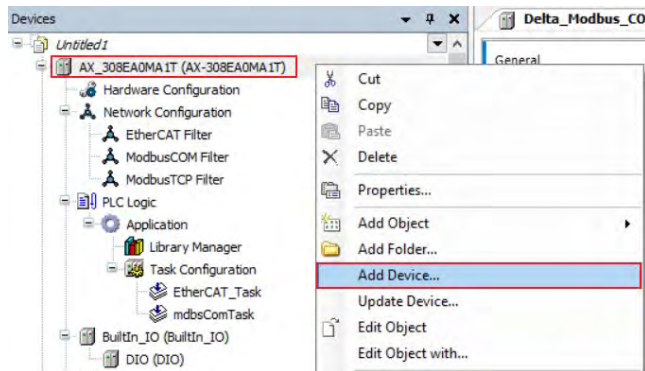
9.2 Introduction to Modbus Serial Communication

9.2.1 Modbus Serial Port

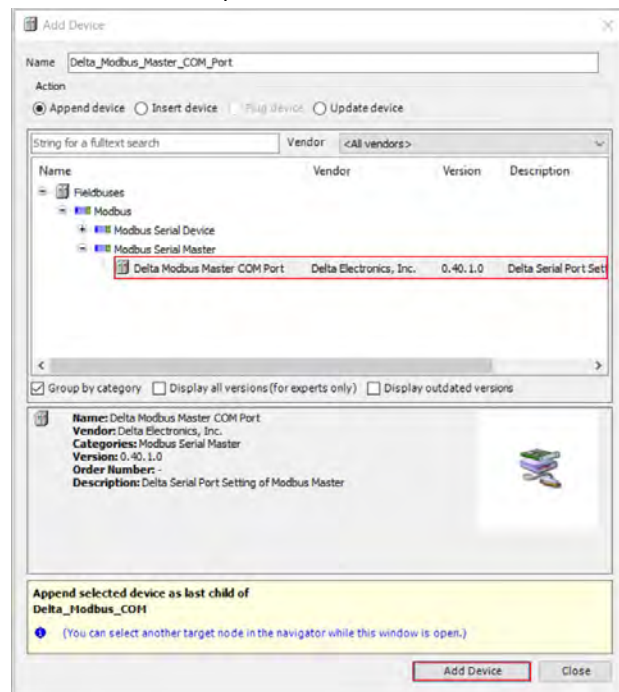
DIADesigner-AX supports the following Modbus network types, including one RS-232 and one RS-485. Each Modbus Serial Port allows one master. A maximum of 32 slaves can be attached to a master. But since RS-232 has no multipoint capability, only point-to-point connection is possible. And only the FIRST slave can communicate with the master. Since RS-485 has multipoint capability, RS-485 does NOT have such limitations. Follow the below section to set up the basic settings for communication via the serial port for the Modbus serial port.

9.2.1.1 Adding Delta Modbus COM

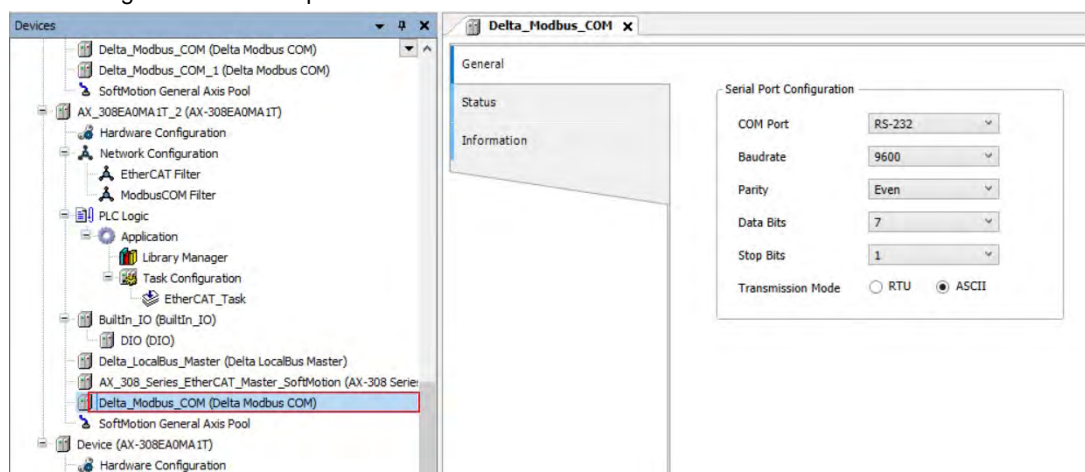
1. Right-click the PLC in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



2. Find **Delta Modbus COM** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus Serial Port -> Delta Modbus COM) and then double-click it or click **Add Device** to add this port in.



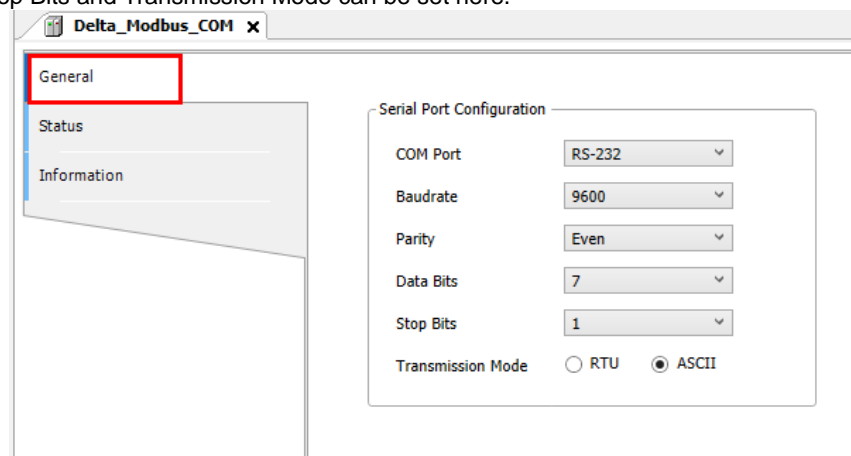
- Find the added port **Delta_Modbus_COM (Delta Modbus COM)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.2.1.2 Setting up Delta Modbus COM

■ General

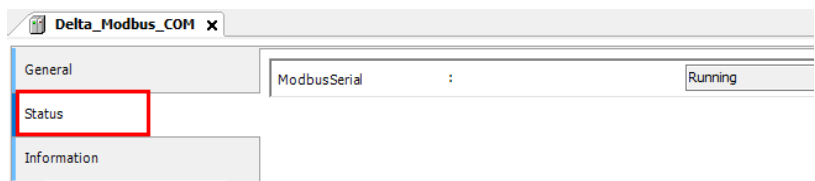
Here you can configure Serial Port Parameters. Settings include COM Port (RS-232 /RS-485), Baudrate, Parity, Data Bits, Stop Bits and Transmission Mode can be set here.



Item	Description
COM Port	Communication interface: RS-232/RS-485
Baudrate	The communications speed in bits per second (bps): 9600/19200/38400/57600/115200
Parity	None/Odd/Event
Data Bits	7/8 (when the transmission mode is RTU, you need to set the data bits to 8)
Stop Bits	1 bit/2bits
Transmission Mode	RTU/ASCII

■ **Status**

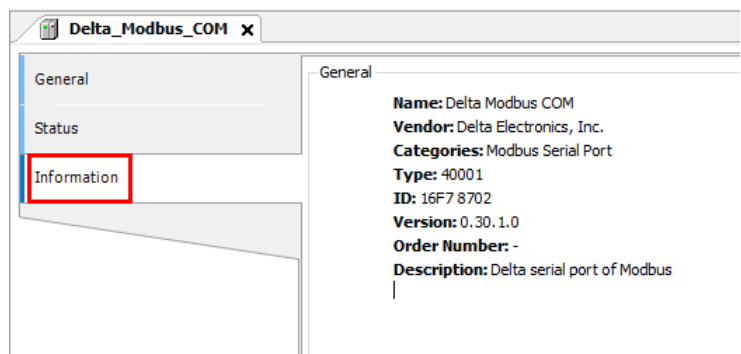
Here you can find the device status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



Item	Description
Modbus Serial	The status of Modbus Serial Communication

■ **Information**

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

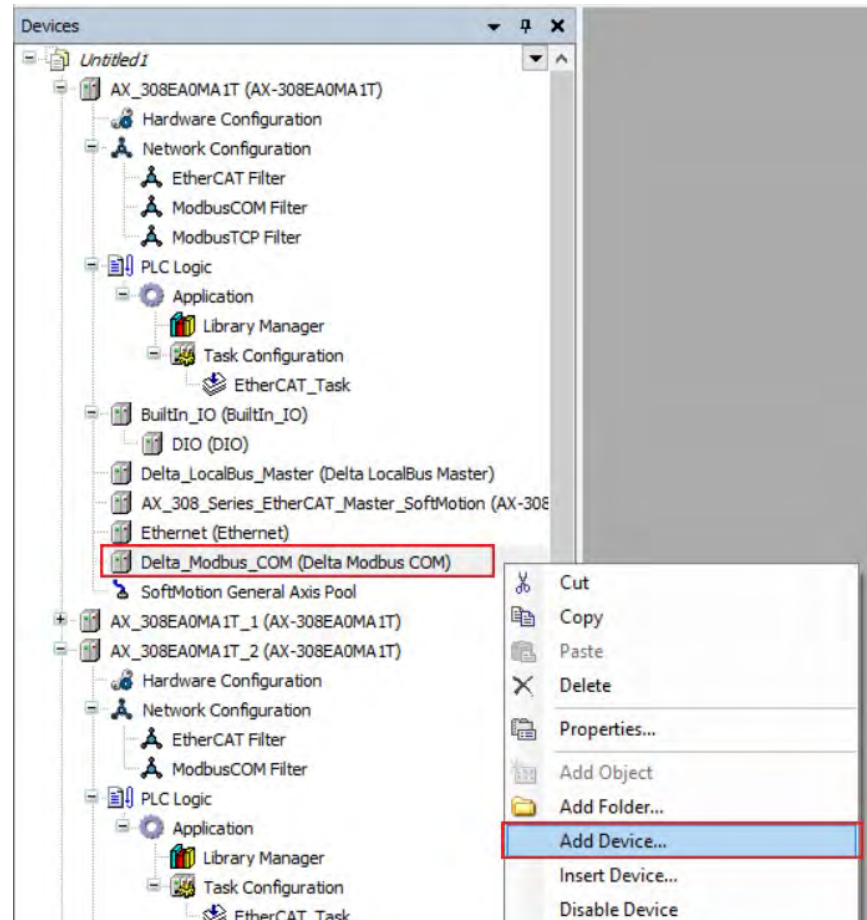


9.2.2 Modbus Serial Master

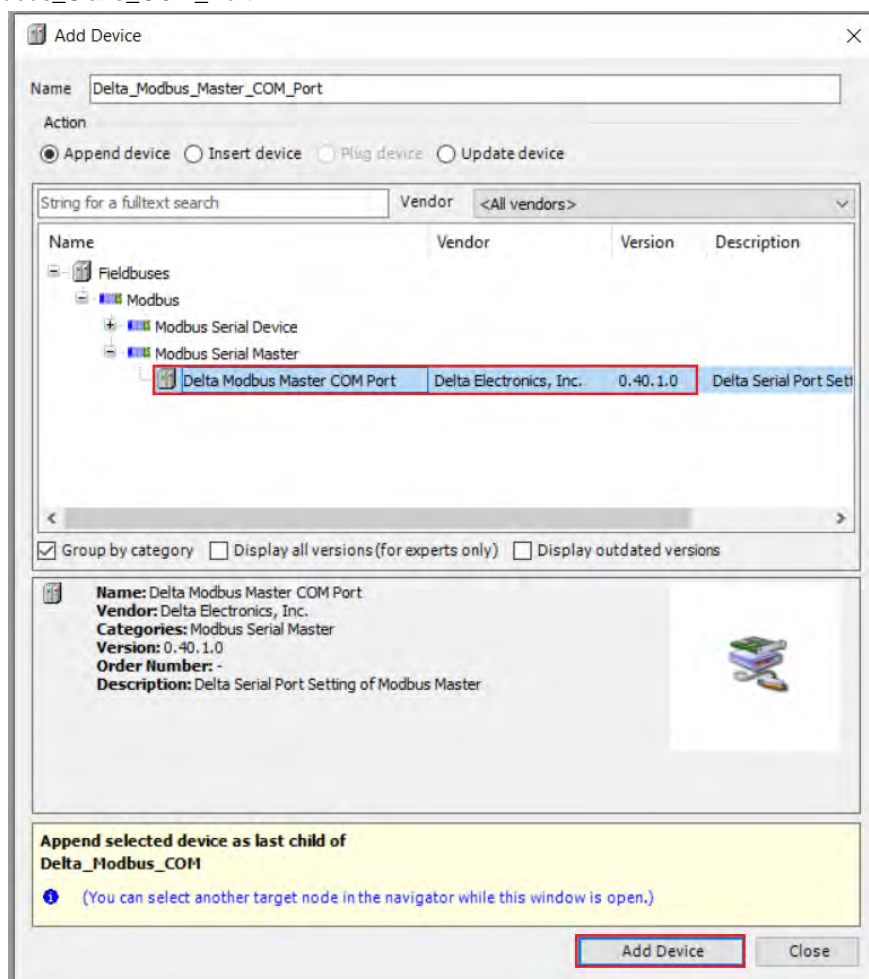
AX-3 Series PLC can act as a Modbus Serial Master, after you have created Modbus Master COM port and Modbus Slave COM port. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus Serial Master.

9.2.2.1 Adding Delta Modbus Master/Slave COM

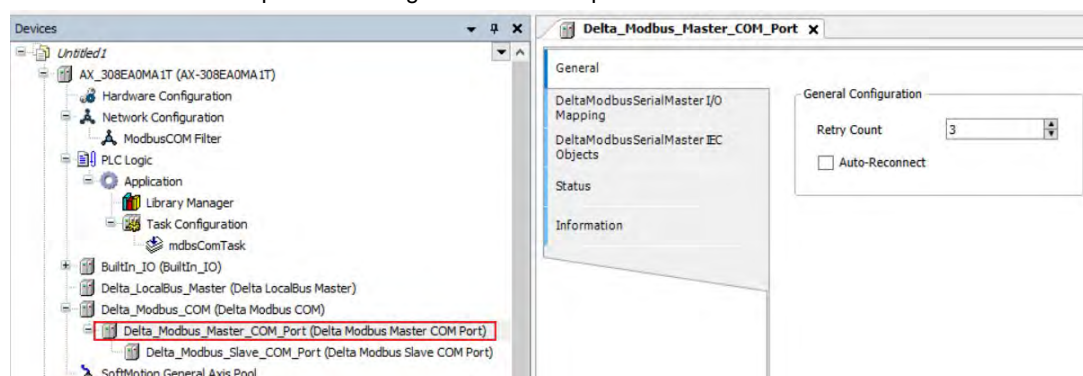
1. Right-click the created Delta_Modbus_COM (Delta Modbus COM) in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



- Find and double-click **Delta Modbus Master COM Port** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus Serial Master -> Delta Modbus Master COM Port) or click **Add Device** to add this port in. You can only add one Master COM Port. After you added one master, the other added devices are slave ports: Delta_Modbus_Master_COM_Port, the Delta_Modbus_Slave_COM_Port.



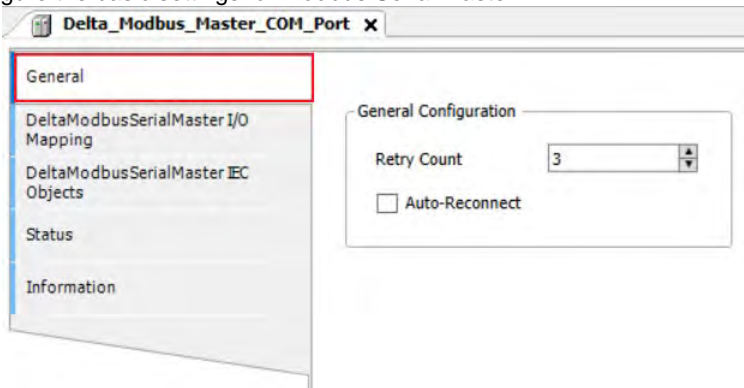
- Find the added port **Delta_Modbus_Master_COM_Port** (Delta Modbus Master COM Port) in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.2.2.2 Setting up Delta Modbus Master COM

■ General

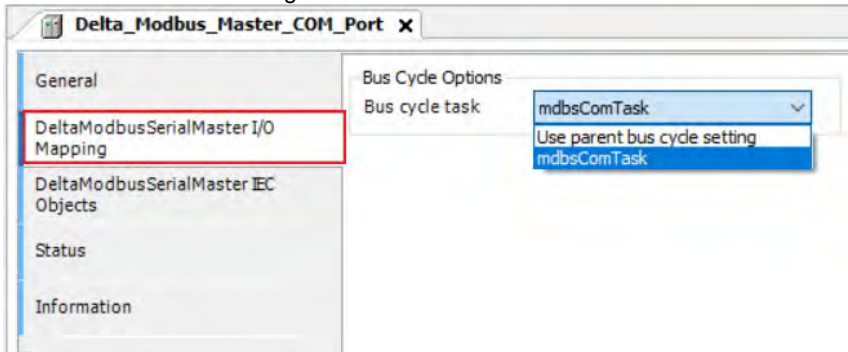
Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Serial Master.



Item	Description
Retry Count	Set up the number of times for the COM port to reconnect if the connection is lost.
Auto-Reconnect	Enable this option to have this port to reconnect automatically if an error occurs or connection timeout occurs.

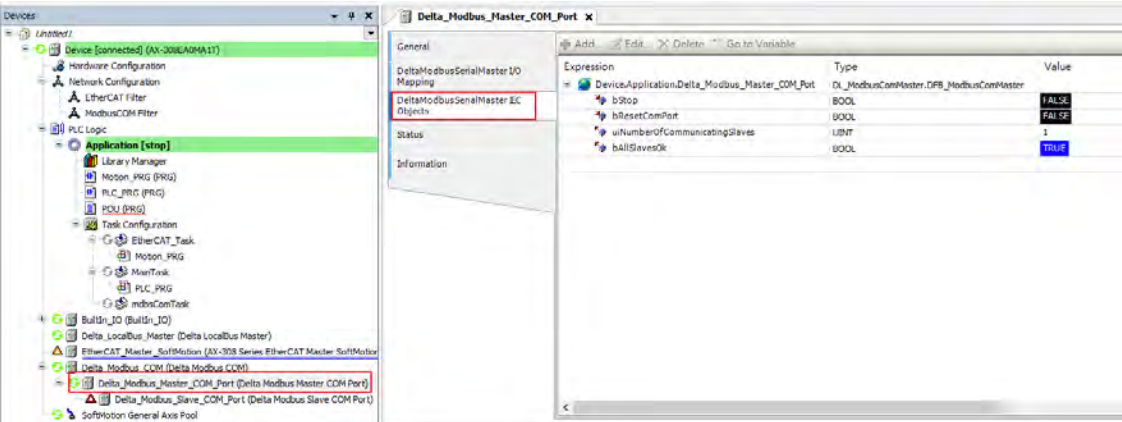
■ Delta Modbus Serial Master I/O Mapping

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. When the option “Use parent bus cycle setting is selected”, the system use the shortest cycle time as the bus cycle time. Refer to section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings for more information.



Delta Modbus Serial Master IEC Objects

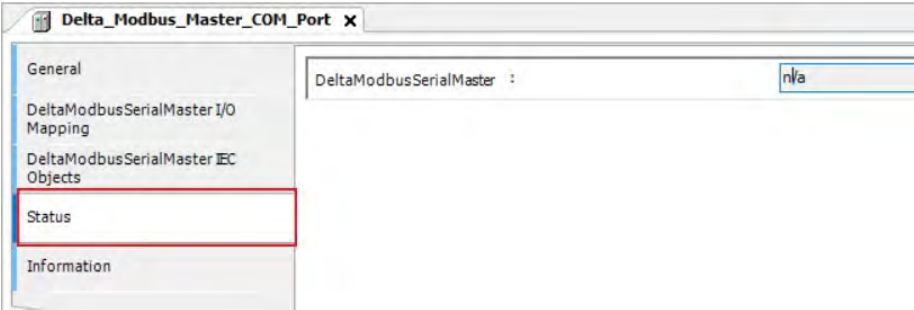
Here is the correspondings of the DFB_ModbusCOMMaster function block. You can check the status of Modbus Serial Master under this tab.



Expression	Description
bStop	Stop sending the Slave any new request
bResetComPort	Reset the COM port
uiNumberOfCommunicatingSlaves	The number of the Slaves that are in communication
bAllSlavesOk	The communication status of the Slave

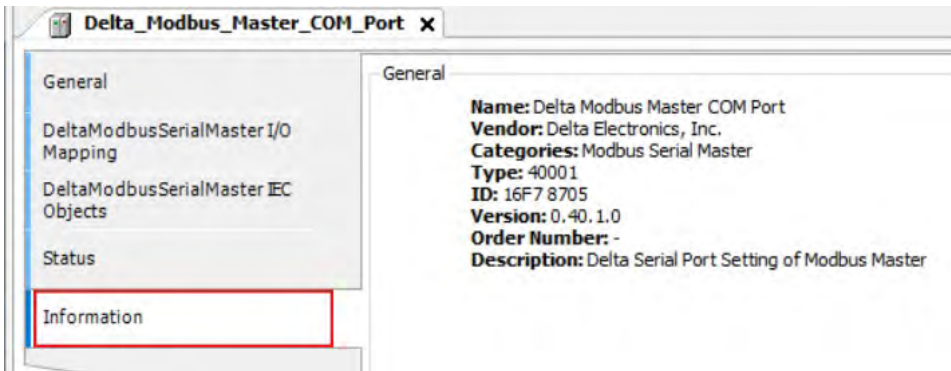
Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



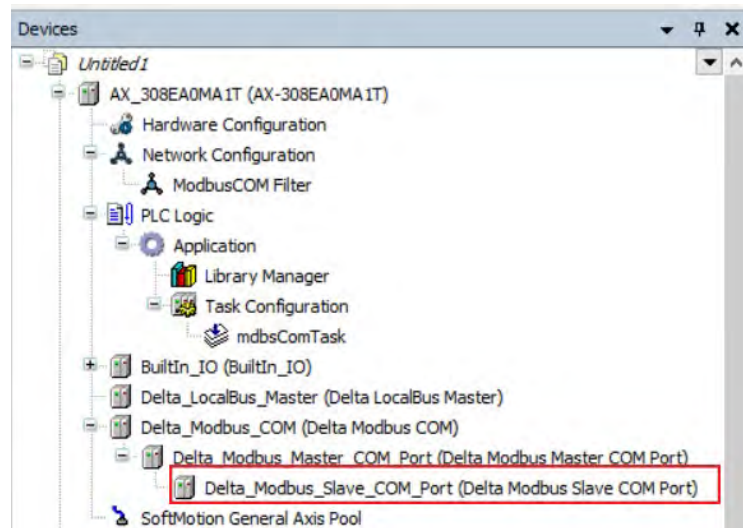
Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.



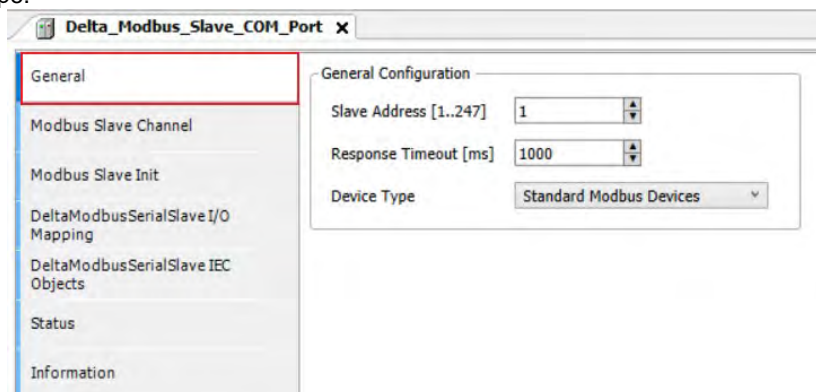
9.2.2.3 Setting up Delta Modbus Slave COM

In the tree view, find the added port **Delta_Modbus_Slave_COM_Port (Delta Modbus Slave COM Port)**. Double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



■ General

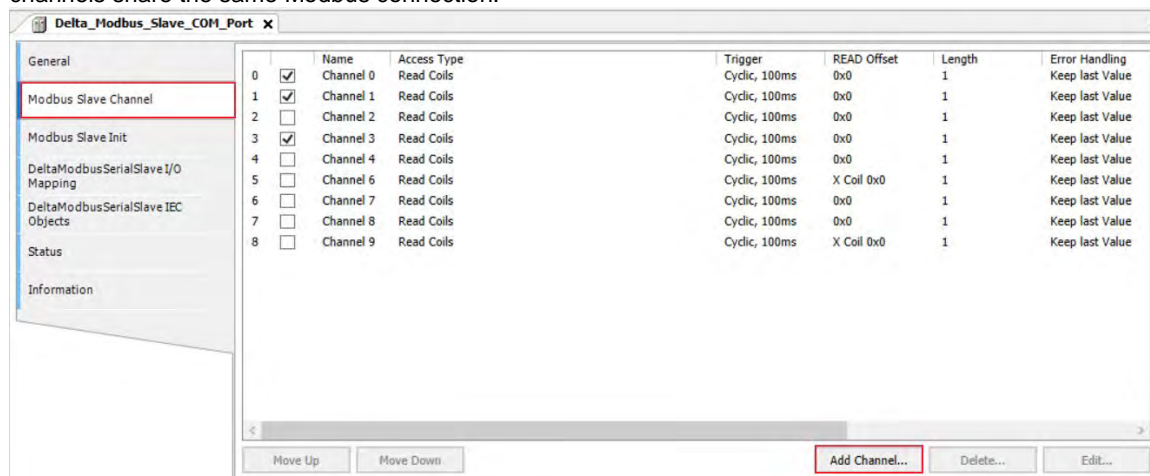
Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Serial Slave, such as Slave Address, Response Timeout and Device Type.



Item	Description
Slave Address	Address of a serial Modbus device (value between 1 and 247)
Response Timeout	Time interval for the master to wait for the response from the slave. This is especially configured for this slave node and overwrites the general response timeout setting of the respective master.
Device Type	You can select standard Modbus devices or Delta devices. If you select Delta devices, the system converts the protocol used into Modbus protocol automatically so that you do NOT need to refer to the register map for the conversion.

■ Modbus Slave Channel

Here you can define slave channels. Each channel represents a single Modbus request. You can create up to 10 channels for each slave. AX-3 Series PLC will send out Modbus request packets in chronological order. All channels share the same Modbus connection.



Click **Add Channel**, you can edit the channel before adding it in. The **Device Address** shows the Modbus protocol address whether the device type you selected is **Standard Modbus Device** or **Delta Devices** under the **General** tab. Since the system converts the protocol used into Modbus protocol automatically, you do NOT need to refer to the register map for the conversion.

Device Type : Standard Modbus Device

Modbus Channel

☐ Enable

Channel

Name: Channel 0

Access Type: Read Coils

Trigger: Cyclic 100 ms

Comment:

Read Register

Device Address: 0x0

Length: 1

Error Handling: Keep last Value

OK Cancel

Device Type : Delta AH Series

Modbus Channel

☐ Enable

Channel

Name: Channel 0

Access Type: Read Coils

Trigger: Cyclic 100 ms

Comment:

Read Register

Device Address: X Coil 0x0

Length: 1

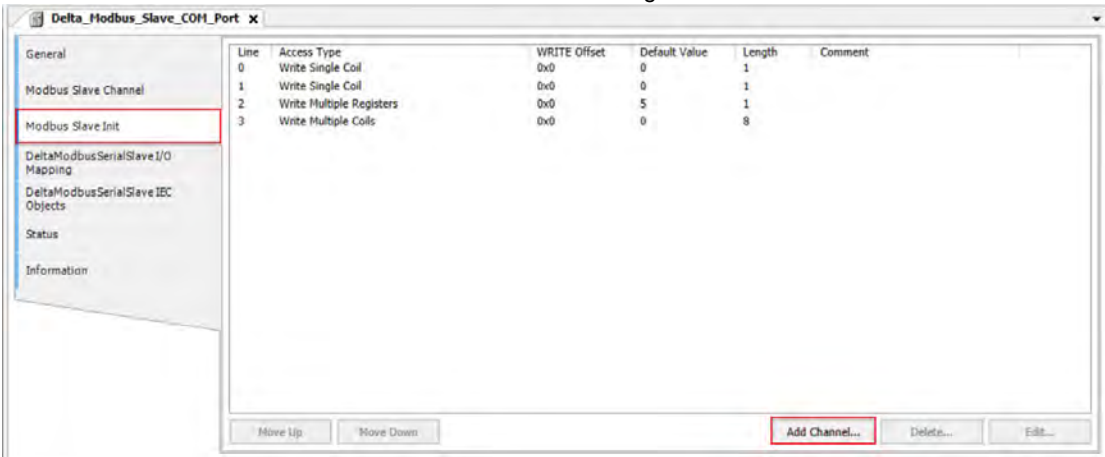
Error Handling: Keep last Value

OK Cancel

Item	Description	
Device Type	Standard Modbus Device	Delta Series Device
Enable	Activates this channel	
Name	Defines this channel name	
Access Type	Modbus function code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read coils (0x01) ● Read discrete inputs (0x02) ● Read holding registers (0x03) ● Read input registers (0x04) ● Read single coil (0x05) ● Write single register (0x06) ● Write multiple coils (0x0F) ● Write multiple registers (0x10) ● Read/Write multiple registers (0x17) 	Read/Write Registers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read coils ● Read registers ● Write coils ● Write registers <p>Note: PLC uses the corresponding Modbus function code according to the read/write register of the device type.</p>
Trigger	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. ● Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. ● Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusComChannel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. ● Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. ● Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusComChannel
Comment	Description of the channel	
Device Address	Modbus protocol address	Delta register address (will be converted into Modbus protocol in the background)
Length	Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 100 coils and 100 registers)	Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 256 coils and 100 registers)
Error Handling	What to do with the data in case of a communication error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set To ZERO ● Keep last value 	

■ Modbus Slave Init

After the Modbus connection between AX-3 Series PLC and the slaves is established, you can use **Add Channel** button to edit the Initialization Value of the Coil/Register.



Click **Add Channel**, you can edit the Access Type, Device Address, Length, Initialization Value and Comment.
Click OK to confirm the settings.

Initialization Value

Access Type: Write Multiple Registers

Device Address: 0x0

Length: 1

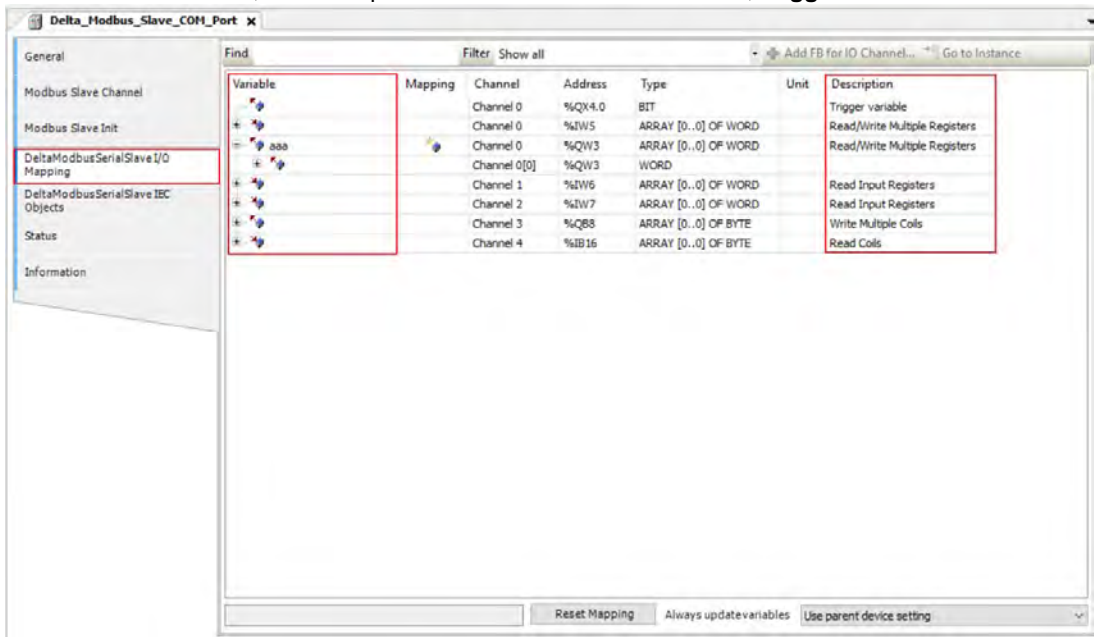
Initialization Value: 5

Comment:

OK Cancel

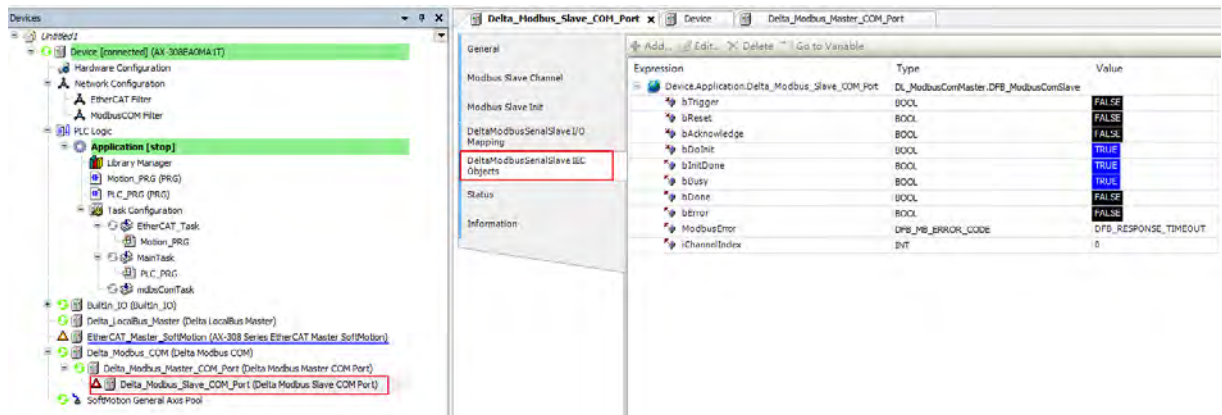
■ Modbus Generic Serial Slave I/O Mapping

After you have added channels under the tab of Modbus Slave Channel, you can find the variables and the set access types under this tab. Here you can define the variables for mapping. The descriptions here reflect what you have set for the **Access Type** in Modbus Slave Channel tab. When the **Trigger type** is set to **Rising edge** in Modbus Slave Channel, the description here adds one more condition, **Trigger variable**.



■ Delta Modbus Serial Slave IEC Objects

Here is the correspondings of the DFB_ModbusCOMMaster function block. You can check the status of Modbus Serial Slave under this tab.



Expression	Description
bTrigger	Trigger all Modbus channels at one time.
bReset	Re-establish the connection and reset bError and ModbusError when the connection status shows error. And this function is only available when the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled.
bAcknowledge	Re-establish the connection and the Modbus channel that showed error previously continues to execute the data transmission. And this function is only available when the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled.
bDoInit	Initialized the Slave
bInitDone	The initialization of the Slave is complete.
bBusy	This channel is in data transmission.
bDone	The data transmission via this channle is complete.
bError	Error occurs when this channels is in data transmission.
ModbusError	Record of the Modbus error
iChannelIndex	The number of the channel that is in execution.

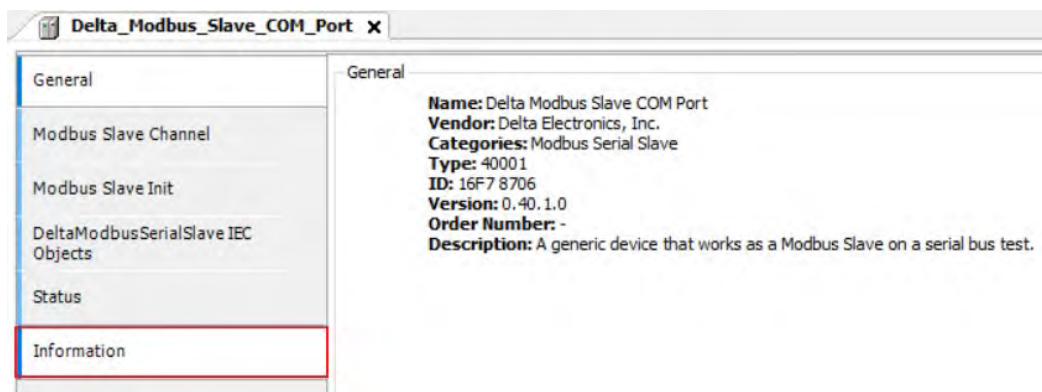
■ Status

Here you can find the Modbus Slave COM Port status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

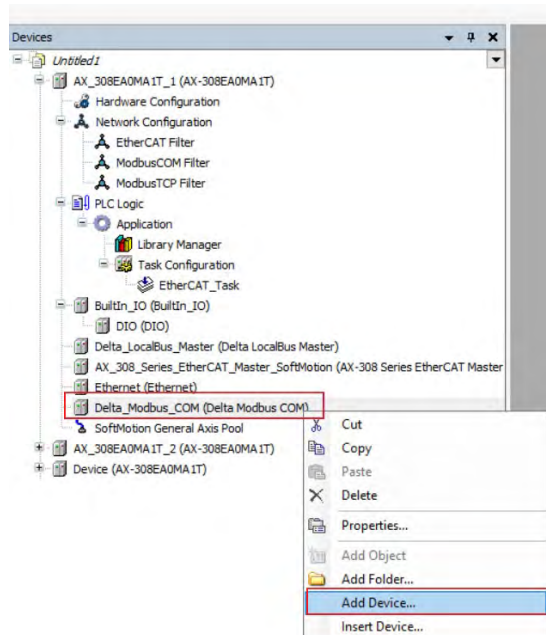


9.2.3 Modbus Serial Slave

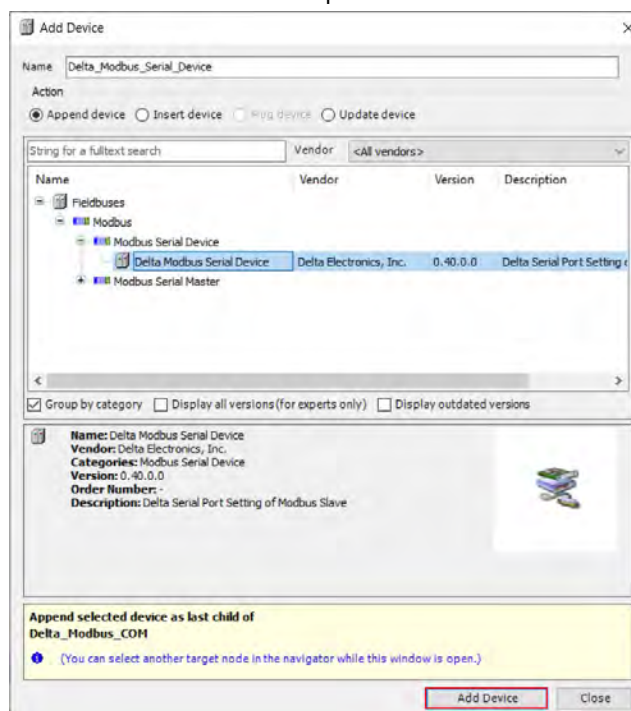
AX-3 Series PLC can act as a Modbus Serial Slave, after you add Modbus Serial Device in and set up the allowable areas for Coils/Register. If Modbus Serial Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus Serial Slave.

9.2.3.1 Adding a Modbus Serial Device

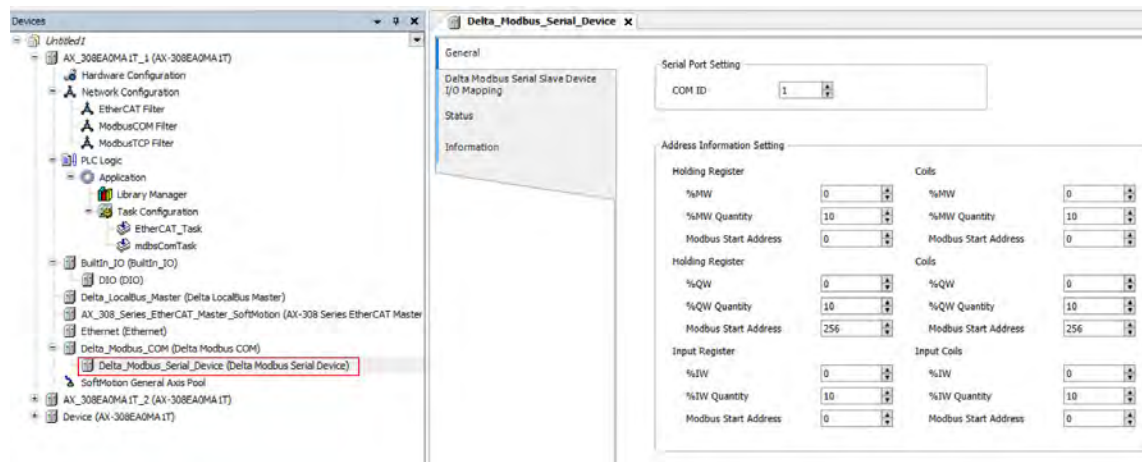
1. Right-click the created Delta_Modbus_COM (Delta Modbus COM) in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



2. Find and double-click **Delta Modbus Serial Device** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus Serial Master -> Delta Modbus Serial Device) or click **Add Device** to add this port in.



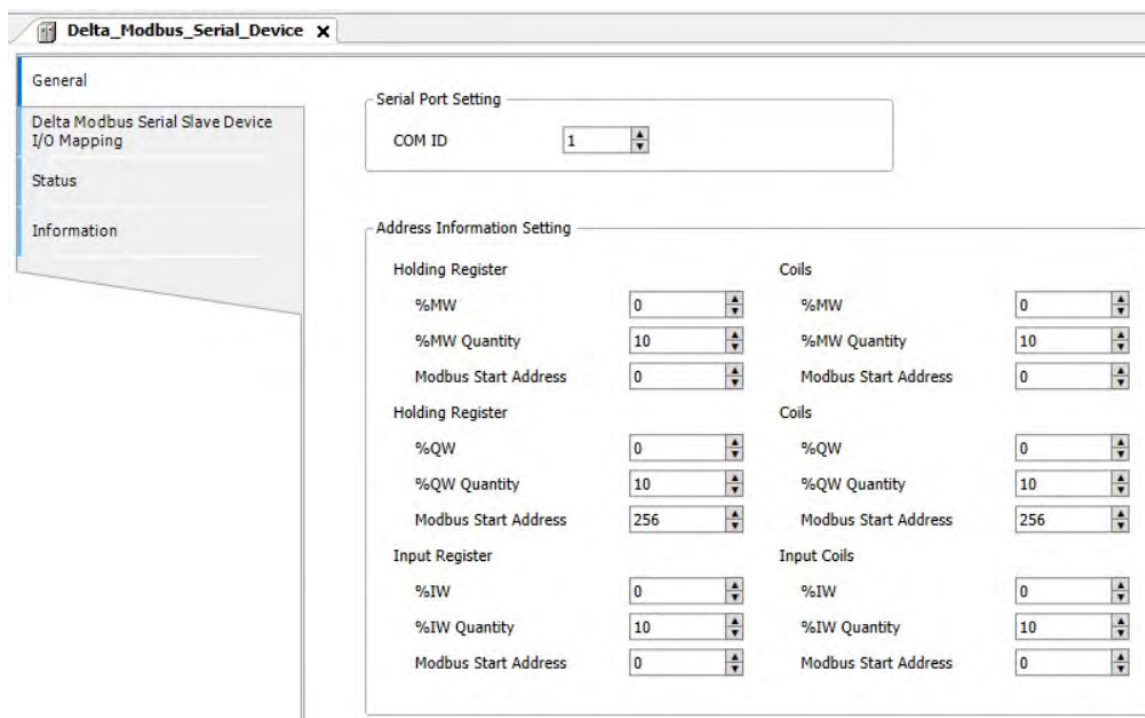
- Find the added port **Delta_Modbus_Serial_Device (Delta Modbus Serial Device)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.2.3.2 Setting up the Modbus Serial Device

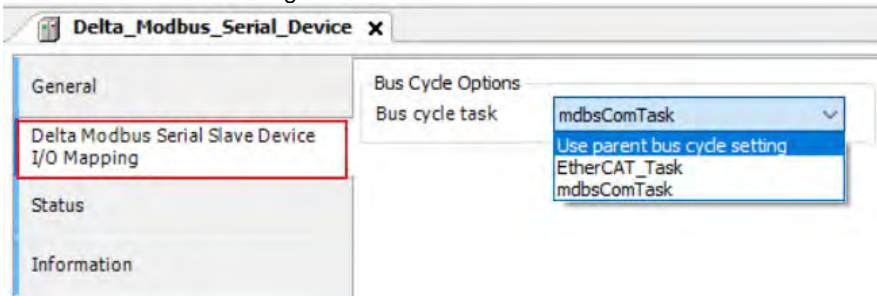
■ General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus Serial Device. Set up the allowable areas for Coils/Register. If Modbus Serial Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions.



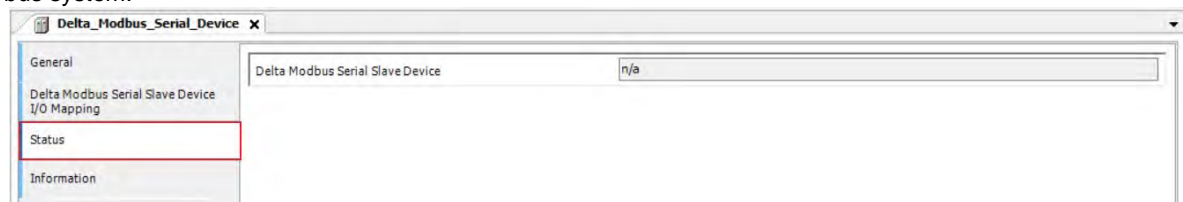
■ Delta Modbus Serial Slave I/O Mapping

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. When the option “Use parent bus cycle setting is selected”, the system use the shortest cycle time as the bus cycle time. Refer to section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings for more information.



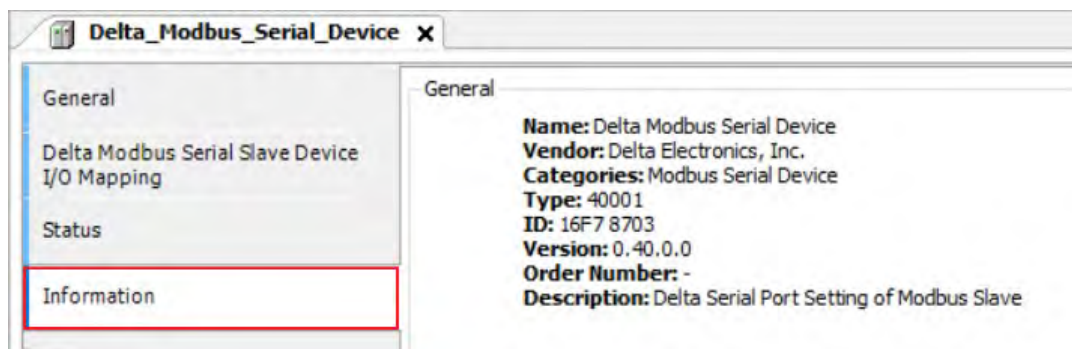
■ Status

Here you can find the Modbus Serial Slave Device status information, for example ‘Running’ or ‘Stopped’, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.



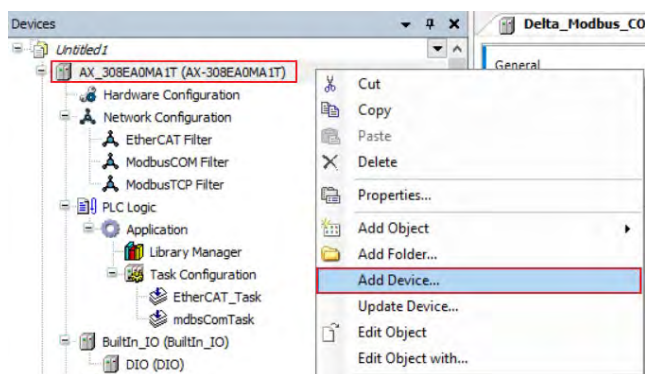
9.3 Introduction to Ethernet Communication

9.3.1 Ethernet Port

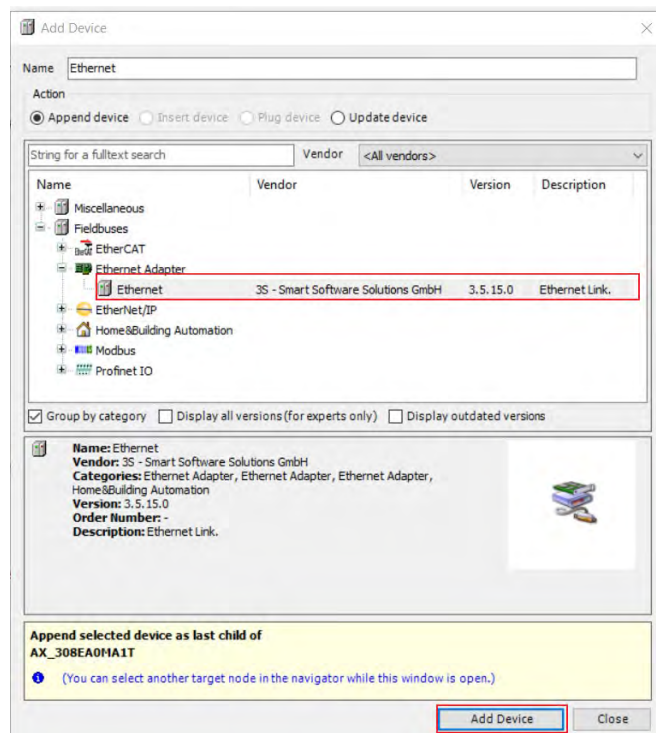
DIADesigner-AX supports the following Modbus network types, including Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP. Follow the below section to set up the basic settings for communication via the Ethernet Adapter.

9.3.1.1 Adding an Ethernet Adapter Device

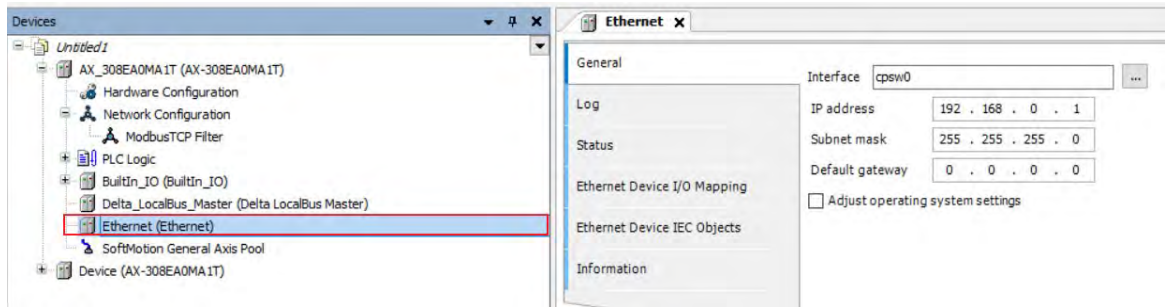
1. Right-click the PLC in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



2. Find and double-click **Ethernet** (Fieldbuses -> Ethernet Adapter -> Ethernet) or click **Add Device** to add this port in.



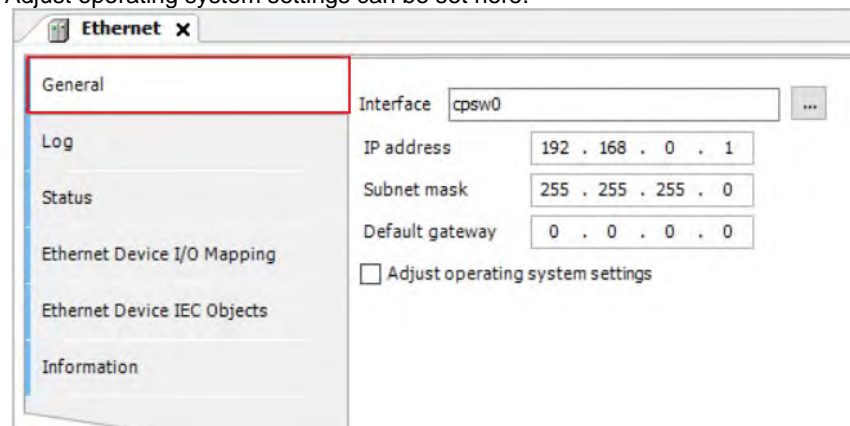
3. Find the added **Ethernet (Ethernet)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.3.1.2 Setting up the Ethernet

■ General

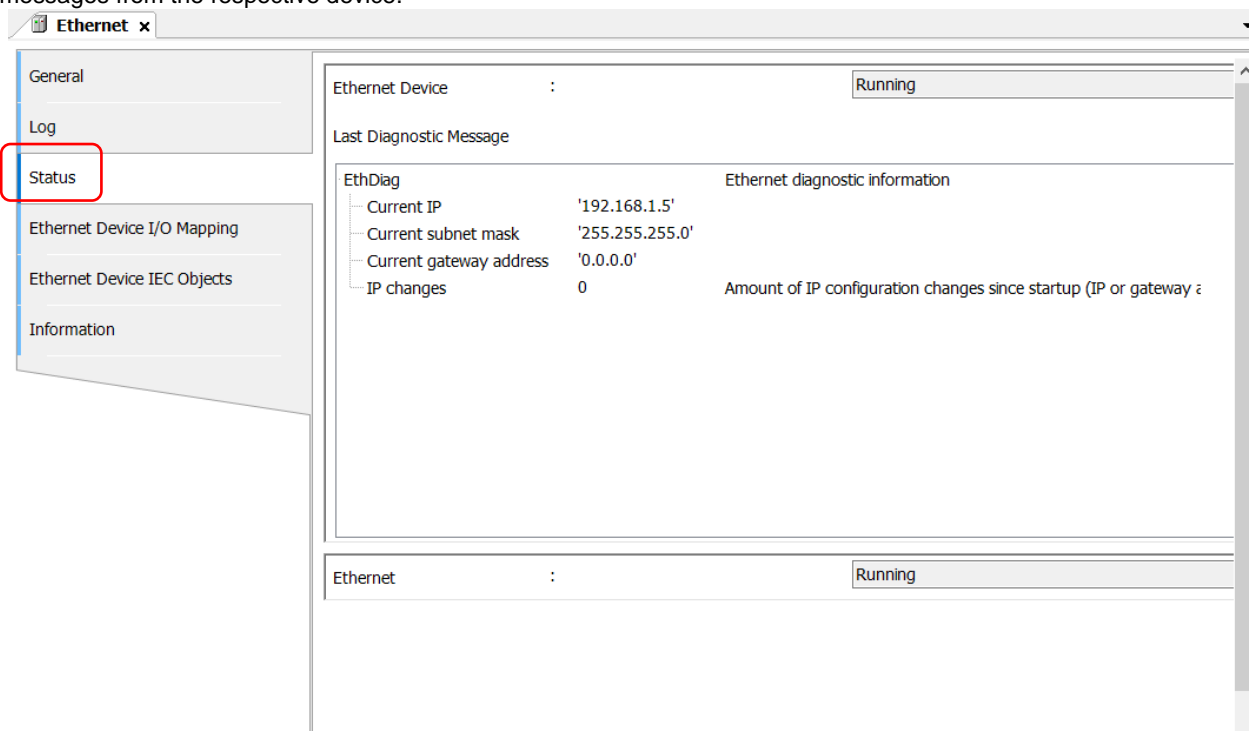
Here you can configure Ethernet Parameters. Settings include Interface, IP address, Subnet mask, Default gateway and Adjust operating system settings can be set here.



Item	Description
Interface	Current communication interface
IP address	Settings of the selected network interface
Subnet mask	
Default gateway	
Adjust operating system settings	The settings on the target system will be overwritten by the values above.

■ Status

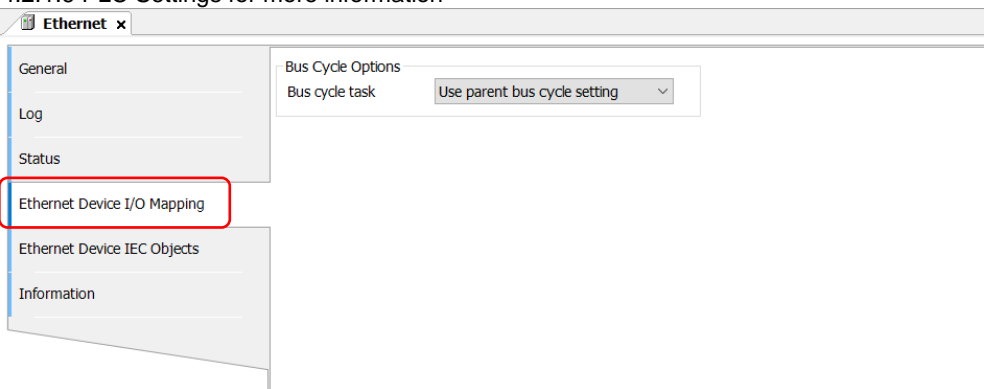
Here you can find the device status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device.



Item	Description
Ethernet Device	The status of Ethernet Communication
Last Diagnostic Message	Network diagnosis

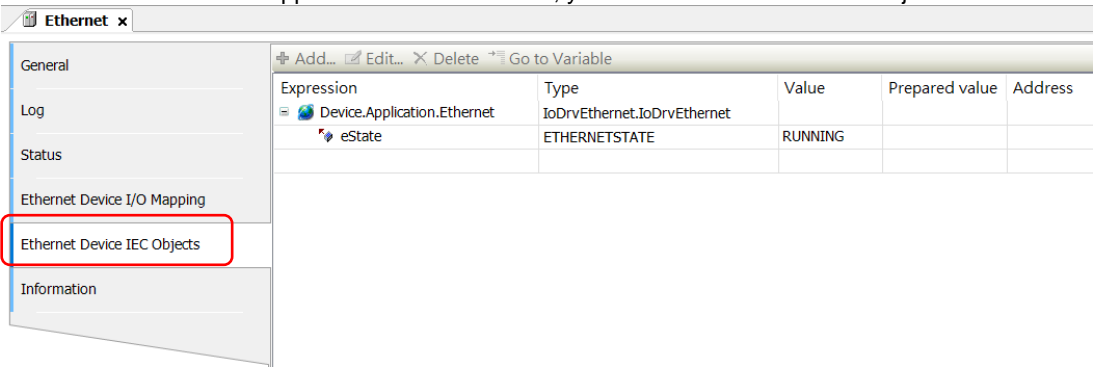
■ Ethernet Device I/O Mapping

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the communication time. When the option “Use parent bus cycle setting is selected”, the system use the shortest cycle time as the bus cycle time. Refer to section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings for more information



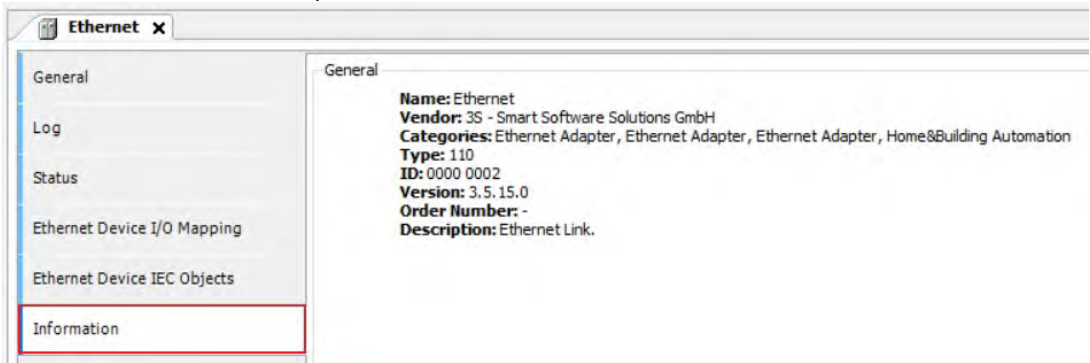
■ Ethernet Device IEC Objects

Here you can find the objects defined by Ethernet Adapter Device. “Objects” are listed that allow for access to the device from the IEC application. In online mode, you can use the table of IEC objects as a monitoring view.



■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

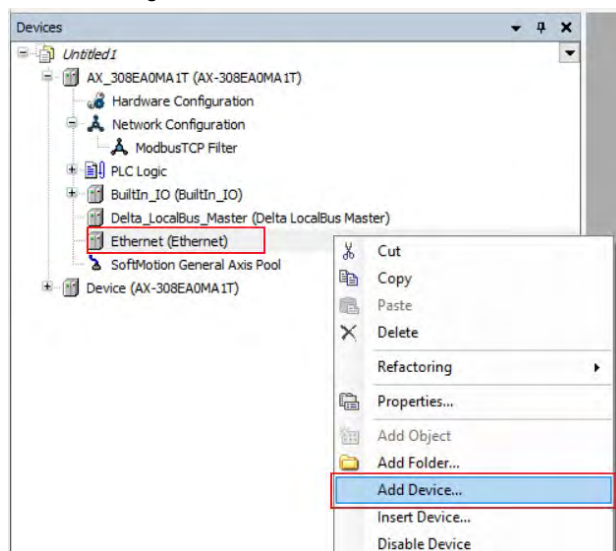


9.3.2 Modbus TCP Master (Client)

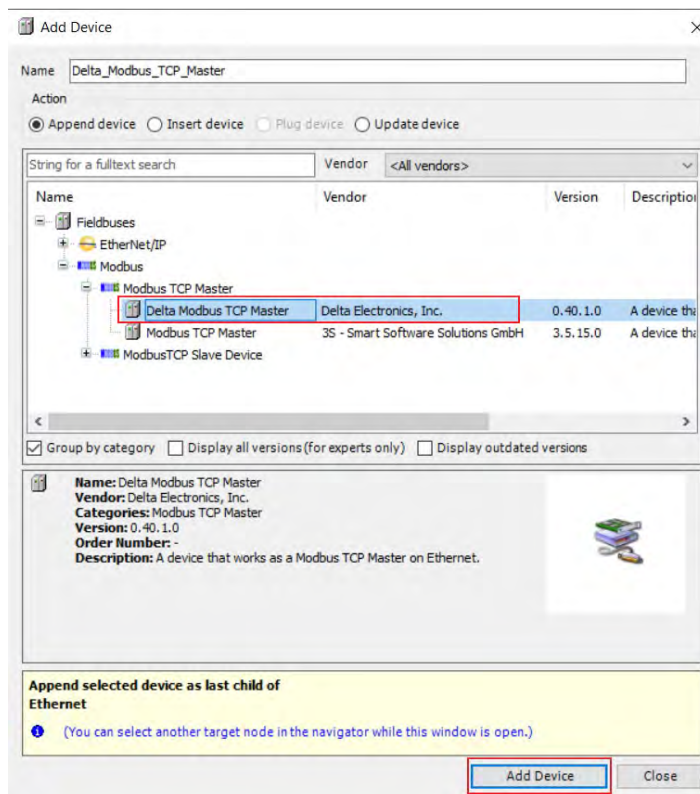
AX-3 Series PLC can act as a Modbus TCP Master, after you have created Modbus TCP Master and Modbus TCP Slave. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus TCP Master.

9.3.2.1 Adding a Modbus TCP Master/Slave

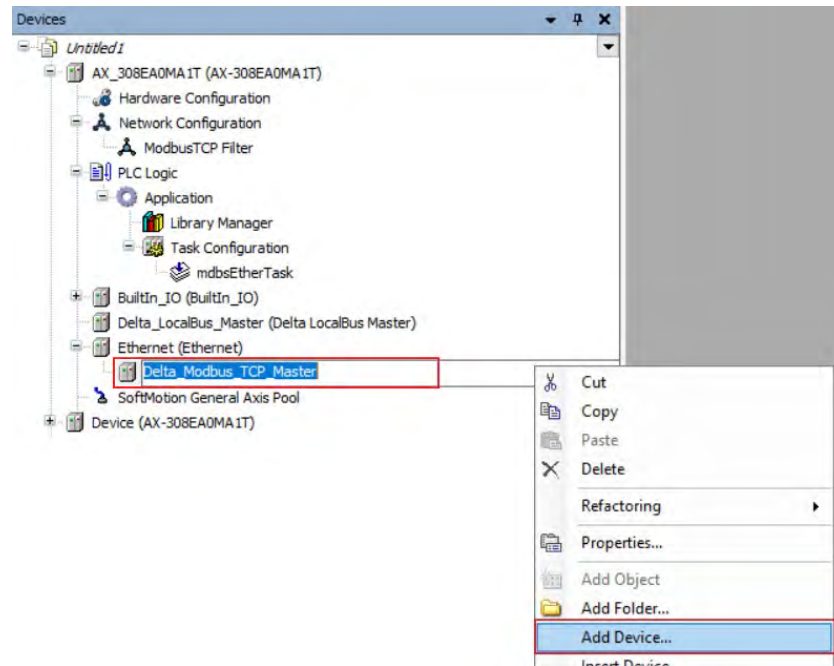
1. Right-click the **Ethernet (Ethernet)** node in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



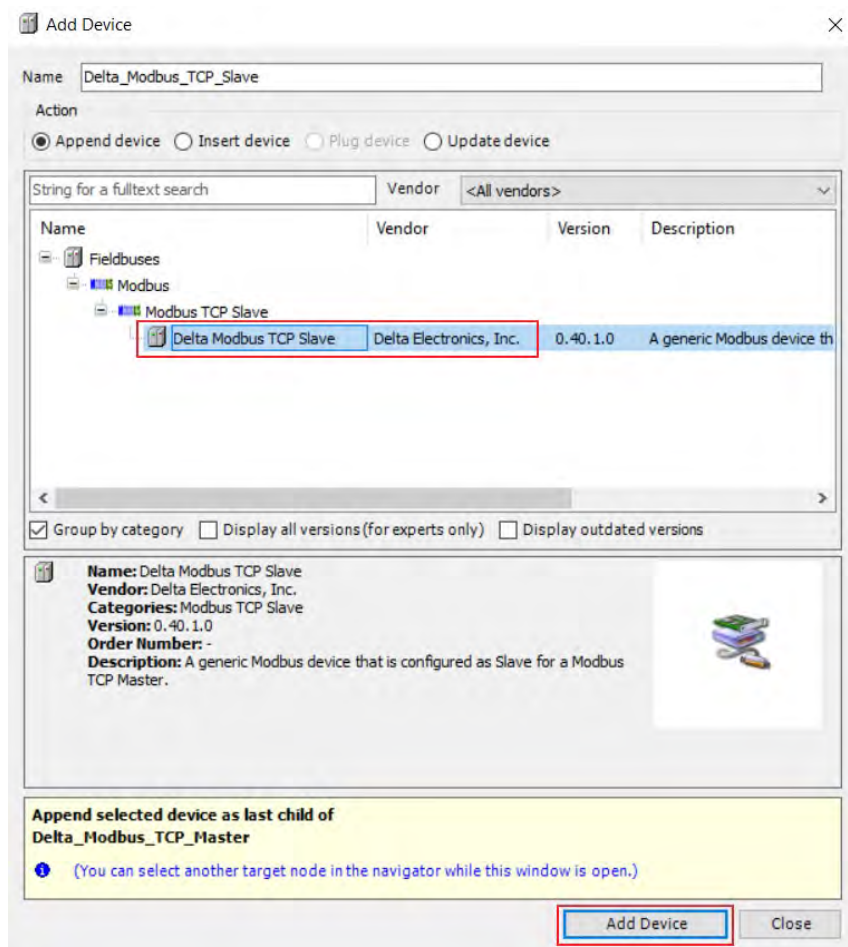
2. Find and double-click **Delta Modbus TCP Master** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus TCP Master -> Delta Modbus TCP Master) or click **Add Device** to add this port in. After that you can find **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Master** under the Ethernet node in the tree view.



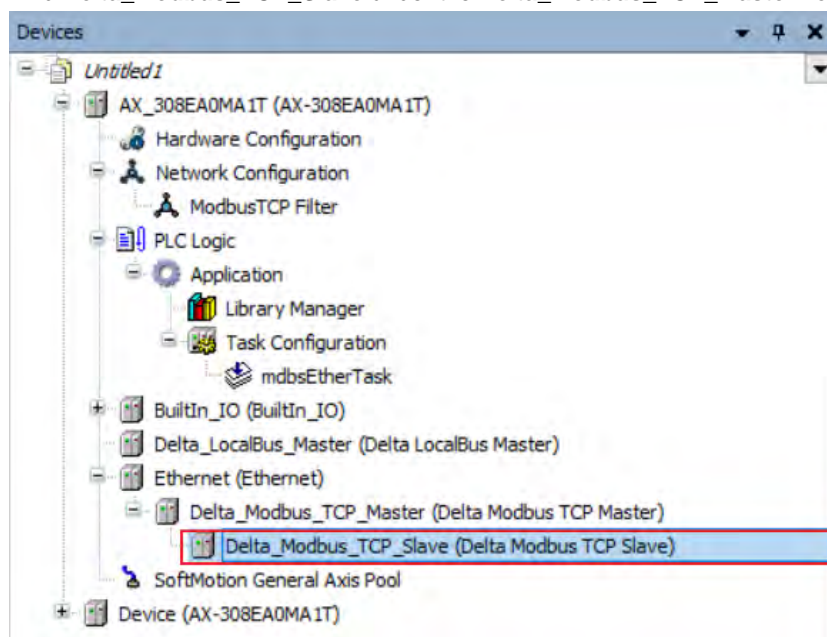
- Right-click **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Master** under the **Ethernet** node in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



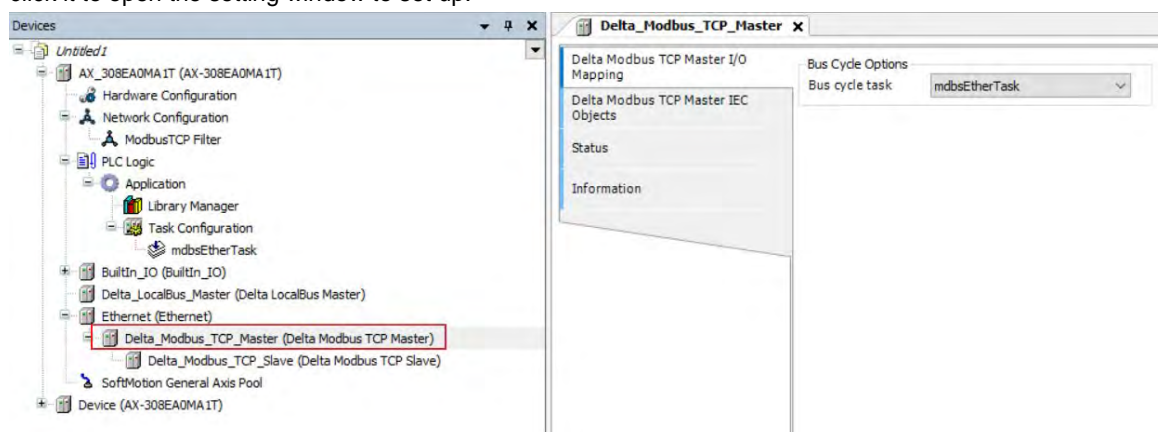
- Find and double-click **Delta Modbus TCP Slave** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus TCP Slave -> Delta Modbus TCP Slave) or click **Add Device** to add this port in.



After that you can find **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Slave** under the **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Master** node in the tree view.



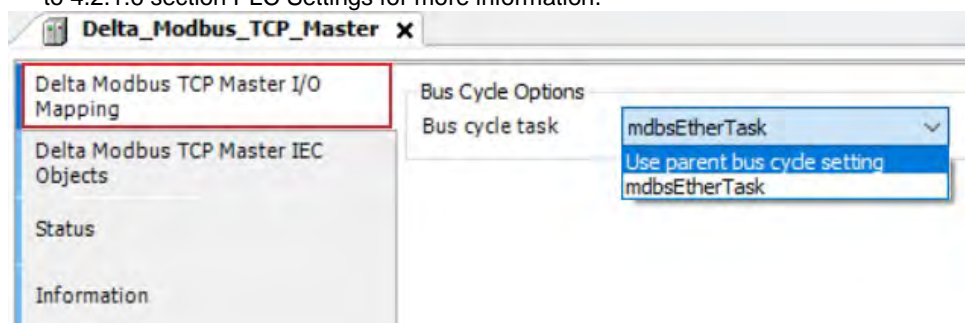
- Find the added port **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Master (Delta Modbus TCP Master)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.3.2.2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Master

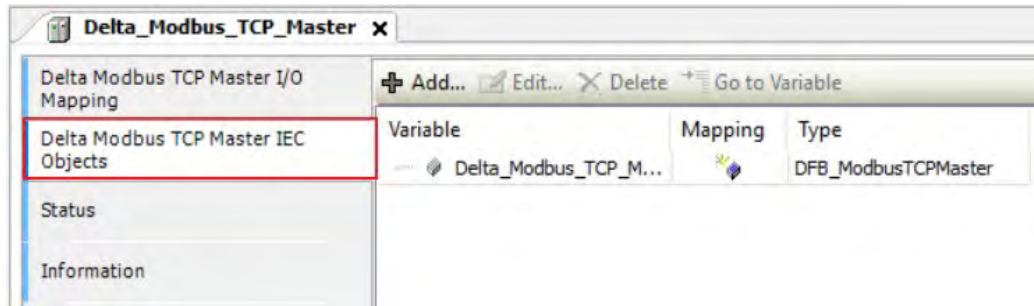
■ Delta Modbus TCP Master I/O Mapping

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. When the option "Use parent bus cycle setting is selected", the system use the shortest cycle time as the bus cycle time. Refer to 4.2.1.6 section PLC Settings for more information.



■ Delta Modbus TCP Master IEC Objects

You can check the status of Modbus TCP Master under this tab.



- bStop: TRUE => Stop sending Modbus TCP packets.
 - bSlaveError: TRUE => connection/communication with the Slave is abnormal
 - uiConnectedSlaves: the number of the connected Slaves
- EX: (ST programming language): Delta Modbus TCP Master.bStop:= TRUE;

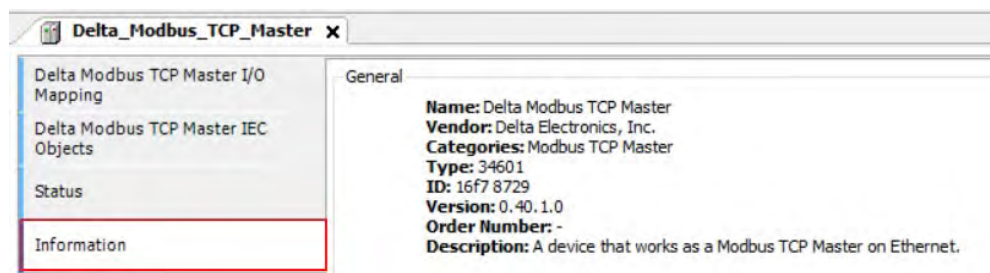
■ Status

Here you can find the device status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



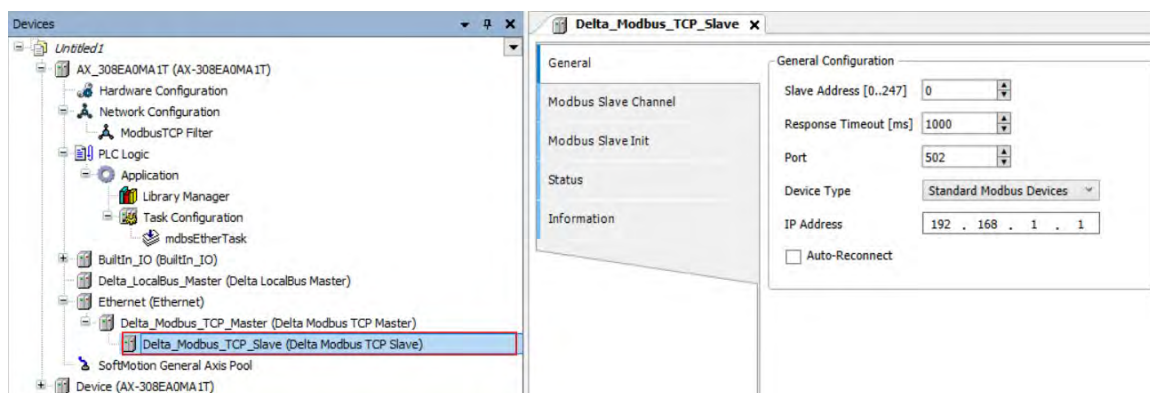
■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.



9.3.2.3 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave

1. In the tree view, find the **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Slave (Delta Modbus TCP Slave)** and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



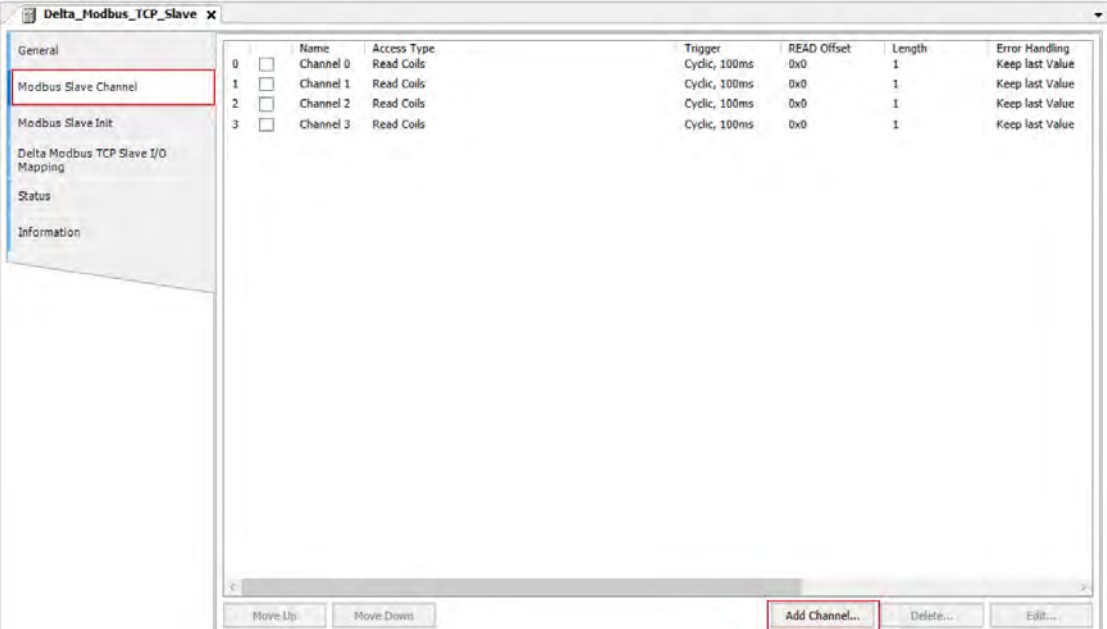
■ General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus TCP Slave, such as Slave Address, Response Timeout and Device Type.

Item	Description
Slave Address	Address of a serial Modbus device
Response Timeout	Time interval for the master to wait for the response from the slave. This is especially configured for this slave node and overwrites the general response timeout setting of the respective master.
Port	Port number
Device Type	You can select standard Modbus devices or Delta devices. If you select Delta devices, the system converts the protocol used into Modbus protocol automatically so that you do NOT need to refer to the register map for the conversion.
IP Address	Slave IP address
Auto-Reconnect	Enable this option to have this port to reconnect automatically if an error occurs or connection timeout occurs.

■ **Modbus Slave Channel**

Here you can define slave channels. Each channel represents a single Modbus request. You can create up to 10 channels for each slave. AX-3 Series PLC will send out Modbus request packets in chronological order. All channels share the same Modbus TCP connection.



Click **Add Channel**, you can edit the channel before adding it in. The **Device Address** shows the Modbus protocol address whether the device type you selected is **Standard Modbus Device** or **Delta Devices** under the **General** tap. Since the system converts the protocol used into Modbus protocol automatically, you do NOT need to refer to the register map for the conversion.

Device Type : Standard Modbus Device

Modbus Channel

☐ Enable

Channel

Name

Channel 0

Access Type

Read Coils

Trigger

Cyclic

100

ms

Comment

Read Register

Device Address

0x0

Length

1

Error Handling

Keep last Value

OK

Cancel

Device Type : Delta AH Series

Modbus Channel

☐ Enable

Channel

Name

Channel 0

Access Type

Read Coils

Trigger

Cyclic

100

ms

Comment

Read Register

Device Address

X Coil

0x0

Length

1

Error Handling

Keep last Value

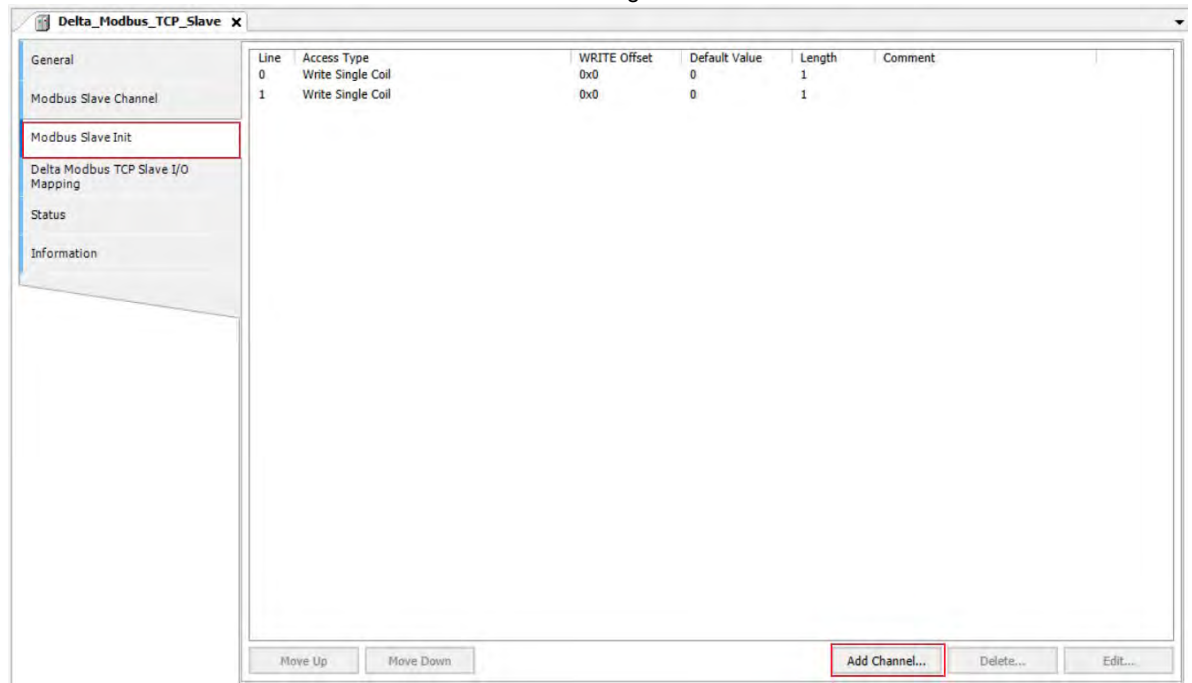
OK

Cancel

Item	Description	
Device Type	Standard Modbus Device	Delta Series Device
Enable	Activates this channel	
Name	Defines this channel name	
Access Type	Modbus function code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read coils (0x01) ● Read discrete inputs (0x02) ● Read holding registers (0x03) ● Read input registers (0x04) ● Read single coil (0x05) ● Write single register (0x06) ● Write multiple coils (0x0F) ● Write multiple registers (0x10) ● Read/Write multiple registers (0x17) 	Read/Write Registers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Read coils ● Read registers ● Write coils ● Write registers Note: PLC uses the corresponding Modbus function code according to the read/write register of the device type.
Trigger	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. ● Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. ● Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusTCPChannel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cyclic: The request occurs periodically. ● Rising edge: The request occurs as a reaction to a rising edge of the Boolean trigger variables. The trigger variable is defined in the tab I/O Mapping. ● Application: The Modbus request is triggered by DFB_ModbusTCPChannel
Comment	Description of the channel	
Device Address	Modbus protocol address	Delta register address (will be converted into Modbus protocol in the background)
Length	Number of the register to be read/written to.	Number of the register to be read/written to. (up to 256 coils and 100 registers)
Error Handling	What to do with the data in case of a communication error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set To ZERO ● Keep last value 	

■ Modbus Slave Init

After the Modbus connection between AX-3 Series PLC and the slaves is established, you can use **Add Channel** button to edit the Initialization Value of the Coil/Register.



Click **Add Channel**, you can edit the Access Type, Device Address, Length, Initialization Value and Comment. Click OK to confirm the settings.

Initialization Value

Access Type: Write Multiple Registers

Device Address: 0x0

Length: 1

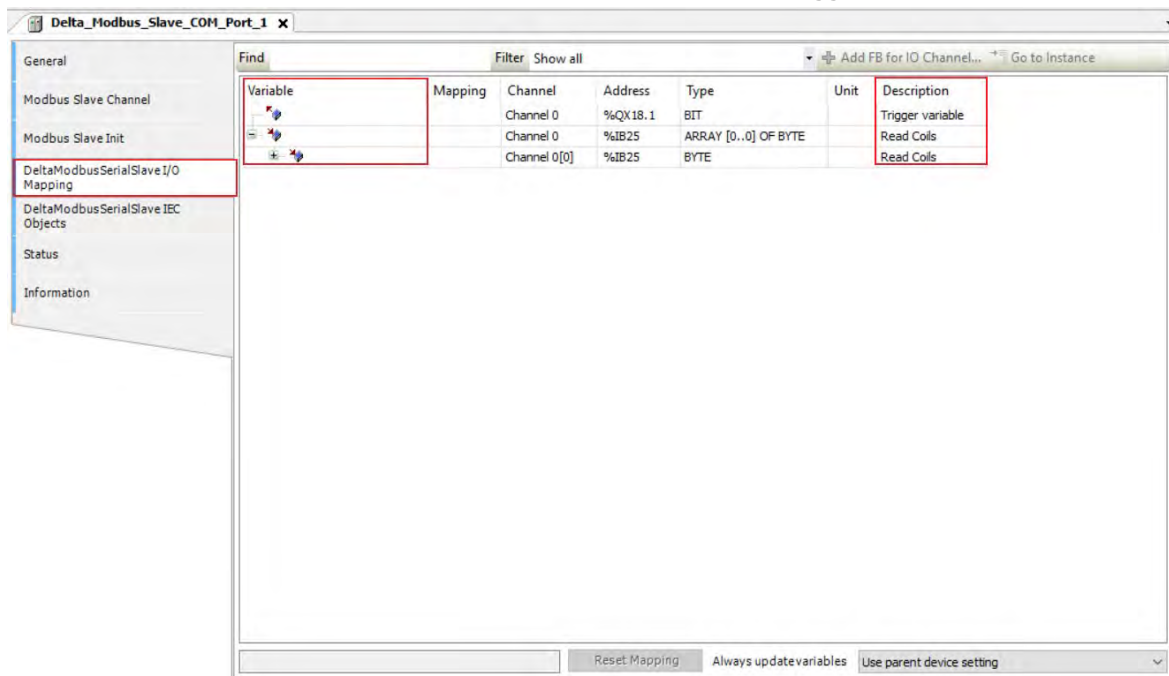
Initialization Value: 5

Comment:

OK Cancel

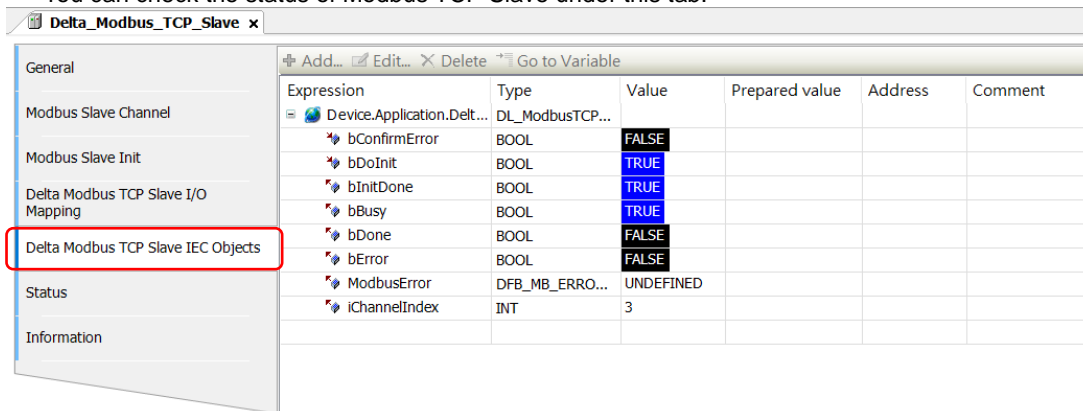
■ Modbus Generic Serial Slave I/O Mapping

After you have added channels under the tab of Modbus Slave Channel, you can find the variables and the set access types under this tab. Here you can define the variables for mapping. The descriptions here reflect what you have set for the **Access Type** in Modbus Slave Channel tab. When the **Trigger type** is set to **Rising edge** in Modbus Slave Channel, the description here adds one more condition, **Trigger variable**.



■ Delta Modbus TCP Slave IEC Objects

You can check the status of Modbus TCP Slave under this tab.



Expression	Description
bConfirmError	If the option "Auto-Reconnect" is NOT enabled, during the data transmission, any channel that showed error stops. After the bConfirmError shows "TRUE", the channel that showed error previously continues to execute.
bDoInit	Initialized the Slave
bInitDone	The initialization of the Slave is complete.
bBusy	This channel is in data transmission.
bDone	The data transmission via this channel is complete.
bError	Error occurs when this channel is in data transmission.
ModbusError	Record of the Modbus error
iChannelIndex	The number of the channel that is in execution.

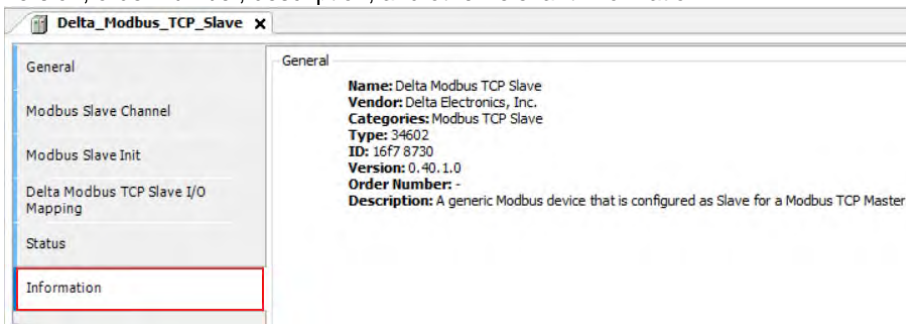
■ Status

Here you can find the Modbus TCP Slave status information, for example 'Running' or 'Stopped', and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.

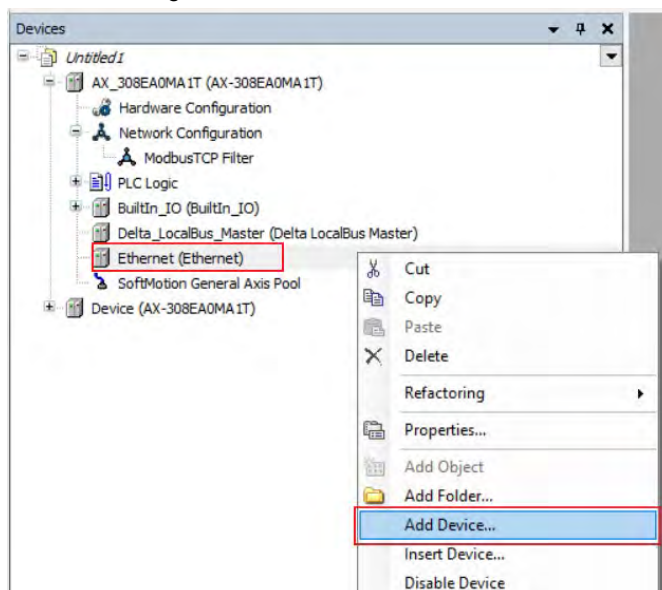


9.3.3 Modbus TCP Slave (Server)

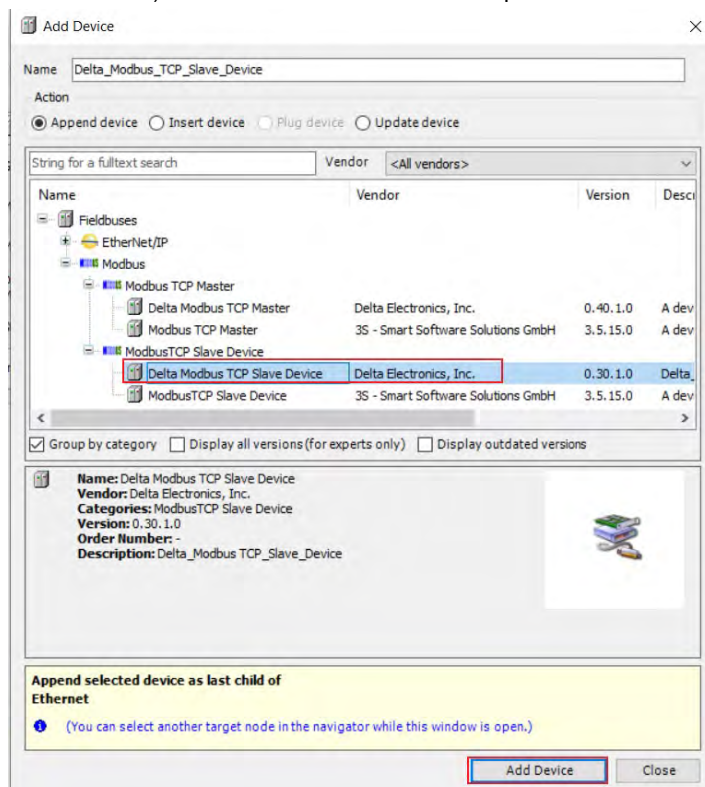
AX-3 Series PLC can act as a Modbus TCP Slave, after you add Modbus TCP Slave Device in and set up the allowable areas for Coils/Register. If Modbus TCP Master uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions. Follow the below section to set up the Modbus TCP Slave.

9.3.3.1 Adding a Modbus TCP Slave Device

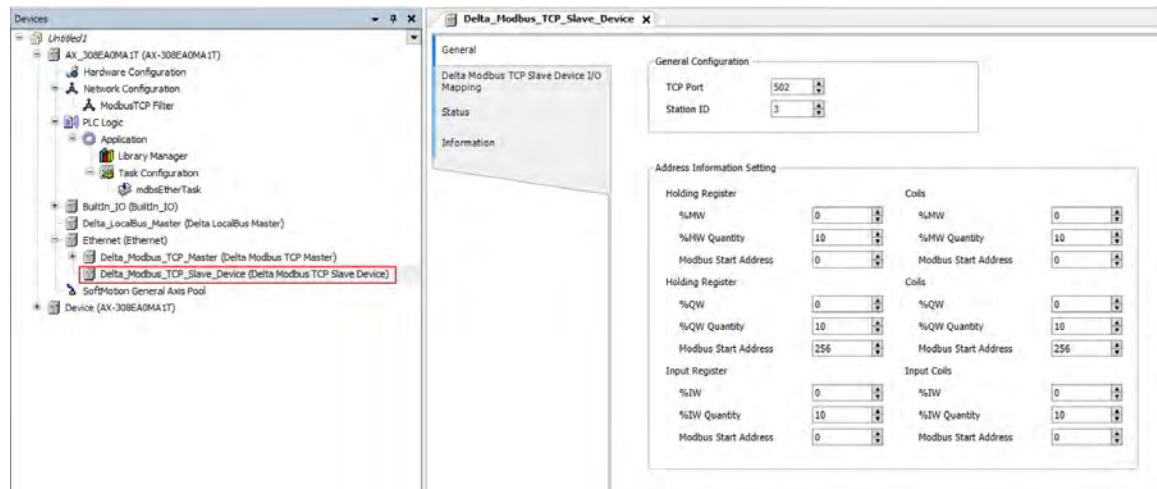
1. Right-click the **Ethernet (Ethernet)** node in the tree view to open up a context menu. And click **Add Device...** to open the Add Device setting window.



2. Find and double-click **Delta Modbus TCP Slave Device** (Fieldbuses -> Modbus -> Modbus TCP Slave Device -> Delta Modbus TCP Slave Device) or click **Add Device** to add this port in.



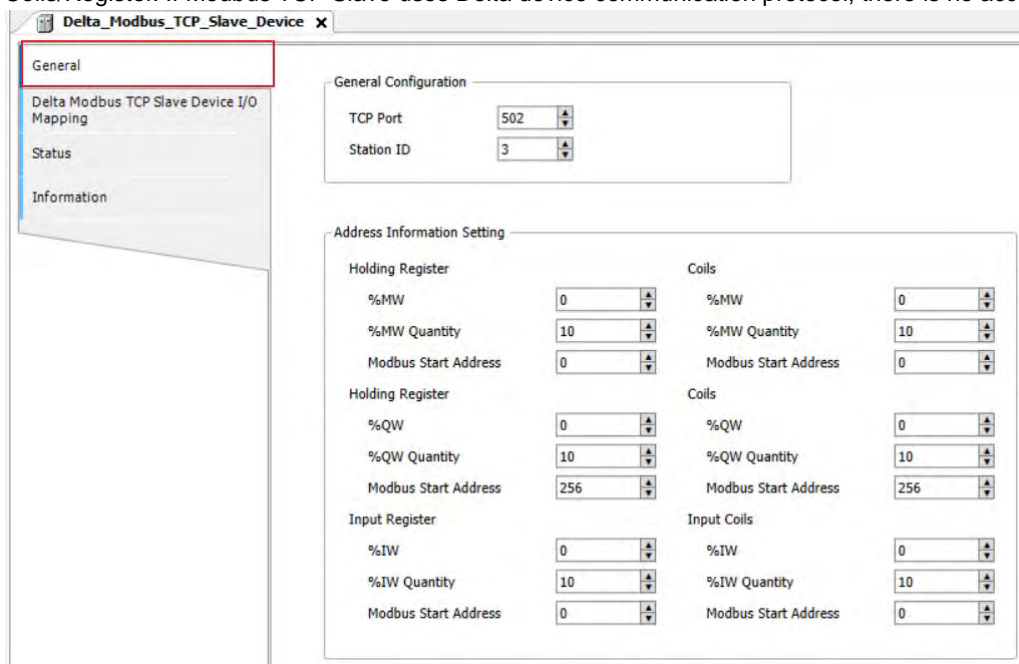
- Find the added port **Delta_Modbus_TCP_Slave_Device (Delta Modbus TCP Slave Device)** in the tree view and double-click it to open the setting window to set up.



9.3.3.2 Setting up the Modbus TCP Slave Device

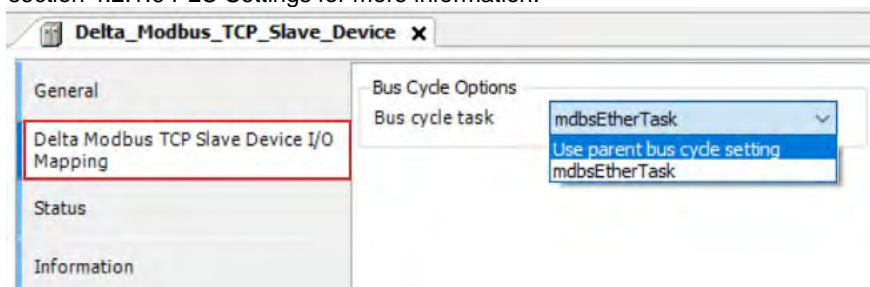
■ General

Here you can configure the basic settings for Modbus TCP Slave Device. Set up the allowable areas for Coils/Register. If Modbus TCP Slave uses Delta device communication protocol, there is no access restrictions.



■ Delta Modbus TCP Slave Device I/O Mapping

Bus cycle task: Select a bus cycle task to synchronize with the Modbus communication time. When the option “Use parent bus cycle setting is selected”, the system use the shortest cycle time as the bus cycle time. Refer to section 4.2.1.6 PLC Settings for more information.



■ Status

Here you can find the Modbus TCP Slave Device status information, for example ‘Running’ or ‘Stopped’, and specific diagnostic messages from the respective device, also information about the card used and the internal bus system.



■ Information

Here you can find general information that originates from the device description file: name, vendor, categories, version, order number, description, and other relevant information.



Appendix A Troubleshooting

Table of Contents

A.1	Troubleshooting	A-2
A.1.1	Basic Troubleshooting Steps	A-2
A.1.2	Clear the Error States	A-2
A.1.3	Troubleshooting SOP	A-3
A.1.4	Viewing Log	A-3
A.2	Troubleshooting of CPU Modules	A-6
A.2.1	ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds	A-6
A.2.2	ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 0.2 Seconds	A-8
A.2.3	ERROR LED Indicators Slow Blinking Every 3 Seconds and Lighting up for 1 Second	A-8
A.2.4	BAT. LOW LED Indicators Are ON	A-8
A.2.5	BAT. LOW LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds	A-8
A.2.6	Others	A-9
A.3	Troubleshooting of the Function Blocks	A-10
A.3.1	DL_BuiltInIO_AX3	A-10
A.3.2	Motion Control Related Instructions	A-13
A.4	Troubleshooting of I/O Modules	A-14
A.4.1	Troubleshooting of Analog Modules (AD/DA/XA) and Temperature Modules (RTD/TC)	A-14
A.4.2	Troubleshooting of Loadcell Modules AS02LC	A-16
A.5	Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules	A-17
A.5.1	Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules	A-18
A.5.2	Error Codes and LED Indicators for Analog and Temperature Module ..	A-20

A.1 Troubleshooting

A.1.1 Basic Troubleshooting Steps

This chapter includes the possible errors that can occur during operation, their causes, and corrective actions.

(1) Check the following:

- The PLC should be operated in a safe environment (consider environmental, electronic, and vibration safeties).
- Connect power supply correctly to the PLC.
- Secure the module, terminal, and cable installations.
- All LED indicators show correctly.
- Set all switches correctly.

(2) Check the following operational functions:

- Switch the RUN/STOP state
- Check the settings for the AX-3 Series to RUN/STOP
- Check and eliminate errors from external devices
- Use the System Log function in DIADesigner-AX to check system operation and logs

(3) Identify possible causes:

- AX-3 Series or external device
- CPU or extension modules
- Parameters or program settings

A.1.2 Clear the Error States

Use the following methods to clear the error states. If the error source is not corrected, the system continues to show errors.

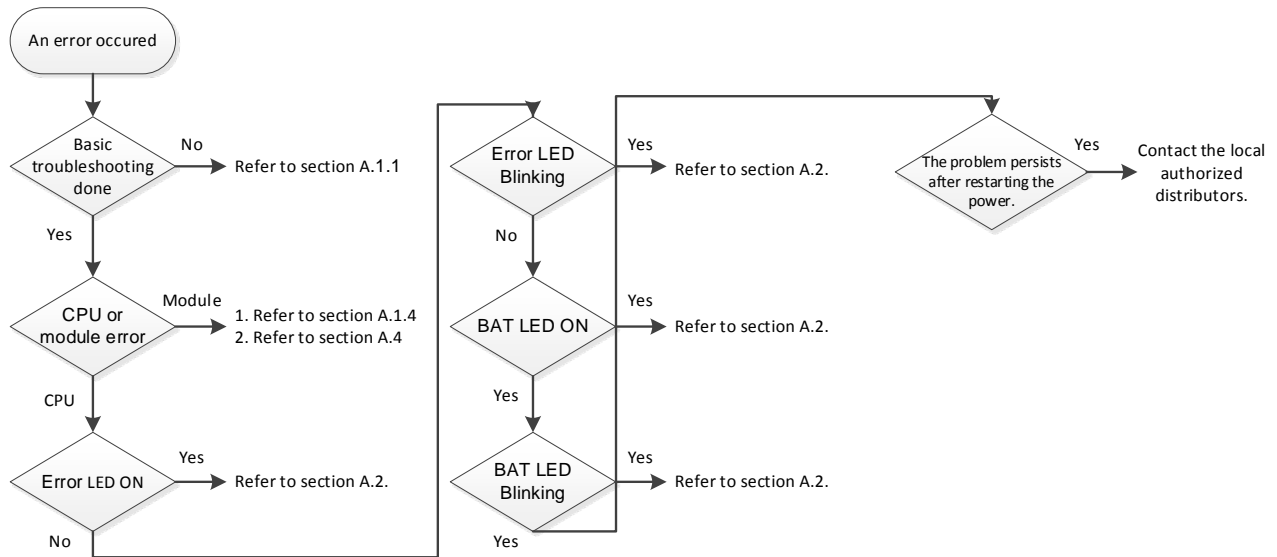
(1) Switch the CPU model state to STOP and then to RUN.

(2) Turn off the CPU and turn it on again.

(3) Use DIADesigner-AX to perform **Reset Warn** to clear the error logs.

(4) Use DIADesigner-AX to perform **Reset Origin** to reset the CPU to default settings and then redownload the program to start again.

A.1.3 Troubleshooting SOP



A.1.4 Viewing Log

When an error occurs, the system generates corresponding error codes and stores the error messages in the PLC. You can find events during the startup and shutdown of the system, application download and loading of the boot application, custom entries, log entries from I/O drivers, and log entries from data sources on the Log tab of the Device setting page. Refer to section 4.2.1.5 for more information on Log.

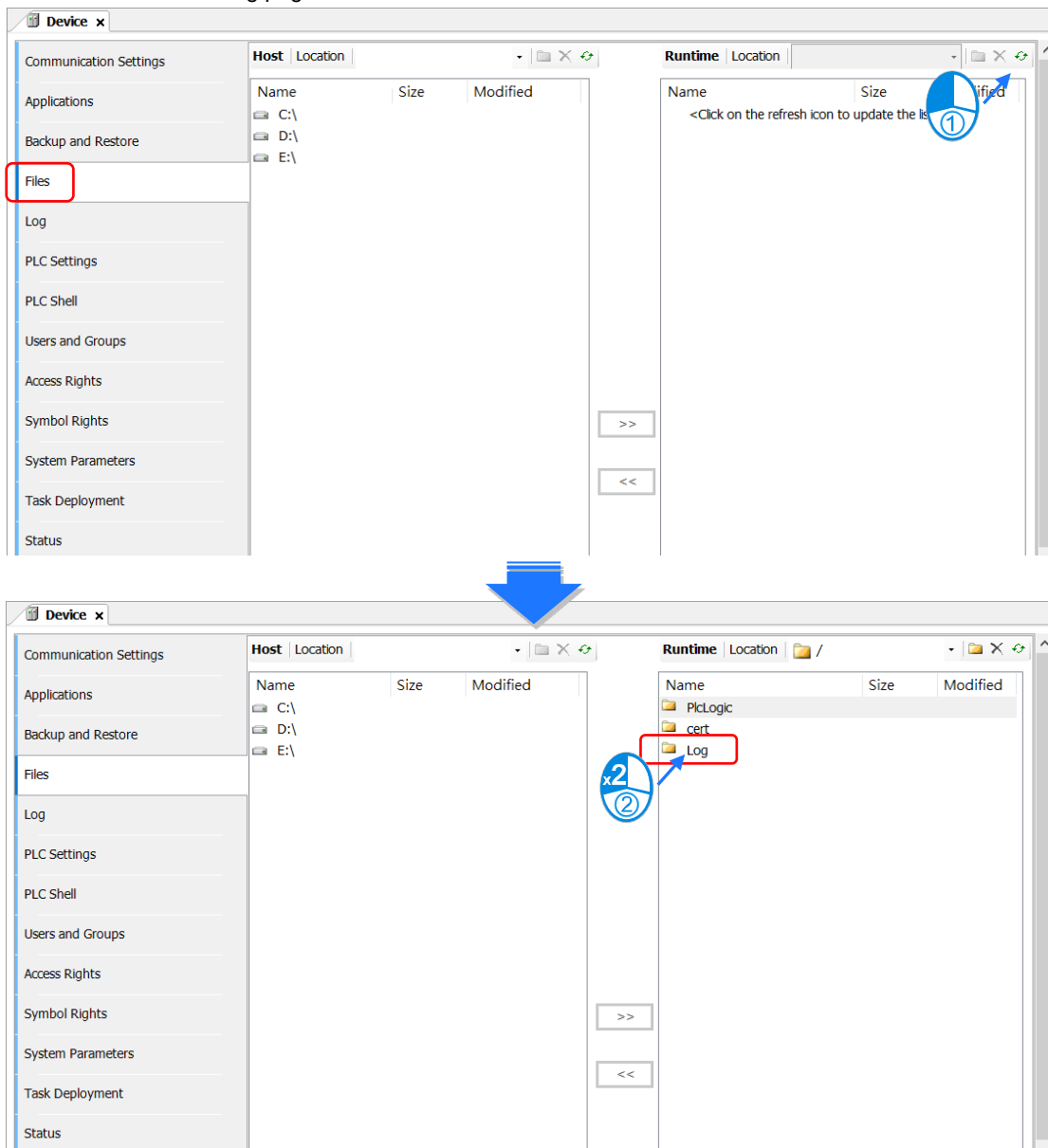
1. Log Tab

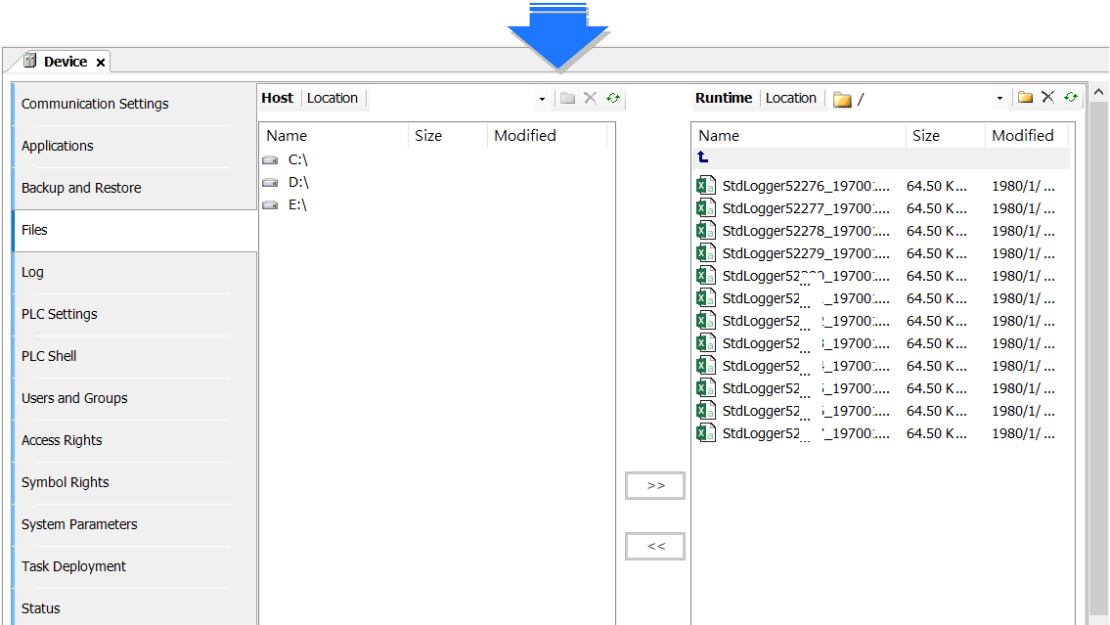
Double-click the **Device** in the tree view to open the Device setting page and then you can find Log tab on the left section.

Severity	Time Stamp	Description	Component
Information	01.01.1970 08:05:31	[CAN]EVT_StartDone!!	IoDrvDelta
Information	01.01.1970 08:05:31	[MTCPSlave]EVT_StartDone!!	IODrvDeltaModbusTCPS
Information	01.01.1970 08:05:31	[CAN]EVT_PrepareStart!!	IoDrvDelta
Information	01.01.1970 08:05:31	[MTCPSlave]EVT_PrepareStart!!	IODrvDeltaModbusTCPS
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CODESYS Control ready	CM
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_FINISHED	CmpDeltaConnHandler
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Application [Application] not started	CmpApp
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Application [Application] denied to start ev...	CmpApp
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_COMM	CmpDeltaConnHandler
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_COMM	IoDrvAX308_Counter_Timer
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_COMM	IoDrvAX308_Capture_Compare
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_TASKS	CmpDeltaConnHandler
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_TASKS	IoDrvAX308_Counter_Timer
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	CH_INIT_TASKS	IoDrvAX308_Capture_Compare
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Setting router 2 address to (2ddc:c0a8:0...	CmpRouter
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Setting router 1 address to (0000)	CmpRouter
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Setting router 0 address to (0005)	CmpRouter
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	IoDrvEthernetIP	IoDrvEtherNetIP
Warning	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Retain size in config changed, or retain are...	CmpRetain
Information	01.01.1970 08:00:13	Bootproject of application [Application] loa...	CmpApp

2. Files

The system generates log files (.csv) when the PLC is power-off or the log exceeds 64 KB. You can read the log file from the Files tab of the Device setting page.





A.2 Troubleshooting of CPU Modules

Check the LED indicators and the error codes from the CPU module and refer to the following table for troubleshooting.

A.2.1 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds

• CPU ERROR

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
140E	More than eight remote modules on the right side of the CPU module.	Check the total number of remote modules on the right side of the CPU module (maximum is 8).
1600	The extension module ID exceeds the range.	1. Make sure the module is properly connected to the CPU module and turn the modules on again. 2. If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
1601	The extension module ID cannot be set.	1. Make sure the module is properly connected to the CPU module and turn the modules on again. 2. If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
1602	The extension module ID is duplicated.	1. Make sure the module is properly connected to the CPU module and turn the modules on again. 2. If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
1603	The extension module cannot be operated.	1. Make sure the module is properly connected to the CPU module and turn the modules on again. 2. If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
1604	Extension module communication timeout	1. Make sure the module is properly connected to the CPU module and turn the modules on again. 2. If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
2000	CPU memory access is denied.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
2001	CPU external memory access is denied.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
2100	The number of MODBUS TCP connections exceeds the range.	Check if the number of Modbus TCP connection (Server+Client) exceeds the maximum number 32.
2200	The arrangement of the I/O modules is not consistent with the settings.	Check whether the settings in Hardware Configuration are consistent with the arrangement of the I/O modules.
2201	The number of connected communication modules exceed the maximum number 4.	Check the total number of communication modules.
2202	The number of connected positioning modules exceed the maximum number 8.	Check the total number of positioning modules.
2203	The number of connected extension modules exceed the maximum number 32.	Check the total number of extension modules.

● EtherCAT ERROR

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
1	EtherCAT communication lost	Make sure the terminal and cable are properly connected to the CPU module. Execute the function block, DFB_ResetECATMaster, to reset the EtherCAT Master.
2	EtherCAT data mapping failed	Make sure the terminal and cable are properly connected to the CPU module. Execute the function block, DFB_ResetECATMaster, to reset the EtherCAT Master.
4	Incorrect EtherCAT network name	Make sure the Network Name/address is correctly set on the setting page of the EtherCAT Master.
5	EtherCAT Slave failed to initialize	Make sure the actual placement is the same as the settings in the Network Configuration.
6	Vendor ID of the Slave does NOT match.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Make sure the actual placement is the same as the settings in the Network Configuration. ● Make sure the ESI file of the Slave is matched. ● Disable the Startup Checking item to cancel checking Vendor ID on the EtherCAT Master setting page.
7	Product ID of the Slave does NOT match.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Make sure the actual placement is the same as the settings in the Network Configuration. ● Make sure the ESI file of the Slave is matched. ● Disable the Startup Checking item to cancel checking Product ID on the EtherCAT Master setting page.

Note: EtherCAT error LED is defined by the Library IODrvEtherCAT.

A.2.2 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Rapidly Every 0.2 Seconds

The blinking happens when the power supply 24 VDC of the CPU module is disconnected, or the power supply is not sufficient, not stable or abnormal.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
2004	The external voltage is abnormal.	Check whether the external 24 V power supply to the module is normal.

A.2.3 ERROR LED Indicators Slow Blinking Every 3 Seconds and Lighting up for 1 Second

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
1800 ~ 180F	Errors occurred in the extension modules	Refer to section A.4 for more information on the extension module error codes.

A.2.4 BAT. LOW LED Indicators Are ON

The blinking happens when there is no battery (CR1620) or the power is low. Turn this functionality off on the System Parameter setting page. (Device -> System Parameter -> Show Battery Low Voltage Error) when you don't need the RTC function to keep track of the current time (default is "enabled").

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
2003	Battery Low	Change battery or turn this option off

A.2.5 BAT. LOW LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.5 Seconds

The blinking happens when RTC cannot keep track of the current time.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
2002	RTC cannot keep track of the current time	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.

A.2.6 Others

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
2500	The firmware version of the PLC is not in accordance with what stated on the DDF (Device Description File).	Check the firmware version of the PLC and the requirement on the DDF.
2501	SSI encoder is NOT connected to PLC.	Check the connection between SSI encoder and PLC.
2502	The setting value of the single turn and multiturn SSI encoders exceed the setting limit. (up to 32 bits).	The setting value of the single turn and multiturn SSI encoder should not exceed the maximum of 32 bits.
2503	An error occurs when the pulse outputs.	Check the log of the corresponding pulse on the ON-LINE monitoring page.

A.3 Troubleshooting of the Function Blocks

A.3.1 DL_BuiltInIO_AX3

The following errors are specified as warnings; however no error indicators will appear and the AX-3 Series CPU can still run.

Error Code (16#)	Item Name	Description	Solution
0	DFB_HSIO_NO_ERR	No error on the high speed IO function block	-
186A0	DMC_HP_INVALID_HOME_SPEED	The speed set in the homing motion on the pulse axis is invalid.	The setting value in the fields of Search for Switch and Search for Z Phase Pulse on the setting page of Pulse Axis cannot not be set to 0. Set a non-zero value.
186A1	DMC_HP_INVALID_HOME_ACC_DEC	The acceleration set or the deceleration set in the homing motion is invalid.	The setting value in the fields of acceleration and deceleration in the homing motion on the setting page of Pulse Axis cannot not be set to 0. Set a non-zero value.
186A2	DMC_HP_INVALID_HOME_POSITION	The position set in the homing motion is invalid.	Set the function block pin, IrPosotion, in the range of [0 ~ PulseAxis.Modulo Value].
186A3	DMC_HP_AXIS_NOT_PULSE_AXIS	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a PulseAxis_REF type.	Make sure to select Pulse Axis on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Axis" of the function block DMC_Home_P.
186A4	DMC_HP_HOMING_METHOD_RESERVED	This version does NOT support this type of homing mode.	Check if this type of homing mode is supported in this version. Refer to the specification and then change the mode accordingly.
186A5	DMC_HP_HOMING_MOMENT_HW_LIMIT	If the positive/negative limit is activated, the axis cannot move in this homing mode.	Make sure the hardware limit used is supported by this homing mode. Refer to the specification and then change the mode or the setting accordingly.
186A6	DMC_HP_HOMING_AXIS_STATE_NOT_STANDSTILL	The state of the pulse axis is not at standstill.	Make sure the function block DMC_Home_P is executed when the axis state is at standstill.
186AC	DFB_CAP_INVALID_CAPTURE_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Capture_REF type.	Make sure to select Capture on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Capture" of the function block DMC_Capture.
186AD	DFB_CAP_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DMC_Capture.
186AE	DFB_CAP_INVALID_VALUE_SETTING	The mask setting value (uiMaskValue) in DFB_Capture exceeds the range of rotary axis.	Set the pin "uiMaskValue" of the function block DFB_Capture in the range of [0 ~ EncoderAxis.Modulo Value].
186AF	DFB_CAP_INVALID_DELTARANGE	When the encoder of high-speed counter is a rotary axis and the pin of "diDeltaMax" or "diDeltaMin" exceeds the range of rotary axis.	Set the pin "diDeltaMax" or "diDeltaMin" of the function block DFB_Capture in the range of [0 ~ EncoderAxis.Modulo Value].
186B0	DFB_CAP_CAPTURE_ALREADY_ENABLE	The device for high-speed capture is already enabled.	Check if the device for high-speed capture is already enabled by other DFB_Capture.

Error Code (16#)	Item Name	Description	Solution
186B6	DFB_CMP_INVALID_COMPARE_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Compare_REF type.	Make sure to select Compare on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DMC_Compare.
186B7	DFB_CMP_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DMC_Compare.
186B8	DFB_CMP_INVALID_COMPARE_VALUE	When the encoder of high-speed counter is a rotary axis and the pin of "diCompareValue" exceeds the range.	Set the pin "diCompareValue" of the function block DFB_Compare in the range of [0 ~ EncoderAxis.Modulo Value].
186B9	DFB_CMP_INVALID_REFRESH_CYCLE	The setting value of input pin "wRefreshCycle" exceeds the range of [0-30000], unit 0.1us.	Set the pin "wRefreshCycle" of the function block DFB_Compare in the range of [0 ~ 30000].
186BA	DFB_CMP_COMPARE_ALREADY_ENABLED	The device for high-speed compare is already enabled.	Check if the device for high-speed compare is already enabled by other DFB_Compare.
186C0	DFB_HC_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DMC_HCnt.
186C1	DFB_HC_COUNTER_ALREADY_ENABLED	The device for high-speed counter is already enabled.	Check if the device for high-speed counter is already enabled by other DFB_HCnt.
186C2	DFB_HC_COUNTER_REF_CHANGED_DURING_OPERATION	The input pin "Counter" has been changed during the execution of the function block.	Check if the variable of the pin "Counter" has been changed after the execution of the DFB_HCnt.
186C8	DFB_HT_INVALID_TIMER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Timer_REF type.	Make sure to select Timer on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Timer" of the function block DFB_HTMr.
186C9	DFB_HT_TIMER_ALREADY_ENABLED	The device for high-speed timer is already enabled.	Check if the device for high-speed timer is already enabled by other DFB_HTMr.
186CA	DFB_HT_TIMER_REF_CHANGED_DURING_OPERATION	The input pin "Timer" has been changed during the execution of the function block.	Check if the variable of the pin "Timer" has been changed after the execution of the DFB_HTMr.
186D0	DFB_PV_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DFB_PresetValue.
186D1	DFB_PV_NOT_ENABLE_EXTERNAL_TRIGGER	The counter is not set as triggered externally but the mode of DFB_PresetValue is set to "EXTERNAL_TRIGGER".	Make sure to select External Trigger on the Counter Configuration page.
186D2	DFB_PV_PREVIOUS_RESET_NOT_DONE	The preset counting function of the counter has been enabled by other function block	Execute this function block after the execution of DFB_PresetValue of this counter completes.

Error Code (16#)	Item Name	Description	Solution
		DMC_PresetValue and is not done yet.	
186D3	DFB_PV_CANNOT_PRESET_WHEN_SAMPLING	The counter is executing DFB_Sample.	Disable the sample function of this counter. Disable DFB_Sample of this counter.
186D4	DFB_PV_SETRING_NOT_DONE	The counter is executing DFB_SetRing and is not done yet.	Execute this function block after the execution of DFB_SetRing of this counter completes.
186D5	DFB_PV_INVALID_PRESET_VALUE	When the encoder of high-speed counter is a rotary axis and the pin of "diPresetValue" exceeds the range.	Set the pin "diPresetValue" of the function block in the range of [0 ~ EncoderAxis.Modulo Value].
186D6	DFB_PV_COUNTER_REF_CHANGED_DURING_OPERATION	The input pin "Counter" has been changed during the execution of the function block.	Check if the variable of the pin "Counter" has been changed after the execution of the DFB_PresetValue.
186DC	DFB_SP_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DMC_Sample.
186DD	DFB_SP_COUNTER_NOT_ENABLE	The function block DFB_Counter is not enabled yet.	Execute DFB_Sample after making sure this counter is enabled by DFB_HCnt.
186DE	DFB_SP_ALREADY_SAMPLING	The counter is executing DFB_Sample.	Check if this counter is enabled by other DFB_Sample.
186DF	DFB_SP_PRESET_NOT_DONE	The counter is executing DFB_PresetValue and is not done yet.	Execute this function block after the execution of DFB_PresetValue of this counter completes.
186E0	DFB_SP_INVALID_SAMPLE_TIME	The setting value of input pin "wSampleTime" of the function block DFB_Sample exceeds the range of [10-65535].	Set the pin "wSampleTime" of the function block DFB_Sample in the range of [10-65535].
186E1	DFB_SP_COUNTER_REF_CHANGED_DURING_OPERATION	The input pin "Counter" has been changed during the execution of the function block.	Check if the variable of the pin "Counter" has been changed after the execution of the DFB_Sample.
186E7	DFB_SR_INVALID_COUNTER_REF	The variable of the function block pin is NOT a Counter_REF type.	Make sure to select Counter on the IO Configuration setting page and import IEC Object to the pin "Counter" of the function block DFB_SetRing.
186E8	DFB_SR_COUNTER_HAS_NO_CHILD_ENCODER_AXIS	No child node of the high-speed counter is connected to the encoder.	Insert EncoderAxis into the counter and set the encoder type to rotary axis and reexecute the function block.
186E9	DFB_SR_COUNTER_NOT_ROT_RING	The encoder of the high-speed counter is not a rotary axis type.	Select the encoder type to rotary axis on the Counter Configuration page.
186EA	DFB_SR_PREVIOUS_SETRING_NOT_DONE	The preset counting function of the counter has been enabled by other function block DMC_SetRing and is not done yet.	Execute this function block after the execution of DFB_SetRing of this counter completes.

Error Code (16#)	Item Name	Description	Solution
186EB	DFB_SR_PRESET_NOT_DONE	The counter is executing DFB_PresetValue and is not done yet.	Execute this function block after the execution of DFB_PresetValue of this counter completes.
186EC	DFB_SR_INVALID_RING_RANGE	When the encoder of high-speed counter is a rotary axis and the pin of "diPositionPeriod" is less than 0 and bigger than the setting value of bSetDown.	Set the pin "diPositionPeriod" of the function block bigger than 0 and less than the setting value of bSetDown.
186ED	DFB_SR_COUNTER_REF_CHANGED_DURING_OPERATION	The input pin "Counter" has been changed during the execution of the function block.	Check if the variable of the pin "Counter" has been changed after the execution of the DFB_SetRing.

A.3.2 Motion Control Related Instructions

The errors occurred in DL_MotionControl or DL_MotionControlLight are specified as warnings; however no error indicators will appear and the AX-3 Series CPU can still run. Refer to AX Series Motion Controller Manual for the troubleshooting of DL_MotionControl.

A.4 Troubleshooting of I/O Modules

● Introduction to troubleshooting modules

The following AS series modules can be installed in an AX-3 Series system. There are 2 types of error codes; error and warning. The CPU module and its modules stop operating when errors occur. The CPU modules and its modules do not stop operating when warnings are triggered.

A.4.1 Troubleshooting of Analog Modules (AD/DA/XA) and Temperature Modules (RTD/TC)

A.4.1.1 ERROR ERROR LED Indicators Are ON

You can set up the option to be **True** in **Module Alarm Setting** to have the following errors appear as warnings when they occur. Otherwise, when an error occurs, only an error message appears.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
16#1605	Hardware failure	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1607	The external voltage is abnormal.	Check the power supply.
16#1608	The factory calibration or the CJC is abnormal.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.

A.4.1.2 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.2 Seconds

The following errors are specified as warnings to ensure that the AX-3 Series CPU can still run even when the warnings are triggered by its AIO modules. If you need the CPU STOP running immediately when the first 4 errors occur, you need to set the them as errors.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
16#1801	The external voltage is abnormal.	Check the power supply.
16#1802	Hardware failure	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1804	The factory calibration is abnormal.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1807	The CJC is abnormal.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1808	The signal received by channel 1 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 1
16#1809	The signal received by channel 2 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 2
16#180A	The signal received by channel 3 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 3
16#180B	The signal received by channel 4 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 4

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
16#180C	The signal received by channel 5 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 5
16#180D	The signal received by channel 6 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 6
16#180E	The signal received by channel 7 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 7
16#180F	The signal received by channel 8 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 8
-	When power-on, the module is not detected by CPU module.	Check if the connection between module and CPU module is working. If not, connect again.

A.4.2 Troubleshooting of Loadcell Modules AS02LC

A.4.2.1 ERROR ERROR LED Indicators Are ON

You can set up the option to be **True** in **Module Alarm Setting** to have the following errors appear as warnings when they occur. Otherwise, when an error occurs, only an error message appears.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
16#1605	Hardware failure	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1607	The external voltage is abnormal.	Check the power supply.

A.4.2.2 ERROR LED Indicators Blinking Every 0.2 Seconds

The following errors are specified as warnings to ensure that the AX-3 Series CPU can still run even when the warnings are triggered by its LC modules. If you need the CPU STOP running immediately when the first 4 errors occur, you need to set the them as errors.

Error Code (16#)	Description	Solution
16#1801	The external voltage is abnormal.	Check the power supply.
16#1802	Hardware failure	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1807	The CJC is abnormal.	If the problem persists, contact the local authorized distributors.
16#1808	The signal received by channel 1 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 1
16#1809	The signal received by channel 2 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 2
16#180A	The signal received by channel 3 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 3
16#180B	The signal received by channel 4 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 4
16#180C	The signal received by channel 5 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 5
16#180D	The signal received by channel 6 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	Check the signal received by channel 6
-	When power-on, the module is not detected by CPU module.	Check if the connection between module and CPU module is working. If not, connect again.

A.5 Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules

A. Columns

- a. Error code: If an error occurs in the system, an error code is generated.
- b. Description: The description of the error
- c. CPU status: If the error occurs, the CPU stops running, keeps running, or shows the status you defined for the error.
 - Stop: The CPU stops running when the error occurs.
 - Continue: The CPU keeps running when the error occurs.
- d. LED indicator status: If the error occurs, the LED indicator is ON, OFF, or blinks.
 - ERROR: System error

● Descriptions

Module Type	LED indicator	Descriptions
CPU	Error LED	<p>There are five types of indicators for of the CPU module errors, including LED indicator ON, OFF, blinking fast, blinking normally, and blinking slowly. When the LED indicator is ON, blinking fast/normally, clear the problems first for the CPU module to keep on running. When the LED indicator is blinking slowly, indicating a warning type of error codes, it does not require immediate action. Clear the problems when the module is powered off.</p> <p>Error type:</p> <p>ON: A serious error occurs in the module.</p> <p>Blinking fast (every 0.2 seconds): unstable power supply or hardware Failure.</p> <p>Blinking normally (every 0.5 second): system program errors or system cannot run.</p> <p>Warning type:</p> <p>Blinking slowly (every 1 second and off for 3 seconds): a warning is triggered, but the system can still run.</p> <p>OFF: a warning is triggered, but the system can still run. You can modify the rules and use DIADesigner-AX to show the warnings, instead of using indicators to show the errors.</p>

A.5.1 Error Codes and LED Indicators for CPU Modules

Refer to Section A.2 for the status descriptions of the Error LED indicators.

• CPU ERROR

Error Code (16#)	Description	CPU status	ERROR LED indicator				
			ON	Blinking fast	Blinking normally	Blinking slowly	OFF
140E	Number of remote modules exceeds the limit of eight on the right side of the CPU module.	Stop			V		
1500	Connection lost in the remote modules	Continue				V	
1600	The ID of the extension module exceeds the range.	Stop			V		
1601	The ID of the extension module cannot be set.	Stop			V		
1602	The ID of the extension module is duplicated.	Stop			V		
1603	The extension module cannot be operated.	Stop			V		
1604	Extension module communication timeout	Stop			V		
2000	CPU memory access is denied.	Stop			V		
2001	CPU external memory access is denied.	Stop			V		
2002	RTC cannot keep track of the current time (the battery LED is blinking.)	Continue					V
2003	Battery low (the battery LED is ON.)	Continue					V
2004	24VDC power supply is not sufficient and then is recovered from low-voltage for less than 10 ms.	Continue		V			
2100	The number of MODBUS TCP connections exceeds the range.	Continue			V		
2200	The arrangement of the I/O modules is not consistent with the settings.	Stop			V		
2201	The number of connected communication modules exceed the maximum number 4.	Stop			V		
2202	The number of connected positioning modules exceed the maximum number 8.	Stop			V		
2203	The number of connected extension modules exceed the maximum number 32.	Stop			V		
2500	The firmware version of the PLC is not in accordance with what stated on the DDF (Device Description File).	Continue					V
2501	SSI encoder is NOT connected to PLC.	Continue					V
2502	The setting value of the single turn and multiturn SSI encoders exceed the setting limit. (up to 32 bits).	Continue					V
2503	An error occurs when the pulse outputs.	Continue					V

● EtherCAT ERROR

Error Code (16#)	Description	CPU status	ERROR LED indicator				
			ON	Blinking fast	Blinking normally	Blinking slowly	OFF
1	EtherCAT communication lost	Continue			V		
2	EtherCAT data mapping failed	Continue			V		
4	Incorrect EtherCAT network name	Continue			V		
5	EtherCAT Slave failed to initialize	Continue			V		
6	Vendor ID of the Slave does NOT match.	Continue			V		
7	Product ID of the Slave does NOT match.	Continue			V		

A.5.2 Error Codes and LED Indicators for Analog and Temperature Module

Error Code (16#)	Description	ERROR LED indicator	
		A → D / D → A / A ↔ D	ERROR
16#1605	Hardware failure (the diver board included)	OFF	ON
16#1607	The external voltage is abnormal.	OFF	ON
16#1608	The factory calibration or the CJC is abnormal.	OFF	ON
16#1801*1	The external voltage is abnormal.	OFF	Blinking
16#1802*1	Hardware failure	OFF	Blinking
16#1804*1	The factory calibration is abnormal.	RUN: Blinking STOP: OFF	Blinking
16#1807*1	The CJC is abnormal.	OFF	Blinking
16#1808	The signal received by channel 1 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).	RUN: Blinking STOP: OFF	Blinking
16#1809	The signal received by channel 2 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180A	The signal received by channel 3 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180B	The signal received by channel 4 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180C	The signal received by channel 5 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180D	The signal received by channel 6 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180E	The signal received by channel 7 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		
16#180F	The signal received by channel 8 exceeds the range of analog inputs (temperature).		

*1 : The errors are specified as warnings to ensure that the AX-3 Series CPU can still run even when the warnings are triggered by its AIO modules. If you need the CPU STOP running immediately when the first 4 errors occur, you need to set the them as errors.